



Introduction

Hello. This is Kristin and this is Joe ... we wanted to take a moment to welcome you to the Learn Real English Family and to tell you a little about the lessons.

Now these lessons are based on real, authentic English conversations that Joe and I have had with each other and our friends... and also with my mom. These are actual conversations that we've had so you will become familiar, more familiar, with real spoken English.

So you'll hear Kristin and I in the conversations and also doing the lessons. You'll also hear our friend AJ Hoge from Effortless English. He's done some of the lessons as well.

Okay, so now a little bit about the lessons . . . Each lesson set has a conversation, a vocabulary lesson and a mini-story lesson for you to listen to. And we've also included the text for each of these, in case you want to read along as you listen.

The key to Learn Real English is deep learning. The best way to use these lessons is to listen to one lesson set at a time. You should spend at least one week on each lesson set. Now remember... one lesson set has a conversation, a vocabulary lesson and a mini-story lesson in it. So listen to the lesson set every day for at least one week before moving on to the next set. Even if the lesson set is easy, you should still continue for one week. And if after a week the lesson set is difficult, continue listening until you have a basic understanding. Also, you want to be sure that you do the lesson sets in order because the ones at the end are more difficult.

We've included a welcome guide that has more instructions. So please read it before you start listening to the lessons. And if you have any questions or comments about the lessons you can go to our discussion board. It's at www.EffortlessEnglishForums.com.

Okay, so now you're ready to start. Thanks for joining the Learn Real English family. And good luck with the lessons. But most importantly, make sure you have fun. Bye.



Welcome Guide

Getting Started:

1. Go to the Forums and Register now: <http://www.EffortlessEnglishForums.com>
Click "Register"
Create a Username and Password
Introduce yourself to other members. Ask questions.
2. Download the first lesson set.
3. Read "How To Use The Lessons" below:

How To Use The Lessons:

Welcome To Learn Real English! You now have a link to the download page. Save the email and link. Do not lose it. It is the only way you can download each lesson set. You are only able to click on the link up to 9 times. Therefore, try to download all of the lessons at one time and then save them on your computer. That way you will always have them.

Each lesson set has a real conversation, a vocabulary lesson and a mini-story lesson for you to listen to. And we've also included the text for each of these, in case you want to read along as you listen. All lessons in a set have the same name. These lessons go together. Every day, listen to all the lessons in ONE lesson SET (all the lessons with the same name). You will listen to only one set for a week or more. This is very important. You will only improve quickly if you follow this method-- one lesson set everyday-- the same lesson set every day for a week (or more).

What kind of lessons are in each set, and how should you use them?

*A Text Article (Adobe .pdf file)

Read the article. Do not "study" it. Don't try to memorize it. Just read it a couple of times each day and review new words. Use a dictionary to translate difficult words, if necessary.

*Vocabulary Lesson (MP3)

Just listen. Don't try to memorize the words.

*Mini-Story Lesson (MP3)

This is the most powerful lesson. First time, just listen. Then, listen and pause after each question. Answer each question loudly in English, then play again. Don't worry if you don't understand everything. Don't worry about mistakes.



Welcome Guide

In the Mini-Story, Joe & AJ will do only three things:

1. They will make a statement. After a statement, just say, “Ahhhh” or “Ohhhh”.
2. They will ask a question that you know the answer to. Just answer the question. You don't need to answer with a sentence. You can answer with only one or two words.
3. They will ask a question that you don't know the answer to. Guess. Yell a guess immediately.
4. Again, you can guess with just one (or a few) words. Saying a correct and exact answer is not important. The most important thing is speed. Try to answer very quickly (remember, one word is fine). Speed is your goal. You want short fast answers, not long answers! In the beginning, this may be difficult. That's OK. Use your pause button. Listen to this lesson many times every day for at least a week. The Mini-Story is the MOST IMPORTANT LESSON in the Learn Real English system. Listen to these lessons the most.

Authentic Audio Conversation (MP3):

*Just listen. Relax and enjoy. Listen to it several times each day for at least a week. Your goal is to understand 100% instantly and automatically.

Suggested Lesson Order (Every Day Using The Same Set):

1. First, read the Conversation Text article. Read and review it, do not “study” it. Don't try to memorize it.
2. Listen to the Conversation a few times.
3. Listen to the Vocabulary Lesson several times.
4. Listen to the Mini-Story a few times.

Learning Schedule:



Welcome Guide

Learn Real English is a deep learning system. You will learn each lesson very well. You will relax, go slowly and learn to speak English easily and automatically.

The best study schedule is as follows:

*Study one lesson set for a week or more. That's right, only one set for at least a week. If you get bored, make a game with the Mini-Story lessons - Try to answer each question faster and faster.

*Everyday, listen to all of the lessons in the lesson set. Try to listen to each lesson (in the set) at least two times every day.

*Listen at least one hour every day. Two hours every day is best. It's OK to divide your time during the day. For example, you might listen 30 minutes in the morning, 30 minutes going to work, 30 minutes during lunch, 30 minutes going home, and 30 minutes before going to sleep. In fact, this is an excellent way to learn.

*Relax :) Do not think about grammar rules. Just listen to the lessons and enjoy them.

*Start with the first lessons (at the top of the list). Even if the lessons seem easy, listen to only one set for a full week. You might know the words very well, but you need them to go deep into your brain. You need a lot of repetition and a lot of answering questions. If the lessons seem easy, try to answer the questions very quickly - make it a game. If the lessons seem difficult - just relax. You can listen to one lesson set for 4 weeks or 10 weeks if necessary. Don't worry about doing a lot of lesson sets. This is not important. Relax and focus on understanding. Go slowly. You will improve a lot, even if you listen to only one lesson set for 10 weeks!

The Learn Real English Forum (part of the Effortless English Club Forum):

Meet your new family! As a user of The Learn Real English System, you can join our Forum. The Forum is a place to meet other members (as well as members from Effortless English Club). This is a bonus for users of The Learn Real English System.



Welcome Guide

**Go to the Forum at: <http://www.EffortlessEnglishForums.com>

Use the Forum to meet other English speakers from all over the world. Schedule Skype discussions with other members. Share opinions, suggestions, and information. Make new friends.

**You will be asked to login.

Click "Register" and create an account.

Later, you will login with the username and password you created.

Good luck and enjoy The Learn Real English System,
Kristin Dodds & Joe Weiss
Directors of Learn Real English, LLC

Earthquakes Conversation

check this out: listen to this

Joe: Hey, **check this out.** Y'know what Eric asked me when I got into work this morning?

I have no idea: I do not know

Kristin: **I have no idea**, what'd he ask you?

Joe: He asked me if I felt the earthquake last night.

you've gotta be kidding: you cannot be serious

Kristin: Earthquake? **You've gotta be kidding**, I didn't feel an earthquake.

Joe: I know, that's what I said. He told me it actually woke him up last night. Y'know...

Kristin: What?

Joe: ...yeah, it was like, it went, it happened at like, uh, 4:42 in the morning. So we must've been sleeping. But I mean, it's possible that, y'know, even if we had been awake we might not have felt it because, y'know, maybe it, uh, wasn't felt, y'know, this far north. But, uh, I, I mean I thought he was **pullin' my leg** when he first talked about it.

Kristin: Well, I guess it's not so **far-fetched** considering we live on a major fault line here.

Joe: Yeah, but actually I think this earthquake was, uh, on a different fault line, um, because, y'know, Eric lives, uh, just, uh, south of San Jose...

Kristin: Yeah.

due east: exactly east of someplace

Joe: ...and, uh, the earthquake he said was **due east** of San Jose, so he was obviously a lot closer to the **epicenter** than we were. So, I d-, I'm not even sure it was felt here.

epicenter: the middle of an earthquake

Kristin: Yeah, that makes sense. Well, y'know, I've experienced quite a few earthquakes in the past several years but I've been living here a little over two years, I've, I think I've only experienced one here. It was really strange, too, I was, um, each, I should say each earthquake has been a completely different experience. But the one I, the one I felt here, I was standing outside a restaurant talking to AJ and another friend and **all of a sudden** it just felt like, this shift. It's really hard to explain, but it made me think of, like, a cartoon, like how, in the cartoon, like buildings might just shift to the right and then shift right back.

Earthquakes Conversation

Joe: Yeah, without falling.

Kristin: Yeah, without falling. And I, I had no idea what was going on for a few minutes afterwards. And then I realized, oh that must have been an earthquake.

Joe: Yeah, you know what I usually notice, the times that I've been at home, here...

Kristin: Yeah.

Joe: ...and, uh, there's been an earthquake? It's almost as if there's this really big train, or like a gigantic Mack truck going by. And, uh, suddenly I start to hear the heater shaking. And, um, it's like, the noise is like, uh, is loud for like a second and then it's gone, so...

Kristin: That's so...

Joe: ...it's really weird, y'know, it's almost like the first couple'a times I felt it, I wasn't even aware it was an earthquake while it was happening.

Kristin: Well, that's so funny you say that because one that I experienced in Bangkok, it actually was after the tsunami and so later I found out that it was, it was, um, **aftershock** from the tsunami. But anyway, I was in a building up on the ninth floor and suddenly, uh, there was all this rattling. And I'm thinking to myself, it, it just, it, it was so irrational. I'm thinking to myself, god, there's like a train going by and I can't believe that this building is shaking so much from the train [laugh]. It... And of course a train wouldn't have made a building, or at least me up on the ninth floor, feel something to that effect. And I think it happened about two times. And it... That one wasn't until several days later when I was talking to people and they were like, "Oh didja feel the earthquake?". Then **it dawned on me**, oh, that was an earthquake. It was...

Joe: Yeah, I know. It's, uh, it's crazy how when you're not used to feeling them you can think it's something else.

Kristin: Yeah, yeah **totally**.

Joe: I mean, I've been livin' here for **a while** now and I've definitely felt my share of earthquakes. I mean, y'know, when you live here **it's a given** that you're gonna experience earthquakes. You just hope that you're not gonna be here for the big one,

aftershock: an earthquake that happens right after another earthquake

it dawned on me: I remembered; I realized

totally: definitely

a while: a long time

it's a given: there is no doubt

Earthquakes Conversation

y'know...

Kristin: [laugh] Yeah, right.

Joe: When I first moved here, it was, uh, about five years after the Loma Prieta earthquake, which was a very big earthquake here. And, um, there are a lot of people who lived here who I met who had actually been living in the area when the earthquake hit. So it was interesting to get their **perspective**...

Kristin: Oh.

Joe: ...and, uh, it also like made me remember where I was when I heard about the Loma Prieta earthquake. I was watching the **World Series** on TV. And, uh, y'know, it was, uh, **taking place** in San Francisco. So, uh, as I'm watching it suddenly the announcer starts, uh, uh, saying, "Wow, I think we're feeling an earthquake here.". And the cameras started shaking. And, uh, all of a sudden the TV coverage **cut out**. So, uh, y'know, I wanted to get a **rundown** on what happened. So I turned to the news station and, uh, within a few minutes they were discussing this gigantic earthquake that had hit San Francisco. And they started showing pictures, uh, maybe thirty minutes later, of these people who were, uh, trying to **weed through** the rubble of these buildings that had been, like, coming down. So, I mean, it was...

Kristin: Oh, wow.

Joe: ...it was pretty scary, **I'll tell you what...**

Kristin: Yeah.

Joe: ...y'know.

Kristin: Yeah, well, um, you know the three months I was living in Japan I experienced two. Both of those were very different, uh, very different from the one I'd experienced here and also very different from the one in Bangkok. But one of 'em, I was actually up in my apartment, which was on the fifth floor of a building. And I was woken up at about 5 o'clock in the morning to the building swaying. And because, uh, earthquakes are like **a dime a dozen** in Japan, they, they've built a lot of their buildings to absorb the shock. So that's why it was swaying, it was really, it was a very **surreal** feel.

perspective: what someone thinks about something

World Series: the championship games in American baseball

taking place: happening

cut out: no longer was able to be seen

rundown: information

weed through: to look or dig through

I'll tell you what: that is for sure

a dime a dozen: very common
surreal: unreal



Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

Hello, welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation titled “Earthquakes.” Let’s get started with the story.

* * * * *

Luke lives in San Francisco.

Luke can eat fifty eggs in one hour. Luke told his friend George. George thought this seemed far-fetched. He thought that Luke was pulling his leg.

“You’ve gotta be kidding,” he said to Luke.

So Luke bet George \$100 that he can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

Luke ate fifteen eggs in the first ten minutes then all of a sudden the ground started to shake. There was an earthquake due east of San Francisco. Luke was not surprised because earthquakes are a dime a dozen in San Francisco.

“When you live in San Francisco, it’s a given that you will feel an earthquake,” said Luke.

“Totally,” said George.

Then Luke ate the rest of the eggs in twenty-two minutes so George had to give him \$100.

* * * * *

Okay, so that’s our story. Now I will start at the beginning of the story and as I read the story I will ask questions and as always, please answer the questions out loud. If you need a little more time then you can pause your iPod or your mp3 player and take as much time as you need to answer the questions. Of course, if you just feel like listening to the questions and not answering them, that’s fine as well.

Okay, so here we go.

* * * * *

Luke lives in San Francisco.

Does Luke live in San Francisco?

Yes, *he does. Luke lives in San Francisco.*



Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

Who lives in San Francisco?

Luke. Luke lives in San Francisco.

Does Larry or Luke live in San Francisco?

Luke does. Luke lives in San Francisco.

Does Larry live in San Francisco?

No, Larry doesn't live in San Francisco.

Where does Luke live?

San Francisco. Luke lives in San Francisco.

Does Luke live in New York or San Francisco?

San Francisco. He lives in San Francisco.

Does Luke live in New York?

No, Luke doesn't live in New York.

Does Luke live in San Francisco?

Yes, yes, that's correct. Luke lives in San Francisco.

Luke can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

Can Luke eat fifty eggs in one hour?

Yes, he can. I mean that sounds like a lot of eggs but he can do it. He can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

What can Luke do?

Well, he can eat fifty eggs in one hour.



Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

Can Luke eat fifty eggs in one hour or read a book in one week?

He can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

Can Luke read a book in one week?

No, no, Luke's not reading a book in one week.

Who can eat fifty eggs in one hour?

Luke. Luke can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

Can Luke's brother Stanley eat fifty eggs in one hour?

No, no, Stanley.

Can Luke eat fifty eggs in one hour?

Yes, he can. Luke can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

What can Luke eat in one hour? Can he eat fifty eggs or two pieces of bread?

Fifty eggs, he can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

How many eggs can Luke eat in one hour?

Well, he can eat fifty. He can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

Can he eat fifty or sixty eggs in one hour?

Fifty, he can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

How much time does it take Luke to eat fifty eggs?

Well, it takes him one hour. He can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

Can Luke eat fifty eggs in one hour or ten minutes?

One hour. He can eat fifty eggs in one hour.



Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

Can Luke eat fifty eggs in one hour?

Yes, he can. Luke can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

Luke told his friend George.

Did Luke tell his friend George?

He certainly did. Luke told his friend George.

What did Luke do?

That's right, he told his friend George.

Did Luke eat some eggs or tell his friend George?

He told his friend George.

Who told his friend George? Did Luke's brother Stanley tell George?

No, it wasn't Stanley.

Did Luke tell George?

Yes, he did. Luke told George.

Who did Luke tell? Did he tell his mother?

No, he didn't tell his mother.

Did he tell George?

Yes, yes, that's correct. He told George.

What did Luke tell George? Did he tell him the score of the football game?

No, that's not what he told him.

Did he tell him that he can eat fifty eggs in one hour?

Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

He certainly did, that's what he told him.

Did Luke tell George that he can eat fifty eggs in one hour?

Yes, he did. That's what he told his friend George.

George thought this seemed far-fetched.

Did George think this seemed far-fetched?

Yes, he did. George thought this seemed far-fetched.

What did George think? Did he think that it was going to rain?

No, George didn't think that it was going to rain.

Did he think that it seemed far-fetched?

Yes, yes, he did. He thought it seemed far-fetched.

Did he think that it seemed believable?

No, he didn't think that it seemed believable. Far-fetched does not mean believable.

Did he think that it seemed unbelievable?

Yes, yes, he did. George thought that this seemed far-fetched, which is the same thing as saying that he thought that it seemed unbelievable.

What did George think was far-fetched? Did he think that Luke being able to eat fifty eggs in one hour was far-fetched?

Yes, yes, that's correct. That's what he thought was far-fetched or unbelievable.

Did George think that Luke could eat fifty eggs in one hour?

No, he didn't. He thought that it seemed far-fetched or unbelievable.



Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

Who thought that it seemed far-fetched? Did Luke think that it seemed far-fetched?

No, Luke didn't think that it seemed far-fetched.

Did George think that it seemed far-fetched?

Yes, yes, he did. George thought this seemed far-fetched.

Did George think that it seemed unbelievable?

Yes, he did. He thought it seemed far-fetched or he thought it seemed unbelievable. Far-fetched means unbelievable.

He thought that Luke was pulling his leg,

Did he think that Luke was pulling his leg?

Yes, he did. He thought that Luke was pulling his leg.

What did he think Luke was doing?

Pulling his leg, he thought that Luke was pulling his leg.

Did he think that Luke was pulling his leg or biting his hand?

Pulling his leg, he thought that Luke was pulling his leg.

Did he think that Luke was pulling his leg?

Yes, he did. He thought that Luke was pulling his leg.

Did he think that Luke was making a joke by lying to him and pretending that the lie was true?

Yes, yes, he did. When someone is said to be pulling your leg, that person is making a joke by lying to you and pretending that the lie was true. So that's what he thought Luke was doing.

Who thought that Luke was pulling his leg? Did George or Leo think that Luke was pulling his leg?

George. George thought that Luke was pulling his leg.



Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

Did George think that Luke was pulling his leg?

Yes, he did, he thought that Luke was pulling his leg.

Who did he think was pulling his leg? Did he think that Luke's mother was pulling his leg?

No, he didn't think Luke's mother was doing it.

Did he think that Luke was pulling his leg?

Yes, Luke, he thought Luke was pulling his leg.

Did George think that Luke was making a joke by lying to him and pretending that the lie was true?

Yes, he did. He thought that Luke was making a joke by lying to him and pretending that the lie was true, which is the same as saying he thought that Luke was pulling his leg.

“You’ve gotta be kidding,” he said to Luke.

Did he tell Luke that he’s gotta be kidding?

Yes, yes, that’s exactly what he said. He said to Luke “You’ve gotta be kidding.”

Did he tell Luke that he cannot be serious?

Yes, yes, he did. He said, “You’ve gotta be kidding,” which is the same thing as saying you cannot be serious.

Who told Luke he’s gotta be kidding? Did Stanley tell him?

No, it wasn’t Stanley.

Did George tell Luke he’s gotta be kidding?

Yes, that’s correct. George told Luke he’s gotta be kidding.

Did George tell Luke that he cannot be serious?



Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did. Remember you've got to be kidding is the same thing as saying you can't be serious.

Why does George think that Luke has gotta be kidding?

Well, he does not think that George can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

Does George think that Luke can eat fifty eggs in one hour?

No, no, he doesn't. He said to him "You've gotta be kidding," which means he did not think that what Luke said was true. And Luke had told him that he can eat fifty eggs in one hour. And then that's when George said, "You've gotta be kidding."

So Luke bet George \$100 that he can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

Did Luke bet George \$100 that he can eat fifty eggs in one hour?

Yes, he did. Luke bet George \$100 that he can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

Okay, so what did Luke do?

Well, he bet George \$100 that he can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

Who bet George \$100? Did Luke or Stanley bet George?

Luke did. Luke bet George.

Did Stanley bet George?

No, Stanley didn't bet George.

Did Luke bet George?

Yes, he did. Luke bet George, he bet him \$100.

How much money did Luke bet George?

One hundred dollars, he bet him \$100.

Did Luke bet George \$500?



Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

No, he didn't bet him that much money.

Did Luke bet George \$100?

Yes, that's correct. He bet him \$100.

Who did Luke bet? Did Luke bet George or Stanley?

Well, he bet George. He made a \$100 bet with George.

What did Luke bet George? Did he bet him that he can bake a cake?

No, he didn't bet him that he can bake a cake.

Did Luke bet him that he can eat fifty eggs in one hour?

Yes, he did. That's what he bet him. He bet him that he can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

How many eggs does Luke have to eat to win the bet? Does he have to eat fifty eggs or one hundred eggs?

Fifty eggs, he has to eat fifty eggs in order to win the bet.

How much time does Luke have to eat the fifty eggs? Does he have one hour or one day to eat the eggs?

Well, he has one hour to eat the eggs.

If Luke eats twenty eggs in one hour, does he win the bet?

No, he doesn't. He has to eat fifty eggs in one hour in order to win the bet.

If Luke eats twenty eggs in one hour, does George win the bet?

Yes, he does. If Luke eats twenty eggs in one hour, that means that Luke loses the bet and George wins the bet.

Luke ate fifteen eggs in the first ten minutes

Did Luke eat fifteen eggs in the first ten minutes?

Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did. He ate fifteen eggs in the first ten minutes.

What did Luke do in the first ten minutes?

Well, he ate fifteen eggs.

Did Luke eat ten pieces of bread or fifteen eggs?

Fifteen eggs, he ate fifteen eggs.

Did Luke eat ten pieces of bread?

No, he didn't eat any bread.

Did Luke eat fifteen eggs?

Yes, he did. He ate fifteen eggs.

Who ate fifteen eggs in the first ten minutes?

Luke did. Luke ate fifteen eggs in the first ten minutes.

Did George or Luke eat fifteen eggs in the first ten minutes?

Luke did. Luke ate fifteen eggs in the first ten minutes.

Did Will Smith eat fifteen eggs in the first ten minutes?

No, it wasn't Will Smith.

Did Luke eat fifteen eggs in the first ten minutes?

Yes, that's correct. Luke ate fifteen eggs in the first ten minutes.

How much time did it take Luke to eat fifteen eggs? Did it take him thirty minutes?

No, it didn't take him that long.

Did it take Luke ten minutes to eat fifteen eggs?

Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, that's correct. It took him ten minutes. Luke ate fifteen eggs in the first ten minutes.

then all of a sudden the ground started to shake.

Did the ground start to shake all of a sudden?

Yes, yes, it did. All of a sudden the ground started to shake.

What happened?

Well, the ground started to shake all of a sudden.

Did the ground start to shake or a tree start to fall?

The ground started to shake.

Did a tree start to fall?

No, a tree didn't start to fall.

Did the ground start to shake all of a sudden?

Yes, that's correct. The ground started to shake all of a sudden.

Did the ground start to shake right away?

Well, yes, it did, because it started to shake all of a sudden.

Did the ground start to shake without any warning?

Yes, yes, it did. It started to shake all of a sudden, which is the same as saying it started to shake right away and without any warning.

Did the ground start to shake all of a sudden?

Yes, yes, it did. All of a sudden the ground started to shake.

Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

There was an earthquake due east of San Francisco.

Was there an earthquake due east of San Francisco?

Yes, there was. There was an earthquake due east of San Francisco.

What was there? Was there an earthquake or a rainstorm?

An earthquake, there was an earthquake.

Where was the earthquake?

Due east of San Francisco, the earthquake was due east of San Francisco.

Was the earthquake east of San Francisco?

Well, yes, yes, it was. It was due east of San Francisco which is the same thing as saying it was east of San Francisco.

Was there an earthquake due east of San Francisco?

Yes, there was. There was an earthquake due east of San Francisco.

Luke was not surprised

So was Luke surprised?

No, he wasn't. He was not surprised.

Who was not surprised? Was Will Smith not surprised?

No, we're not talking about Will Smith here.

Was Luke not surprised?

Yes, that's correct. Luke was not surprised.

What was Luke not surprised about? Was he not surprised that gas prices increased?

Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

No, that's not it.

Was he not surprised that there was an earthquake?

Yes, that's correct. He was not surprised. He was not surprised that there was an earthquake.

because earthquakes are a dime a dozen in San Francisco.

Are earthquakes a dime a dozen in San Francisco?

Yes, they are. Earthquakes are a dime a dozen in San Francisco.

Okay, so what are a dime a dozen in San Francisco? Are red cars or earthquakes a dime a dozen in San Francisco?

Earthquakes are. Earthquakes are a dime a dozen in San Francisco.

Are red cars a dime a dozen in San Francisco?

No, not red cars.

Are earthquakes a dime a dozen in San Francisco?

Yes, they are. Earthquakes are a dime a dozen in San Francisco.

Are earthquakes very common in San Francisco?

Yes, that's correct. Earthquakes are a dime a dozen in San Francisco, which is the same thing as saying earthquakes are very common in San Francisco. A dime a dozen means very common.

Why was Luke not surprised? Was he not surprised because earthquakes are a dime a dozen in San Francisco?

Yes, yes, that's true. He was not surprised because earthquakes are a dime a dozen in San Francisco.

Was Luke not surprised because earthquakes are very common in San Francisco?

Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, that's true, that's why. Luke knew that earthquakes are a dime a dozen in San Francisco so he wasn't surprised when he felt an earthquake, because he knows earthquakes are a dime a dozen or that earthquakes are very common in San Francisco.

“When you live in San Francisco, it’s a given that you will feel an earthquake,” said Luke.

Is it a given that you will feel an earthquake when you live in San Francisco?

Yes, *it is, that's what Luke has said.*

Is it doubtful that you will feel an earthquake when you live in San Francisco?

No, it's not doubtful, it's a given and when something is a given that means that there is no doubt about it.

Is there any doubt that you will feel an earthquake when you live in San Francisco?

No, there isn't. There is no doubt, it's a given. It's a given means that there is no doubt.

Is it a given that you will feel an earthquake if you live in New York?

No, not New York, we're talking about San Francisco.

Is it a given that you will feel an earthquake if you live in San Francisco?

Yes, that's correct. It's a given that you will feel an earthquake when you live in San Francisco.

What is a given when you live in San Francisco? Is seeing a red car or feeling an earthquake a given when you live in San Francisco?

Well, feeling an earthquake is. It's a given that you will feel an earthquake when you live in San Francisco.

Does Luke believe that you will feel an earthquake if you live in San Francisco?

Yes, he does. He said it's a given that you will feel an earthquake.

Does Luke have any doubt that you will feel an earthquake when you live in San Francisco?

No, he has no doubt. He says it's a given that you will feel an earthquake.

Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

“Totally,” said George.

Does George think that what Luke said is true?

Yes, yes, he does. George said, “Totally,” which means definitely, so he was agreeing with what Luke said.

Does George agree with what Luke said?

Yes, he did. He said, “Totally,” which means definitely, I definitely think what you said is true is what he meant.

Does George think that it is a given that you will feel an earthquake when you live in San Francisco?

Yes, yes, he did. He definitely agrees with Luke and Luke said that it’s a given that you will feel an earthquake when you live in San Francisco so that means George also thinks that.

Then Luke ate the rest of the eggs in twenty-two minutes

Did Luke eat the rest of the eggs in twenty-two minutes?

Yes, he did, that’s what he did. Luke ate the rest of the eggs in twenty-two minutes.

So what did Luke do?

He ate the rest of the eggs in twenty-two minutes.

Did Luke eat the rest of the eggs or watch the football game?

He ate the rest of the eggs.

Did Luke watch the football game?

No, he didn’t watch the football game.

Did Luke eat the rest of the eggs?

He certainly did. He ate the rest of the eggs.



Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

Who ate the rest of the eggs?

Luke did. Luke ate the rest of the eggs.

Did George eat the rest of the eggs?

No, George didn't eat the rest of the eggs?

How much time did it take Luke to eat the rest of the eggs?

Twenty-two minutes. Luke ate the rest of the eggs in twenty-two minutes.

Did it take him fifteen minutes or twenty-two minutes?

Twenty-two minutes. It took him twenty-two minutes to eat the rest of the eggs.

so George had to give him \$100.

Did George have to give him \$100?

He certainly did. George had to give him \$100.

What did George have to do?

Well, he had to give him \$100.

Did George have to eat fifty eggs or give him \$100?

Give him \$100. He had to give him \$100.

Who did George have to give \$100 to?

Luke, he had to give \$100 to Luke.

Did George have to give \$100 to Bill Clinton or Luke?

Luke, he had to give \$100 to Luke.

Did Luke have to give \$100 to George?

Earthquakes Mini-Story Lesson

No, he didn't have to give him \$100. George had to give Luke \$100.

How much money did George have to give to him?

One hundred dollars, he had to give him \$100.

Did he have to give him \$100 or \$700?

One hundred dollars.

Why did George have to give him \$100?

Well, he had to give him \$100 because Luke ate all fifty of the eggs in less than one hour.

Did George lose the bet?

Yes, yes, he did. George lost the bet because Luke ate all fifty of the eggs in less than one hour.

Did Luke win the bet?

Yes, he did. Luke won the bet because he ate all fifty eggs in less than one hour.

* * * * *

Okay, that brings us to the end of our story which means we have come to the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation "Earthquakes." Now it's your turn to tell the story by yourself. Remember you do not have to memorize every word in the story but you should use the idioms that we went over. The idioms that we used were "far-fetched," "pulling his leg," "you've got to be kidding," "all of a sudden," "due east," "a dime a dozen," "it's a given," and "totally." Okay, so now tell the story on your own and remember, if you need to listen to this lesson more times, you can do that.

Okay, thanks a lot and we'll see you next time.



Earthquakes POV Lesson

Hello and welcome to the point of view stories for “Earthquakes”. I’m going to tell the same story from the “Earthquakes” mini-story lesson in a number of different ways. Each time I tell the story I’ll change the time in which the story is being told or I will change the person who is telling the story. So we’ll hear it from a different point of view. Let’s start by telling the story as if it is happening right now, or as we say, in the present. Okay.

* * * * *

Luke lives in San Francisco.

Luke can eat fifty eggs in one hour. Luke tells his friend George. George thinks this seems far-fetched. He thinks that Luke is pulling his leg.

“You’ve gotta be kidding,” he says to Luke.

So Luke bets George \$100 that he can eat fifty eggs in one hour.

Luke eats fifteen eggs in the first ten minutes then all of a sudden the ground starts to shake. There is an earthquake due east of San Francisco. Luke is not surprised because earthquakes are a dime a dozen in San Francisco.

“When you live in San Francisco, it’s a given that you will feel an earthquake,” Luke says.

“Totally,” George says.

Then Luke eats the rest of the eggs in twenty-two minutes so George has to give him \$100.

* * * * *

Okay, so that ends the story being told as if it is happening right now. Next let’s hear the story as if it happened seven months ago.

* * * * *

Seven months ago Luke lived in San Francisco.

Luke could eat fifty eggs in one hour. Luke told his friend George. George thought this seemed far-fetched. He thought that Luke was pulling his leg.

“You’ve gotta be kidding,” he said to Luke.



Earthquakes POV Lesson

So Luke bet George \$100 that he could eat fifty eggs in one hour.

Luke ate fifteen eggs in the first fifteen minutes then all of a sudden the ground started to shake. There was an earthquake due east of San Francisco. Luke was not surprised because earthquakes are a dime a dozen in San Francisco.

“When you live in San Francisco, it’s a given that you will feel an earthquake,” said Luke.

“Totally,” said George.

Then Luke ate the rest of the eggs in twenty-two minutes so George had to give him \$100.

* * * * *

Okay, so that is the story as if it's happening in the past or it's already happened. Now let's tell the story as if it is happening in the future. So we think of the story happening, say, four years from now. Okay, here we go.

* * * * *

In four years Luke's going to be living in San Francisco.

Luke will be able to eat fifty eggs in one hour. Luke's gonna tell his friend George. George'll think this seems far-fetched. He'll think that Luke is pulling his leg.

“You've gotta be kidding,” he'll say to Luke.

So Luke's gonna bet George \$100 that he'll be able to eat fifty eggs in one hour.

Luke's gonna eat fifteen eggs in the first ten minutes then all of a sudden the ground will start to shake. There is going to be an earthquake due east of San Francisco. Luke'll not be surprised because earthquakes are a dime a dozen in San Francisco.

“When you live in San Francisco, it’s a given that you will feel an earthquake,” Luke will say.

“Totally,” George'll say.

Then Luke will eat the rest of the eggs in twenty-two minutes so George'll have to give him \$100.

Earthquakes POV Lesson

* * * * *

Okay so that's the end of this version of the story, the version in which the story is in the future, where we talk about events that are going to happen or events that will happen. Now, I'd like you to notice that instead of saying something like, "George will think." we shorten it in normal conversation by saying, "George'll think". Basically we combine the words "George" and "will" into "George'll." This is more like how we would say it using spoken English. But, say, in a text book you would be more likely to say / to see "George will" instead of seeing "George'll". You also probably noticed that when we convert the word "can" into the future we usually say "is able to". For example, "Luke can eat fifty eggs. " is changed to, "Luke will be able to eat fifty eggs."

Alright now let's hear the story from Luke's point of view. So this is the story that's gonna be told by Luke. Okay, here we go.

* * * * *

I used to live in San Francisco.

I could eat fifty eggs in one hour. I told my friend George. George thought that this seemed far-fetched. He thought that I was pulling his leg.

"You've gotta be kidding," he said to me.

So I bet George \$100 that I could eat fifty eggs in one hour.

I ate fifteen eggs in the first ten minutes then all of a sudden the ground started to shake. There was an earthquake due east of San Francisco. I wasn't surprised because earthquakes are a dime a dozen in San Francisco.

"When you live in San Francisco, it's a given that you will feel an earthquake," I said.

"Totally," said George.

Then I ate the rest of the eggs in twenty-two minutes so George had to give me \$100.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's our last story. Now, please listen to each version again and then after you listen to a version, try to tell the story to yourself. If you can't do it, it's okay. Just relax, go back, listen to it again and then make another attempt to tell yourself the story. Remember, you can listen to this every day until you feel



Earthquakes POV Lesson

comfortable. Okay, that's all for our point of view stories for "Earthquakes". We'll see ya next time.



Earthquakes Vocabulary Lesson

Hi. Welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Earthquakes.” In this conversation Joe and I are talking about different earthquakes that we’ve both experienced.

So let’s start with the conversation.

* * * * *

Joe starts off by saying, “Hey...”

Now, hey.... This is just a filler word. It really has no meaning here except for Joe trying to get my attention.

Joe goes on to say, “check this out.”

Check this out. Check this out means listen to this. Check this out. An example of check this out would be: Scott said, “Check this out. I got two free tickets to the Rolling Stones concert.” Check this out.

And Joe goes on to say, “Y’know what Eric asked me when I got into work this morning?”

Y’know. This is short for you know. You won’t see this in written English but you will hear it in conversational English. Y’know.

And then I say, “I have no idea, what’d he ask?”

I have no idea, or have no idea. It means do not know. I do not know. For example: I have no idea how I’m going to make time each day to exercise. Have no idea.

And then Joe says, “He asked me if I felt the earthquake last night.”

Earthquake. This is when the ground shakes from natural causes.

And then I say, “Earthquake? You’ve gotta be kidding, I didn’t feel an earthquake.

You’ve gotta be kidding. Now gotta is short for got to. You’ve got to be kidding. This is something else you’ll hear in conversational English but you won’t see it in written English. You’ve gotta be kidding. What this means is you cannot be serious. You’ve gotta be kidding. For example: When I told my mother that I had won \$2 million, she said, “You’ve gotta be kidding.”

And then Joe says, “I know, that’s what I said. He told me it actually woke him up last night.”

Actually here is just really filler. It has no meaning. It’s not even needed in this sentence.



Earthquakes Vocabulary Lesson

And then Joe goes on to say, “Y’know...” And then I say, “What?” And Joe says, “yeah...”

Yeah is casual or informal for yes.

And Joe goes on to say, “it was like...”

Like is just filler here. It also has no meaning. It’s not even needed in this sentence.

And Joe says, “it went, it happened at like, uh...”

Uh. This is filler as well. It has no meaning.

And he goes on to say, “4:42 in the morning. So we must’ve been sleeping. But I mean...”

I mean. This is filler so it also has no meaning. It’s not needed in this sentence.

And Joe goes on to say, “it’s possible that, y’know, even if we had been awake we might not have felt it because, y’know, maybe it, uh, wasn’t felt, y’know, this far north. But, uh, I, I mean I thought he was pullin’ my leg when he first talked about it.”

Pullin’ my leg. First of all, *pullin’* is short for *pulling*. So you won’t see *pullin’* in written English but you would hear it more in conversational English. *Pullin’ my leg*. Now this means making a joke by lying to someone and pretending the lie is true. *Pullin’ my leg*. For example: When Chris said that he won \$200,000 in Las Vegas, I thought he was *pullin’ my leg*. *Pullin’ my leg*.

And then I go on to say, “Well...”

Well is just filler. It’s a filler word. It doesn’t have any meaning.

And then I say, “I guess it’s not so far-fetched...”

Far-fetched. This means unbelievable. *Far-fetched*. For example: When Chris said that he won \$200,000 in Las Vegas, I thought it sounded *far-fetched*. *Far-fetched*.

And I go on to say, “considering...”

Considering meaning since.

“we live on a major fault line here.”

Earthquakes Vocabulary Lesson

Major fault line. A fault line is an area where a lot of earthquakes happen.

Then Joe says, “Yeah, but actually I think this earthquake was, uh, on a different fault line, um, because, y’know, Eric lives, uh, just, uh, south of San Jose...”

Now when I say um, you’ll hear um in a lot of conversations. But it’s not something that you would ever see in written English. But you’ll hear um, uh, a lot in conversations. San Jose. This is a city south of San Francisco.

And then I go on to say, “Yeah.” And then Joe says, “and, uh, the earthquake he said was due east of San Jose...”

Due east. This is exactly east of someplace. Due east. For example: Sacramento is a city that is due east of San Francisco. Due east.

And Joe goes on to say, “so he was obviously...”

Or he was definitely.

“a lot closer to the epicenter than we were.”

Epicenter. This is the middle of an earthquake. Epicenter. An example of epicenter would be: The epicenter of the earthquake was Los Angeles. So there was a lot of damage in that city. Epicenter.

And Joe goes on to say, “So, I d-, I’m not even sure it was felt here.” And I say, “Yeah, that makes sense. Well, y’know, I’ve experienced quite a few earthquakes in the past several years but I’ve been living here a little over two years...”

Or a little more than two years.

And I say, “I’ve, I think I’ve only experienced one here. It was really strange, too, I was, um, each, I should say each earthquake has been a completely different experience. But the one I, the one I felt here, I was standing outside a restaurant talking to AJ and another friend and all of a sudden it just felt like...”

All of a sudden. This is right away with no warning. All of a sudden. For example: I was driving my car when all of a sudden someone hit me. It happened so fast. All of a sudden.

So I say, “all of a sudden it just felt like this shift.”

Earthquakes Vocabulary Lesson

Or change.

“It’s really hard to explain, but it made me think of, like, a cartoon...”

A cartoon is just animation.

And I go on to say, “like how, in the cartoon, like buildings might just shift to the right and then shift right back.” And Joe says, “Yeah, without falling.” And I say, “Yeah, without falling. And I, I had no idea what was going on for a few minutes afterwards. And then I realized...”

Or I understood.

“oh that must have been an earthquake.” And Joe says, “Yeah, you know what I usually notice...”

Or he’s saying what I normally see.

“the times that I’ve been at home, here...” And I say, “Yeah.” And Joe says, “and, uh, there’s been an earthquake. It’s almost as if there’s this really big train, or like a gigantic Mack truck going by.”

Gigantic means very big or large. And Mack truck... This is just a kind of truck.

And Joe goes on to say, “And, uh, suddenly...”

Or right away.

“I start to hear the heater shaking. And, um, it’s like, the noise is like, uh, is loud for like a second...”

A second is a short time. 60 seconds makes one minute so it’s a very short time.

And Joe says, “and then it’s gone, so...” And then I say, “That’s so...” And Joe says, “it’s really weird...”

Weird, or strange.

He goes on to say, “y’know, it’s almost like the first couple’a times I felt it...”

Couple’a. This is short for couple of. So you won’t see this in written English but you’ll hear it in conversational English. Couple’a. Couple meaning two.

Earthquakes Vocabulary Lesson

So Joe's saying, "the first couple'a times I felt it, I wasn't even aware it was an earthquake while it was happening."

So he's saying, I wasn't even aware. I didn't even know it was an earthquake while it was happening.

And then I say, "Well, that's so funny..."

Now when I say that's so funny, I'm not saying it's really funny. I'm saying this because something Joe said was the same experience that I had. And that experience being not knowing there was an earthquake while it was happening. He experienced that and I experienced it. So I'm saying wow, that's so funny. Like that's so funny we both experienced this.

And I go on to say, "that's so funny you say that because one that I experienced in Bangkok, it actually was after the tsunami..."

And I'm talking about the tsunami that hit Thailand, Indonesia, Sri Lanka, southeast India in December 2004.

And I go on to say, "and so later I found out that it was..."

So. Here this is a filler word. It has no meaning.

And I say, "it was, um, aftershock from the tsunami."

Aftershock. This is an earthquake that happens right after another earthquake. Aftershock. An example of aftershock would be: When I felt the aftershock of the earthquake, I ran outside. Aftershock.

And I go on to say, "But anyway, I was in a building up on the ninth floor and suddenly, uh, there was all this rattling."

Rattling is a kind of noise.

And I go on to say, "And I'm thinking to myself, it, it just, it, it was so irrational."

Irrational. I'm saying, it wasn't clear.

And I go on to say, "I'm thinking to myself, god..."

God is just showing emotion like I don't believe. I don't believe I'm hearing this.

And I say, "there's like a train going by and I can't believe that this building is shaking so much from

Earthquakes Vocabulary Lesson

the train.” And I laugh, “It... And of course a train wouldn’t have made a building, or at least me up on the ninth floor, feel something to that effect.”

Or feel something that much.

And I go on to say, “And I think it happened about two times. And it... That one wasn’t until several...”

Several or many.

“several days later when I was talking to people and they were like, oh didja feel the earthquake?”

Didja. This is something you will hear in conversational English. It’s short for did you. You won’t see that in written English though.

And I go on to say, “Then it dawned on me, oh, that was an earthquake. It was...”

It dawned on me. This means I remembered or I realized. It dawned on me.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, I know. It’s, uh, it’s crazy...”

Or he’s saying it’s unbelievable.

“how when you’re not used to feeling them you can think it’s something else.” And I say, “Yeah, yeah totally.”

Totally here means definitely. For example: Sonia said that she totally felt the earthquake last night. Totally.

And then Joe says, “I mean, I’ve been livin’ here for a while now...”

Livin’. This is short for living. Again, you won’t see livin’ in written English but you’ll hear it in conversational English. So he says, I’ve been livin’ here for a while now. A while means a long time. A while. An example of a while is: I have been an English teacher for a while. A while.

And Joe goes on to say, “and I’ve definitely felt my share of earthquakes.”

So he is saying I definitely felt a lot of earthquakes.

And Joe says, “I mean, y’know, when you live here it’s a given...”

Earthquakes Vocabulary Lesson

It's a given. This means there is no doubt. It's a given. For example, when you walk or live in downtown New York, it's a given that you will hear a lot of noise. It's a given.

So he goes on to say, "it's a given that you're gonna experience earthquakes."

Gonna. This is short for going to. You'll hear gonna in conversations but you won't see it in written English.

And then Joe goes on to say, "You just hope that you're not gonna be here for the big one, y'know..."

The big one. What he's talking about is, you hope that you're not gonna be here, or around, for a really big earthquake that might hurt or kill a lot of people.

And then I laugh and say, "Yeah, right."

So I'm saying, yeah, I know. Or I'm just agreeing with Joe.

And Joe says, "When I first moved here, it was, uh, about five years after the Loma Prieta earthquake..."

Loma Prieta. This is the name of a mountain, where this earthquake he's talking about that happened five years before he moved to San Francisco... The Loma Prieta mountain was at the epicenter or the middle of the earthquake.

So he says, "about five years after the Loma Prieta earthquake, which was a very big earthquake here. And, um, there are a lot of people who lived here who I met who had actually been living in the area when the earthquake hit."

Or when the earthquake happened.

"So it was interesting to get their perspective..."

Perspective. What Joe is saying here is what someone thinks about something. Perspective. An example of perspective is: I like to speak with my mother when I have a problem. She always has a different perspective than me. Perspective.

And then I say, "Oh."

Oh, here is really just filler. It has no meaning. I didn't even have to say that but I just say it. Oh.

And then Joe says, "and, uh, it also like made me remember where I was when I heard about the



Earthquakes Vocabulary Lesson

Loma Prieta earthquake. I was watching the World Series on TV.”

World Series. This is the championship games in American baseball. World Series. For example: Joe really likes baseball. One year he went to the World Series even though the tickets were expensive. World Series.

And Joe goes on to say, “And, uh, y’know, it was, uh, taking place in San Francisco.”

Taking place. This means happening. Happening in San Francisco. Taking place. For example: I remember the Winter Olympics taking place in Japan when I was younger. Taking place.

And then Joe says, “So, uh, as I’m watching it suddenly the announcer starts, uh, uh, saying, ‘Wow...”

Announcer. This is a person who talks throughout a sports game about what’s happening. Wow. This is just showing emotion such as, I don’t believe it.

And Joe goes on to say, “I think we’re feeling an earthquake here.’ And the cameras started shaking.”

The TV cameras.

And Joe goes on to say, “And, uh, all of a sudden the TV coverage...”

The TV coverage of the game.

“cut out.”

Now, cut out... Here cut out means no longer was able to be seen. The TV coverage of the game cut out. It was no longer able to be seen. For example: The television station cut out during the big rain storm. Cut out.

And then Joe says, “So, uh, y’know, I wanted to get a rundown on what happened.”

Rundown. This is information. He wanted to get information on what happened. Rundown. An example of rundown would be: I called my mother to get a rundown on how my father was doing. Rundown.

And Joe goes on to say, “So I turned to the news station...”

Or I changed to the news station.

“and, uh, within a few minutes...”

Earthquakes Vocabulary Lesson

Few meaning three or more.

“they were discussing...”

Discussing or talking.

“they were discussing this gigantic earthquake that had hit San Francisco. And they started showing pictures, uh, maybe thirty minutes later, of these people who were, uh, trying to weed through the rubble of these buildings that had been, like, coming down.”

Weed through. This means to look or dig through. Weed through. An example of weed through is: I had to weed through a lot of papers when I did my yearly income taxes for the government. Weed through. So he's saying there were people trying to weed through the rubble of these buildings. Rubble means parts. The parts of these buildings that had been like coming down or falling down.

And Joe says, “so, I mean, it was...” And I say, “Oh, wow.” And Joe says, “it was pretty scary...”

Pretty means very here.

And Joe says, “I'll tell you what...”

I'll tell you what. That means that is for sure. I'll tell you what. An example of I'll tell you what in this situation would be: I'll tell you what, I really enjoyed the Thai food we had today. I'll tell you what.

And I say, “Yeah.” And Joe says, “y'know.” And then I say, “Yeah, well, um, you know the three months I was living in Japan I experienced two. Both of those were very different, uh, very different from the one I'd experienced here and also very different from the one in Bangkok. But one of ‘em...”

'Em is just short for them. This is something that you'll hear in conversational English but not see it in written English.

So I say, "But one of 'em, I was actually up in my apartment which was on the fifth floor of a building. And I was woken up at about 5 o'clock in the morning to the building swaying."

Swaying means moving from one side to the other side.

And I go on to say, “And because, uh, earthquakes are like a dime a dozen in Japan...”

A dime a dozen. This means very common. A dime a dozen. An example of a dime a dozen would be: /



Earthquakes Vocabulary Lesson

remember when no one had a cell phone. But today they are a dime a dozen. A dime a dozen.

And then I say, “they, they’ve built a lot of their buildings to absorb the shock.”

So what I’m saying here... To absorb the shock means the buildings take the shaking from an earthquake much easier. They make their buildings to take the shaking from the earthquake easier. Absorb the shock.

And then I say, “So that’s why it was swaying, it was really, it was a very surreal feel.”

Surreal. This means unreal. Surreal. For example: I looked at the sky and it was purple. It looked surreal.

* * * * *

Okay, so that is the end of the conversation and this is the end of the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Earthquakes.” So if you need to, go back and listen to this until you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary. And when you feel ready, go to the mini-story.

Alright, bye bye. See you next time.



Trip To Washington Conversation

Joe: Hello?

Eric: Hey, Joe, this is Eric.

Joe: Oh hey Eric, how's it goin'?

Eric: It's goin' well. How 'bout yourself?

Joe: Yeah, I'm doin' really well.

Eric: Great.

Joe: How was your trip up to Washington this weekend?

over the top: very good

Eric: Oh, it was just **over the top**.

Joe: Nice, nice. I...

Eric: Yeah, it was...

Joe: ...really wish I could have joined you guys.

Eric: Yeah, well, you should really try next year.

on my list of things to do: something that I want to do

Joe: Yeah, no, it's, it's definitely **on my list of things to do**, for sure.

Eric: Good.

Joe: Yeah, how was, did you, did you make it up there, uh, as you expected? I mean how was your, how was your trip up there?

fed up: upset

Eric: Oh man, I am just **fed up** with the airlines.

Joe: [laugh]

Eric: [laugh]

Joe: **What's new?**

what's new?: means that you are not surprised

if it's not one thing, it's another: more than one bad thing has happened

Eric: **If it's not one thing, it's another.** I mean we, we got up there and, uh, and the

Trip To Washington Conversation

flight was delayed. And it was really crowded. And then gettin' out we just, you wait. And we waited and we waited and we waited for the luggage. And just, the wait just got **out of hand**.

out of hand: out of control

Joe: Ugh...je-, y'know, we, I, y'know, I have not had a good experience with the airlines here domestically in probably about a year I would say.

Eric: Oh, I mean, it's just...

Joe: At least.

Eric: It's getting worse and worse and worse.

rain on your parade: to make someone have a bad time

Joe: Yeah. Well I hope that, that, that didn't **rain on your parade** and...

Eric: No.

Joe: ...that you actually were able to have a good time after you got up there.

Eric: Oh, I mean it, they, it's just so wonderful to be up there with those guys. It's, they're like family.

Joe: You gotta tell me a little bit about it 'cause you know I've never been there.

had (just) a blast: to really enjoy

Eric: Yeah, it, it's such a beautiful place. They've got a bunch of cabins on the water, um.... It's, y'know, bein' with friends and family all the time. And, uh, my kid **had just a blast** just bein' out on the water and, um, just enjoyin' himself. It was really his first time being able to, uh, be in a boat and realize that he's on the water and not on the land. And, and it's, at, at that age it's, it's just such a new exp-, everything's such a new experience. He just...

Joe: Yeah.

Eric: ...it was wonderful.

jumpy: uneasy

Joe: So, how did he, uh, how did he handle the water? Was he like, uh, was he **jumpy** or was he, was he pretty calm while he was out there? 'Cause I know...

Eric: He's, he's pretty calm. I mean, he's a, he's a water, a water baby of sorts...

Trip To Washington Conversation

Joe: [laugh]

getting the first butterflies out of his stomach: getting used to something for the first time

time of his life: a really good time

psyched: excited

to get the hang of: to become better at

innate: something you do not need to learn because you are born with it

Eric: ...he just loves the water. He just loves to be in it. Up there the water's really cold so, it's not, we didn't really get him in the water. And he had a little bit of problems with the life jacket. The life jacket was a little, little tight on him. And that just made him a little uncomfortable. But, he's, after **getting the first butterflies out of his stomach** he just loved it. You could tell, he just was having **the time of his life**.

Joe: Oh, that's great. He must have been **psyched** to see, uh, Derek's kids also, and Mark's new baby.

Eric: Oh absolutely, at this age, he, they do a lot of, of parallel play. And, because he's not old enough yet to, to play with, he kind of plays alongside. But he's just starting **to get the hang of** playing with and interacting with. And he just, he loves to be in packs of kids. It's just he really has a great time.

Joe: Yeah, it's like **innate** [laugh], y'know.

Eric: Yeah, it really is. It's fun to watch him learn. He's at this age of language explosion and certainly being around other kids really helps.

Joe: Oh, definitely. So you guys, uh, you went out on Mark's boat so that must have been fun.

Eric: It was.

Joe: So, uh, what else did you guys do while you were there?

Eric: Well, y'know, on the whole boat thing.... We, uh, did some crabbing where we caught some crabs. And, uh, used the boat as sort of a shuttle to get from island to island. So we did a little bit of island hopping, with picnicking on some islands, uh.... We cooked some great meals, sort of, um, with the whole group of us together....

Joe: Oh, that's great.

Eric: ...yeah, and some people got some massages, just tried to **chill out** and relax, uh.... And it was just really **low key**. A really restful trip, which is what I think about when I think about Mark and their place up there.

chill out : to relax

low key: relaxing

to let go: to relax

Joe: Yeah, it sounds like you were really able **to let go**, huh?

Trip To Washington Conversation

Eric: It was, it was a longer trip for me than I've taken in the last couple of years, goin' up there, we went for five, five or six days, and...

Joe: Oh, I didn't realize you were goin' that long.

Eric: Yeah, normally I'm just up there for a long weekend...

Joe: Sure.

Eric: ...but this time I thought, y'know, I haven't taken a vacation in a while. And I just wanna get up there and chill out.

Joe: Oh, that's great.

Eric: Yeah.

if for no other reason: if nothing else made you do something

tickled pink: very happy

hang out: to casually pass time

time (just really) flies: to be surprised about how much time has gone by

take advantage of: to be fortunate to be able to do something

all of a sudden: right away

jet up: to go somewhere (specifically north)

make my best effort: to try very hard

Joe: Y'know, I understand that John's living up there now as well and, uh, **if for no other reason** I should go up and visit everybody, y'know, while he's there.

Eric: Absolutely. He, uh, he's, he's not living on their property anymore, uh.... He's moved just to, y'know, really close by on the mainland off of Bellingham. So he's in the area still. And he would just be **tickled pink** to see you and to **hang out** with you. I know he would, so...

Joe: Yeah, I mean, uh, it's amazing how, y'know, uh, you can let so much time pass. And, uh, you don't even realize it's happened when it comes to visiting with friends who live far out of town.

Eric: That's right...

Joe: Especially ones that are really close to you.

Eric: Yeah, and the oldest of friends, it's, uh, it.... **Time just really flies** and before you know it, it's just been a long time since you've seen somebody. So when you get that time it's just wonderful to **take advantage of** it. And certainly John being **all of a sudden** on the West Coast, it's great to be able to, to just **jet up** to Washington and, and see him, fairly easily.

Joe: Yeah. Yeah, I told him next year I'd, I'm going to **make my best effort** to get up

Trip To Washington Conversation

there.

Eric: I hope, I really really hope you do.

time's (kind of) escaped me: I did not realize how late it had become

Joe: Hey, uh, y'know Eric, **time's kind of escaped me** tonight. I'm supposed to meet Kristin for dinner in a little bit. So, uh, y'know, I'd love for us to continue this conversation, uh, y'know, maybe tomorrow or somethin', if you're, if you're available.

Eric: Hey, that'd be great.

Joe: Okay. Alright, listen, I'll call you then.

take care: good bye, it was nice talking with you

Eric: Alright, **take care** my friend.

Joe: Alright, bye.

Eric: Bye.



Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

Hello. Welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Trip To Washington.”

Let's get started with the story.

* * * * *

Tom Cruise's house has roaches. There are so many that it is out of hand.

He is now fed up. So he decides to go to Hawaii for one month. His Aunt Susanna lives in Hawaii and Hawaii is really low key.

After he gets to Hawaii, he drives to his aunt's house. He is psyched to see her and she is tickled pink to see him.

On the first day he goes to the beach. He decides to learn how to surf. At first he cannot stand up on the surfboard but soon he gets the hang of it.

Tom Cruise goes to the beach every day. He does not think about the roaches at his house. He is able to completely let go.

After four weeks pass by, he realized that time flies when he is relaxing.

* * * * *

Okay, so that is our story. Now, as always, I will go back to the beginning of the story and I will read the story and I will ask questions while I read the story. Please answer the questions out loud if you wish. If you need a little more time then you can pause your player and then answer the question when you feel like you've had enough time. Or if you just want to sit back and listen to the questions without answering, that's fine, too.

Okay, so here we go.

* * * * *

Tom Cruise's house has roaches.

Does Tom Cruise's house have roaches?

Yes, yes, *it does*. *Tom Cruise's house has roaches*.

Does Will Smith's house or Tom Cruise's house have roaches?



Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

Tom Cruise. Tom Cruise's house has roaches.

Does Will Smith's house have roaches?

No, Will Smith's house doesn't have roaches.

Does Tom Cruise's house have roaches?

Yes, yes, that's correct. Tom Cruise's house has roaches.

Whose house has roaches?

Tom Cruise's. Tom Cruise's house has roaches.

What does Tom Cruise's house have? Does it have cats or roaches?

It has roaches.

Does Tom Cruise's house have cats?

No, not cats.

Does Tom Cruise's house have roaches?

Yes, yes, it does. Tom Cruise's house has roaches.

There are so many that it is out of hand.

Is it out of hand because there are so many roaches?

Yes, yes, that's why it's out of hand. There are so many roaches that it is out of hand.

Is it out of control because there are so many roaches?

Yes, yes, that's true also. If something is out of hand, that means it is out of control, so it is out of control.

Are there a lot of roaches at Tom Cruise's house?

Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, there are. It says there are so many that it is out of control so there must be a lot of roaches at Tom Cruise's house.

Why is it out of hand? Is it because there are too many cats or too many roaches at his house?

Well, it's not because there are too many cats. It is certainly because there are too many roaches. There are so many that it is out of hand.

He is now fed up.

Is he now fed up?

Yes, yes, he is. He is fed up.

Okay, so what is he? Is he hungry?

No, he's not hungry.

Is he fed up?

Yes, yes, he is. He is fed up.

Is he happy?

No, no, he's not happy. He has roaches in his house, he's fed up.

Is he upset?

Yes, yes, he is. He's upset or he's fed up. To be fed up means to be upset.

Who is fed up now?

Well, Tom Cruise. Tom Cruise is fed up now.

Was he fed up yesterday?

No, he is fed up now.

Is he fed up now?



Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *he is fed up now.*

So he decides to go to Hawaii for one month.

Does he decide to go to Hawaii for one month?

Yes, he does. He decides to go to Hawaii for one month.

Okay, so what does he decide to do?

Go to Hawaii, he decides to go to Hawaii for one month.

Does he decide to eat the roaches or go to Hawaii for one month?

To go to Hawaii for one month, that's what he decided to do.

Does he decide to eat the roaches?

Eat the roaches, no, I don't think Tom Cruise will be eating the roaches. He did not decide to eat the roaches.

Does he decide to go to Hawaii for one month?

Yes, that's exactly what he did. He decides to go to Hawaii for one month.

Okay, so who decides to go to Hawaii for one month?

Tom Cruise, that's who decided. Tom Cruise decided to go to Hawaii for one month.

Does Will Smith or Tom Cruise decide to go to Hawaii?

Tom Cruise. Tom Cruise decides to go to Hawaii.

How long will he go to Hawaii?

Well, he will go for one month.

Will he go to Hawaii for seven days or one month?



Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

One month. He will go to Hawaii for one month.

Does he decide to go to Hawaii for one month?

Yes, yes, he does. He decides to go to Hawaii for one month.

His Aunt Susanna lives in Hawaii

Does his aunt live in Hawaii?

Yes, she does. His aunt lives in Hawaii.

Who lives in Hawaii?

Well, Tom Cruise's Aunt Susanna lives in Hawaii.

Does his Aunt Peggy live in Hawaii?

No, no, it's not his Aunt Peggy.

Does his Aunt Susanna live in Hawaii?

Yes, yes, she does. His Aunt Susanna lives in Hawaii.

Is his aunt's name Susanna or Sandra?

Well, it's Susanna. His Aunt Susanna.

Where does his Aunt Susanna live? Does she live in California or Hawaii?

Hawaii, she lives in Hawaii.

Does his aunt live in California?

No, no, she doesn't live in California.

Does his aunt live in Hawaii?



Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, that's correct. His aunt lives in Hawaii.

and Hawaii is really low key.

Is Hawaii really low key?

Yes, it is. Hawaii is really low key.

Is Hawaii only a little low key?

No, Hawaii is really low key.

Is Hawaii very low key?

Yes, yes, that's correct. It is really low key or it is very low key.

Is Hawaii very relaxing?

Yes, it is. It is really low key which is the same as saying it is very relaxing.

Okay, so what is really low key? Is California or Hawaii really low key?

Hawaii. Hawaii is really low key.

Is California really low key?

No, that's not what the story reads. In the story it says Hawaii is really low key, not California.

Is Hawaii really low key?

Yes, yes, it is. Hawaii is really low key.

After he gets to Hawaii, he drives to his aunt's house.

Does he drive to his aunt's house after he gets to Hawaii?

Yes, yes, he does. After he gets to Hawaii, he drives to his aunt's house.



Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

What does he do after he gets to Hawaii?

He drives to his aunt's house.

Does Tom Cruise or Will Smith drive to his aunt's house?

Tom Cruise does. Tom Cruise drives to his aunt's house.

How does he get to his aunt's house?

Well, he drives there. He drives to his aunt's house.

Does he ride a motorcycle? Or does he drive?

He drives. He drives to his aunt's house.

Does he ride a motorcycle?

No, he doesn't ride a motorcycle.

Where does he go?

Well, first he went to Hawaii but then after he arrives in Hawaii, he drives to his aunt's house.

Where does he drive to?

He drives to his aunt's house.

Does he drive to his mother's house?

No, he doesn't drive to his mother's house.

Does he drive to his aunt's house before getting to Hawaii?

No, he doesn't drive to his aunt's house before he gets to Hawaii.

Does he drive to his aunt's house after getting to Hawaii?

Yes, that's correct, that's when he drove to his aunt's house. He drove to his aunt's house after getting to Hawaii.



Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

He is psyched to see her

Is he psyched to see her?

Yes, yes, he is. He is psyched to see her.

Who is psyched to see her?

Well, Tom Cruise. Tom Cruise is psyched to see her.

Who is he psyched to see?

His aunt. His Aunt Susanna.

Is he psyched to see his brother Peter?

No, he's not psyched to see his brother Peter.

Is he psyched to see his Aunt Penelope?

No, not his Aunt Penelope.

Is he psyched to see his Aunt Susanna?

Yes, that's correct, it's his Aunt Susanna. He's psyched to see his Aunt Susanna.

Is he excited to see his Aunt Susanna?

Well, yes, he is. To be psyched means to be excited so if he is psyched to see her, that means he is excited to see her. So Tom Cruise is excited to see his Aunt Susanna.

and she is tickled pink to see him.

Is she tickled pink to see him?

Yes, yes, she is. She is tickled pink to see him.



Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

Okay, so who is tickled pink to see him?

Well, his Aunt Susanna. His Aunt Susanna is tickled pink to see him.

Who is she tickled pink to see?

Tom Cruise. She is tickled pink to see Tom Cruise.

Is she tickled pink to see Tom Cruise's wife?

No, not Tom Cruise's wife.

Is she tickled pink to see Tom Cruise?

Yes, that's correct. She is tickled pink to see Tom Cruise.

Is she unhappy to see him?

No, no, not unhappy. Tickled pink does not mean unhappy.

Is she very happy to see him?

Yes, yes, that's correct. She is tickled pink to see him which is the same thing as saying she is very happy to see him.

Is she tickled pink to see him?

Yes, yes, she is. His Aunt Susanna is tickled pink to see him.

On the first day he goes to the beach.

Does he go to the beach on the first day?

Yes, he does. That's what he does on the first day, he goes to the beach.

What does he do?

Well, he goes to the beach.



Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

Does he bake a cake or go to the beach?

He goes to the beach.

Does Tom Cruise go to the beach or does his Aunt Susanna go to the beach?

Tom Cruise does. Tom Cruise goes to the beach.

Does Tom Cruise's Aunt Susanna go to the beach?

No, his Aunt Susanna does not go to the beach.

Where does he go?

He goes to the beach.

Does he go to the pool or to the beach?

The beach, he goes to the beach.

Does he go to the lake?

No, not the lake.

Does he go to the beach?

Yes, yes, he does. He goes to the beach.

When does he go to the beach? Does he go to the beach on the fifth day he is in Hawaii?

No, not the fifth day. He doesn't wait that long.

Does he go to the beach on the first day?

Yes, he does. On the first day he goes to the beach.

He decides to learn how to surf.

Does he decide to learn how to surf?

Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *he does, that's what he does. He decides to learn how to surf.*

What does he decide to do?

He decides to learn how to surf.

Does he decide to eat a hamburger?

No, that's not what he decided to do.

Does he decide to learn how to surf?

Yes, that's correct. He decides to learn how to surf.

Does he already know how to surf?

No, he doesn't already know how to surf, because he decides to learn how to surf. This means that he does not know how to surf already.

Okay, so who decides to learn how to surf? Does Tom Cruise or his Aunt Susanna decide?

Tom Cruise. Tom Cruise decides to learn how to surf.

What does he decide to learn how to do?

To surf, he decides to learn how to surf.

Does he decide to learn how to drive a car?

No, that's not what he decides to learn how to do.

Does he decide to learn how to surf?

Yes, that's exactly what he decided to do. He decides to learn how to surf.

At first he cannot stand up on the surfboard

Can he stand up on the surfboard at first?



Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

No, he cannot stand up on the surfboard at first.

When he first learns how to surf, is he able to stand up on the surfboard?

No, no, he is not able to stand up on the surfboard at first. He cannot stand up on the surfboard at first.

What is he unable to do?

Well, at first he is unable to stand up on the surfboard.

Who cannot stand up on the surfboard?

Tom Cruise, that's who. Tom Cruise cannot stand up on the surfboard at first.

Can Tom Cruise's aunt stand up on a surfboard?

No, not his aunt.

Can Tom Cruise stand up on the roof of his house?

No, not the roof of his house.

Can Tom Cruise stand up on the surfboard?

Not at first he can't, he cannot stand up on the surfboard at first.

but soon he gets the hang of it.

Does he get the hang of it?

Yes, yes, he does. He gets the hang of it.

Does he become better at it?

Yes, yes, that's true. To say he gets the hang of it is the same as saying he becomes better at it.

What does he get the hang of?

Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

Standing up on the surfboard because at first he was unable to stand up on the surfboard but soon he gets the hang of it.

Does he get the hang of driving his car?

No, not driving his car.

Does he get the hang of standing up on the surfboard?

Yes, yes, he does. He gets the hang of it. He gets the hang of standing up on his surfboard.

Does he get the hang of it two years later?

No, not two years later.

Does he get the hang of it soon?

Yes, that's true. Soon he gets the hang of it.

Can he stand up on the surfboard after he practices?

Yes, yes, he gets the hang of it because he continues to try to surf or he practices surfing. He practices standing up on the surfboard and soon he gets the hang of it.

Tom Cruise goes to the beach every day.

Does Tom Cruise go to the beach every day?

Yes, yes, he does. He goes to the beach every day.

What does Tom Cruise do every day?

Well, he goes to the beach.

Does he cook dinner or go to the beach every day?

He goes to the beach. He goes to the beach every day.

Does he cook dinner every day?

Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

No, no, he doesn't cook dinner every day.

Does he go to the beach every day?

Yes, that's true. He goes to the beach every day.

Does Tom Cruise's Aunt Susanna go to the beach every day?

No, it's not his Aunt Susanna who goes to the beach every day.

Does Tom Cruise go to the beach every day?

Yes, yes, he does. Tom Cruise goes to the beach every day.

Okay, so where does he go every day?

The beach, he goes to the beach every day.

Does he go to the lake or the beach?

The beach, he goes to the beach.

Does Tom Cruise go to the beach only on Mondays?

No, he doesn't just go on Mondays.

Does Tom Cruise go to the beach every other day?

No, he doesn't go every other day.

Does Tom Cruise go to the beach every day?

Yes, that's correct. Tom Cruise goes to the beach every day.

He does not think about the roaches at his house.

So does he think about the roaches at his house?

Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

No, he doesn't. He does not think about the roaches at his house.

Are the roaches at Susanna's house?

No, they're not at his Aunt Susanna's house.

Are the roaches at Tom Cruise's house?

Yes, they are. The roaches are at his house.

Who doesn't think about the roaches? Tom Cruise or Tom Cruise's Aunt Susanna?

Well, Tom Cruise does not think about the roaches at his house.

Does Tom Cruise think about surfing?

Well, maybe he does, but what we know is he does not think about the roaches at his house. He might think about surfing.

Does he think about the roaches at his house?

No, he does not. He does not think about the roaches at his house.

He is able to completely let go.

Is he able to completely let go?

Yes, he is. He is able to completely let go.

What is he able to do?

To completely let go. He is able to completely let go.

Is he able to buy a car or completely let go?

Well, he is able to completely let go.

Is he able to let go just a little bit?

Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

No, he is able to let go more than that.

Is he able to let go a lot?

Yes, yes, he is. He is able to let go a lot.

Is he able to completely relax?

Yes, he is. He is able to completely let go which is the same as saying he is able to completely relax.

Is Tom Cruise or Tom Cruise's aunt able to completely let go?

Tom Cruise is, Tom Cruise is able to completely let go.

Is Tom Cruise able to completely let go?

Yes, he is. He is able to completely let go.

After four weeks pass by, he realized that time flies when he is relaxing.

Does he realize that time flies when he is relaxing?

Yes, yes, he does. He realizes that time flies when he is relaxing.

Is he surprised how quickly time goes by when he is relaxing?

Yes, yes, he does. He realizes that time flies when he is relaxing so that is the same as saying he is surprised how quickly time goes by when he is relaxing.

Is he surprised that he has already been in Hawaii for four weeks?

Well, yes, you could say that. He realizes that time flies so that's the same as saying he's surprised that he has already been in Hawaii as long as he has which has been four weeks time.

How much time passed by? Did one year or four weeks pass by?

Four weeks passed by. After four weeks pass by, he realizes that time flies when he is relaxing.

Did five weeks pass by?

Trip To Washington Mini-Story Lesson

No, five weeks didn't pass by.

Did four weeks pass by?

Yes, yes, that is correct. Four weeks passed by.

Who realizes that time flies? Does Susanna realize that time flies?

No, no, it's not Susanna.

Does Tom Cruise realize that time flies?

Yes, that's who realizes it. Tom Cruise realizes that time flies.

When does time fly? Does it fly when he is in an airplane or does it fly when he is relaxing?

It flies when he is relaxing. Time flies when he is relaxing.

Does Tom Cruise realize that time flies when he is relaxing?

Yes, he realizes that time flies when he is relaxing.

* * * * *

Okay, so that brings us to the end of our story. So that means that we have finished the mini-story lesson for the conversation "Trip To Washington." Now please tell this story all by yourself. Remember you do not have to memorize every word but you do need to use the idioms that we discussed in the lesson. Those idioms are "out of hand," "fed up," "low key," "psyched," "tickled pink," "gets the hang of," "to let go," and "time flies." So now tell the story on your own and remember that you can listen to this lesson as many times as you need to.

Okay, thank you. See you next time.

Trip To Washington POV Lesson

Hi. Welcome to the point of view stories for "Trip To Washington". I'm gonna tell the same story from the "Trip To Washington" mini-story lesson but each time I tell the story I'm gonna change the time in which the story is being told or I'm gonna change the person who is actually telling the story. So let's start by telling the story as if it's happening right now, or in the present as we like to say. Here goes.

* * * * *

Tom Cruise's house has roaches. There are so many that it is out of hand.

He is now fed up. So he decides to go to Hawaii for one month. His Aunt Susanna lives in Hawaii and Hawaii is really low key.

After he gets to Hawaii, he drives to his aunt's house. He's psyched to see her and she's tickled pink to see him.

On the first day he goes to the beach. He decides to learn how to surf. At first he cannot stand up on the surfboard but soon he gets the hang of it.

Tom Cruise goes to the beach every day. He doesn't think about the roaches at his house. He's able to completely let go.

After four weeks pass by, he realizes that time flies when he is relaxing.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's the end of the story being told as if it is happening right now. Next let's hear the story as if it happened last year.

* * * * *

Last year Tom Cruise's house had roaches. There were so many that it was out of hand.

He was now fed up. So he decided to go to Hawaii for one month. His Aunt Susanna lived in Hawaii and Hawaii was really low key.

After he got to Hawaii, he drove to his aunt's house. He was psyched to see her and she was tickled pink to see him.

On the first day he went to the beach. He decided to learn how to surf. At first he could not stand up on the surfboard but soon he got the hang of it.



Trip To Washington POV Lesson

Tom Cruise went to the beach every day. He did not think about the roaches at his house. He was able to completely let go.

After four weeks passed by, he realized that time flies when he is relaxing.

* * * * *

Okay, so that is the story as if it happened in the past; as if it already happened. Now let's hear the story as if it's happening in the future. So we will think of the story happening next year.

* * * * *

Next year Tom Cruise's house will have roaches. There will be so many that it is going to get out of hand.

He's gonna be fed up. So he's going to decide to go to Hawaii for one month. His Aunt Susanna will be living in Hawaii and Hawaii will be really low key.

After getting to Hawaii, he'll drive to his aunt's house. He'll be psyched to see her and she'll be tickled pink to see him.

On the first day he'll go to the beach. He's gonna decide to learn how to surf. At first he won't be able to stand up on the surfboard but soon he'll get the hang of it.

Tom Cruise is gonna go to the beach every day. He will not think about the roaches at his house. He's gonna be able to completely let go.

After four weeks pass by, he'll realize that time flies when he's relaxing.

* * * * *

Okay so that's the end of this version of the story, the version in which the story is in the future, where we talk about events that are going to happen or events that will happen. Notice that instead of saying something like, "He's going to decide" we can shorten it to say, "He's gonna decide" and this is something that you would more commonly see in spoken English. In a text book you'd probably be more likely to see something like, "He's going to decide".

Okay so now let's hear the story from Tom Cruise's point of view. So in this version Tom Cruise is actually telling us the story. Here goes.



Trip To Washington POV Lesson

* * * * *

My house had roaches. There were so many that it was out of hand.

I was fed up. So I decided to go to Hawaii for one month. My Aunt Susanna lived in Hawaii and Hawaii was really low key.

After I got to Hawaii, I drove to my aunt's house. I was psyched to see her and she was tickled pink to see me.

On the first day I went to the beach. I decided to learn how to surf. At first I could not stand up on the surfboard but soon I got the hang of it.

I went to the beach every day. I didn't think about the roaches at my house. I was able to completely let go.

After four weeks passed by, I realized that time flies when I'm relaxing.

* * * * *

Alright so that is the end of the point of view stories for the lesson "Trip To Washington". Now why don't you go back and listen to each version again. And after you listen to one version then try to tell yourself the story. If you're having any difficulty then just relax and try again. You can listen to these stories as many times as you need to. Just make sure that you feel comfortable telling yourself the story on your own. Okay, that's all for now. See ya next time.



Trip To Washington Vocabulary Lesson

Hello and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Trip To Washington.” In this conversation Joe and one of his friends named Eric are talking about a trip that Eric took with his wife and son. Eric and his family visited a friend of his and Joe’s who lives in Washington.

Okay, let’s begin with the conversation.

* * * * *

Joe says, “Hello?” And Eric says, “Hey, Joe, this is Eric.”

Hey, meaning in this situation... It's another way to say hi or hello.

And Joe says, “Oh hey Eric. How’s it goin’?”

Oh, here is just filler. Filler meaning that it's not even needed. There is no meaning for it. And goin' is short for going.

And Eric says, “It’s goin’ well.”

Or he's saying it's going okay. Or it's going good.

“How ‘bout yourself?”

‘Bout is short for about.

And Joe says, “Yeah, I’m doin’ really well.”

Yeah is casual or informal for yes. And doin' is short for doing.

And Eric goes on to say, “Great.” And Joe says, “How was your trip up to Washington this weekend?”

Now Washington is a northwestern state of America. It's on the border with Canada. And weekend just means Saturday and Sunday.

And Eric says, “Oh, it was just over the top.”

Over the top. This means very good. Over the top. For example: Lewis' birthday party was so much fun. It was just over the top.



Trip To Washington Vocabulary Lesson

And Joe says, “Nice, nice.”

Nice meaning, that's good to know that your trip went well. Nice. Nice to hear that.

And then Joe goes on to say, “I...” and Eric says, “Yeah, it was...” And then Joe finishes by saying, “really wish I could have joined you guys.”

Joined, meaning gone with. I wish I could have gone with you guys.

And then Eric says, “Yeah, well, you should really try next year.” And then Joe says, “Yeah, no, it's, it's definitely on my list of things to do, for sure.”

On my list of things to do. This means... or what Joe is saying here is, it's something that I definitely want to do. On my list of things to do. For example: I've always wanted to learn to speak Spanish. It has always been on my list of things to do.

And then Eric says, “Good.” And Joe says, “Yeah, how was, did you, did you make it up there, uh, as you expected?”

Did you make it up there. What Joe is saying is, did you make it up there? Because Washington is north of California, the state that Eric left from. Uh is just a filler. It has no meaning. So it's not even needed there. As you expected. This means did everything go as you thought it would?

And then Joe goes on to say, “I mean how was your, how was your trip up there?”

I mean. This is just filler. It really has no meaning. It's not even needed in this sentence.

And then Eric says, “Oh man...”

So, oh man... This is just showing emotion such as you're not going to believe this.

And Eric goes on to say, “I am just fed up with the airlines.”

Just, here is just filler. It really has no meaning. Fed up. Fed up means upset or angry. Fed up. An example of fed up is: I am fed up with flying. The airlines charge way too much money. Fed up.

And then Joe laughs. And Eric laughs. And Joe says, “What's new?”

And what Joe is saying here is, I'm not surprised. For example of what's new: My father's football team has not won a game all season. When I told him that I thought they were going to lose their next game he said,



Trip To Washington Vocabulary Lesson

"What's new?"

Then Eric goes on to say, "If it's not one thing, it's another..."

If it's not one thing, it's another. This means more than one bad thing has happened. For example: Sherry has had a bad day. First she was late for work. Then after work her car would not start. She called her husband to tell him about her day and said, "If it's not one thing, it's another."

Eric goes on to say, "I mean we, we got up there..."

He's talking about getting to the airport.

"and, uh, and the flight was delayed."

Or the flight was late.

"And it was really crowded."

So he's saying there were a lot of people.

"And then gettin' out we just..."

Gettin'. This is short for getting.

And he goes on to say, "you wait. And we waited and we waited and we waited for the luggage..."

Luggage is... They waited for their bags. The bags that they'd checked.

And Eric goes on to say, "And just, the wait just got out of hand."

Out of hand. This means out of control. Out of hand. For example: The price of plane tickets has gotten out of hand. Out of hand.

And Joe says, "Ugh..."

Now this is just emotion such as, I don't believe all the problems you had.

And then Joe goes on, he starts to say, "je-, y'know, we, I, y'know, I have not had a good experience with the airlines here domestically in probably about a year I would say."



Trip To Washington Vocabulary Lesson

Now, going back... Y'know. This is short for you know. And then when Joe's talking about the airlines here domestically... he's talking about the airlines here that fly just in America. Not internationally, not to other countries, but just here in America. And he says in probably about a year, probably meaning maybe about a year.

And then Eric says, "Oh, I mean, it's just..." And Joe says, "At least."

Meaning one year or more, I have not had a good experience with the airlines. So at least.

And Eric says, "It's getting worse and worse and worse."

So he's saying, it's just getting really bad.

And then Joe says, "Yeah. Well I hope that, that, that didn't rain on your parade and..."

Rain on your parade. This means to make someone have a bad time. Rain on your parade. For example: Jessica's mother said, "I don't mean to rain on your parade but you did not get the job." Rain on your parade.

And then Eric says, "No." And Joe says, "that you actually were able to have a good time after you got up there."

Actually, here... This is just filler. It has no meaning. It's not even needed in the sentence.

And then Eric goes on to say, "Oh, I mean it, they, it's just so wonderful..."

Or he's saying it's so great.

"to be up there with those guys. It's, they're like family."

Guys. Now what he's talking about here, this can mean men and/or women. He's talking about, in this situation, his friends. And when he says they're like family, like here is comparing his friends to being like family.

And then Joe says, "You gotta tell me a little bit about it..."

You gotta. Gotta or you gotta. What Joe is saying is you have got to tell me a little bit about it.

"cause..."

Which is short for because.



Trip To Washington Vocabulary Lesson

"you know I've never been there." And Eric says, "Yeah, it, it's such a beautiful place."

Beautiful meaning very pretty place.

Eric goes on to say, "They've got a bunch of cabins on the water..."

A bunch. This means a lot. And *cabins*, these are small wooden houses that people usually pay money to stay in when they go to a lake, the woods or the mountains.

And Eric goes on to say, "um... It's, y'know, bein' with friends and family all the time."

And when he says um... This is just filler. It has no meaning at all. And bein'... This is short for being.

Eric goes on to say, "And, uh, my kid had just a blast just bein' out on the water..."

So my kid, or he's saying my child, had just a blast. Now, just here is filler. That has no meaning. But had a blast... That means to really enjoy. Had a blast. For example: I had a blast at the concert. I really enjoyed the music. Had a blast.

And then Eric goes on to say, "and, um, just enjoyin' himself."

Enjoyin'. This is short for enjoying.

Then Eric says, "It was really his first time being able to, uh, be in a boat and realize..."

Or understand.

that he's on the water and not on the land. And, and it's, at, at that age it's, it's just such a new exp-, everything's such a new experience. He just..." And Joe says, "Yeah." And Eric says, "it was wonderful." And then Joe says, "So, how did he, uh, how did he handle the water?"

Handle. What Joe is asking here is how did he do on the water. Or how did he do with the water.

And then Joe says, "Was he like, uh, was he jumpy..."

Like here is just filler. It has no meaning. Jumpy. Jumpy means uneasy. Jumpy. For example: Some people are afraid to fly. When the plane takes off, they get jumpy." Jumpy.

And then Joe goes on to say, "or was he, was he pretty calm while he was out there? 'Cause I

Trip To Washington Vocabulary Lesson

know..."

Pretty here means really. Really calm.

**And then Eric says, "He's, he's pretty calm. I mean, he's a, he's a water, a water baby of sorts..."
And Joe laughs.**

What Eric is saying is, he's a water baby of sorts. He likes water.

And then Eric goes on to say, "he just loves the water. He just loves to be in it."

So what he's saying is, he really likes the water a lot.

And Eric goes on to say, "Up there the water's really cold so, it's not, we didn't really get him in the water. And he had a little bit of problems with the life jacket."

A life jacket is something that floats so it keeps people from drowning if they can't swim.

Then Eric says, "The life jacket was a little, little tight on him. And that just made him a little uncomfortable. But, he's, after getting the first butterflies out of his stomach he just loved it."

Getting the first butterflies out of his stomach. This means getting used to something for the first time. Having butterflies in your stomach means to be nervous. Getting the first butterflies out of his stomach.

And then Eric says, "You could tell..."

Or you could see.

"he just was having the time of his life."

Time of his life. This means a really good time. Time of his life. An example of time of his life would be: Kimberly had the time of her life at the party. She was smiling all night. Time of his life. Or, for this example, time of her life.

And then Joe says, "Oh, that's great. He must have been psyched to see, uh, Derek's kids also, and Mark's new baby."

Psyched. Psyched means excited. Psyched. For example: I was psyched to see the new Batman movie. Psyched.

Trip To Washington Vocabulary Lesson

And then Eric says, “Oh absolutely...”

So he’s saying oh definitely or oh for sure.

“at this age, he, they do a lot of, of parallel play. And, because he’s not old enough yet to, to play with, he kind of plays alongside.”

What Eric is saying here is that his son is too young to play with other children so he plays next to them by himself.

And then Eric goes on to say, “But he’s just starting to get the hang of playing with and interacting with.”

To get the hang of. This means to become better at. To get the hang of. An example of to get the hang of would be: It takes a child a while to get the hang of riding a bicycle. To get the hang of. And when Eric says interacting with, what he’s talking about is speaking with.

Then Eric goes on to say, “And he just, he loves to be in packs of kids.”

Packs just means groups.

And Eric says, “It’s just he really has a great time.” And Joe says, “Yeah, it’s like innate.” And he laughs and says, “Y’know.”

Innate. This means something you do not need to learn because you were born with it. Innate.

And Eric says, “Yeah, it really is. It’s fun to watch him learn. He’s at this age of language explosion...”

What Eric is saying here is he’s at this age of learning a lot of new words.

And then Eric says, “and certainly...”

Or definitely.

“being around other kids really helps.” And then Joe says, “Oh, definitely. So you guys, uh, you went out on Mark’s boat. So that must have been fun.” And Eric says, “Oh, it was.” And Joe says, “So, uh, what else did you guys do while you were there?”

When he says what else, he’s saying, what other things did you guys do while you were there?



Trip To Washington Vocabulary Lesson

And then Eric says, “Well, y’know, on the whole boat thing...”

So what he’s saying is speaking of going out on a boat.

And Eric continues to say, “We, uh, did some crabbing...”

Crabbing, meaning trying to catch crabs.

And then Eric says, “where we caught some crabs.”

Crabs live in the ocean. Many people like to eat crabs because they have soft white meat.

And Eric says, “And, uh, used the boat as sort of a shuttle...”

Sort of means a type of. And shuttle is just something that takes people somewhere and brings them back.

So Eric continues to say, “to get from island to island. So we did a little bit...”

Or a small amount.

“of island hopping...”

Island hopping just means that they went around to different islands.

Then Eric says, “with picnicking on some islands...”

Picnicking is just cooking and eating outside.

And Eric says, “uh... We cooked some great meals, sort of, um, with the whole group of us together...”

So what he’s saying is the whole group. All of them. Everyone together.

And Joe says, “Oh, that’s great.” And Eric says, “yeah, and some people got some massages...”

A massage helps people relax. It’s something... they pay money for someone to rub their back, legs and arms.

And Eric goes on to say, “just tried to chill out and relax...”

Trip To Washington Vocabulary Lesson

Chill out. This means to relax. *Chill out.* For example: I like to go to the beach to *chill out*. It is very relaxing. *Chill out.*

And then Eric says, “uh... And it was just really low key.”

Low key. This means relaxing also. *Low key.* For example: I like Sunday night to be *low key* because I work early Monday morning. *Low key.*

And then Eric says, “A really restful trip, which is what I think about when I think about Mark and their place up there.” And then Joe says, “Yeah, it sounds like you were really able to let go, huh?”

To let go. This means to relax. *To let go.* For example: When I go to Hawaii it is easy to *let go*. *To let go.* Now when Joe says *huh...* He's saying, do you agree?

And then Eric says, “It was, it was a longer trip for me than I've taken in the last couple of years...”

So he's saying *in about the last two years.*

“goin' up there...”

Goin'. This is short for *going*.

And then Eric says, “we went for five, five or six days, and...” And Joe says, “Oh, I didn't realize you were *goin'* that long.” And Eric says, “Yeah, normally...”

Or usually.

“I'm just up there for a long weekend...” And Joe says, “Sure.” And Eric says, “but this time I thought, y'know, I haven't taken a vacation in a while.”

Vacation is time off from work or from school to go and do something. *And a while...* This means a long time.

And Eric says, “And I just wanna get up there and chill out.”

Wanna. This is short for *want to*.

And Joe says, “Oh, that's great.” And Eric says, “Yeah.” And Joe says, “Y'know, I understand that John's living up there now as well and, uh, if for no other reason I should go up and visit

Trip To Washington Vocabulary Lesson

everybody..."

Or I should go up and see everybody.

"y'know, while he's there."

If for no other reason. This means if nothing else made you do something. If for no other reason.

And then Eric says, "Absolutely. He, uh, he's, he's not living on their property anymore..."

Property just means land. Land that their friends own.

And Eric says, "uh... He's moved just to, y'know, really close by on the mainland off of Bellingham."

Mainland. This is the main part of land. So it's the opposite of island. And Bellingham... This is a town in the state of Washington.

And Eric says, "So he's in the area still. And he would just be tickled pink to see you..."

Tickled pink. This means very happy. Tickled pink. For example: My mom was tickled pink with the birthday present we gave her. She really liked it. Tickled pink.

And Eric says, "and to hang out with you. I know he would, so..."

Hang out. This means to casually pass time. Hang out. For example: I like to hang out with my friends. Hang out.

Then Joe says, "Yeah, I mean, uh, it's amazing..."

Or it's unbelievable.

"how, y'know, uh, you can let so much time pass."

Or you can let so much time go by.

"And, uh, you don't even realize it's happened when it comes to visiting with friends who live far out of town."

And what Joe is saying here... Far out of town means far away from him here in San Francisco.



Trip To Washington Vocabulary Lesson

And Eric says, “That’s right...”

He’s saying that’s correct.

And Joe says, “Especially...”

Or most importantly.

“ones that are really close to you.” And Eric says, “Yeah, and the oldest of friends, it’s, uh, it... Time just really flies...”

Now what this means... Time just really flies or time flies, means to be surprised about how much time has gone by. Time flies. For example: Time flies when you are having fun. Time flies. Now in this sentence... Time just really flies... Just is filler. It doesn’t really have a meaning. And really means... That’s filler, too. It doesn’t really have a meaning.

And then Eric goes on to say, “and before you know it, it’s just been a long time since you’ve seen somebody. So when you get that time it’s just wonderful to take advantage of it.”

Take advantage of. This means to be fortunate to be able to do something. Take advantage of. For example: I like to take advantage of the days that I do not work by going to the beach. Take advantage of.

And Eric says, “And certainly John being all of a sudden on the West Coast...”

All of a sudden means right away. All of a sudden. For example: The price of gasoline went up all of a sudden. And West Coast. When Eric says West Coast, he’s talking about the states on the most western side of America, next to the Pacific Ocean. So those states would be California, Oregon and Washington.

And Eric goes on to say, “it’s great to be able to, to just jet up to Washington and, and see him, fairly easily.”

Fairly here is just filler. It really has no meaning. Jet up. To just jet up to Washington. Jet up means to go somewhere, specifically north. Jet up.

And Joe says, “Yeah. Yeah, I told him next year I’d, I’m going to make my best effort to get up there.”

Make my best effort. This means to try very hard. Make my best effort. For example: I make my best effort to visit my parents at least one time each year. Make my best effort.

And then Eric says, “I hope, I really really hope you do.” And Joe says, “Hey, uh, y’know Eric, time’s

Trip To Washington Vocabulary Lesson

kind of escaped me tonight.”

Time's kind of escaped me. Kind of here means sort of. Time's sort of escaped me. What this means in general is, I did not realize how late it had become. Time's escaped me. For example: I wanted to go see the movie at 7:00 p.m. but time escaped me. Now the movie is over. Time's escaped me.

And Joe goes on to say, “I'm supposed to meet Kristin for dinner in a little bit. So, uh, y'know, I'd love for us to continue this conversation...”

Or what he's saying is I'd love to have this conversation again.

And then Joe says, “uh, y'know, maybe tomorrow or somethin'...”

Somethin' is short for something.

And then Joe says, “if you're, if you're available.”

Or, if you have time.

And Eric says, “Hey, that'd be great.” And Joe says, “Okay. Alright, listen, I'll call you then.”

Alright, this also means okay.

And Eric says, “Alright, take care my friend.”

Take care. This means... In this situation, it means goodbye. It was nice talking with you. Take care.

And Joe says, “Alright, bye.” And then Eric ends the conversation by saying, “Bye.”

* * * * *

Alright, this is the end of the vocabulary lesson for “Trip To Washington.” Now if you need to, go back and listen to this one, two, maybe three more times. Make sure that you stay relaxed, you don't get stressed or worried. You want to have an understanding of the vocabulary before going to the mini-story. So when you feel ready, then go to the mini-story.

And I will see you next time. Goodbye.

The Wedding Conversation

Joe: Hey, Will, how's it goin'?

Will: Hey, what's goin' on? Not a lot.

Joe: Man, I don't, you know what, now that I see you right here, I don't think I've seen you in probably like six weeks.

Will: Yeah.

Joe: **Where you been hidin'?**

Will: I don't know, **long time no see** though.

Joe: [laugh] Yeah.

Will: How, how have you been?

Joe: Yeah, I'm doin' really well. I, I don't th-...you know what, I haven't seen you since your wedding.

Will: I know. I know, I want to, uh, I want to tell you all about it. I can't believe **you didn't make it**.

Joe: Yeah, you know what, I told you the only reason I didn't make it is because my uncle was getting married back east. So, y'know, I was gone the entire week. But I was **super bummed** about it.

Will: Well you missed a good one.

Joe: Yeah, yeah, I know. I mean I was bummed that I couldn't be there with all our friends. And, y'know, I'd never had a chance to meet Isabelle's family. So, y'know, I'm really bummed that I missed that, too.

Will: Yeah, yeah, it was really nice having everybody out here from Spain.

Joe: Yeah.

Will: And, we had a good time.

Joe: How long had you, how long were you and Isabelle together before you guys

The Wedding Conversation

got married?

Will: Two years.

Joe: Wow, oh my god, **time flies**.

Will: Yeah.

Joe: I remember that, y'know, when she first, uh, answered the ad you had for a roommate, so...

Will: [laugh]

the golden rule: the most important thing about something

Joe: ...you guys broke **the golden rule**, y'know, as far as roommates go, which is don't **sleep with** your roommates when they move in.

Will: That's right.

Joe: [laugh] But **it's all worked out**.

Will: **It was worth it.** It was worth it this time.

Joe: Yeah, it's all worked out. So I'm glad to see that, y'know.

Will: Absolutely.

Joe: Yeah. So, uh, y'know, you'll have to give me some details on, y'know, I, I haven't seen any of the pictures or anything, I don't, maybe you didn't get them back yet from the photographer.

Will: Well I can't wait to, uh, show you the pictures, of course, but, uh, yeah, do you have a second? I'll tell you about the wedding.

Joe: Yeah, yeah, totally. I wanna hear about it.

Will: Alright, well, we had kind of a, uh, **do-it-yourself** wedding. We, um, got married at, uh, **City Hall** which was easy. And then we had our real ceremony at **Stern Grove**. You know where that is?

Joe: Oh yeah, yeah, yeah, right on 19th.

The Wedding Conversation

Will: Here in San Francisco.

Joe: Yeah.

Will: Underneath the redwood trees.

Joe: Oh, it must have been beautiful.

Will: It was very nice.

Joe: *Did the weather cooperate?*

Will: Actually we, uh, had a really beautiful day which is very unusual for summertime in, uh, San Francisco.

Joe: Yeah.

Will: As you well know.

Joe: Totally.

Will: We were planning on fog but we had really nice weather.

made it in: arrived
Joe: Oh that's great. So everyone **made it in** okay? Because I know that, uh, her family had a long way to come.

Will: Yeah. They, uh, they all made it. Her mom and dad, uh, their friend, uh, her brother and sister, of course, and, uh, her best friend from Spain came to represent all her, all her friends... We're gonna go there, uh, soon and we're gonna see her, uh, family and friends, y'know, th-, who couldn't make it. But it was nice to have a group of her family and friends here in San Francisco for the wedding.

Joe: Oh that's great. How, what, where is she from in Spain?

Will: Um, she's from Bilbao.

Joe: Oh yeah, y'know, she told me that before but I can't say that, y'know, I could recall the actual town 'cause I'd never heard of it before.

The Wedding Conversation

Will: Yeah, it's actually a very large city. Uh, it's an industrial city. And it's, uh, got uh, a new museum so it's become more famous. But, uh, it's been there a long time. And it's a big city. But it's not one of the most, um, uh, known cities in Spain perhaps...

Joe: Yeah.

Will: ...like Madrid and Barcelona.

Joe: Yeah.

medieval: time period from long ago

Will: So, uh, yeah. But they were all there and, uh, her brother, uh, read a **medieval** Spanish love poem, uh. And, uh, that was really nice. And, uh, parts of our wedding were in Spanish, uh, for the people, um, you know our friends here who, uh, um, speak Spanish and also, uh, y'know, for her friends and family from Spain, yeah.

Joe: Sure, yeah that's great. I know that you've been trying to learn a lot of Spanish lately.

Will: Yes I have, yes I have...well, y'know, I learned a lot of Spanish when I was in Chili but I'm learning a lot more with her now.

Joe: Oh that's great. Yeah, because the only way you're gonna really, uh, y'know, get more fluent in it is to use it **pretty much** every day.

Will: Absolutely. Yeah.

pretty much: almost

made an honest woman of her: got married to her

Joe: So, uh, I bet her father was happy to see that you **made an honest woman of her**.

Will: [laugh] I guess, I guess so, yeah.

Joe: I would imagine that, uh, maybe her, was her family pretty traditional and **old-fashioned?** Or...

Will: Uh, no actually they're more, um, uh, progressive in a way than, uh, Americans are. Americans actually, it seems, uh, are more **into the church wedding** and everything. We had a, uh, um, we had a very, uh, European wedding. They're not as, uh, religious as people think. Americans are pretty religious.

old-fashioned: ideas or things that are from a long time ago

into the church

wedding: wanted to have a wedding in a church

The Wedding Conversation

Joe: That's true.

Will: Yes. So, uh, they, uh, they loved everything we did and, uh, it was a really good time. Yeah.

Joe: That's great.

I gotta run: I have to go

Will: Yeah, so, uh, *I gotta run.*

get together: meet

Joe: Okay, well, uh, Will let's *get together* for drinks sometime soon, it's been too long.

Will: Sounds good.

Joe: Alright, I'll talk to you soon.

ciao: Italian word for goodbye

Will: Alright, *ciao.*

Joe: Bye.



The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

Hi. Welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “The Wedding.”

Let's get started with the story.

* * * * *

Freddie the fork and Sara the spoon lived together in New York. Freddie and Sara are getting married.

Pretty much all of Sara's friends came to the wedding. But her Aunt Patti didn't make it.

Two days before the wedding, Sara's mother and father flew to New York from London. Their flight made it in on time.

Sara's father is old-fashioned. He did not want Sara to live with Freddie before they got married.

Freddie and Sara did not have a lot of money so they had a do-it-yourself wedding. Freddie and Sara cooked all of the food and Sara's mother made the wedding dress. It was a lot of work but it was worth it.

Freddie and Sara got married at the beach. They were worried it was going to rain but the weather cooperated.

After they got married, Sara's father was happy because Freddie had made an honest woman of her.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's our story. Now I will read the story again and I will ask questions as I'm reading it. If you want you can answer the questions out loud. If you need a little more time to answer the questions then feel free to pause your player and, of course, if you just want to sit back and listen, that's okay also.

Okay, now let's get started.

* * * * *

Freddie the fork and Sara the spoon lived together in New York.

Did Freddie the fork and Sara the spoon live together in New York?

Yes, *they do. They live together in New York.*



The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

What do Freddie the fork and Sara the spoon do? Do they live together in New York or travel in Los Angeles?

They live together in New York.

Did Freddie the fork and Sara the spoon travel in Los Angeles?

No, they didn't travel in Los Angeles.

Do they live together in New York?

Yes, that's correct. They live together in New York.

Who lives together in New York?

Freddie the fork and Sara the spoon, they live together in New York.

Do Brad Pitt and Angelina Jolie live together in New York?

No, not Brad Pitt and Angelina Jolie.

Do Freddie the fork and Sara the spoon live together in New York?

Yes, they do. Freddie the fork and Sara the spoon live together in New York.

What is Freddie? Is he a spoon or a fork?

A fork, Freddie is a fork. Freddie the fork.

What is Sara? Is she a spoon or a fork?

A spoon, Sara the spoon.

Is Sara a fork?

No, Sara is not a fork.

Is Freddie a fork?



The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he is. Freddie is a fork, Freddie the fork.

Where do Freddie the fork and Sara the spoon live? Do they live in New York or Los Angeles?

New York, they live together in New York.

Do Freddie and Sara live together?

Yes, they do. They live together.

Do Freddie the fork and Sara the spoon live together in New York?

Yes, yes, that's correct. Freddie the fork and Sara the spoon live together in New York.

Freddie and Sara are getting married.

Are Freddie and Sara getting married?

Yes, they are, that's what they're doing, they're getting married.

What are Freddie and Sara doing?

Well, they're getting married.

Are they ordering a wedding present for Samantha or getting married?

Getting married, they're getting married.

Are they baking a cake?

No, they're not baking a cake, they're getting married.

Are they getting married?

Yes, yes, they are. Freddie and Sara are getting married.

Who is getting married? Are Brad and Angelina getting married?

No, Brad and Angelina aren't getting married.

The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

Are Freddie and Sara getting married?

Yes, *they are. Freddie and Sara are getting married.*

Pretty much all of Sara's friends came to the wedding.

Did pretty much all of Sara's friends come to the wedding?

Yes, *yes, that's true. Pretty much all of Sara's friends came to the wedding.*

Did only one of Sara's friends come to the wedding?

No, not just one, unless she only has one friend.

Did almost all of Sara's friends come to the wedding?

Yes, *yes, that's correct. Pretty much all of Sara's friends came to the wedding which means almost all of Sara's friends came to the wedding. Pretty much means almost so if you say pretty much it's the same as saying almost.*

What did almost all of Sara's friends do? Did they buy her a camera to take pictures or come to her wedding?

Come to her wedding, pretty much all of her friends came to her wedding.

Who came to the wedding? Pretty much all of Sara's friends, or Freddie's friends?

Pretty much all of Sara's friends, not Freddie's friends.

Where did pretty much all of Sara's friends come? Did they come to the library or the wedding?

The wedding, they came to the wedding.

Did almost all of Sara's friends come to the wedding?

Yes, *that's true. Pretty much all of her friends came to the wedding which is the same as saying almost all of her friends came to the wedding.*



The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

But her Aunt Patti didn't make it.

Did her Aunt Patti make it?

No, no, she did not. Her Aunt Patti did not make it.

Was her Aunt Patti able to make it?

No, she was unable to make it.

Was her Aunt Patti unable to be there?

Yes, yes, that's true. She didn't make it which means that she was unable to be there.

Who didn't make it? Sara's Uncle Pedro or Sara's Aunt Patti?

Well, Sara's Aunt Patti. Sara's Aunt Patti didn't make it.

Was Sara's Aunt Patti able to be there?

No, no, she wasn't. Her Aunt Patti didn't make it so she was unable to be there, she was not able to be there.

Was Sara's Aunt Patti able to be at the wedding?

No, she was not able to make it, she didn't make it. She didn't make it to the wedding.

Two days before the wedding, Sara's mother and father flew to New York from London.

Did Sara's mother and father fly to New York from London two days before the wedding?

Yes, yes, they did. They flew to New York two days before the wedding and they flew from London.

What did Sara's mother and father do? Did they fly to New York or drive to London?

They flew to New York.

Did Sara's mother and father drive to London?



The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

No, they didn't drive to London.

How did Sara's mother and father get to New York? Did they take a train?

No, they didn't take a train.

Did they fly to New York?

Yes, yes, that's correct. They flew to New York.

Who flew to New York two days before the wedding? Did Sara's Aunt Patti fly to New York two days before the wedding?

No, Sara's Aunt Patti definitely did not fly to New York two days before the wedding because she couldn't make it so she did not go to the wedding.

Did Sara's mother fly to New York two days before the wedding?

Yes, yes, she did. She flew to New York two days before the wedding.

Did Sara's father fly to New York two days before the wedding?

Yes, that's true also. Two days before the wedding Sara's mother and father flew to New York from London.

When did Sara's mother and father fly to New York?

Two days before the wedding, they flew to New York two days before the wedding.

Did they fly to New York one week before the wedding or two days before the wedding?

Two days before the wedding, they flew to New York two days before the wedding.

How many days before the wedding did they fly to New York? Was it two days or seven days before the wedding?

It was two days, two days before the wedding Sara's mother and father flew to New York.

Where did they fly from? Did they fly from Paris?

No, they didn't fly from Paris.



The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

Did they fly from London?

Yes, that's correct, they flew from London.

Did Sara's mother and father fly to New York from London two days before the wedding?

Yes, they did. Two days before the wedding Sara's mother and father flew to New York from London.

Their flight made it in on time.

Did their flight make it in on time?

Yes, it did. Their flight made it in on time.

What made it in on time?

Their flight, their flight made it in on time.

Did their flight arrive on time?

Yes, it did. It arrived on time or it made it in on time, these are both the same thing. When you say made it in, you're saying arrived.

Did their boat or their plane arrive on time?

Their plane, they flew to New York from London. They flew on an airplane.

Whose flight arrived on time? Did Sara's flight arrive on time?

No, it wasn't Sara's. Sara lives in New York, she didn't have to fly to New York.

Did Sara's parents' flight arrive on time?

Yes, it did. It was Sara's parents' flight that arrived on time.

Did Sara's parents' flight arrive late?

No, it didn't. It arrived on time which means it did not arrive late and it did not arrive early, it arrived on time.

The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

Sara's father is old-fashioned.

Is Sara's father old-fashioned?

Yes, yes, he is. Sara's father is old-fashioned.

What is Sara's father? Is he old or old-fashioned?

He is old-fashioned. Sara's father is old-fashioned.

Does he have ideas that have not changed in a long time?

Well, yes, he does, that's what old-fashioned means. Old-fashioned means that you have ideas that have not changed in a long time and that you still believe in those ideas and you don't think that they should change. So when we say he is old-fashioned, that is to say that he has ideas that have not changed in a long time.

Does Sara's father like things to change?

No, he doesn't. He's old-fashioned. He likes things to remain the same. He likes things that are old ideas.

Who is old-fashioned? Is Freddie old-fashioned?

No, we're not talking about Freddie being old-fashioned.

Is Sara's father old-fashioned?

Yes, that's correct. Sara's father is old-fashioned.

He did not want Sara to live with Freddie before they got married.

Did he want Sara to live with Freddie before they got married?

No, no he did not. Remember, he's old-fashioned and if you're old-fashioned that probably means if you have a daughter you do not want her to live with her boyfriend before they get married.

What did he want? Did he want Sara to not live with Freddie before they got married?

The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, that's correct. He wanted Sara to not live with Freddie before they got married. He did not want them to live together before they got married.

Who didn't want Sara and Freddie to live together? Did Sara's brother or Sara's father?

Sara's father, Sara's father did not want Sara to live with Freddie before they got married.

When did he not want them to live together?

Well, he did not want them to live together before they got married.

Did he want Sara to live with Freddie before they got married?

No, he did not. Remember, he is old-fashioned.

Freddie and Sara did not have a lot of money

Did Freddie and Sara have a lot of money?

No, they did not. They did not have a lot of money.

What didn't Freddie and Sara have?

A lot of money, they didn't have a lot of money.

Who didn't have a lot of money? Freddie and Sara or Sara's parents?

Freddie and Sara, Freddie and Sara didn't have a lot of money.

Were Freddie and Sara rich?

No, they were not. If they were rich, then they would have a lot of money and they did not have a lot of money.

so they had a do-it-yourself wedding.

Did they have a do-it-yourself wedding?



The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, that's exactly what they did. They had a do-it-yourself wedding.

What did they have? Did they have a baby or did they have a do-it-yourself wedding?

A do-it-yourself wedding, they had a do-it-yourself wedding.

Who had a do-it-yourself wedding? Did Sara's mother and father or Freddie and Sara have a do-it-yourself wedding?

Freddie and Sara did. Freddie and Sara had a do-it-yourself wedding.

What type of wedding did they have?

A do-it-yourself wedding, they had a do-it-yourself wedding.

Did they pay people money to help with their wedding?

No, they didn't. They had a do-it-yourself wedding which means that they did not pay people to help. That's what do-it-yourself means, it means doing it without paying other people to help.

Why did they have a do-it-yourself wedding?

Well, they had a do-it-yourself wedding because they did not have a lot of money.

Freddie and Sara cooked all of the food

Did Freddie and Sara cook all of the food?

Yes, they did. They cooked all of the food.

What did Freddie and Sara do? Did they cut the grass or cook all of the food?

Cooked all of the food, they cooked all of the food.

Who cooked all of the food? Did Sara's mother or Freddie and Sara cook all of the food?

Freddie and Sara did. Freddie and Sara cooked all of the food.

Did Freddie and Sara cook some of the food?

The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

No, they didn't cook just some of the food, they cooked all of the food.

Did Freddie and Sara hire someone to cook the food?

No, they didn't. They had a do-it-yourself wedding. They ended up cooking all of the food.

and Sara's mother made the wedding dress.

Did Sara's mother make the wedding dress?

Yes, she did. Sara's mother made the wedding dress.

What did Sara's mother do?

She made the wedding dress.

Did Sara's mother clean the house or make the wedding dress?

Make the wedding dress, she made the wedding dress.

Did she clean the house?

No, she didn't clean the house.

Did she make the wedding dress?

Yes, she did. She made the wedding dress.

Who did Sara's mother make a wedding dress for? Did she make a dress for Freddie or for Sara?

She made it for Sara. She definitely didn't make it for Freddie. Freddie is not going to wear a dress to the wedding.

It was a lot of work but it was worth it.

Was it a lot of work?

The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, it was. It was a lot of work.

How much work was it? Was it just a little or a lot of work?

A lot of work, it was a lot of work.

Was it worth it?

Yes, it was. It was a lot of work but it was worth it.

Were they glad to have done it?

Yes, yes, they were. It was worth it, which means that they were glad to have done it. If you say something was worth it, then you are saying that you are glad that you did it.

Were Freddie and Sara glad to have cooked the food?

Yes, yes, they were. It was worth it, so they were glad to have done it. They were glad to have cooked the food.

Was Sara's mother glad to have made the wedding dress?

Yes, she was. It was worth it. It was worth it to make the wedding dress so she was glad to have made the wedding dress.

Freddie and Sara got married at the beach.

Did Freddie and Sara get married at the beach?

Yes, they did. Freddie and Sara got married at the beach.

What did Freddie and Sara do? Did they swim at the beach or get married at the beach?

They got married at the beach. Freddie and Sara got married at the beach.

Did Sara and Freddie swim at the beach?

No, they didn't swim at the beach. They were probably all dressed up. Sara was dressed up in a dress, Freddie probably had nice clothes on also, so they did not swim while they were at the beach.

The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

Who got married at the beach? Did Angelina Jolie and Brad Pitt get married at the beach?

No Brad Pitt and Angelina Jolie didn't get married at the beach.

Did Sara and Freddie get married at the beach?

Yes, that's correct. They got married at the beach. Sara and Freddie got married at the beach.

Where did Freddie and Sara get married?

At the beach, they got married at the beach.

Did Freddie and Sara get married at the church?

No, they didn't get married at the church.

Did Freddie and Sara get married at the beach?

Yes, yes, that's correct. Freddie and Sara got married at the beach.

They were worried it was going to rain but the weather cooperated.

Were they worried it was going to rain?

Yes, they were. They were worried it was going to rain.

What were they worried about?

Well, they were worried about rain. They were worried it was going to rain.

Were they worried about the weather or the football game?

The weather, they were worried about the weather, they were worried it was going to rain.

Who was worried? Were Sara's parents worried?

No, not Sara's parents.

The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

Were Freddie and Sara worried?

Yes, yes, *they were. Freddie and Sara were worried.*

Were Freddie and Sara worried it was going to rain?

Yes, *they were. They were worried it was going to rain.*

Did the weather cooperate?

Yes, *it did. The weather cooperated.*

Was the weather nice?

Well, yes, *it was. The weather cooperated, which means that the weather was nice.*

Did it rain?

No, no, *it did not rain. The weather cooperated which means that it was nice which means it did not rain.*

After they got married, Sara's father was happy

Was Sara's father happy after they got married?

Yes, *he was. He was happy.*

Was Sara's father upset after they got married?

No, *he wasn't upset. He was happy.*

Who got married? Did Sara and Freddie get married?

Yes, *that's correct. Sara and Freddie got married.*

Was Sara's father happy after Sara's brother got married?

No, *Sara's brother didn't get married.*

When was Sara's father happy? Was he happy after he ate dinner?

The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

No, not after he ate dinner.

Was Sara's father happy after Sara and Freddie got married?

Yes, that's correct. After they got married, Sara's father was happy.

because Freddie had made an honest woman of her.

Had Freddie made an honest woman of her?

Yes, he had. Freddie had made an honest woman of her.

What did Freddie do? Did he make her a hamburger or make an honest woman of her?

He made an honest woman of her.

Who did he make an honest woman of? Sara's mom?

No, not Sara's mom. Sara's mom is married to Sara's dad.

Did he make an honest woman of Sara?

Yes, he did. He made an honest woman of Sara.

Did he get married to Sara?

Yes, yes, he did. He made an honest woman of Sara which is the same thing as saying he got married to Sara. When you make an honest woman of someone, that means that you get married to that woman.

Why was Sara's father happy? Was he happy because he liked the food?

No, that's not why he was happy.

Was he happy because Freddie made an honest woman of Sara?

Yes, yes, that's correct. That's why he was happy. He was happy because Freddie made an honest woman of Sara.



The Wedding Mini-Story Lesson

Was he happy because Freddie got married to Sara?

Yes, he was. Freddie made an honest woman of Sara which means Freddie got married to Sara so he was happy because Freddie got married to Sara, or you could say he was happy because Freddie made an honest woman of Sara.

* * * * *

Okay, we have reached the end of our story. Now it's time for you to tell the story all by yourself. Remember you do not have to memorize every word in the story, but you do need to use the idioms and vocabulary words that we used. Here are some of the ones that we discussed: "old-fashioned," "made it in," "pretty much," "didn't make it," "do-it-yourself," "it was worth it," "the weather cooperated," and "made an honest woman of her." So please try to tell the story on your own, using these idioms now. Remember you can listen to this lesson as many times as you need to.

Okay, good luck and we'll see you next time.

The Wedding POV Lesson

Hi. Welcome to the point of view stories for “The Wedding”. Today we’re gonna hear the same story from “The Wedding” mini-story lesson and we’re gonna hear it in four different points of view this time. Ok, let’s get started.

* * * * *

Freddie the fork and Sara the spoon live together in New York. Freddie and Sara are getting married.

Pretty much all of Sara’s friends come to the wedding. But her Aunt Patti doesn’t make it.

Two days before the wedding, Sara’s mother and father fly to New York from London. Their flight makes it in on time.

Sara’s father is old-fashioned. He doesn’t want Sara to live with Freddie before they get married.

Freddie and Sara do not have a lot of money so they have a do-it-yourself wedding. Freddie and Sara cook all of the food and Sara’s mother makes the wedding dress. It is a lot of work but it is worth it.

Freddie and Sara get married at the beach. They are worried it is going to rain but the weather cooperates.

After they get married, Sara’s father is happy because Freddie has made an honest woman of her.

* * * * *

Okay, so as you can see we just heard the story told as if it is happening right now, or in the present as we say. Now let’s tell the story as if it has already happened two years ago. Okay, here we go.

* * * * *

Two years ago Freddie the fork and Sara the spoon lived together in New York. Freddie and Sara got married.

Pretty much all of Sara’s friends came to the wedding. But her Aunt Patti didn’t make it.

Two days before the wedding, Sara’s mother and father flew to New York from London. Their flight made it in on time.

Sara’s father was old-fashioned. He did not want Sara to live with Freddie before they got married.



The Wedding POV Lesson

Freddie and Sara did not have a lot of money so they had a do-it-yourself wedding. Freddie and Sara cooked all of the food and Sara's mom made the wedding dress. It was a lot of work but it was worth it.

Freddie and Sara got married at the beach. They were worried it was going to rain but the weather cooperated.

After they got married, Sara's father was happy because Freddie had made an honest woman of her.

* * * * *

Okay, so we just heard the story told as if it happened two years ago. Now we're going to tell the story as if it is happening in the future. So we will think of the story two years from now. Here we go.

* * * * *

Two years from now Freddie the fork and Sara the spoon will live together in New York. Freddie and Sara will get married.

Pretty much all of Sara's friends will come to the wedding. But her Aunt Patti will not make it.

Two days before the wedding, Sara's mother and father are gonna fly to New York from London. Their flight will make it in on time.

Sara's father is going to be old-fashioned. He will not want Sara to live with Freddie before they get married.

Freddie and Sara will not have a lot of money so they'll have a do-it-yourself wedding. Freddie and Sara are going to cook all of the food and Sara's mother is gonna make the wedding dress. It's gonna be a lot of work but it will be worth it.

Freddie and Sara are going to get married at the beach. They'll worry it is going to rain but the weather will cooperate.

After getting married, Sara's father is going to be happy because Freddie will have made an honest woman of her.

* * * * *

Okay so that's the end of this version of the story, the version in which the story is in the future. Notice that

The Wedding POV Lesson

instead of saying something like, “they will worry” we can shorten it by saying, “they’ll worry”. This is more like what we would say in spoken conversation, but in a text book you’re more likely to see, “they will” instead of, “they’ll”. You also probably notice that sometimes instead of saying, “going to” we might say, “gonna” which is more like spoken English as well.

Alright, let’s hear the story from Sara’s point of view now. So this will be the story as it would be told if Sara was actually telling it. Here we go.

* * * * *

Freddie the fork and I live in New York. Freddie and I got married.

Pretty much all of my friends came to the wedding. But my Aunt Patti didn’t make it.

Two days before the wedding, my mother and father flew to New York from London. Their flight made it in on time.

My father was old-fashioned. He did not want me to live with Freddie before we got married.

Freddie and I did not have a lot of money so we had a do-it-yourself wedding. Freddie and I cooked all of the food and my mother made the wedding dress. It was a lot of work but it was worth it.

Freddie and I got married at the beach. We were worried it was going to rain but the weather cooperated.

After we got married, my father was happy because Freddie had made an honest woman of me.

* * * * *

Alright so that is the end of the point of view stories for the lesson “The Wedding”. Now it’s time to listen to each version again. After you listen to one version then try to tell the story yourself. If you can’t it’s okay, just relax, go back, listen to it again and then see if you can tell the story. You can listen to it as many times as you need to until you feel comfortable. Just relax, take your time and learn the stories deeply. Okay, that’s all for now. See ya next time.



The Wedding Vocabulary Lesson

Hi and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “The Wedding.” In this conversation Joe is speaking with one of our friends named Will. They are speaking about Will’s wedding.

Okay, let’s begin with the conversation.

* * * * *

Joe first says, “Hey, Will, how’s it goin’?”

How’s it going, or how’s it goin’. This is short for how is it going. So you wouldn’t see how’s it goin’ in written English, but you would definitely hear how’s it goin’ in conversational English. It also means how are you.

Will says, “Hey, what’s goin’ on?”

What’s goin’ on. This is short for what is going on. And that’s what you would see in written English, but in conversational English you would hear what’s goin’ on. It also means what are you doing.

Then Will says, “Not a lot.”

Now this is kind of funny. Because this would have been an answer that Joe would have given to Will when Will said, hey Joe what’s goin’ on. And then Will says not a lot. So really that would have been an answer Joe would have said. Not a lot. But, for some reason, I don’t really know why, Will says not a lot. Okay moving along.

Then Joe says, “Man, I don’t, you know what, now that I see you right here...”

Or now that I see you here.

“I don’t think I’ve seen you in probably...”

Or in about.

“like six weeks.” And Will says, “Yeah.”

Just agreeing with Joe.

And Joe says, “Where you been hidin’?

Now, where you been hidin’... The way that you would see this in written English would be where have you



The Wedding Vocabulary Lesson

been hidin? But, Joe just speaking normal conversation, he's making it shorter. Where you been hidin'? And what this means is not... it's not really asking Will if he's been hidin from Joe. But it's saying... Or Joe is saying this like, I haven't seen you in a long time. So if someone says where have you been hidin, they're just saying it when they haven't seen that person in a long time. Where you been hidin'. For example: I had not seen my friend Susan in a long time. So when I saw her I said, "Hey, where you been hidin?"

And then Will answers, "I don't know, long time no see though."

Long time no see. This means it has been a long time since we have seen each other. For example: I had not seen my friend Susan in a long time. So when I saw her I said, "Long time no see."

And Joe laughs and says, "Yeah." Then Will says, "How, how have you been?"

So he's saying how have you been doing? How is everything?

And Joe says, "Yeah, I'm doin' really well."

Doin', just being short for doing.

And Joe says, "I, I don't th...you know what, I haven't seen you since your wedding."

Now a wedding. This is a marriage ceremony. Or it's when two people get married.

And Will says, "I know. I know, I want to, uh, I want to tell you all about it. I can't believe you didn't make it."

You didn't make it. What Will is saying here is you were not able to be there. I can't believe you were not able to be there. You didn't make it. An example of this would be: It's too bad you didn't make it to my party. We all had a lot of fun. You didn't make it.

And Joe says, "Yeah, you know what, I told you the only reason I didn't make it is because my uncle was getting married back east."

What Joe is talking about here... Back east is the eastern side of America. So he has family that lives on the eastern side of America. That's where his uncle was getting married, in a state on the eastern side.

And Joe goes on to say, "So, y'know, I was gone the entire week."

Or he's saying, I was gone the whole week. All of the week.



The Wedding Vocabulary Lesson

And then Joe says, “But I was super bummed about it.”

Super bummed. This means to be very upset. So Joe is saying he was super bummed or he was very upset to not make it to Will’s wedding. Super bummed. For example: I was super bummed to miss your party. I wish I could have gone. Super bummed.

And then Will says, “Well you missed a good one.”

So, a good one. He’s talking about his wedding. You missed a good wedding. You missed a good one.

And Joe says, “Yeah, yeah, I know. I mean...”

Or Joe is saying, what I’m trying to say is.

“I was bummed that I couldn’t be there with all our friends. And, y’know, I’d never had a chance...”

Or I’d never had an opportunity.

“to meet Isabelle’s family. So, y’know, I’m really bummed that I missed that, too.”

Isabelle. This is Will’s wife.

And Will says, “Yeah, yeah, it was really nice having everybody out here from Spain.”

When he says out here, he’s talking about in San Francisco. So Isabelle, his wife, is from Spain. Her family, or some of her family, came from Spain to San Francisco for the wedding.

And Joe says, “Yeah.”

So he’s just agreeing with Will. Yeah being slang or casual or informal for yes.

And then Will says, “And, we had a good time.” And Joe says, “How long had you, how long were you and Isabelle together...”

Or dating, is what that means.

“before you guys got married?”

Now guys. A lot of times it means men or boys. But it can also mean a mix of men and women or boys and girls. So what guys means here, what Joe is saying, how long had you and Isabelle been dating or been



The Wedding Vocabulary Lesson

together before you guys got married... He's saying before you both, before you guys, before you both got married.

And Will says, "Two years." And then Joe says, "Wow, oh my god..."

Like, I don't believe it.

"time flies."

Time flies. This means to be surprised about how much time has gone by. An example of time flies would be: Time flies when you are having fun. Time flies.

And then Will says, "Yeah."

Just agreeing with Joe.

And Joe says, "I remember that, y'know, when she first, uh, answered the ad you had for a roommate, so..."

What Joe is talking about here is I remember, Will, when you put an advertisement in the newspaper needing a roommate. Or needing someone to live with you to help pay the rent. I remember when you put this advertisement in the newspaper. And then Isabelle saw the advertisement and called you.

And then Will just laughs. And Joe says, "you guys broke the golden rule..."

So what he's saying is you both, you guys, you both broke, or you ignored or didn't pay attention to the golden rule. Golden rule. This means the most important thing about something. The golden rule. An example of golden rule would be: Joe believes that the golden rule of life is to treat people as you would like them to treat you. The golden rule.

And then Joe goes on to say, "y'know, as far as roommates go, which is don't sleep with your roommates when they move in."

Sleep with. This means to have sex with. Sleep with. So he's saying you broke this rule. This rule that you're not supposed to have sex with your roommate or roommates when they move in.

And Will says, "That's right." And Joe just laughs and says, "But it's all worked out."

It's all worked out. This means it ended well. It's all worked out. For example: Even though I lost my job it all worked out because I found another job. It's all worked out.



The Wedding Vocabulary Lesson

And Will says, “It was worth it. It was worth it this time.”

It was worth it. What Will is saying is he’s glad to have done something. Or you say this in general when you are glad to have done something. It was worth it. For example: I did not enjoy going to school when I was younger but it was worth it in the end because I learned a lot. It was worth it.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, it’s all worked out. So I’m glad...”

Or I’m happy.

“to see that, y’know.” And Will says, “Absolutely.”

What he is saying here is definitely or for sure. He’s agreeing with Joe.

And Joe says, “Yeah. So, uh, y’know, you’ll have to give me some details on...”

Or what Joe is saying is you’ll have to tell me about.

“y’know, I, I haven’t seen any of the pictures or anything, I don’t, maybe you didn’t get them back yet from the photographer.”

A photographer is a person who takes pictures.

And Will says, “Well I can’t wait to...”

Or what he is saying is I would like to.

“uh, show you the pictures, of course, but, uh, yeah, do you have a second?”

So Will is asking, do you have some time? Do you have a second?

And then Will says, “I’ll tell you about the wedding.” And Joe says, “Yeah, yeah, totally.”

And what Joe is saying here is, yes. Yes, sure... I do have time.

And then Joe says, “I wanna hear about it.”

Or I want to. Wanna is short for want to.

The Wedding Vocabulary Lesson

And then Will says, "Alright..."

Or okay.

"well, we had kind of a, uh, do-it-yourself wedding."

Do-it-yourself. This means doing something without paying others to help. So Will and Isabelle did everything or most of the things themselves for the wedding, probably to save money. For example: They had a do-it-yourself dinner party. They cooked all of the food themselves. Do-it-yourself.

And then Will goes on to say, "We, um, got married at, uh, City Hall which was easy."

Now City Hall. This is a government building.

And then Will goes on to say, "And then we had our real ceremony..."

Or our real wedding.

"at Stern Grove."

Stern Grove is a place in San Francisco that has a lot of trees. It's really pretty there. So he's saying that's where the real wedding was. The legal part or the government part was at City Hall, the government building. But the real ceremony, the real wedding with our friends and family was at Stern Grove.

And then Will goes on to say, "You know where that is?" And Joe says, "Oh yeah, yeah, yeah, right on 19th."

So he's saying oh yes. It's on 19th Street.

And Will says, "Here in San Francisco." And Joe says, "Yeah." And Will says, "Underneath the redwood trees."

So there are a lot of redwood trees in Stern Grove. Redwood trees are actually... They're a reddish color and they can get really big. So at this place, Stern Grove, there's a lot of these really big red looking trees. And he's saying yeah, we got married underneath these redwood trees. Under the redwood trees.

And Joe says, "Oh, it must have been beautiful." And Will says, "It was very nice." And then Joe says, "Did the weather cooperate?"

So what Joe is asking here is, was the weather nice? An example of did the weather cooperate would be:

The Wedding Vocabulary Lesson

We hoped that the weather would cooperate for the party we planned to have in the park. We did not want it to rain. Did the weather cooperate, or in this example, hoped that the weather would cooperate.

And then Will says, “Actually we, uh, had a really beautiful day which is very unusual...”

Or he's saying it's not common or not normal.

“for summertime in, uh, San Francisco.” And Joe says, “Yeah.”

Just agreeing with him.

And Will says, “As you well know.”

So Will is saying as you already know. You already know the weather is not good normally in the summertime in San Francisco.

And Joe says, “Totally.”

So what Joe is saying is, yeah. I know. I know what you're saying. I agree with you.

And then Will says, “We were planning on fog...”

Fog is just low clouds. San Francisco has a lot of fog in the summer as well as other times of the year, which can make the weather cool or a little cold.

So Will says, “We were planning on fog but we had really nice weather.” And Joe says, “Oh that's great. So everyone made it in okay?”

Made it in. What Joe is saying is, everyone arrived okay? An example would be: My parents' flight made it in late. Made it in.

And Joe says, “Because I know that, uh, her family had a long way to come.”

Remember her family was coming from Spain.

And Will says, “Yeah. They, uh, they all made it. Her mom and dad, uh, their friend, uh, her brother and sister, of course, and, uh, her best friend from Spain came to represent all her, all her friends...”

Represent. What Will is saying here is that Isabelle's best friend came from Spain and since her other friends could not come, the best friend was coming for all of them. She was coming in their place. She was coming

The Wedding Vocabulary Lesson

for all of the friends.

And then Will goes on to say, “we’re gonna go there...”

Gonna being short for going to.

“we’re gonna go there, uh, soon and we’re gonna see her, uh, family and friends, y’know, th-, who couldn’t make it. But it was nice to have a group of her family and friends here in San Francisco for the wedding.” And Joe says, “Oh that’s great. How, what, where is she from in Spain?” And Will says, “Um, she’s from Bilbao.” And Joe says, “Oh yeah, y’know, she told me that before but I can’t say that, y’know, I could recall...”

Or I could remember.

“the actual town ‘cause I’d never heard of it before.”

‘Cause is short for because.

And then Will says, “Yeah, it’s actually a very large city. Uh, it’s an industrial city.”

Industrial meaning it has a lot of factories.

And then Will says, “And it’s, uh, got uh, a new museum so it’s become more famous.”

Or more well-known.

And then Will says, “But, uh, it’s been there a long time. And it’s a big city. But it’s not one of the most, um, uh, known cities in Spain perhaps...”

Or he’s saying it’s not one of the best known cities in Spain maybe.

And Joe says, “Yeah.”

Agreeing with him.

And then Will says, “like Madrid and Barcelona.”

Madrid and Barcelona. These are cities in Spain that are more famous or more known than Bilbao.

And then Joe says, “Yeah.” And Will says, “So, uh, yeah. But they were all there and, uh, her



The Wedding Vocabulary Lesson

brother, uh, read a medieval Spanish love poem..."

Now medieval. This is a time period from long ago. So he read a Spanish love poem from a time long ago.

And then Will goes on to say, "uh. And, uh, that was really nice. And, uh, parts of our wedding were in Spanish, uh, for the people, um, you know our friends here who, uh, um, speak Spanish and also, uh, y'know, for her friends and family from Spain, yeah." And then Joe says, "Sure, yeah that's great. I know that you've been trying to learn a lot of Spanish lately." And Will says, "Yes I have, yes I have...well, y'know, I learned a lot of Spanish when I was in Chile but I'm learning a lot more with her now." And Joe says, "Oh that's great. Yeah, because the only way you're gonna really..."

Gonna being short for going to.

"the only way you're gonna really, uh, y'know, get more fluent in it is to use it pretty much every day."

So, get more fluent... This is just being able to speak better or to speak more in a language, in this situation, Spanish. So get more fluent in it is to use it pretty much every day. Pretty much. Here pretty just means very. Very much or almost every day. For example: I go to the park pretty much every Saturday. Pretty much.

And then Will says, "Absolutely. Yeah." And Joe says, "So, uh, I bet her father was happy to see that you made an honest woman of her."

Made an honest woman of her. What Joe is saying here is, I'm sure her father was happy to see that you got married to her. Made an honest woman of her. An example of this: Sara and Sam had been living together for two years before they got married. So her dad was glad that he finally made an honest woman of her.

And then Will laughs and says, "I guess, I guess so, yeah." And Joe says, "I would imagine that, uh, maybe her, was her family pretty traditional..."

So Joe is saying, was her family very traditional?

"and old-fashioned?"

Old-fashioned. This means ideas or things that are from a long time ago. Old-fashioned. For example: Kim's parents are old-fashioned. They think that a woman should not live with a man until she gets married. Old-fashioned. Traditional also is basically the same as old-fashioned. Ideas or things from a long time ago.

And then Will says, "Uh, no actually they're more, um, uh, progressive in a way..."



The Wedding Vocabulary Lesson

Progressive means able to change thoughts or ideas. So Will is saying yeah they're more progressive in a way.

"than, uh, Americans are. Americans actually, it seems, uh, are more into the church wedding and everything."

Into the church wedding. What Will is saying here is Americans want to have a wedding in a church. They're into. They want. Into the church wedding.

And then Will goes on to say, "We had a, uh, um, we had a very, uh, European wedding. They're not as, uh, religious as people think. Americans are pretty religious."

Or he's saying Americans are very religious. Religious just means strong beliefs in a religion, a religion such as Christianity. Christianity is a dominant or it's probably the main religion in America.

And then Joe says, "That's true."

So he's saying you're correct. I agree with you.

And then Will says, "Yes. So, uh, they, uh, they loved everything we did..."

So when he says they loved he's saying, they really liked everything we did.

And then Will says, "and, uh, it was a really good time. Yeah." And Joe says, "That's great." And Will says, "Yeah, so, uh, I gotta run."

I gotta run. Now what Will is saying here is not really that he has to go and run somewhere. He's saying I have to go or I need to go now. So for example: I gotta run to the store to buy some bread. I need to go to the store to buy some bread. I gotta run.

And then Joe says, "Okay, well, uh, Will let's get together for drinks sometime soon..."

Let's get together. Joe is saying let's meet for drinks sometime soon. For example: Karen and I are going to get together for coffee tomorrow morning. Get together.

And then Joe says, "it's been too long." And Will says, "Sounds good." And then Joe says, "Alright..."

Or he's saying, okay.



The Wedding Vocabulary Lesson

"I'll talk to you soon." And then Will says, "Alright, ciao."

Now *ciao*. This is an Italian word for goodbye. *Ciao*.

And then Joe says, "Bye."

* * * * *

Okay, that's the end of the conversation and it's the end of the vocabulary lesson for the conversation "The Wedding." So as always, make sure before you go on to the mini-story that you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary. And then when you feel ready, listen to the mini-story next.

Alright. Take care. See you next time, goodbye.

Grateful Dead Conversation

while I was out: when I was not there

Joe: Hey, did Tim call **while I was out?**

Kristin: No, he didn't, why?

wanted to run by me:
wanted to tell me about

Joe: Well, he told me he had an idea he **wanted to run by me.** So, uh, I figured he might've called.

Kristin: What, what's the idea?

Joe: Uh, well, he's actually thinking about writing a book about, uh, the time he spent **on the road** with the **Grateful Dead.**

Kristin: Oh, that would be a great topic for a book. You know, whenever you speak to me about the Grateful Dead, **I'm all ears.**

Joe: Yeah, I mean, I, when I **look back on** the years I spent following them around, jeez, I, I followed 'em all over the place. But, I mean, that was some of the most fun I've ever had in my life I think.

Kristin: I can imagine.

Joe: I mean, y'know, first off, y'know, they're my favorite band.

Kristin: Right.

drew (me) to the scene:
made me interested in something

Joe: And, uh, second, the other thing that really **drew me to the scene** was the fact that there was just this traveling, uh, group of people that followed them everywhere. It was like, almost like a bazaar sort of...

Kristin: Mm-huh...

Joe: ...y'know...

Kristin: ...mm-huh...

Joe: ...and...

Kristin: Well, it's definitely a **subculture** of America.

Joe: Oh yeah, yeah, I mean some people even called it a **cult** [laugh] y'know...

Grateful Dead Conversation

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: And, uh, it was so unique at the time, uh, y'know.... Because there really wasn't anything else like it. I mean you had all these **hippies** driving around, following the band from city to city. And, uh, y'know, when you're on the road driving from one place to the next, you'd see the same people. You'd see the same cars, all these VW buses drivin'. And, uh, y'know, uh, people supported themselves, uh, by, uh, selling things in the parking lots at the concerts.

Kristin: Mm-huh.

Joe: Like, a lot of people would like make jewelry and sell it. A lot of people would sell, uh, clothes that they made, um.... Another, uh, favorite amongst people was to, uh, just, uh, sell beer or to make food. And that's what I actually did a lot of the times. I'd make sandwiches or I'd sell beer in order to help, y'know, **defray** the cost of the tickets.

Kristin: Uh-huh.

Joe: Because it could get a little expensive, y'know.

Kristin: Right.

Joe: But, y'know, the other strange thing is that you'd have this, like large circus traveling essentially following the band. And it was all these, like, hippies. People with like really long hair and beards and like, y'know.... Really sometimes like people who hadn't like showered for days. Because they were just traveling with the, y'know...

Kristin: Yeah.

Joe: ...around, following the band.

Kristin: Yeah.

Joe: Because, you know, especially during the summer, you'd just stay at campgrounds, y'know? So you'd camp and they might not have a shower, y'know...

Kristin: Right [laugh].

Grateful Dead Conversation

Joe: I remember like, so many times washing my hair, like, under a, y'know, a faucet in a sink of a bathroom. Or, y'know, under a hose somewhere [laugh].

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: And having someone help me because, y'know, I had the long hair.

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: Oh man, and, uh, y'know the other thing is, you'd **travel around**. And sometimes be driving through these really small **conservative** towns. And you can just imagine what it must have been like from their standpoint. I mean they see these people who don't look anything like them. I mean...

Kristin: Right.

travel around: go from one place to another place

conservative: people who do not like change

clean-cut: short hair and dressed nicely

bohemian gypsies:
traveling artists

Joe: ...they're all **clean-cut** looking, these people who live in this town. And then you have this pack of like, looks like **bohemian gypsies**...

Kristin: Uh-huh.

Joe: ...traveling through town.

Kristin: Yeah, that's a good description.

cops: police

Joe: Y'know, so, y'know a lot of the times the **cops** in the town would hassle you. Y'know...

Kristin: Oh, I'm sure.

Joe: ...for no good reason, y'know.

Kristin: Yeah.

jump to conclusions: to decide something without knowing about it

judging the book by its cover: deciding what something is like by how it looks

Joe: I think that they would just suddenly **jump to conclusions** about, y'know, what you were doing. Because you look different than them, y'know. They were totally like **judging the book by its cover**.

Grateful Dead Conversation

Kristin: Right.

Joe: So, um, yeah but, oh my gosh, y'know.... When I look back on those times, I just met so many people. I mean sometimes I would meet somebody. And like, say the middle of the country like Kansas, right?

Kristin: Uh-huh.

run into: to unexpectedly see someone

it's (such) a small world: said when you are surprised to see another person you know at a place you did not expect to see them

Joe: And then, like, a year or two later, I'd be, say, in Seattle. And I'd **run into** the same people...the same person.

Kristin: Oh my god, **it's such a small world**, huh?

Joe: Yeah, I know. But that was another great thing. Like I met so many people and became such good friends with so many of those people. They're, some of these people are like my closest friends to this day, like Tim. Y'know?

Kristin: Yeah.

Joe: So it was really something that, uh, it was like a community, y'know.

bonding experience: something that makes people become closer

deadhead: a fan of the music band the Grateful Dead

rabid fans: people who really like something are 'rabid fans' of it

Kristin: I was going to say, too, it's a very, it sounds like it was a very **bonding experience**.

Joe: Oh, yeah, totally. Like it's funny, if you're a **deadhead** and you meet another deadhead, it's like.... There's just like, uh, almost, a hidden language that you speak.

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: Y'know, it's crazy. And, y'know, the, the, the fans were such **rabid fans**. I mean, y'know, a lot of deadheads.... The only music they would listen to was the music of the Grateful Dead.

Kristin: Wow. I could see why people would think that was a bit cultish.

Joe: Yeah, totally.

follow through (with something): to do (something)

Kristin: Well, do you think that, um, Tim will actually **follow through** with writing this book?



Grateful Dead Conversation

your guess is as good as mine: I do not know

Joe: I don't know, ***your guess is as good as mine.*** Y'know, he can be a ***flake*** sometimes.

flake: someone who says they will do something but then decides not to do it

Kristin: Yeah, I know.



Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

Hi. Welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Grateful Dead.”

Let's get started with the story.

* * * *

Jacob has really long purple hair. His hair is 10 feet long.

Jacob has a dolphin named Donna. Jacob and Donna like to race cars.

“I’m going to travel around Italy. There are a lot of car races in Italy,” Jacob said to his sister.

His sister said he would not follow through. Jacob told her she was jumping to conclusions.

“I am not a flake,” said Jacob.

So Jacob and Donna went to Italy and they went to a car race.

A race car driver looked at Jacob.

“Hippies are bad drivers,” he said.

“You are judging a book by its cover,” said Jacob.

Later that day, Jacob and Donna won the race. It was a bonding experience.

When Jacob looks back on the race, it makes him smile.

* * * *

Okay, so that's our story, now I will tell the story again. This time I will ask you questions. Please answer the questions out loud. If you need a little more time then please pause your player and when you're ready to answer the question then you can press play again.

Okay, let's get started.

* * * *

Jacob has really long purple hair.



Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

Does Jacob have really long purple hair?

Yes, he does. Jacob has really long purple hair.

Who has really long purple hair?

Jacob, Jacob has really long purple hair.

Does Jerry or Jacob have really long purple hair?

Jacob, Jacob has really long purple hair.

Does Jerry have really long purple hair?

Jerry? No, not Jerry.

Does Jacob have really long purple hair?

Yes, yes, that's correct. Jacob has really long purple hair.

What does Jacob have?

Really long purple hair, that's right. Jacob has really long purple hair.

Does Jacob have a car or really long purple hair?

Really long purple hair. Jacob has really long purple hair.

What color is Jacob's hair?

Well, it's purple. Jacob has really long purple hair.

Does Jacob have really long black hair?

No, he doesn't have really long black hair.

Does Jacob have really long purple hair?

Yes, yes, that's correct. Jacob has really long purple hair.



Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

His hair is 10 feet long.

Is his hair 10 feet long?

Yes, it is. His hair is 10 feet long. Wow, that's long.

Whose hair is 10 feet long? Is Jacob's hair 10 feet long?

Yes, that's correct. It's Jacob who has really long purple hair, hair that is 10 feet long.

What is 10 feet long? Is his arm 10 feet long?

No, not his arm. That would be a very long arm, 10 feet long.

Is his hair 10 feet long?

Yes, it is. His hair is 10 feet long.

How long is his hair?

That's right, its 10 feet long.

Is his hair 5 feet or 10 feet long?

His hair is 10 feet long. 10 feet long.

Is his hair 5 feet long?

No, it's not 5 feet long.

Is his hair 10 feet long?

Yes, his hair is 10 feet long.

Jacob has a dolphin named Donna.

Does Jacob have a dolphin named Donna?



Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he does. Jacob has a dolphin named Donna.

Who has a dolphin named Donna?

That's right, Jacob. Jacob has a dolphin named Donna.

Does Jerry or Jacob have a dolphin named Donna?

Jacob, Jacob has a dolphin named Donna.

Does Jerry have a dolphin named Donna?

No, no, not Jerry.

Does Jacob have a dolphin named Donna?

Yes, yes, he does. Jacob has a dolphin named Donna.

What does Jacob have?

He has a dolphin, a dolphin named Donna.

Does Jacob have a hammer or a dolphin named Donna?

No, he doesn't have a hammer. He has a dolphin named Donna.

What is the dolphin's name? Is it Debbie? Or is it Donna?

That's right, it's Donna. The dolphin's name is Donna.

Does Jacob have a dolphin named Donna?

Yes, he does. Jacob has a dolphin named Donna.

Jacob and Donna like to race cars.

Do Jacob and Donna like to race cars?

Yes, yes, they do. Jacob and Donna like to race cars.



Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

What do Jacob and Donna like to do?

They like to race cars. Jacob and Donna like to race cars.

Do Jacob and Donna like to go swimming or race cars?

They like to race cars, that's right.

Do Jacob and Donna like to go swimming?

No, they don't like to go swimming.

Do Jacob and Donna like to race cars?

Yes, that's what they like to do. They like to race cars.

Who likes to race cars? Do Larry and Sam like to race cars?

No, not Larry and Sam.

Does Jacob like to race cars?

Yes, yes, he does.

Does Donna like to race cars?

Yes, Donna also likes to race cars.

What do Jacob and Donna like to race?

Cars, they like to race cars.

Do they like to race motorcycles? Or cars?

Cars, they like to race cars.

Do Jacob and Donna like to race cars?

Yes, they do. Jacob and Donna like to race cars.



Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

"I'm going to travel around Italy.

Is he going to travel around Italy?

Yes, yes, *he is*.

What is he going to do?

He's going to travel around Italy, that's right.

Is he going to swim to China or travel around Italy?

He's going to travel around Italy, yes.

Is he going to swim to China?

No, he's not going to swim to China.

Is he going to travel around Italy?

*Yes, yes, *he is*. *He's going to travel around Italy.**

Is he going to go from one place to another in Italy?

*Yes, yes, *he is*. *He said that he's going to travel around Italy and when you say you're going to travel around Italy that means that you're going to go from one place to another in Italy.**

Where is he going to travel around?

*Italy. *He's going to travel around Italy.**

Is he going to travel around France or Italy?

He's going to travel around Italy.

Is he going to go from one place to another in France?

*No, not France. *He's not going to France.**



Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

Is he going to go from one place to another in Italy?

Yes, yes, *that's correct. He's going to travel around Italy. He's going to go from one place to another in Italy.*

Is he going to travel around Italy?

Yes, yes, *he is.*

There are a lot of car races in Italy," Jacob said to his sister.

So are there a lot of car races in Italy?

Yes, *there are. There are a lot of car races in Italy.*

What are there a lot of in Italy? Are there a lot of pizzas?

Mm, there might be a lot of pizzas but that's not what Jacob said.

Are there a lot of car races in Italy?

Yes, *that's what Jacob said. There are a lot of car races in Italy.*

Where are there a lot of car races?

That's right, in Italy. There are a lot of car races in Italy.

Are there a lot of car races in France or Italy?

Yes, Italy, there are a lot of car races in Italy is what Jacob said.

Are there a lot of car races in France?

No, not France, we're not talking about France.

Are there a lot of car races in Italy?

Yes, that's what Jacob said. Jacob said, "There are a lot of car races in Italy."



Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

His sister said he would not follow through.

Did his sister say he would not follow through?

Yes, she did. His sister said he would not follow through.

What did his sister do?

Well, his sister said he would not follow through. That's what she did. She said he would not follow through.

Who said he would not follow through?

That's right, his sister. His sister said he would not follow through.

Did his sister or his mother say he would not follow through?

His sister. His sister said he would not follow through.

Did his mother say he would not follow through?

No, it's not his mother who said that.

Did his sister say he would not follow through?

Yes, that's correct. His sister. His sister said he would not follow through.

What did his sister say? Did she say that he had dirt on his face?

Dirt on his face, no. That's not what she said.

Did she say he would not follow through?

Yes, that's what she said. She said he would not follow through.

Did she say he would not do something?

Well, yes, she did. She said he would not follow through and follow through means to do something so she also said he would not do something.



Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

Did she say he would not travel around Italy?

Well, that is what she said. When she said he would not follow through on something what she meant was that he would not follow through on traveling around Italy, so she did say that he would not travel around Italy, he would not follow through on it.

Did his sister say he would not follow through?

Yes, his sister said he would not follow through. He would not do it.

Jacob told her she was jumping to conclusions.

Did Jacob tell her that she was jumping to conclusions?

Yes, he did. Jacob told her she was jumping to conclusions.

What did Jacob do?

That's right; he told her that she was jumping to conclusions.

Did Jacob eat some ice cream or tell her that she was jumping to conclusions?

He told her she was jumping to conclusions.

Who told her she was jumping to conclusions?

Jacob did. Jacob told her she was jumping to conclusions.

Did Jerry or Jacob tell her she was jumping to conclusions?

Jacob did. Jacob told her she was jumping to conclusions.

Did Jerry tell her she was jumping to conclusions?

No, it wasn't Jerry who said she was jumping to conclusions.

Did Jacob tell her she was jumping to conclusions?

Yes, that's correct. Jacob told her she was jumping to conclusions.



Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

What did Jacob tell her?

That she was jumping to conclusions. Jacob told her that she was jumping to conclusions.

Did Jacob tell her that her feet were big or that she was jumping to conclusions?

That she was jumping to conclusions. Jacob told her that she was jumping to conclusions.

Did Jacob tell her that her feet were big?

No, Jacob didn't tell his sister that her feet were big.

Did Jacob tell her that she was jumping to conclusions?

Yes, yes, he did. He told his sister that she was jumping to conclusions.

Did Jacob tell her that she was deciding something without knowing about it?

Yes, that's what he said. He told his sister that she was jumping to conclusions, or he told her that she was deciding something without knowing about it, without knowing all the information about it, so he thinks that she was jumping to conclusions, that she was trying to decide something without knowing all the information necessary to make the decision.

“I am not a flake,” said Jacob.

Did Jacob say he is a flake?

No, no, he didn't. He said, “I am not a flake.”

Who said, “I am not a flake”? Did Jacob’s dad say, “I am not a flake”?

No, it wasn't Jacob's dad.

Did Jacob say, “I am not a flake”?

Yes, that's correct. Jacob said, “I am not a flake.”

Did Jacob say, “I am not a person who says he will do something and then decides not to do it”?



Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

Well, yes, that is what he said. He said, "I am not a flake" and a flake is a person who says they will do something and then later decides not to do it, so Jacob said he is not a flake which means he is not a person who says he will do something and then decides not to do it.

So Jacob and Donna went to Italy

Did Jacob and Donna go to Italy?

Yes, they did. Jacob and Donna went to Italy.

What did Jacob and Donna do?

That's right, they went to Italy.

Did they swim in the ocean or did they go to Italy?

They went to Italy. Jacob and Donna went to Italy.

Did they swim in the ocean?

No, they didn't swim in the ocean.

Did they go to Italy?

Yes, that's what they did. Jacob and Donna went to Italy.

Who went to Italy?

Jacob and Donna did. Jacob and Donna went to Italy.

Did Jerry go to Italy?

No, not Jerry.

Did Jacob go to Italy?

Yes, that's right. Jacob went to Italy.



Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

Did Donna go to Italy?

Well, yes, she did. Jacob and Donna went to Italy.

Where did Jacob and Donna go?

Italy, they went to Italy.

Did Jacob and Donna go to France or Italy?

Italy, they went to Italy.

Did Jacob and Donna go to France?

No, they didn't go to France.

Did Jacob and Donna go to Italy?

Yes, that's correct, that's where they went. Jacob and Donna went to Italy.

and they went to a car race.

Did they go to a car race?

Yes, they did. They went to a car race.

What did they do?

They went to a car race.

Did they wash a car or go to a car race?

That's right; they went to a car race.

Did they wash a car?

No, they didn't wash a car.

Did they go to a car race?



Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, *they did. They went to a car race.*

Where did they go?

To a car race, they went to a car race.

So did they go to a football game or a car race?

To a car race, they went to a car race.

Did they go to a football game?

No, they didn't go to a football game.

Did they go to a car race?

Yes, yes, that's where they went. They went to a car race.

A race car driver looked at Jacob.

Did a race car driver look at Jacob?

Yes, yes, he did. A race car driver looked at Jacob.

What did a race car driver do?

He looked at Jacob.

Did a race car driver drink a beer or look at Jacob?

He looked at Jacob.

Who looked at Jacob?

A race car driver. A race car driver looked at Jacob.

Did a teacher or a race car driver look at Jacob?



Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

A race car driver. It was a race car driver who looked at Jacob.

Did a teacher look at Jacob?

No, I don't think it was a teacher; a teacher didn't look at Jacob.

Did a race car driver look at Jacob?

Yes, yes, that's correct. A race car driver looked at Jacob.

Who did a race car driver look at? Did he look at Jacob's sister?

No, Jacob's sister wasn't there. He didn't look at Jacob's sister.

Did a race car driver look at Jacob?

Yes, yes, he did. A race car driver looked at Jacob.

"Hippies are bad drivers," he said.

Did he say that hippies are bad drivers?

Yes, yes, he did. That's what the race car driver said. He said, "Hippies are bad drivers."

Did he say that hippies are good drivers?

No, he did not say that hippies are good drivers.

Did he say that people with long hair are bad drivers?

Well, yes, he did. He said that hippies are bad drivers and a hippie is a person with long hair so when he said hippies are bad drivers he meant people with long hair are bad drivers.

"You are judging a book by its cover," said Jacob.

Did Jacob tell him he was judging a book by its cover?

Yes, yes, Jacob said, "You are judging a book by its cover."

Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

What did Jacob tell him he was doing?

Well, he told him he was judging a book by its cover.

Did Jacob say that he was deciding what something was like by how it looks?

Yes, yes, that's correct. Jacob said, "You are judging a book by its cover," which means you are deciding what something is like by how it looks.

Did Jacob say that the race car driver was judging a book by its cover?

Yes, that's who he was talking about. He was talking about the race car driver when he said, "You are judging a book by its cover."

Later that day, Jacob and Donna won the race.

Did Jacob and Donna win the race later that day?

Yes, that's right. Later that day Jacob and Donna won the race.

What did Jacob and Donna do later that day?

They won the race.

Did Jacob and Donna eat pizza or win the race later that day?

Jacob and Donna won the race.

Did Jacob and Donna eat pizza?

No, they didn't eat pizza.

Did Jacob and Donna win the race?

Yes, yes, they did.

When did Jacob and Donna win the race?



Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

Later that day, they won the race later that day.

Did Jacob and Donna win the race the next day or later that day?

Later that day, they won the race later that day.

Did Jacob and Donna win the race the next day?

No, it wasn't the next day.

Did Jacob and Donna win the race later that day?

Yes, yes, they did. Later that day Jacob and Donna won the race.

It was a bonding experience.

Was it a bonding experience?

Yes, yes, it was. It was a bonding experience.

Was it something that brought them closer together?

Well, yes, it was. It was a bonding experience and a bonding experience is something that brings people closer together.

Was it something that brought Jacob and his sister closer together?

No, not Jacob and his sister.

Was it something that brought Jacob and Donna closer together?

Yes, it was something that brought Jacob and Donna closer together. It was a bonding experience for Jacob and Donna.

When Jacob looks back on the race, it makes him smile.

When Jacob looks back on the race, does it make him smile?

Grateful Dead Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, it does. When he looks back on the race, it makes him smile.

Does it make Jacob cry or smile when he looks back on the race?

Smile, it makes him smile.

Does it make Jacob cry when he looks back on the race?

No, it doesn't make him cry.

Does it make Jacob smile when he looks back on the race?

Yes, yes, that's correct. It makes him smile.

Does it make Jacob smile when he thinks about the race?

Yes, it makes him smile when he looks back on the race which means it makes him smile when he thinks about the race.

Does Jacob smile when he looks back on the race?

Yes, he does. When Jacob looks back on the race, it makes him smile.

* * * * *

Okay, so that brings us to the end of our story. Now, please try to tell this story by yourself. Remember to use the vocabulary and the idioms that we discussed in the story. The vocabulary and the idioms that we discussed were "travel around," "follow through," "jump to conclusions," "flake," "hippie," "judging a book by its cover," "bonding experience," and "looks back on." Okay so good luck telling the story and if you need to listen to this lesson again, make sure you do so.

Okay, thanks. We'll see you next time.



Grateful Dead POV Lesson

Hello and welcome to the point of view stories for “Grateful Dead”. Today we will hear the story from the mini-story lesson “Grateful Dead” and we will tell it from different points of view. In each story either the time will change or the person telling the story will change. So let’s start by telling the story as if it is happening right now, or in the present. Alright, let’s start.

* * * * *

Jacob has really long purple hair. His hair is 10 feet long.

Jacob has a dolphin named Donna. Jacob and Donna like to race cars.

“I’m going to travel around Italy. There are a lot of car races in Italy,” Jacob says to his sister.

His sister says he will not follow through. Jacob tells her she is jumping to conclusions. “I’m not a flake,” says Jacob.

So Jacob and Donna go to Italy and they go to a car race. A race car driver looks at Jacob. “Hippies are bad drivers,” he says. “You are judging a book by its cover,” says Jacob.

Later that day, Jacob and Donna win the race. It’s a bonding experience.

When Jacob looks back on the race, it makes him smile.

* * * * *

Okay, so that’s the end of the story being told as if it is happening right now. Now let’s hear the story as if it happened three years ago. So let’s start.

* * * * *

Three years ago Jacob had really long purple hair. His hair was 10 feet long.

Jacob had a dolphin named Donna. Jacob and Donna liked to race cars.

“I’m going to travel around Italy. There are a lot of car races in Italy,” Jacob said to his sister.

His sister said he would not follow through. Jacob told her she was jumping to conclusions. “I’m not a flake,” said Jacob.

So Jacob and Donna went to Italy and they went to a car race. A race car driver looked at Jacob.



Grateful Dead POV Lesson

"Hippies are bad drivers," he said. "You are judging a book by its cover," said Jacob.

Later that day, Jacob and Donna won the race. It was a bonding experience.

When Jacob looked back on the race, it made him smile.

* * * * *

Okay, so that is the story as if it already happened. Now let's hear the story as if it will happen in the future. So we will think of the story happening, say, two years from now. Okay.

* * * * *

Two years from now Jacob is gonna have really long purple hair. His hair'll be 10 feet long.

Jacob'll have a dolphin named Donna. Jacob and Donna will like to race cars.

"I'm gonna travel around Italy. There are a lot of car races in Italy," Jacob'll say to his sister.

His sister'll say he will not follow through. Jacob's gonna tell her that she is jumping to conclusions.

Jacob will say, "I am not a flake."

So Jacob and Donna will go to Italy and they will go to a car race. A race car driver will look at Jacob. "Hippies are bad drivers," he'll say. Then Jacob'll say , "You are judging a book by its cover."

Later that day, Jacob and Donna will win the race. It's gonna be a bonding experience.

When Jacob looks back on the race, it'll make him smile.

* * * * *

Okay so that's the end of this version of the story where we talk about the events that are going to happen or events that will happen. As I've pointed out before you can see that we sometimes will combine words when speaking. For example, "he will say" will be shortened to, "he'll say". You see the "he" and the "will" are combined.

Alright now let's hear the story from Jacob's point of view. So in this version Jacob is actually telling the story. Here goes.

Grateful Dead POV Lesson

* * * * *

I used to have really long purple hair. My hair was 10 feet long.

I used to have a dolphin named Donna. Donna and I liked to race cars.

“I’m going to travel around Italy. There are a lot of car races in Italy,” I said to my sister.

My sister said I would not follow through. I told her she was jumping to conclusions.

“I’m not a flake,” I said.

So Donna and I went to Italy and we went to a car race. A race car driver looked at me. “Hippies are bad drivers,” he said. “You are judging a book by its cover,” I said.

Later that day, Donna and I won the race. It was a bonding experience.

When I looked back on the race, it made me smile.

* * * * *

Alright so that’s the end of the point of view stories for the lesson “Grateful Dead”. Now go back and listen to each version and try to tell the story on your own. You should see how the verbs change and how other vocabulary changes also in each version. Don’t worry if you’re having trouble. Just take your time and relax. Learning a language should be fun. And each time you listen you’ll understand more. Okay, that’s all for now. See ya next time.



Grateful Dead Vocabulary Lesson

Hello and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “The Grateful Dead.” In this conversation Joe is talking about a friend of his named Tim who is thinking about writing a book. The book would be about his experiences following the Grateful Dead from city to city during some of their different tours. The conversation then goes on to include Joe talking about some of his experiences following the Grateful Dead.

Alright, so let's begin.

* * * * *

Joe starts off the conversation by saying, “Hey, did Tim call while I was out?”

While I was out. This means.... Or what Joe is saying here is, when I was not there. While I was out. For example: When I got home, Joe told me that he cooked dinner while I was out. While I was out.

And then I go on to say, “No, he didn’t, why?” And Joe says, “Well, he told me he had an idea he wanted to run by me.”

Wanted to run by me. What this means is, wanted to tell me about. He had an idea he wanted to tell me about. For example: AJ had an idea about teaching that he wanted to run by me. Wanted to run by me.

So Joe goes on to say, “So, uh, I figured he might’ve called.”

Figured means thought.

And then I say, “What, what’s the idea?” And Joe says, “Uh, well, he’s actually thinking about writing a book about, uh, the time he spent on the road with the Grateful Dead.”

On the road means traveling. For example: I am going traveling in Africa soon. I am excited to go on the road. On the road. The Grateful Dead. This is an American rock and roll band. An example using the Grateful Dead would be: Joe’s favorite band is the Grateful Dead. He loves their music. The Grateful Dead.

And then I say, “Oh, that would be a great topic for a book.”

Great topic means good idea for a book.

And I go on to say, “You know, whenever you speak to me about the Grateful Dead, I’m all ears.”

I’m all ears. What this means is, I am listening or I listen. I’m all ears. For example: When the teacher spoke, the students were all ears. I’m all ears, or all ears.

Grateful Dead Vocabulary Lesson

And then Joe says, “Yeah, I mean, I, when I look back on the years I spent following them around...”

Look back on. What this means is to think about something that has happened. Look back on. For example: It is fun to look back on the days I lived in Thailand. Look back on.

And Joe goes on to say, “jeez, I, I followed ‘em all over the place.”

Or what he’s saying is, I followed them everywhere.

“But, I mean, that was some of the most fun I’ve ever had in my life I think.” And then I say, “I can imagine.”

What I’m saying is, I can believe that. I can believe.

And Joe says, “I mean, y’know, first off...”

Or first of all...

“y’know, they’re my favorite band.” And I say, “Right.” And Joe says, “And, uh, second, the other thing that really drew me to the scene was the fact that there was just this traveling, uh, group of people that followed them everywhere.”

Drew me to the scene. What this means... What Joe is saying here is, it made me interested in something. Really drew me to the scene. Made me interested.

And Joe goes on to say, “It was like, almost like a bazaar sort of...”

Bazaar is... in this case, is a traveling marketplace where goods and services were exchanged or sold.

And then I say, “Mm-huh...” And Joe says, “y’know...” And I say again, “mm-huh...” Then Joe says, “and...” And then I say, “Well, it’s definitely a subculture of America.”

Subculture is a small part of a large group.

And Joe says, “Oh yeah, yeah, I mean some people even called it a cult.” And then he laughs and says, “y’know...”

A cult. This is a group of people who have strong beliefs about something.

And then I laugh. And Joe says, “And, uh, it was so unique at the time...”

Grateful Dead Vocabulary Lesson

Unique meaning different.

He goes on to say, “uh, y’know... Because there really wasn’t anything else like it. I mean you had all these hippies driving around...”

Now a hippie, or hippies, is a person, or people, with long hair. Well, actually, it’s not all people with long hair. Usually hippies don’t believe in war. They want peace. John Lennon of the Beatles was a hippie. Hippie.

And Joe goes on to say, “I mean you had all these hippies driving around, following the band from city to city. And, uh, y’know, when you’re on the road driving from one place to the next, you’d see the same people. You’d see the same cars, all these VW buses drivin’.”

VW. This is short for Volkswagen. So a Volkswagen bus is a small German made bus.

And Joe goes on to say, “and, uh, y’know, uh, people supported themselves...”

Supported means made money.

And he says, “uh, by, uh, selling things in the parking lots at the concerts.” And I say, “Mm-huh.” And then Joe says, “Like, a lot of people would like make jewelry and sell it. A lot of people would sell, uh, clothes that they made, um... Another, uh, favorite amongst people was to...”

Amongst means with.

And he goes on to say, “uh, just, uh, sell beer or to make food. And that’s what I actually did a lot of the times. I’d make sandwiches...”

A sandwich is two pieces of bread with food in between. This is something that is commonly eaten in western countries.

And then Joe goes on to say, “or I’d sell beer in order to help, y’know, defray the cost of the tickets.”

Defray means to pay for. Defray. An example of defray is: I got a job at the café to help defray the cost of my car. Defray.

And then I say, “Uh-huh.” And Joe says, “Because it could get a little expensive, y’know.” And then I say, “Right.” And Joe says, “But, y’know, the other strange thing is that you’d have this, like large circus...”



Grateful Dead Vocabulary Lesson

A **circus** is a group of performers or artists.

So he says, "you'd have this large circus traveling essentially..."

Essentially or basically.

"**following the band. And it was all these, like, hippies. People with like really long hair and beards and..."**

A beard is hair that grows down the sides of a man's face and also across the chin of a man's face.

So Joe goes on to say, "and like, y'know... Really sometimes like people who hadn't like showered for days."

Showered. Or cleaned their body for days. Clean their bodies.

And Joe sayd, "Because they were just traveling with the, y'know...." And then I say, "Yeah." And Joe says, "around, following the band." And I say, "Yeah." And Joe says, "Because, you know, especially during the summer..."

Or, even more during the summer.

"you'd just stay at campgrounds, y'know?"

A campground is a place to sleep in a tent in the woods.

And Joe goes on to say, "So you'd camp and they might not have a shower, y'know...." And then I say, "Right." And I laugh. And Joe says, "I remember like, so many times washing my hair, like, under a, y'know, a faucet in a sink of a bathroom."

A faucet is the metal part of a sink where the water comes out.

And Joe goes on to say, "Or, y'know, under a hose somewhere." And he laughs.

A hose is made from rubber and it's usually used outside to water plants.

And then I just laugh. And Joe says, "And having someone help me because, y'know, I had the long hair." And I laugh again. And Joe says, "Oh man, and, uh, y'know the other thing is, you'd travel around."



Grateful Dead Vocabulary Lesson

Travel around means to go from one place to another place. Travel around. For example, when I go to a country for the first time, I do not like to stay in one place. I prefer to travel around.

And Joe goes on to say, “And sometimes be driving through these really small conservative towns.”

Conservative means people who do not like change. So these towns have people in them who do not like change.

And Joe goes on to say, “and you can just imagine...”

Or you can just think.

“what it must have been like from their standpoint.”

So what he’s saying is you can imagine, or you can think what it must have been like from their eyes. Or from their view. From what they were seeing. Their standpoint.

And then Joe says, “I mean they see these people who don’t look anything like them. I mean....” And then I say, “Right.” And Joe says, “they’re all clean-cut looking...”

Clean-cut means having short hair and being dressed nicely. Clean-cut. For example: Derrick used to be clean-cut but now he has long hair. Clean-cut.

And Joe goes on to say, “these people who live in this town. And then you have this pack of like, looks like bohemian gypsies...”

Pack is just a group. A group of people. Bohemian gypsies. These are traveling artists. Bohemian gypsies.

And then I say, “Uh-huh.” And Joe says, “traveling through town.” And then I say, “Yeah, that’s a good description.”

Or that’s a good way to say it.

And Joe says, “Y’know, so, y’know a lot of the times the cops in the town would hassle you.”

Cops. Cops are police. An example of cops would be: The cops caught the bank robber. Cops. And hassle means to bother.

And Joe says, “Y’know....” And I say, “Oh, I’m sure.” And then Joe says, “for no good reason, y’know.” And then I say, “Yeah.” And Joe says, “I think that they would just suddenly jump to



Grateful Dead Vocabulary Lesson

conclusions..."

So suddenly means quickly. Quickly jump to conclusions about. Jump to conclusions. This means to decide something without knowing about it. Jump to conclusions. For example: Sara always jumps to conclusions. She makes decisions before learning all the information about something. Jump to conclusions.

And Joe goes on to say, "about, y'know, what you were doing. Because you look different than them, y'know. They were totally..."

Or they were completely.

"like judging the book by its cover."

Judging the book by its cover. This means deciding what something is like by how it looks. Judging the book by its cover. For example: When I was 14 years old I had a friend with purple hair. When my mom saw him she did not like him. I told her that she was just judging the book by its cover because she did not even know him. Judging the book by its cover.

And then I say, "Right." And Joe says, "So, um, yeah but, oh my gosh, y'know... When I look back on those times, I just met so many people. I mean sometimes I would meet somebody. And like, say the middle of the country like Kansas, right?"

Country meaning America. He'd meet someone in the middle of America. Kansas is a state in the middle of America.

And then I said, "Uh-huh." And Joe says, "And then, like, a year or two later, I'd be, say, in Seattle."

Seattle is a city in the northwestern state called Washington.

And Joe goes on to say, "And I'd run into the same people...the same person."

Run into. This means to unexpectedly see someone. Run into. For example: When I visit my parents I usually run into my uncle because he lives in the same town. Run into.

And then I say, "Oh my god, it's such a small world, huh?"

It's such a small world. Or it's a very small world. It's a small world. This means when you are surprised to see another person you know at a place that you did not expect to see them. It's a small world. For example: One time Joe was in New York and he saw his cousin on the train. Then he said to her, "Wow, it's a small world."



Grateful Dead Vocabulary Lesson

And Joe says, "Yeah, I know. But that was another great thing. Like I met so many people and became such good friends with so many of those people. They're, some of these people are like my closest friends to this day, like Tim. Y'know?." And then I say, "Yeah." And Joe says, "So it was really something that..."

Or really amazing.

"that, uh, it was like a community, y'know."

Community here means a group of people living and traveling together.

And then I say, "I was going to say, too, it's a very, it sounds like it was a very bonding experience."

Too, meaning also. So, I was going to say also. Bonding experience. This is something that makes people become closer. Bonding experience. For example: When my mom used to read stories to me when I was a child, it was a bonding experience. Bonding experience.

Then Joe says, "Oh, yeah, totally. Like it's funny, if you're a deadhead and you meet another deadhead..."

Deadhead. This is a fan of the music band the Grateful Dead. Or it's someone who likes the music band the Grateful Dead. An example of deadhead is: Joe's favorite band is the Grateful Dead. He is a deadhead. Deadhead.

And Joe goes on to say, "it's like... There's just like, uh, almost, a hidden language that you speak."

What Joe is talking about with hidden languages... an unspoken language or language that is not spoken because there is an understanding between deadheads.

And then I just laugh. And then Joe says, "Y'know, it's crazy."

Or he's saying, it's unbelievable.

And Joe goes on to say, "And, y'know, the, the, the fans were such rabid fans."

So what he's saying is they were very rabid fans. Rabid fans. These are people who really like something. So they are rabid fans of whatever they like. For example: My friend Tom is a rabid football fan. He really likes football. Rabid fans. Or, in this example, rabid fan.



Grateful Dead Vocabulary Lesson

And Joe says, “I mean, y’know, a lot of deadheads... The only music they would listen to was the music of the Grateful Dead.” And then I say, “Wow. I could see why people would think that was a bit cultish.”

And what I’m saying is that that was like a cult.

Joe says, “Yeah, totally.” And then I say, “Well, do you think that, um, Tim will actually follow through with writing this book?”

Follow through. Or follow through with something. This means to do something. Follow through with something. For example: I do not think that Greg will follow through on building a house. He is too busy. Follow through.

And Joe says, “I don’t know, your guess is as good as mine.”

Your guess is as good as mine. This means I do not know. For example: I asked my mother what time my father would be home and she said, “Your guess is as good as mine. He comes home at a different time every night.” Your guess is as good as mine.

And then Joe goes on to say, “Y’know, he can be a flake sometimes.”

A flake. This is someone who says they will do something but then they decide not to do it. A flake. For example: Lindsay is a flake. She told me she would go to France with me but then she cancelled the trip. A flake.

And then I end the conversation by saying, “Yeah, I know.”

* * * * *

Alright, I would just like to point out that in this conversation and in the other conversations you’re going to hear many words that have been shortened. Some examples from this conversation are "might've". "Might've" is short for might have. An example of might have or "might've": "I thought he *might've* called." Another word that was shortened in this conversation is "em," which is short for them. For example: "I followed 'em everywhere." Another word that's been shortened is "y'know". "Y'know" is short for you know. For example: "Y'know, they're my favorite band." And then "drivin'"... "drivin'" is short for driving. For example: "You would see the same cars *drivin'*". You're also going to hear "uh" and "um" a lot. These are just pauses or breaks in a conversation. People sometimes say these when they're trying to think of more to say. They are filler or they don't really have any meaning. You will also hear some slang like "yeah." "Yeah" is casual or informal for yes. There are also many other words that you will hear, a lot of which are just filler or really have no meaning. So they are not needed in the conversation. Some examples in this conversation



Grateful Dead Vocabulary Lesson

are "hey," "well," "and," "oh," "like," "but," "I mean," "so," "actually," "y'know," "say," "such." There are also words that are said when I'm agreeing with Joe or he's agreeing with me. Some of these are "right," "mm-hm," "uh-huh," "yeah." There are also words that are said to show the emotion "I don't believe it." For example, or some examples of these from this conversation are, "jeez," "oh man," "oh my gosh," "oh my god," "wow."

Alright this concludes the vocabulary lesson for the conversation "The Grateful Dead." So make sure you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary and if you need to, go back. Listen to it a few times. Don't get too worried about it. Make sure you're doing it in a relaxed way, as I always say. And then when you feel ready, go on to the mini-story.

Alright, see you next time. Goodbye.



Grandmother Conversation

Kristin: Hey, how's it goin'? I'm home.

Joe: Hey, yeah, I'm in here.

Kristin: Oh. Okay.

Joe: How are you doin'?

Kristin: Pretty good.

Joe: Nice. Where you comin' from?

Kristin: I have just been **out and about** doin' some shopping. I was, uh, here in **The Mission** and then I went to **Haight Street**, just goin' to some **secondhand stores**.

Joe: Oh, okay.

Kristin: One of my favorite things to do.

Joe: Yeah, cool.

Kristin: So who are you just ge-, gettin' off the phone with?

Joe: Oh, I was speakin' to my grandmother.

Kristin: How's she doing?

Joe: Yeah, she's doin' okay. She was actually **feelin' under the weather** last week but, uh, now she's **alright**.

Kristin: Oh, did she just **have a cold** or somethin'?

Joe: Yeah, she said that there was **somethin' goin' around**. Uh, my aunt had it and my niece had it. So she might have **caught it** from one of them.

Kristin: Oh, okay.

Joe: Yeah. Y'know, speaking with my grandmother on the phone, sometimes I feel like I'm a little kid again...

Grandmother Conversation

Kristin: Yeah, why is that?

transported: taken
a stone's throw away: very close

Joe: ...I get like **transported** back to the time when we used to live close together and, uh, y'know, and I was a kid. I mean my grandparents, when I was growin' up, they lived just like **a stone's throw away** from us. Maybe like, I don't know, two miles or somethin'. So we used to...

Kristin: Wow.

Joe: ...see them all the time.

Kristin: Yeah.

awesome: very good; great

Joe: Yeah, it was **awesome**. I mean, y'know, when you're a kid one of your favorite things is to see your grandparents.

Kristin: Yeah.

escape: to get away
discipline: punishment

Joe: Y'know, it's like you get to **escape** the **discipline** of your parents for **a little bit**.

Kristin: Right.

shower you with attention: give you a lot of attention
sweets: cookies, cake, candy

Joe: And, y'know, your grandparents, they'll always **shower you with attention**. And, y'know, my grandmother would always, y'know, make us some **sweets**. And, y'know, and she was just always like, uh, always really, uh, uh, happy to see us, y'know?

luxury: good opportunity

Kristin: Uh-huh. Yeah, I never had the **luxury** of even, uh, being around one set of grandparents. My dad's parents died before I was born so I never even met them. And then my, uh, mom's parents, we lived close to them but not as close as, as you to your grandparents. I'd say it was like a twenty to thirty minute drive. And that was only until I was eight, 'coz then we moved away from Michigan to Georgia. So then it would be seein' them once a year.

fortunate: lucky

Joe: Yeah, I mean, my brothers and I were really **fortunate** to have both sets of grandparents around.

Kristin: Yeah, you were.

Grandmother Conversation

bummer: something that is not good

around us: close to us

Joe: Uh, and, uh, I mean, my, my father's parents moved down to Florida when we were like eight years old. And, y'know, that, that was a **bummer** for us at the time, uh. But at least my mom's parents lived **around us**, y'know, until we were teenagers...

Kristin: Mm-hm.

Joe: ...and we moved to Pennsylvania.

Kristin: Mm-hm.

generations before us: people in your family that are older than you

Joe: But it's uncommon these days. I mean the **generations before us** always had their family right near them.

Kristin: Right.

block: part of a street

Joe: I mean, I hear these stories from my grandmother. She says that her entire family lived in like one, y'know, on one **block**. And that wasn't uncommon. I mean, a lot of the times they would, uh, the whole family would live in the same house. Usually people didn't leave until they got married. And even if they did leave and get married, they lived just down the block.

Kristin: Well, speaking of the same block... That, that, uh, made me think of my brother. My younger brother, when he was in high school, dated this girl and her whole family lived on the same street. And I can remember thinkin' how strange that was.

Joe: Yeah, I mean, now it is.

Kristin: Yeah.

reminiscing:

remembering something that happened in the past

Joe: But back then it wasn't at all.

Kristin: Yeah, right.

church: a place to go to pray

beg: to ask for something you really want

Joe: Yeah. Oh, when I was talkin' to my grandmother, as we do a lot of the times, I was **reminiscing** with her about when I was younger. And, y'know, um, y'know, we.... Not only did we live very close to my grandparents, we all went to the same **church**. So, y'know, every Sunday afternoon we'd see them at church and we'd sit near them. And, uh, then after church was over I'd always like **beg** my parents to let

Grandmother Conversation

us go over to my grandparents' house. And, y'know, we'd go over there and eat dinner. And I'd watch baseball games with my grandfather. So that was always a lot of fun, y'know.

Kristin: Uh-huh.

Joe: It was just, y'know, just spending time with them, y'know.

Kristin: Yeah, was it...

Joe: We just had a great time.

Kristin: Was it like a big Sunday dinner?

Joe: Oh yeah, and my grandmother would cook a huge meal. And, my grandmother was an **amazing** cook. She would always cook like some amazing Italian dinner...

Kristin: Mmmmm.

Joe: ...and, y'know, we just loved goin' over there for that reason as well.

Kristin: Oh, that's great.

amazing: great



Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

Hello and welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Grandmother.”

Let's get started with the story now.

* * * * *

Carlos never ate anything but sweets. He lived just a stone's throw away from a bakery. There was also an ice cream store one block from his house. His mother used to beg him to eat vegetables but he would only eat sweets.

One day Carlos was out and about with his girlfriend Marta. First they went to a secondhand store. Then they went to a restaurant. Marta ate a salad. Carlos ate seven pieces of cake and two bowls of ice cream.

Later that day he started feeling under the weather. He thought that there was something going around so he went to the doctor.

“Getting sick is a bummer,” he said.”

“You are sick because you only eat sweets,” said the doctor.

Then the doctor told him that he must eat vegetables. So he started to eat vegetables every day.

His body got stronger and he never got sick again.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's our story. Now, as always, I will read the story again and this time I will ask you questions as I'm reading the story. Please answer the questions out loud. If you need a little more time then you can pause your mp3 player, your iPod or your computer, and then you can play again when you're ready to answer the question, or after you've answered the question. And, of course, if you do not feel like answering the question out loud then you can just listen if you wish.

Okay, let's get started.

* * * * *

Carlos never ate anything but sweets.

Did Carlos ever eat anything other than sweets?



Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

No, he didn't. He never ate anything but sweets so he never ate anything other than sweets.

Did Carlos ever eat bananas?

No, Carlos did not ever eat bananas. Bananas are not sweets.

Did Carlos only eat sweets?

Yes, that's true. He never ate anything but sweets, which means he only ate sweets.

Did Carlos eat cake?

Yes, he probably did. When you say sweets you mean food that has a lot of sugar in it like cake and candy and ice cream, things like that, so when you ask did Carlos eat cake, we can say yes, he probably did eat cake.

Did Carlos eat candy?

Yes, he probably ate candy. When you say sweets, that includes candy.

Who only ate sweets? Did Carlos or Kenny only eat sweets?

Carlos, Carlos only ate sweets. Carlos never ate anything but sweets.

What did Carlos eat? Did he eat rice?

No, he didn't eat rice. Rice is not something you would call a sweet.

Did he eat bread?

No, again, bread is not something that you would consider something that is sweet.

Did he eat sweets?

Yes, he did. He ate sweets. He never ate anything but sweets.

Did Carlos eat cake and candy?

Yes, he did. Sweets includes cake and candy so you could say that Carlos ate cake and candy.

Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

He lived just a stone's throw away from a bakery.

Did he live just a stone's throw away from a bakery?

Yes, he did. He lived just a stone's throw away from a bakery.

Did he live very close to a bakery?

Yes, yes, he did. He lived just a stone's throw away. When you say something is a stone's throw away, that means that it's very close. A stone's throw away means very close to.

Did he live close to a place to buy cake and cookies?

Yes, yes, he did. He lived just a stone's throw away from a bakery and you can buy cake and cookies at a bakery, so he lived very close to a place to buy cake and cookies.

Who lived just a stone's throw away from a bakery? Did Carlos or Charlie live just a stone's throw away from a bakery?

Carlos, Carlos lived just a stone's throw away from a bakery.

Did Charlie live just a stone's throw away from a bakery?

No, it wasn't Charlie.

Did Carlos live very close to a bakery?

Yes, Carlos lived very close to a bakery. He lived just a stone's throw away from a bakery.

What did he live a stone's throw away from? A bakery or a movie theatre?

A bakery, he lived just a stone's throw away from a bakery.

Did he live close to a bakery?

Yes, he did. He lived just a stone's throw away from a bakery, which is the same as saying he lived close to a bakery. A stone's throw away means close to, or very close to.

Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

There was also an ice cream store one block from his house.

Was there an ice cream store one block from his house?

Yes, *there was. There was also an ice cream store one block from his house.*

What was one block from his house? Was there a café or an ice cream store one block from his house?

An ice cream store, there was an ice cream store one block from his house.

Was there an ice cream store one street from his house?

Yes, *there was. There was an ice cream store one block from his house, which is the same thing as saying there was an ice cream store one street from his house. A block refers to a street or even part of a street.*

Where was the ice cream store? Was it one mile or one block from his house?

One block, it was one block from his house.

Was the ice cream store one street from his house?

Yes, *it was. It was one block from his house, which is the same thing as saying it was one street from his house.*

Was the ice cream store one block from the library?

No, it wasn't one block from the library.

Was the ice cream store one block from his house?

Yes, it was. It was one block from his house.

Was the ice cream store one street from his house?

Yes, yes, *it was. It was one block from his house, which is the same thing as saying it was one street from his house. A block is the same thing as a street or a part of a street.*

His mother used to beg him to eat vegetables

Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

Did his mother beg him to eat vegetables?

Yes, she did. She begged him to eat vegetables.

What did his mother used to do? Did she used to clean the kitchen or beg him to eat vegetables?

Beg him to eat vegetables, she used to beg him to eat vegetables.

Did she used to beg him to eat vegetables?

Yes, she did. She used to beg him to eat vegetables.

Did she used to ask him to eat vegetables?

Yes, that's true, if you beg someone that means you are asking him.

Did she really want him to eat vegetables?

Yes, she did. If you beg someone to do something that means you really want them to do something so his mother used to beg him to eat vegetables, which means she used to ask him to eat vegetables because she really wanted him to eat vegetables. To beg someone means to ask them to do something that you really want them to do.

Who used to beg him? Did his sister or his mother used to beg him?

His mother, his mother used to beg him.

Who did his mother used to beg? Did she used to beg Carlos or Charlie?

Carlos, she used to beg Carlos.

What did she beg him to do? Did she beg him to take a shower or eat vegetables?

Eat vegetables, she begged him to eat vegetables.

What did his mother beg him to eat? Did she beg him to eat rice?

No, she didn't beg him to eat rice.

Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

Did his mother beg him to eat vegetables?

Yes, she did. His mother used to beg him to eat vegetables, which means she begged him to eat vegetables.

Did his mother ask him to eat vegetables?

Yes, she did. If she begged him that means that she asked him to eat vegetables.

Did his mother really want him to eat vegetables?

Yes, she did. She begged him, which means that she asked him to do something that she really wanted him to do. She wanted him to eat vegetables so she begged him to do it.

but he would only eat sweets.

Would he only eat sweets?

Yes, he would only eat sweets.

Would he eat things that were not sweets?

No, he wouldn't. He would only eat sweets.

Would he eat carrots?

No, he would not eat carrots. You would not call carrots a sweet.

Would he eat chicken?

No, he wouldn't. Chicken is not a sweet.

Would he eat cake?

Yes, he would. Cake is a sweet, so he would eat cake.

Who would only eat sweets? Would Carlos only eat sweets?

Yes, that's correct, Carlos. Carlos would only eat sweets.



Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

Would Carlos eat candy?

Yes, he would. Candy is a sweet and he would only eat sweets so he would eat candy. He would also eat cake but he would not eat chicken, he would not eat carrots, he would eat ice cream also, because that's a sweet also.

One day Carlos was out and about with his girlfriend Marta.

Was Carlos out and about with his girlfriend Marta?

Yes, he was. He was out and about with his girlfriend Marta.

What was Carlos doing? Was he out and about with his girlfriend or watching television at home?

He was out and about with his girlfriend. He was not at home watching television.

Was he going from place to place with his girlfriend?

Yes, yes, he was. He was out and about with his girlfriend, which is the same thing as saying he was going place to place with his girlfriend. When you are out and about, that means you are going place to place.

Who was out and about with his girlfriend? Was Carlos or Charlie out and about with his girlfriend?

Carlos, Carlos was out and about with his girlfriend.

Was Carlos going place to place with his girlfriend?

Yes, he was. He was out and about with his girlfriend, which means he was going place to place with his girlfriend.

Who was Carlos out and about with? His girlfriend or his sister?

His girlfriend, he was out and about with his girlfriend.

What is Carlos' girlfriend's name? Is it Sara or Marta?

Marta, his girlfriend's name is Marta.

Was Carlos out and about with Marta?

Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *that's true*. Carlos was out and about with Marta.

Was Carlos going place to place with Marta?

Yes, yes, *he was*. He was out and about with Marta, which means he was going place to place with Marta. Out and about means going place to place.

First they went to a secondhand store.

Did they go to a secondhand store?

Yes, *they did*. They went to a secondhand store.

What did they do? Did they drive to the beach or go to a secondhand store?

They went to a secondhand store. They didn't drive to the beach

Who went to a secondhand store? Did Carlos' mom go to a secondhand store?

No, *Carlos' mom didn't go*.

Did Carlos and Marta go to a secondhand store?

Yes, *they did*. Carlos and Marta went to a secondhand store.

Did Carlos and Marta go to a store that sells used clothing?

Yes, *they did*. They went to a secondhand store and a secondhand store is a store that sells used clothing. Secondhand stores also sometimes sell other used items.

Where did they go? Did they go to the library or a secondhand store?

A secondhand store, *they went to a secondhand store*.

Did they go to a store that sells used clothing?

Yes, *they did*. They went to a secondhand store and a secondhand store sells used clothing. It also sells other used items.



Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

Then they went to a restaurant.

Did they go to a restaurant?

Yes, yes, they did. They went to a restaurant.

What did they do?

They went to a restaurant.

Who went to a restaurant?

Carlos and Marta, Carlos and Marta went to a restaurant.

Did Carlos and Marta go to the beach?

No, they didn't go to the beach.

Where did they go? Did they go to a restaurant or a church?

A restaurant, they went to a restaurant.

Marta ate a salad.

Did Marta eat a salad?

Yes, she did. Marta ate a salad.

What did Marta do?

She ate a salad. Marta ate a salad.

Did she take a shower or eat a salad?

Eat a salad, she ate a salad.

Who ate a salad? Did Will Smith eat a salad?



Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

No, Will Smith did not eat a salad.

Did Marta eat a salad?

Yes, she did. Marta ate a salad.

What did Marta eat? Did she eat a piece of bread?

No, she didn't eat a piece of bread.

Did she eat a salad?

Yes, she did. Marta ate a salad.

Carlos ate seven pieces of cake and two bowls of ice cream.

Did Carlos eat seven pieces of cake and two bowls of ice cream?

Yes, he did. Carlos ate seven pieces of cake and two bowls of ice cream.

What did Carlos do?

Well, he ate. He ate seven pieces of cake and two bowls of ice cream.

Who ate? Did Carlos or his mother eat?

Carlos did. Carlos ate.

What did Carlos eat? Did he eat two bowls of soup?

No, he didn't eat two bowls of soup.

Did he eat seven pieces of cake?

Yes, he did. He ate seven pieces of cake.

Did he eat two bowls of ice cream?

Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he also ate two bowls of ice cream.

How many pieces of cake did he eat? Did he eat seven or eleven?

Seven, he ate seven pieces of cake.

How many bowls of ice cream did he eat? Did he eat two or four?

Two, he ate two bowls of ice cream.

Did Carlos only eat sweets?

Yes, he did. He ate seven pieces of cake and two bowls of ice cream and both cake and ice cream are sweets.

Did Carlos eat a lot of sweets?

Yes, he definitely ate a lot of sweets. Seven pieces of cake and two bowls of ice cream, I would say that that is a lot of sweets.

Later that day he started feeling under the weather.

Did he start feeling under the weather later that day?

Yes, he did. Later that day he started feeling under the weather.

How did he feel later that day? Did he feel under the weather?

Yes, yes, he did. He started feeling under the weather.

Did he feel sick?

Yes, he did. He felt under the weather, which is the same thing as saying he felt sick. Feeling under the weather means to be sick.

Who felt under the weather? Did Carlos or Marta feel under the weather?

Carlos, Carlos felt under the weather.

Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

Did Carlos feel sick?

Yes, he did. When you're feeling under the weather, that means that you are feeling sick.

When did he feel under the weather? Did he feel under the weather later that day or later that week?

Later that day, later that day he started feeling under the weather.

Did he feel sick later that day?

Yes, yes, he did. He was feeling under the weather which is the same thing as saying he was feeling sick.

He thought that there was something going around

Did he think that something was going around?

Yes, he did. He thought that there was something going around.

What did he think? Did he think that something was going around or that his brother was going to school?

He thought that something was going around.

Did he think that people he knew were sick?

Yes, that's correct. He thought that there was something going around, which is the same thing as saying he thought that people he knew were sick. If you say something is going around, that means that the people you know are sick or you know people who are sick.

Who thought that there was something going around? Did Carlos or Clint think that there was something going around?

Carlos, Carlos thought that there was something going around.

Did Carlos think that there was something going around?

Yes, he did. Carlos thought that there was something going around.

Did Carlos think that people he knew were sick?

Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, Carlos thought that he knew people who were sick, which is the same thing as saying something was going around. Something going around means that you know people who are sick.

so he went to the doctor.

Did he go to the doctor?

Yes, *he did. He went to the doctor.*

What did he do? Did he eat more cake or go to the doctor?

Go to the doctor, he went to the doctor.

Where did he go? Did he go to a football game?

No, he didn't go to a football game.

Did he go to Paris?

No, he didn't go to Paris.

Did he go to the doctor?

Yes, *that's correct. He went to the doctor.*

“Getting sick is a bummer,” he said.”

Did he say that getting sick is a bummer?

Yes, he did. He said that getting sick is a bummer.

Did he say that getting sick is something that is not good?

Yes, yes, that's correct. He said that getting sick is a bummer, which is the same thing as saying getting sick is something that is not good. A bummer is something that is not good.

Did he say that getting sick is bad?

Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did. He said that it is a bummer, which is the same thing as saying that getting sick is bad.

Who said, “Getting sick is a bummer”? Did Carlos or the doctor say that getting sick is a bummer?

Carlos did. Carlos said, “Getting sick is a bummer.”

What is a bummer? Is eating cake or getting sick a bummer?

Getting sick, getting sick is a bummer.

Does Carlos like getting sick?

No, he doesn’t. He said, “Getting sick is a bummer,” which means he does not like getting sick.

“You are sick because you only eat sweets,” said the doctor.

Did the doctor say “You are sick because you only eat sweets”?

Yes, he did. The doctor said, “You are sick because you only eat sweets.”

Who was the doctor talking to? Was he talking to Carlos or Charlie?

Carlos, he was talking to Carlos.

Is Carlos sick because he only eats sweets?

Yes, he is. The doctor told him that he was sick because he only eats sweets.

Who was sick? Is Carlos’ mother sick?

No, it’s not Carlos’ mother.

Is Carlos sick?

Yes, Carlos is sick.

Why is Carlos sick? Is he sick because something is going around?

No, that’s what he thought, but that’s not why he’s sick.

Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

Is he sick because people he knows are sick?

No, that's not why. That's the same thing as asking if he is sick because something is going around, and he's not sick because something is going around, so then he's not sick because he knows people who are sick.

Is he sick because he only eats sweets?

Yes, yes, that's correct. The doctor told him that he is sick because he only eats sweets.

Then the doctor told him that he must eat vegetables.

Did the doctor tell him that he must eat vegetables?

Yes, he did. The doctor told him that he must eat vegetables.

What did the doctor tell him? Did he tell him to exercise?

No, he didn't tell him to exercise.

Did he tell him that he must eat vegetables?

Yes, that's what he told him, he told him that he must eat vegetables.

Who told him that he must eat vegetables?

The doctor, the doctor told him that he must eat vegetables.

Did the doctor or Marta tell him that he must eat vegetables?

The doctor, the doctor told him that he must eat vegetables.

Who did the doctor tell? Did the doctor tell Carlos or Charlie?

Carlos, the doctor told Carlos.

What must he eat? Must he eat sweets or vegetables?

Vegetables, he must eat vegetables.

Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

Why did the doctor tell Carlos that he must eat vegetables?

Well, Carlos was sick because he only eats sweets, so the doctor wants him to eat vegetables.

So he started to eat vegetables every day.

Did he start to eat vegetables every day?

Yes, he did. He started to eat vegetables every day.

What did he start to do?

To eat vegetables every day.

Who started to eat vegetables every day? Did Carlos or the doctor start to eat vegetables every day?

Carlos, Carlos did. Carlos started to eat vegetables every day.

What did he start to eat? Did he start to eat sweets or vegetables every day?

Vegetables, he started to eat vegetables every day.

Did he start to eat bread every day?

No, not bread.

How often did he eat vegetables? Did he eat them only on Saturdays?

No, he ate them more often than that.

Did he eat them every day?

Yes, yes, he did. He ate them every day.

Why did he start to eat vegetables?

Well, he started to eat vegetables because the doctor told him that he must eat vegetables.

Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

His body got stronger and he never got sick again.

Did his body get stronger?

Yes, it did. His body got stronger.

Did his body get weaker?

No, it didn't get weaker.

Did he ever get sick again?

No, he didn't. He never got sick again.

Whose body got stronger? Did the doctor's or Carlos' body get stronger?

Carlos', Carlos' body got stronger.

How many more times did he get sick?

Well, he never got sick again so you could say that he did not ever get sick again so zero times.

Who never got sick again? Did Carlos never get sick again?

Yes, that's correct. Carlos never got sick again.

Why did he never get sick again? Was it because he started to eat vegetables and his body got stronger?

Yes, that's why. His body got stronger and he never got sick again and his body got stronger because he started to eat vegetables every day.

* * * *

Okay, so that brings us to the end of our story, which means we are now at the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation "Grandmother." Now, please tell the story all by yourself. You do not need to memorize every word, but you should use the idioms and vocabulary words that we discussed. These are the ones we discussed: "sweet," "beg," "a stone's throw away," "block," "out and about," "secondhand stores," "feeling under the weather," "something going around," and "bummer." So now please tell the story on your own



Grandmother Mini-Story Lesson

using these idioms and vocabulary words. And remember, if you need to listen to this lesson more times, please do so. Listen to it as many times as you need to.

Okay, thanks a lot and we'll see you later.

Grandmother POV Lesson

Hi. You are listening to the point of view stories for "Grandmother". I'll be telling three different versions of the story from the mini-story lesson "Grandmother". Each story will either be told from a different point in time or told by a different person. Alright, let's get started by telling the story as if it is happening right now, or in the present.

* * * * *

Carlos never eats anything but sweets. He lives just a stone's throw away from a bakery. There's also an ice cream store one block from his house. His mother begs him to eat vegetables but he only eats sweets.

One day Carlos is out and about with his girlfriend Marta. First they go to a secondhand store. Then they go to a restaurant. Marta eats a salad. Carlos eats seven pieces of cake and two bowls of ice cream.

Later that night he starts feeling under the weather. He thinks that there is something going around so he goes to the doctor.

"Getting sick is a bummer," he says.

"You are sick because you only eat sweets," the doctor says.

Then the doctor tells him that he must eat vegetables. So he starts to eat vegetables every day.

His body gets stronger and he never gets sick again.

* * * * *

Okay, so that is the story told as if it is happening right now. Now let's hear the story as if it will happen in the future. So we will think of the story happening, say, one year from now. Okay.

* * * * *

One year from now Carlos'll never eat anything but sweets. He's gonna live just a stone's throw away from a bakery. There'll also be an ice cream store one block from his house. His mother is gonna beg him to eat vegetables but he'll only eat sweets.

One day Carlos will be out and about with his girlfriend Marta. First they'll go to a secondhand store. Then they'll go to a restaurant. Marta is gonna eat a salad. Carlos is gonna eat seven pieces of cake and two bowls of ice cream.



Grandmother POV Lesson

Later that day he's gonna start to feel under the weather. He's gonna think that there is something going around so he'll go to the doctor.

"Getting sick is a bummer," he'll say.

"You are sick because you only eat sweets," the doctor'll say.

Then the doctor's going to tell him that he must eat vegetables. So he's gonna start to eat vegetables every day.

His body will get stronger and he will never get sick again.

* * * * *

Okay so that's the end of the story where we talk about the events that are going to happen, going to happen in the future. Now let's hear the story from Carlos' point of view. So in this version Carlos is actually the one telling the story. Here goes.

* * * * *

I never ate anything but sweets. I lived just a stone's throw away from a bakery. There was also an ice cream store one block from my house. My mother used to beg me to eat vegetables but I would only eat sweets.

One day I was out and about with my girlfriend Marta. First we went to a secondhand store. Then we went to a restaurant. Marta ate a salad. I ate seven pieces of cake and two bowls of ice cream.

Later that day I started feeling under the weather. I thought that there was something going around so I went to the doctor.

"Getting sick is a bummer," I said.

"You are sick because you only eat sweets," said the doctor.

Then the doctor told me that I must eat vegetables. So I started to eat vegetables every day.

My body got stronger and I never got sick again.

* * * * *



Grandmother POV Lesson

Okay, that brings us to the end of the point of view stories for “Grandmother”. So now please go back and listen to each of these stories many times. Listen to them until you really feel like you know them. After that, then try to tell each story on your own. Take your time. Relax. Remember you want to learn things deeply. When you learn things deeply then you are able to speak English effortlessly. Okay, that's all for now. See ya next time.



Grandmother Vocabulary Lesson

Hello and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Grandmother.” Now in this conversation Joe has just gotten off the telephone with his grandmother. So he’s just telling me about their conversation, what they... what they spoke about.

Okay, let’s begin.

* * * * *

I first start off saying, “Hey, how's it goin'?”

Now how's... This is short for how is. As I've said in many, many lessons you won't see this really in written English. It's more something that you would hear in conversational English. And goin' is short for going. Again, you wouldn't see this in written English but you would hear it in conversational English. Anytime something is shortened, you won't really see that in written, formal English. But you'll definitely hear people when they're speaking making something short, or shorter.

So I say, "Hey, how's it goin'?"

What I'm saying here is, hi, how are you doing?

And then I go on to say, “I'm home.”

So I've just come in the apartment. I've just gotten home.

And Joe says, “Hey, yeah, I'm in here.”

Yeah. This is slang or casual or informal for yes. And when he says, I'm in here... He's just telling me what room of the apartment he's in. I think he was in the living room actually.

And then I say, “Oh. Okay.”

Now oh here. That's just a filler. It's not really needed.

And then Joe says, “How are you doin'?”

Doin', Doin' is short for doing.

And I say, “Pretty good.”

Now pretty here means very good.



Grandmother Vocabulary Lesson

And then Joe says, “Nice. Where you comin’ from?”

Comin’. This is short for coming. What Joe is saying here is, where are you coming from?

And then I say, “I have just been out and about doin’ some shopping.”

Out and about. This means going from place to place. Out and about. For example: I was out and about shopping downtown. Out and about.

And then I go on to say, “I was, uh...”

Uh is just filler here. It’s not really needed.

And I go on to say, “here in The Mission and then I went to Haight Street...”

Now The Mission... This is short for the Mission District. The Mission District is just a neighborhood in San Francisco. The Mission. For example: Joe and I live in The Mission. We live in the Mission District. The Mission. And when I say that I went to Haight Street... Haight Street is a street in San Francisco. For example: I like to go to the bars on Haight Street. I really like the atmosphere of the bars on Haight Street.

And then I go on to say, “just goin’ to some secondhand stores.”

Just. In this situation, just is just filler. It’s not really needed. Secondhand stores. Secondhand stores are stores where used clothing is sold. Secondhand stores. I like to shop at secondhand stores because the clothes are so cheap. Secondhand stores.

And then Joe says, “Oh, okay.” And I say, “One of my favorite things to do.”

So I’m saying I really like shopping at secondhand stores. It’s one of my favorite things to do.

And Joe says, “Yeah, cool.”

Cool meaning good.

And then I say, “So who are you just ge-, gettin’ off the phone with?”

Gettin’ is short for getting.

And Joe says, “Oh, I was speakin’ to my grandmother.”



Grandmother Vocabulary Lesson

Speakin' or talking to my grandmother. Speakin' is short for speaking.

And then I say, “How’s she doing?” And Joe says, “Yeah, she’s doin’ okay. She was actually feelin’ under the weather last week but, uh, now she’s alright.”

Actually is just filler here. It’s not really needed. She was actually feeling under the weather. Feeling under the weather. Now feelin’ is short for feeling. Feeling under the weather. That just means being sick. For example: Ben was feeling under the weather. I could hear him coughing. Feeling under the weather. And then when Joe says now she’s alright. Alright just means okay or good. Alright.

And then I go on to say, “Oh, did she just have a cold or somethin’?”

Have a cold. This means to be sick. Have a cold. For example: I do not like to leave the house when I have a cold. Have a cold. And when I say somethin’... This is short for something.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, she said that there was somethin’ goin’ around.”

Something going around. This is when people you know are sick. Something going around. An example of this would be: My mother told me that she and my father are both sick. She said that there must be something going around.

And then Joe goes on to say, “Uh, my aunt had it and my niece had it. So she might have caught it from one of them.”

Might have just means maybe. Now caught it... Caught it means got sick. Caught it. For example: David is sick. I think that he caught it from his wife because she was sick last week. Caught it.

And then I say, “Oh, okay.” And Joe says, “Yeah. Y’know...”

Y’know is short for you know.

And Joe goes on to say, “speaking with my grandmother on the phone, sometimes I feel like I’m a little kid again...”

Or sometimes I feel like I’m a child again.

And I say, “Yeah, why is that?” And Joe says, “I get like...”

Like here is just filler. It’s not really needed.



Grandmother Vocabulary Lesson

So Joe says, “I get like transported back...”

Transported means... Transported here means taken. I get transported back. I get taken back. For example: When I was looking at old family pictures, it felt like I was transported back to when I was a child. Transported.

And Joe goes on to say, “transported back to the time when we used to live close together and, uh, y’know, and I was a kid. I mean...”

Or he’s saying, what I’m trying to say is that...

“my grandparents, when I was growin’ up...”

Growin’ is short for growing. And growing up just means getting older.

And Joe goes on to say, “they lived just like a stone’s throw away from us.”

Now stone’s throw away... This means very close. A stone’s throw away. For example: Joe and I go to the park a lot because it’s just a stone’s throw away from our apartment. Stone’s throw away.

And Joe goes on to say, “Maybe like, I don’t know, two miles or somethin’. So we used to...” And then I say, “Wow.”

And I’m just showing emotion such as, I can’t believe it. I can’t believe you lived so close to your grandparents.

And Joe says, “see them all the time.”

So he’s saying, so we used to see them all the time. Or we used to visit them all the time.

And I say, “Yeah.” And Joe says, “Yeah, it was awesome.”

Awesome means very good or great. Awesome. For example: Robbie is an awesome guitar player. Awesome.

And Joe says, “I mean, y’know, when you’re a kid one of your favorite things is to see your grandparents.” And I say, “Yeah.”

Agreeing with Joe.

Grandmother Vocabulary Lesson

And Joe says, “Y’know, it’s like you get to escape the discipline of your parents for a little bit.”

Escape. This means to get away from. Escape. For example: The prisoner escaped from jail. Escape. And discipline... This means punishment. Discipline. For example: When I was a child my parents always disciplined me whenever I did something wrong. Discipline, or in this example, disciplined. And when Joe says a little bit... A little bit means a small amount. Here specifically it means a small amount of time. A little bit. Let’s say I want to go to a music festival but I have a lot of work to do. I might tell my friends, I can meet you at the festival but I can only stay for a little bit. A little bit.

And then I say, “Right.”

I’m just agreeing with Joe, saying, yeah. You’re correct. That’s right.

And then Joe says, “And...”

And here is filler. It’s not really needed.

And Joe goes on to say, “y’know, your grandparents, they’ll always shower you with attention.”

Shower you with attention. This means give you a lot of attention. Shower you with attention. For example: My grandparents always showered me with attention. So shower you with attention, or in this example, showered me with attention.

And Joe goes on to say, “And, y’know, my grandmother would always, y’know, make us some sweets.”

Now sweets. This means food that has a lot of sugar like cookies, cake, candy, ice cream. Sweets. For example: I really like to eat sweets even though I know it’s not very healthy. Or I know it’s not very good for me. Sweets.

And Joe goes on to say, “And, y’know... she was just always like, uh, always really, uh, uh, happy to see us, y’know?”

So he’s saying she was always... She was always very happy to see us.

And then I say, “Uh-huh.”

And I’m just agreeing with Joe, saying, yeah, uh-huh.

Grandmother Vocabulary Lesson

And then I say, “Yeah, I never had the luxury of even...”

Even here is just filler. It's not really needed. And luxury. This is a good opportunity. So I'm saying, I never had the good opportunity or the opportunity of...

“uh, being around one set of grandparents.”

One set of grandparents. What I'm talking about here... I'm speaking about my father's parents. So my father's parents would be one set of grandparents. And then my mother's parents would be the other set of grandparents.

And I go on to say, “My dad's parents died before I was born so I never even met them. And then my, uh, mom's parents, we lived close to them but not as close as, as you to your grandparents. I'd say it was like a twenty to thirty minute drive. And that was only until I was eight...”

Or I'm saying that was only until I was eight years old.

And I go on to say, “coz...”

'Coz is short for because.

“‘coz then we moved away from Michigan to Georgia.”

Michigan is a northern state in America. And Georgia is a southeastern state of America.

And I go on to say, “So then it would be seein' them once a year.”

Seein' is short for seeing. What I'm saying here is, I would only visit them... I would only visit my grandparents one time a year after we moved from Michigan to Georgia.

And Joe says, “Yeah, I mean, my brothers and I were really...”

Or we were very.

“fortunate to have both sets of grandparents around.”

Or he's saying to have both sets of grandparents living close by. Fortunate. Fortunate means lucky. Fortunate. For example: I was fortunate to remember to take an umbrella with me because it rained today. Fortunate.



Grandmother Vocabulary Lesson

And then I say, “Yeah, you were.” And Joe says, “Uh, and, uh, I mean, my, my father’s parents moved down to Florida when we were like eight years old.”

Now Florida... This is a southeastern state of America.

And Joe goes on to say, “And, y’know, that, that was a bummer for us at the time...”

Bummer. Bummer means something that is not good. It’s kind of a slang word. Bummer. For example: It’s a bummer that San Francisco has so much fog... fog being low clouds. Bummer.

And Joe goes on to say, “uh. But at least...”

Or he’s saying, but it’s good that...

“my mom’s parents lived around us, y’know, until we were teenagers...”

Around us. Around us means close to us. Around us. For example: When I was a child my grandparents did not live around us. Around us. And when he says until we were teenagers... Until means up to the time when we became teenagers. And teenagers... This word means anywhere from 13 years old to 19 years old. So Joe actually moved away from his grandparents when he was about 13.

And then I say, “Mm-hm.”

Just agreeing with Joe.

And Joe says, “and we moved to Pennsylvania.”

So he’s saying, my mom’s parents lived around us until we were teenagers and we moved to Pennsylvania. Pennsylvania is a state in the northeast... the northeast of America.

And then I say, “Mm-hm.”

Again just agreeing with Joe.

And Joe says, “But it’s uncommon these days.”

Or he’s saying, it’s not normal or it’s unusual now.

And then he goes on to say, “I mean the generations before us always had their family right near them.”



Grandmother Vocabulary Lesson

Or they always had their family living close by or close to them. Generations before us. This means people in your family that are older than you. Generations before us.

And then I say, “Right.”

So I’m basically just saying yes. I’m agreeing with Joe again.

And then Joe says, “I mean, I hear these stories from my grandmother. She says that her entire family...”

Or he’s saying, her whole family...

“lived in like one, y’know, on one block.”

Now block. This is a street or part of a street. Block. For example: My friend Kim lives eight blocks away from my apartment. Block, or in this example, blocks.

And Joe goes on to say, “And that wasn’t uncommon.”

Or that... he’s saying, that wasn’t unusual.

And then he says, “I mean, a lot of the times they would, uh, the whole family would live in the same house. Usually...”

Or most of the time.

“people didn’t leave...”

Or he’s saying people didn’t move out of the house.

“until they got married. And even if they did leave and get married, they lived just down the block.”

Or he’s saying they moved just down the block.

And then I say, “Well, speaking of the same block... That, that, uh, made me think of my brother. My younger brother, when he was in high school...”

Now high school is a secondary school or school that prepares you for university.

Grandmother Vocabulary Lesson

So I'm saying when my brother was in high school, he "dated this girl and her whole family lived on the same street. And I can remember thinkin'..."

Thinkin' is short for *thinking*.

And I go on to say, "how strange..."

Or I'm saying how different.

"that was." And then Joe says, "Yeah, I mean, now it is." And I say, "Yeah."

Just agreeing with him.

And Joe says, "But back then it wasn't at all."

So he's saying, back when our grandparents were younger it wasn't strange or it wasn't different.

And then I say, "Yeah, right."

Again, I'm just agreeing with him.

And then Joe says, "Yeah. Oh, when I was talkin'..."

Talkin' is short for *talking*.

"when I was talkin' to my grandmother, as we do a lot of the times, I was reminiscing with her about when I was younger."

Now reminiscing. This means remembering something that happened in the past. Reminiscing. I can remember the last time I saw my mother we were reminiscing about when I was a child. Reminiscing.

And Joe goes on to say, "was reminiscing with her about when I was younger. And, y'know, um..."

And um is just a filler word here. It's not really needed.

He says, "y'know, we... Not only did we live very close to my grandparents, we all went to the same church."

Now church. This is a place to go to pray. Mainly a place for Christians to go to pray. Church. An example of church would be: When I was a child my family and I did not go to church. Church.

Grandmother Vocabulary Lesson

And then Joe goes on to say, “So, y’know, every Sunday afternoon we’d see them at church and we’d sit near them.”

Or we’d sit close to them.

“And, uh, then after church was over...”

Or when church was finished.

“I’d always like beg my parents to let us go over to my grandparents’ house.”

Now beg. This means to ask for something you really want. Beg. For example: When I was 15 years old I had to beg my parents to let me come home after 11:00 at night. Beg. When Joe says go over to my grandparents’ house... Over in this situation is really just filler. It’s not even really needed.

And then Joe goes on to say, “And, y’know, we’d go over there and eat dinner. And I’d watch baseball games with my grandfather. So that was always a lot of fun, y’know.” And then I say, “Uh-huh.”

Just agreeing with him or saying, yeah, I understand.

And then Joe says, “It was just, y’know, just spending time with them, y’know.” And I say, “Yeah, was it...” And then Joe says, “We just had a great time.” And then I say, “Was it like a big Sunday dinner?” And Joe says, “Oh yeah, and my grandmother would cook a huge meal.”

Or he’s saying, my grandmother would make a lot of food.

And he goes on to say, “And, my grandmother was an amazing cook.”

Now cook, here, means someone who prepares food for eating.

And then Joe goes on to say, “She would always cook like some amazing Italian dinner...”

Joe’s grandmother would make Italian food because his grandmother is actually Italian American. Now amazing. When Joe says she’s an amazing cook. Amazing means great. Amazing. For example: I had an amazing time at the concert. Amazing.

And then I say, “Mmmmm.”

Grandmother Vocabulary Lesson

And I'm just making this noise because the thought of eating a dinner that Joe's grandmother has made is making me hungry because I know she's a good cook.

And then Joe says, “and, y’know, we just loved...”

Or he’s saying we really liked...

“goin’ over there for that reason as well.”

So when he’s saying for that reason... he’s saying we really liked going over to my grandmother’s for eating dinner. And also for other things like just spending time with my grandmother and grandfather. And watching baseball with my grandfather. When Joe says as well, at the end of the sentence... As well. It’s just filler. It’s not really needed. You could take it away and the sentence would still make sense.

And then I finish the conversation by saying, “Oh, that’s great.”

* * * * *

Okay, this is the end of the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Grandmother.” So if you need to, go back and listen to this as many times... until you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary. And then when you feel ready, move on to Joe’s mini-story.

Alright, see you next time. Bye bye.

Hitchhiking In Europe Conversation

ran into: to unexpectedly see someone

Joe: Hey, you know I **ran into** John today and he's gonna actually be doin' some travelin' in Europe. He's, uh, he says he's gonna spend a lot of time in Prague.

David: Oh, Prague's awesome. Ah . . . did I tell you I lived there?

get out of here: are you serious?

Joe: No, **get out of here.** You never told me that.

David: Yeah, I lived in Prague about 15 years ago.

Joe: Oh, whoa, du-, what were you doing there?

end up: to go to a place last

David: Well, I was traveling. I didn't actually know that I would **end up** in Prague. I was just gonna do whatever came along.

Joe: Wait, where'd you start out traveling?

David: I got a one way ticket to Amsterdam.

Joe: [laugh] Oh, nice.

chick: girl or woman

David: And one of the only people that I knew in Europe was this **chick** that I used to **go out with.** So I figured I'd **look her up.** I knew she had another boyfriend at that point. But she said she could get me a place to stay and she was in Prague. So I figured I'd go there for a few weeks and see how it went.

Joe: She was from Prague? Or...

David: No, she was American, but she was over there teaching English.

Joe: Oh, nice, nice.

David: Yeah.

Joe: So wait, how long did you spend in Amsterdam?

David: I only spent about four days in Amsterdam before I got kind of **sick of it.**

Joe: So you were just goin', you were just basically like, uh, travelin' through.

David: Yeah, and then I started **hitching.**

Hitchhiking In Europe Conversation

Joe: Oh, nice, nice.

hooked up: met
on the road: traveling

David: And kind of **hooked up** with some English chicks and just kind of spent a little bit of time with them **on the road**. And then eventually ended up, uh, on a train late at night and, uh, didn't have any money, but pretended I didn't understand what anyone was saying and ended up in Prague.

took off: to leave

Joe: Wait, when you first **took off**, um, from the U.S., were you actually traveling alone?

David: Totally by myself.

sweet: very good

Joe: Oh, **sweet**.

David: Yep.

Joe: Nice...

David: It's funny, looking back, I didn't have anything with me, y'know.

on a whim: to do something without a lot of thought

Joe: Yeah, you could just like basically, uh, take off **on a whim**.

livin' large: doing very well

David: I had like one pair of shoes and no health insurance and I was just, uh, **livin' large**.

totally broke: had no money

Joe: [laugh] That's nice. And you know what, now you would probably look back and think that you were **totally broke**. And, uh, that, now that you have kids, that would be a difficult, a very difficult thing to think of.

anonymous: no one knows you

David: If I had to be responsible for them it would be difficult. But, y'know, I, uh, I was only responsible for me. And I kind of... I was, I was in the mood to, uh, to feel **anonymous**. I wanted to go where no one recognized me.

not into doin' that: do not want to do that

Joe: Yeah, no that sounds great. So you, I, that's great that you just traveled alone. A lot of people, uh, are **not into doin' that**, y'know?

a big deal: important

David: Yeah, well, it's **a big deal**.

Joe: Yeah, some people...

Hitchhiking In Europe Conversation

put yourself out there: to get involved

David: You've got to kind of **put yourself out there** and just see what happens, y'know.

Joe: Yeah, exactly. I actually, I've never traveled alone. But, uh, I, I'm sure I could do it, y'know, because, uh, I'm good, I, I feel like I'm pretty good at meeting people, y'know?

David: Yeah, yeah. Well sometimes it's fun to meet people and other times it's fun to just truly be on your own. And, y'know, you get into a situation where you, where you realize that nobody knows where you are...

Joe: [laugh]

David: ...and you just have this total sense of, uh, freedom.

Joe: Yeah.

it's crazy: hard to believe

David: **It's crazy.**

Joe: Yeah, I can only imagine.

David: Yeah.

Joe: You took the train from Amsterdam to, uh, to Prague?

thumbing: hitchhiking; traveling by getting a free ride in a car with someone you do not know

David: No, I took the train to somewhere in Germany and then I started **thumbing** on the side of the road.

Joe: [laugh] Oh, how long did you stay in Germany?

David: Uh, like two days.

Joe: Oh, that wasn't long at all.

David: Yeah, just long enough for a couple of weird people to meet me and, uh, help me out, and take me to different places.

picked you up: gave you a ride in a car

Joe: So they actually **picked you up**?

Hitchhiking In Europe Conversation

David: Yeah, at one point I decided that I didn't really care what direction the car was going as long as it was warm and dry, I was getting in.

Joe: Wait, did you, were you actually like, uh, did you believe that you were **headed to** Prague at that point or were you just...

David: Yeah...I was...

Joe: ...headed wherever?

David: No, I was headed to Prague, but I didn't really care if it took me a while or what.

Joe: Oh, that's **cool**.

David: So I just kind of **went with the flow** of what was happening.

Joe: Yeah, what did you think of Germany while you were there, because I've never been there...

David: Kind of weird...

Joe: ...either.

David: ...kind of weird. Uh, y'know, being, uh, being a **Jew**, uh...

Joe: [laugh]

David: ...I was kind of aware of the history.

Joe: Yeah, I'm sure that that's something that is pretty hard to forget.

David: Yeah, although, you know interestingly, the only person I met in Europe who was a **deadhead** was in Germany.

Joe: Oh really!

David: Yeah, and he was like so happy that I was into **the Dead** when he met me and I gave him one **tape** that I had...

deadhead: a fan of the American rock and roll music band the Grateful Dead

the Dead: short for the Grateful Dead; an American rock and roll music band

tape: cassette tape

Hitchhiking In Europe Conversation

Joe: [laugh]

ecstatic: very happy

David: ...and he was just **ecstatic**, because they weren't able to get tapes like we were at that point.

Joe: Oh, so he was actually German.

David: Yeah.

Joe: [laugh] That's great.

David: Because this was before computers.

Joe: Yeah, well if you think about it the Dead played there in, uh, '81, and, uh...

knew what was up: to know about

David: Yeah, he, he knew about them. He **knew what was up**, but he was like, y'know...

Joe: Yeah.

David: ...I could use some music. And he had a Dead shirt on. He showed me. It was funny.

Grateful Dead: an American rock and roll music band

Joe: Wait, he, he was actually wearing a **Grateful Dead** shirt when you met him?

David: Uh-huh.

Joe: [laugh] That's great.

tie-dye: a colorful t-shirt

David: It was like underneath a sweatshirt. He was like, "No, really." He pulls over... He lifts up the sweatshirt. He was like "Look." It was like an old **tie-dye**.

Joe: Were you wearing one also?

David: No.

bootlegs: cassette tapes with a recording of a music band playing in concert

Joe: Oh, so how did he know?

David: Uh, I just started talking about it and I had **bootlegs** with me.



Hitchhiking In Europe Conversation

Joe: Oh, that's great.



Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

Hello and welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Hitchhiking In Europe.”

Let's get started with the story now.

* * * * *

Teddy the turtle used to go out with Rhonda the rabbit. But then Rhonda started dating Bennie the bear. Teddy was very upset. So he decided on a whim to drive his car across America.

Teddy has an old pink car. After driving for four days, the car stopped working. He did not know what to do. So he decided to try hitching.

After one hour, Tom Cruise picked him up. He asked Teddy where he was headed to. Teddy said that he was just going with the flow. Tom Cruise was driving to his house in Los Angeles.

Teddy told him that he was totally broke.

Then Tom Cruise said, “You can live with me, but you have to clean my pool every day.”

Teddy was ecstatic. He had no idea he would end up at Tom Cruise’s house.

When he got to Los Angles, Teddy found a new girlfriend so he is no longer upset about Rhonda.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's the end of our story. Now I will go back and read the story again. This time I will ask questions as I read it. As always, you can answer the questions out loud. If you do not have enough time, then please pause your player and press play again when you have had enough time and, of course, if you do not feel like answering the questions out loud and just sitting there and listening instead, well that's okay, too.

Okay, let's begin.

* * * * *

Teddy the turtle used to go out with Rhonda the rabbit.

Did Teddy the turtle used to go out with Rhonda the rabbit?

Yes, he did. Teddy the turtle used to go out with Rhonda the rabbit.

Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

What did Teddy the turtle used to do?

Go out with Rhonda the rabbit. He used to go out with Rhonda the rabbit.

Did Teddy used to go out with Rhonda or go to the grocery store?

He used to go out with Rhonda. He didn't used to go to the grocery store.

Did Teddy used to date Rhonda?

Yes, yes, he did. He used to go out with Rhonda which is the same thing as saying he used to date Rhonda. To go out with means to date.

Is Teddy still going out with Rhonda?

No, he is not still going out with Rhonda. He used to, meaning he no longer goes out with Rhonda but he did in the past.

Is Teddy still dating Rhonda?

No, he is not. He used to go out with Rhonda which means he used to date Rhonda which means he is no longer dating Rhonda.

Who used to go out with Rhonda? Did Teddy or Tommy used to go out with Rhonda?

Teddy, Teddy used to go out with Rhonda.

Did Teddy or Tommy used to date Rhonda?

Teddy did. Teddy used to date Rhonda, or Teddy used to go out with Rhonda.

Who did Teddy used to go out with? Did he used to go out with Sara or Rhonda?

Rhonda, he used to go out with Rhonda.

Did he used to date Rhonda?

Yes, he did. He used to go out with Rhonda, which is the same as saying he used to date Rhonda.



Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

What type of animal is Teddy? Is he a rabbit or a turtle?

A turtle, Teddy is a turtle.

What type of animal is Rhonda? Is she a rabbit or a turtle?

She is a rabbit. Rhonda is a rabbit.

Is Teddy a rabbit?

No, Teddy is not a rabbit.

Is Rhonda a rabbit?

Yes, she is. Rhonda is a rabbit, Rhonda the rabbit.

Does Teddy the turtle still date Rhonda the rabbit?

No, he doesn't. He used to date Rhonda the rabbit, or he used to go out with Rhonda the rabbit, that means he no longer dates Rhonda.

But then Rhonda started dating Bennie the bear.

Did Rhonda start dating Bennie the bear?

Yes, she did. Rhonda started dating Bennie the bear.

What did Rhonda do?

Well, she started dating Bennie the bear.

Did she start a fire or start dating Bennie the bear?

She started dating Bennie the bear.

Who started dating Bennie the bear? Did Teddy or Rhonda start dating Bennie the bear?

Rhonda did. Rhonda started dating Bennie the bear.



Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

Who did Rhonda start dating? Did she start dating Teddy?

No, she didn't start dating Teddy. She is no longer dating Teddy.

Did she start dating Bennie?

Yes, yes, she did. She started dating Bennie.

Did Rhonda start going out with Bennie?

Yes, she did. She started dating Bennie which is the same as saying she started going out with Bennie.

What type of animal is Bennie? Is he a bear or a turtle?

A bear, Bennie is a bear, Bennie the bear.

Is Bennie a bear?

Yes, he is. Bennie is a bear, Bennie the bear.

Did Rhonda start dating Bennie the bear?

Yes, she did. Rhonda started dating Bennie the bear.

Why doesn't Teddy date Rhonda anymore?

Well, it's because she started dating Bennie the bear.

Teddy was very upset.

Was Teddy very upset?

Yes, he was. Teddy was very upset.

Was Teddy happy?

No, he was not happy.

Was Teddy just a little upset?



Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

No, he was not just a little upset. He was very upset.

Who was very upset? Was Bennie very upset?

No, Bennie wasn't very upset.

Was Rhonda very upset?

No, Rhonda wasn't very upset.

Was Teddy really upset?

Yes, Teddy was very upset. Teddy was really upset.

So he decided on a whim to drive his car across America.

Did he decide on a whim to drive his car across America?

Yes, he did. That's what he decided. He decided on a whim to drive his car across America.

What did he decide on a whim?

To drive across America, he decided on a whim to drive across America.

Did he decide to drive his car or ride his motorcycle?

Drive his car, he decided on a whim to drive his car.

What did he decide to do on a whim?

Drive his car across America.

Did he decide to do it on a whim?

Yes, he did. He decided to do it on a whim.

Did he decide to do it without a lot of thought?



Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, he did. He decided on a whim which means he decided to do it without a lot of thought. On a whim means to do something without a lot of thought.

Did he decide to drive across America without a lot of thought?

Yes, he did. He decided on a whim to drive across America which means he decided to drive across America without a lot of thought, without much planning, without thinking about it too much.

Who decided to drive across America? Did Bennie or Teddy decide to drive across America?

Teddy did. Teddy decided to drive across America. He decided on a whim.

Where did he decide to drive? Did he decide to drive across Canada or America?

America, he decided to drive his car across America.

Did Teddy think about it a lot or did he do it without much thought?

Well, he did it without much thought because he did it on a whim.

Did Teddy decide on a whim to drive across America?

Yes, he did. He decided on a whim to drive across America, or he decided without giving it too much thought to drive across America.

Teddy has an old pink car.

Does Teddy have an old pink car?

Yes, he does. Teddy has an old pink car.

What does Teddy have? Does he have a boat or a car?

A car, Teddy has a car.

What color is his car? Is it purple or pink?

It's pink. Teddy has a pink car.



Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

Does Teddy have a new car?

No, he doesn't have a new car.

Does Teddy have an old car?

Yes, he does. Teddy has an old car.

Does Teddy have a new pink car?

No, he doesn't have a new pink car.

Does Teddy have an old pink car?

Yes, he does. Teddy has an old pink car.

After driving for four days, the car stopped working.

Did the car stop working?

Yes, it did. The car stopped working.

How long did he drive before the car stopped working? Did he drive four days or four weeks?

Four days, the car stopped working after driving for four days.

Did the car stop working after driving for two days?

No, it wasn't two days. It was four days.

What stopped working? Did Teddy or the car stop working?

The car, the car stopped working.

Was Teddy able to drive the car after driving for four days?

No, no, he wasn't. He was not able to drive the car because the car stopped working.



Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

He did not know what to do.

Did he know what to do?

No, he did not know what to do.

Why didn't he know what to do?

Well, he didn't know what to do because his car had broken down so he probably did not have a ride anywhere.

Who did not know what to do? Did Teddy not know what to do?

That's correct, Teddy did not know what to do.

Did Teddy know what to do?

No, he did not. He did not know what to do. His car broke down and now he needed a ride.

So he decided to try hitching.

Did he decide to try hitching?

Yes, he did. He decided to try hitching.

What did he decide to do?

To try hitching, he decided to try hitching.

Did he decide to try hitching or try to fix his car?

To try hitching, he decided to try hitching.

Did he decide to try to get a ride in a car with someone he did not know?

Yes, yes, that's what hitching is.

Did he decide to try to hitchhike?



Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did. Hitching is short for hitchhiking and hitchhiking is to try to get a ride in a car with someone that you do not know, so he decided to try hitching, he decided to try hitchhiking, he decided to try to find a ride in a car with someone he did not know. They are all the same thing.

Who decided to try hitching? Did Rhonda decide to try hitching?

No, it wasn't Rhonda.

Did Teddy decide to try hitching?

Yes, he did. Teddy, Teddy decided to try hitching.

Did Teddy decide to try to get a ride in a car with someone he did not know?

Yes, he did. That's what hitchhiking is and that's also what hitching is. To try to get a ride in a car with someone you do not know.

After one hour, Tom Cruise picked him up.

Did Tom Cruise pick him up after one hour?

Yes, Tom Cruise picked him up after one hour.

What happened after one hour? Did Tom Cruise pick him up?

Yes, he did. Tom Cruise picked him up.

Did Tom Cruise give him a ride in his car?

Yes, he did. He picked him up. He gave him a ride in his car. When you say you picked someone up, that means you gave them a ride in your car.

Who picked him up? Did Rhonda pick him up?

No, it wasn't Rhonda.

Did Tom Cruise pick him up?

Yes, he did. Tom Cruise picked him up.

Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

How long was it before Tom Cruise picked him up? Was it one hour or one day?

One hour, it was after one hour.

Who did Tom Cruise pick up? Did he pick up Teddy?

Yes, he did. He picked up Teddy.

Did Tom Cruise give Teddy a ride in his car?

Yes, Tom Cruise picked Teddy up which means he gave Teddy a ride in his car.

He asked Teddy where he was headed to.

Did he ask Teddy where he was headed to?

Yes, he did. He asked Teddy where he was headed to.

What did he do?

He asked Teddy where he was headed to, that's what he did.

Did he ask Teddy where he was going to?

Yes, yes, he did. He asked him where he was headed to which is the same thing as asking where he was going to.

Did he ask Teddy where he was headed to or what time it was?

Where he was headed to, he asked him where he was headed to. He didn't ask him what time it was.

Who asked Teddy where he was headed to? Did Tom Cruise or Will Smith ask Teddy where he was headed to?

Tom Cruise did.

Did Tom Cruise ask Teddy where he was going to?



Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did. He asked Teddy where he was headed to which is the same thing as asking him where he was going to. Headed to means going to.

What did he ask Teddy? Did he ask him where he was headed to or ask him for a cigarette?

He asked him where he was headed to.

Did he ask him where he was going to?

Yes, yes, he did. He asked him where he was headed to which is the same thing as asking him where he was going to.

Teddy said that he was just going with the flow.

Did Teddy say he was going with the flow?

Yes, he did. Teddy said he was just going with the flow.

What did Teddy do? Did he say he was just going with the flow or did he ask Tom Cruise for 100 dollars?

He said he was just going with the flow.

Who said he was just going with the flow? Did Teddy or Tom Cruise say he was just going with the flow?

Teddy did. Teddy said he was just going with the flow.

Did Teddy say that he did not do any planning?

Yes, yes, he did. He said he was just going with the flow, which is the same as saying he did not do any planning. When you say going with the flow, you mean that you did not do any planning.

What did Teddy say? Did he say that he was hungry or that he was going with the flow?

He said that he was going with the flow.

Did he say that he did not do any planning?

Yes, he did. He said he was going with the flow, which means he said he did not do any planning. Going with the flow means not doing any planning.



Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

Did he say that he did not have a plan about where he was going?

Well, yes, that's true. He said he was going with the flow when Tom Cruise asked him where he was headed to, so what he was saying was that he did not have a plan about where he was going.

Tom Cruise was driving to his house in Los Angeles.

Was Tom Cruise driving to his house in Los Angeles?

Yes, he was, that's where he was driving. He was driving to his house in Los Angeles.

What was Tom Cruise doing? Was he washing his car or driving to his house in Los Angeles?

Driving to his house in Los Angeles, he was driving to his house in Los Angeles.

Who was driving to his house in Los Angeles? Was Tom Cruise or Will Smith?

Tom Cruise was, Tom Cruise was driving to his house in Los Angeles.

Where was Tom Cruise driving? Was he driving to New York?

No, he wasn't driving to New York.

Was he driving to Los Angeles?

Yes, he was, he was driving to Los Angeles.

Where was he driving to in Los Angeles? Was he driving to the library in Los Angeles?

No, he wasn't driving to the library.

Was he driving to his house in Los Angeles?

Yes, that's correct. He was driving to his house in Los Angeles.

Does Tom Cruise have a house in Los Angeles?

Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he does. He was driving to his house in Los Angeles so that means he must have a house in Los Angeles.

Teddy told him that he was totally broke.

Did Teddy tell him that he was totally broke?

Yes, he did. He told him that he was totally broke.

What did Teddy tell him? Did he tell him that he was sick or that he was totally broke?

He told him that he was totally broke.

Did he tell him that he had a lot of money?

No, he did not tell him that he had a lot of money.

Did he tell him that he had no money?

Yes, yes, that's correct. He told him that he was totally broke, which is the same as saying he had no money. Totally broke means having no money.

Who told him that he was totally broke? Did Will Smith or Teddy tell him that he was totally broke?

Teddy did, Teddy told him that he was totally broke.

Did Teddy tell him that he had no money?

Yes, he did. He told him that he was totally broke which is the same as saying he had no money. Totally broke means to have no money.

Who did Teddy tell that he was totally broke? Did he tell his mother?

No, he didn't tell his mother.

Did he tell Tom Cruise?

Yes, that's who he told. He told Tom Cruise.



Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

Did he tell Tom Cruise that he had no money?

Yes, he did. He told him that he was totally broke which is the same thing as saying he had no money.

Then Tom Cruise said, “You can live with me, but you have to clean my pool every day.”

Who said that Teddy can live with him? Did Tom Cruise say it?

Yes, he did. Tom Cruise said, “You can live with me.”

Can Teddy live with Tom Cruise?

Yes, yes, he can. He can live with Tom Cruise but he has to clean the pool every day.

What does Teddy have to do? Does he have to drive Tom Cruise’s car or clean his pool?

Clean his pool, he has to clean his pool.

What does Teddy have to clean? Does he have to clean Tom Cruise’s house or Tom Cruise’s pool?

His pool, he has to clean Tom Cruise’s pool.

Does Tom Cruise have a pool?

Yes, he does. He has a pool; we know this because he said that Teddy would have to clean his pool.

How often does Teddy have to clean the pool? Does he have to clean it only on Mondays?

No, not just on Mondays.

Does he have to clean it every day?

Yes, he does. He has to clean it every day if he wants to live with Tom Cruise.

Teddy was ecstatic.

Was Teddy ecstatic?



Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he was. *Teddy was ecstatic.*

Was Teddy sad?

No, he wasn't sad.

Was Teddy just a little happy?

No, he wasn't just a little happy, he was ecstatic. That means he was really happy.

Was Teddy very happy?

Yes, he was ecstatic. He was very happy, he was really happy.

Who was ecstatic? Was Tom Cruise ecstatic?

No, not Tom Cruise.

Was Teddy ecstatic?

*Yes, he was. *Teddy was ecstatic.**

Was Teddy very happy?

*Yes, he was. *He was ecstatic. Ecstatic is very happy.**

He had no idea he would end up at Tom Cruise's house.

Did he think that he would end up at Tom Cruise's house?

No, he didn't. He had no idea which means that he did not think that he would end up at Tom Cruise's house.

Did he think that he would go to Tom Cruise's house at the end?

No, no, he didn't. He had no idea.

Who had no idea he would end up at Tom Cruise's house? Teddy or Bennie?

*Teddy, *Teddy had no idea he would end up at Tom Cruise's house.**



Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

Where did Teddy have no idea he would end up? At Tom Cruise's house or at his mother's house?

At Tom Cruise's house, he had no idea he would end up at Tom Cruise's house.

Did he have no idea that he would go to Tom Cruise's house last?

Yes, that's correct. He had no idea he would end up at Tom Cruise's house which is the same thing as saying he had no idea he would go to Tom Cruise's house last. To end up means to go to a place last.

When he got to Los Angles, Teddy found a new girlfriend

Did Teddy find a new girlfriend when he got to Los Angeles?

Yes, he did. Teddy found a new girlfriend when he got to Los Angeles.

What did Teddy do when he got to Los Angeles? Did he find a new girlfriend or take a shower?

He found a new girlfriend. He found a new girlfriend when he got to Los Angeles.

Who found a new girlfriend? Did Teddy or Tom Cruise find a new girlfriend?

Teddy did. Teddy found a new girlfriend.

When did Teddy find a new girlfriend? Did he find a new girlfriend after dinner or when he got to Los Angeles?

When he got to Los Angeles, Teddy found a new girlfriend when he got to Los Angeles.

Did Teddy find an old girlfriend when he got to Los Angeles?

No, he didn't find an old girlfriend, he found a new girlfriend.

Where did Teddy find a new girlfriend? Did he find a new girlfriend in New York or Los Angeles?

In Los Angeles, he found a new girlfriend when he got to Los Angeles.

so he is no longer upset about Rhonda.



Hitchhiking In Europe Mini-Story Lesson

Is he still upset about Rhonda?

No, he is not. He is no longer upset about Rhonda.

Who is not upset about Rhonda? Tom Cruise or Teddy?

Teddy, Teddy is not upset about Rhonda.

Was Teddy ever upset about Rhonda?

Yes, he was. He was upset about Rhonda but he is no longer upset about Rhonda which means he's not upset about Rhonda right now but that he was at one point in time upset about Rhonda.

Is Teddy upset about Rhonda?

No, he is not. He is no longer upset about Rhonda.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's the end of our story which means that we are at the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation "Hitchhiking In Europe." Now please tell this story by yourself. Remember you do not need to memorize every word in the story but you should use the idioms and the vocabulary words that we discussed. Here are the idioms and vocabulary words that we discussed: "Go out with," "on a whim," "hitchhiking," "picked him up," "headed to," "going with the flow," "totally broke," "ecstatic," and "end up."

Okay, good luck telling the story and I'll see you next time.

Hitchhiking In Europe POV Lesson

Hi. Welcome to the point of view stories for "Hitchhiking In Europe". We're going to hear the same story from the "Hitchhiking In Europe" mini-story lesson but we're going to change the point of view by either changing the time or changing the person who is telling the story. Ok, let's get started.

* * * * *

Teddy the turtle goes out with Rhonda the rabbit. But then Rhonda starts dating Bennie the bear. Teddy is very upset. So he decides on a whim to drive his car across America.

Teddy has an old pink car. After driving for four days, the car stops working. He does not know what to do. So he decides to try hitching.

After one hour, Tom Cruise picks him up. He asks Teddy where he is headed to. Teddy says that he is just going with the flow. Tom Cruise is driving to his house in Los Angeles.

Teddy tells him that he is totally broke.

Then Tom Cruise says, "You can live with me, but you have to clean my pool every day."

Teddy is ecstatic. He had no idea he would end up at Tom Cruise's house.

When he gets to Los Angeles, Teddy finds a new girlfriend so he is no longer upset about Rhonda.

* * * * *

Okay, so as you can see we just heard the story told as if it is happening right now, or in the present. Now let's tell the story as if it's happening in the future. So we will think of the story happening in, say, two years. Okay.

* * * * *

In two years Teddy the turtle will be going out with Rhonda the rabbit. But then Rhonda'll start dating Bennie the bear. Teddy'll be very upset. So he's gonna decide on a whim to drive his car across America.

Teddy'll have an old pink car. After driving for four days, the car is gonna stop working. He will not know what to do. So he's gonna decide to try hitching.

After one hour, Tom Cruise is gonna pick him up. He's going to ask Teddy where he's headed to. Teddy'll say that he is just going with the flow. Tom Cruise will be driving to his house in Los

Hitchhiking In Europe POV Lesson

Angeles.

Teddy'll tell him that he is totally broke.

Then Tom Cruise'll say, "You can live with me, but you have to clean my pool every day."

Teddy will be ecstatic. He will have had no idea he would end up at Tom Cruise's house.

When he gets to Los Angeles, Teddy's gonna find a new girlfriend so he will no longer be upset about Rhonda.

* * * * *

Okay so that's the end of this version of the story, the version in which the story is in the future, where we talk about events that are going to happen or events that will happen. Alright, now let's hear the story from Teddy's point of view. It will be as if Teddy is actually telling you the story. Here we go.

* * * * *

I go out with Rhonda the rabbit. But then Rhonda starts dating Bennie the bear. I am very upset. So I decide on a whim to drive my car across America.

I have an old pink car. After driving for four days, the car stops working. I do not know what to do. So I decide to try hitching.

After one hour, Tom Cruise picks me up. He asks me where I am headed to. I say that I am just going with the flow. Tom Cruise is driving to his house in Los Angeles.

I tell him that I am totally broke.

Then Tom Cruise says, "You can live with me, but you have to clean my pool every day."

I am ecstatic. I had no idea I would end up at Tom Cruise's house.

When I get to Los Angeles, I find a new girlfriend so I am no longer upset about Rhonda.

* * * * *

Alright so that is the end of the point of view stories for the lesson "Hitchhiking In Europe". So now go back



Hitchhiking In Europe POV Lesson

and listen to each of these stories. Listen to them many times. Listen to them until you feel that you understand them well. Then try to tell each story on your own. Okay, see ya next time.



Hitchhiking In Europe Vocabulary Lesson

Hello, and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Hitchhiking In Europe.” Now this conversation is between Joe and a friend of ours named David. David is just talking about doing some traveling in Europe.

Okay, let's begin with the conversation.

* * * * *

Joe starts off by saying, “Hey, you know I ran into John today...”

Now when he says, hey you know... This is just filler. All three of these words are filler. They're not really needed in the sentence. You could take them away from the sentence and the sentence would still make sense. When he says, I ran into John today... Ran into or run into means to unexpectedly see someone. Or to see someone by surprise. I can remember when I ran into Will at the store the other day. That's an example of ran into.

And then Joe goes on to say, “and he's gonna actually be doin' some travelin' in Europe.”

Gonna. This is short for going to. You won't see gonna in written English but you'll hear it in conversational English.

"he's gonna actually..."

Actually here is just a filler word. It's not really needed. You could take it away and the sentence would still make sense without it.

"he's gonna actually be doin'..."

Now doin' is short for doing. Again, this is something that you will not see in written English but you will hear in conversational English.

"he's gonna actually be doin' some travelin' in Europe."

Travelin'. This is short for traveling. So hear again, you wouldn't see travelin' in written English but you would hear it in conversational English.

And then Joe goes on to say, “He's, uh, he says he's gonna spend a lot of time in Prague.”

Now uh is just a filler word. It's not needed. And when Joe says spend a lot of time, he's saying, stay a long time in Prague.



Hitchhiking In Europe Vocabulary Lesson

And then David says, “Oh, Prague’s awesome.”

Or Prague’s great is what he’s saying.

And then David says, “Ah . . . did I tell you I lived there?” And Joe says, “No, get out of here. You never told me that.”

Get out of here. What Joe is saying here is, are you serious? Get out of here. You never told me that. For example: When Kim told me she was pregnant I said, “Get out of here. I didn’t even know you wanted to have children.” Get out of here.

And then David says, “Yeah...”

Yeah is casual or informal or slang for yes.

David goes on to say, “I lived in Prague about 15 years ago.” And then Joe says, “Oh, whoa...”

Now this is just showing emotion such as, I can’t believe you lived in Prague and I didn’t know this.

And then Joe starts to say something “du....” And then he goes on to say, “what were you doing there?” And David says, “Well...”

Well is just a filler word. It doesn’t really have any meaning.

He goes on to say, “I was traveling.” And then David says, “I didn’t actually know that I would end up in Prague.”

End up. This means to go to a place last. End up. I can remember when I ended up in Thailand after traveling in India and Nepal several years ago, many years ago. End up.

And David goes on to say, “I was just gonna do whatever came along.”

Now just. This is a filler word. It’s not really needed. What David is saying here - just gonna do whatever came along – he’s saying, I had no set plans.

And then Joe says, “Wait, where’d you start out traveling?” And David says, “I got a one way ticket to Amsterdam.” And then Joe laughs and says, “Oh, nice.” And David says, “And one of the only people that I knew in Europe was this chick...”

Hitchhiking In Europe Vocabulary Lesson

Now *chick* is a woman. Sometimes it can mean girl as well. *Chick*. For example: *Matt met some chick at a bar last night. Chick.* It's a slang term for woman or girl.

And David goes on to say, “this chick that I used to go out with.”

Go out with. This means to date. *Go out with.* For example: *Matt is going to go out with the girl he met at the bar last night. Go out with.*

And then David goes on to say, “So I figured...”

Or he's saying, I thought.

“I'd look her up.”

Look her up. This means to contact her. *Look her up.* For example: *I am going to Dublin so I may look up my friend Eric who lives there. Look her up.* Or in this example, *look up*.

And then David says, “I knew she had another boyfriend at that point.”

Or he's saying, at that time.

“But she said she could get me a place to stay...”

Or she could find me a place to live.

“and she was in Prague. So I figured I'd go there for a few weeks and see how it went.”

What he's saying is, see how it went. See if I liked it.

And then Joe says, “She was from Prague? Or...” And David says, “No, she was American, but she was over there teaching English.”

Over there meaning she was in Prague teaching English.

And Joe says, “Oh, nice, nice.” And David says, “Yeah.”

Just agreeing with Joe.

And Joe says, “So wait, how long did you spend in Amsterdam?” And David says, “I only spent about four days in Amsterdam before I got kind of sick of it.”



Hitchhiking In Europe Vocabulary Lesson

Now kind of here is just filler. It really is not needed in this sentence. Sick of it. Sick of it means no longer interested in something. Sick of it. For example: I used to like to exercise but now I am sick of it. Sick of it.

And then Joe says, “So you were just goin’ ...”

Goin’ is short for going.

“you were just goin’, you were just basically like, uh, travelin’ through.”

And like here... That’s just a filler word. That’s not really needed. And travelin’... Travelin’ is short for traveling. Traveling through means not staying long.

And David says, “Yeah, and then I started hitching.”

Now hitching... This is short for hitchhiking. Hitchhiking is traveling by getting a free ride in a car with someone you do not know. Hitchhiking. For example: I know someone who traveled through Europe hitching rides the whole way. Hitching or hitchhiking.

And Joe says, “Oh, nice, nice.” And then David says, “And kind of hooked up with some English chicks...”

Hooked up. This means met. Hooked up. I hooked up with some friends when I got to Dublin. Hooked up. English chicks. This means women from England.

And then David goes on to say, “and just kind of spent a little bit of time with them on the road.”

Or what he’s saying is, spent a short amount of time with them on the road. On the road. This means traveling. On the road. For example: I love to travel. I just can’t wait to get back on the road again. On the road.

And then David says, “And then eventually ended up, uh, on a train late at night and, uh, didn’t have any money, but pretended...”

Or he’s saying, acted as though.

“I didn’t understand what anyone was saying and ended up in Prague.” And Joe says, “Wait, when you first took off...”

Took off. This means to leave. Took off. I took off for India after living in Korea for one year. I took off just to

Hitchhiking In Europe Vocabulary Lesson

backpack around India. Took off.

So Joe says, “Wait, when you first took off, um...”

Um is just filler here. It's not needed.

And Joe goes on to say, “from the U.S....”

U.S. is just short for USA.

And Joe says, “were you actually traveling alone?”

Alone, meaning by yourself.

And David says, “Totally by myself.”

Or completely by myself.

And Joe says, “Oh, sweet.”

Now sweet here means very good. Sweet. For example: It was sweet to finally finish my teaching degree. I was so excited. Sweet.

And David says, “Yep.”

Now yep is slang for yes.

And then Joe says, “Nice...” And David says, “It’s funny, looking back, I didn’t have anything with me, y’know.”

Now y’know... This is short for you know. And when David says, I didn’t have anything with me... He’s saying he did not have a lot of stuff. Like he didn’t have a lot of clothes, for example.

And Joe says, “Yeah, you could just like basically, uh, take off on a whim.”

On a whim. This means to do something without a lot of thought. On a whim. For example: When I took off for Korea on a whim, I didn’t know what to expect. On a whim.

And then David says, “I had like one pair of shoes and no health insurance...”



Hitchhiking In Europe Vocabulary Lesson

Health insurance is something that allows you or lets you go to the doctor for less money. You pay money each month for it. You pay money for the health insurance.

And then David goes on to say, “and I was just, uh, livin’ large.”

Now livin’... This is short for living. Living large. This means doing very well. For example: After Eric started to make more money at work, he was living large. Living large.

And then Joe laughs and says, “That’s nice. And you know what, now you would probably look back and think that you were totally broke.”

Totally broke. This means had no money. Totally broke. For example: After I bought my car I was totally broke.

Then Joe goes on to say, “And, uh, that, now that you have kids...”

Kids means children.

“that would be a difficult, a very difficult thing to think of.”

And what Joe is saying here is that would be something difficult to think of doing if you had children.

And David says, “If I had to be responsible for them it would be difficult.”

Now responsible means take care of everything. So David is saying, if I had to take care of everything for my kids, my children, then yeah it would be difficult.

And David says, “But, y’know, I, uh, I was only responsible for me. And I kind of, I was, I was in the mood to, uh, to feel anonymous.”

What David is saying here at the end... I was in the mood to feel anonymous. He’s saying, I was feeling like I wanted to be anonymous. Now anonymous means that no one knows you. No one knows who you are. Anonymous.

And then David goes on to say, “I wanted to go where no one recognized me.”

Or he’s saying, I wanted to go where no one would know who I was.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, no that sounds great. So you, I, that’s great that you just traveled alone. A lot of people, uh, are not into doin’ that, y’know?”

Hitchhiking In Europe Vocabulary Lesson

Now doin'... This is short for doing. Not into doin' that. Or not into doing something means you do not want to do that. You don't want to do something. For example: I was not into going to the movies because I was too tired. Not into.

And then David says, “Yeah, well, it’s a big deal.”

A big deal means important. A big deal. It was a big deal, I can remember, when I finished school. It was a big deal for me and for my parents. A big deal.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, some people...” And then David says, “You’ve got to kind of put yourself out there and just see what happens, y’know.”

Put yourself out there. This means to get involved. Put yourself out there.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, exactly.”

Or he’s saying, yeah, for sure. He’s agreeing with David.

And then Joe says, “I actually, I’ve never traveled alone. But, uh, I, I’m sure I could do it, y’know, because, uh, I’m good, I, I feel like I’m pretty good at meeting people, y’know?”

Now pretty here... Pretty good means very good.

And David says, “Yeah, yeah. Well sometimes it’s fun to meet people and other times it’s fun to just truly be on your own.”

And what David is saying here is really be by yourself. Truly be on your own or really be by yourself.

David says, “And, y’know, you get into a situation where you, where you realize...”

Or he’s saying, you know.

“that nobody knows where you are...” And Joe laughs. And then David says, “and you just have this total sense of, uh, freedom.”

Total sense of freedom. This means you just feel completely free.

And Joe says, “Yeah.”

Hitchhiking In Europe Vocabulary Lesson

Agreeing with David.

And then David says, "It's crazy."

It's crazy here means it's hard to believe. It's crazy. For example: It's crazy for me to think about how long ago I moved to Korea. It's already been about 12 years ago. It's crazy.

And then Joe says, "Yeah, I can only imagine."

Or what he is saying is, I can believe that.

And David says, "Yeah."

Agreeing with Joe.

And then Joe says, "You took the train from Amsterdam to, uh, to Prague?" And David says, "No, I took the train to somewhere in Germany and then I started thumbing on the side of the road."

Thumbing. This means hitchhiking. And hitchhiking, if you will remember, is traveling by getting a free ride in a car with someone you do not know. So thumbing. For example: I did not have a ride so I started thumbing. Thumbing.

And then Joe laughs and says, "Oh, how long did you stay in Germany?" And David says, "Uh, like two days." And Joe says, "Oh, that wasn't long at all." And David says, "Yeah, just long enough for a couple of weird people..."

Or he's saying, for two people, two weird people, two strange people...

"to meet me and, uh, help me out and take me to different places." And Joe says, "So they actually picked you up?"

Now so here... This is just a filler word. It's not really needed. And when he says picked you up... What this means is to be given a ride in a car. So when Joe says, so they actually picked you up? So they gave you a ride in a car? Picked you up. For example: I was hoping someone would pick me up because I lost my car keys the other day. Pick me up or picked you up.

And then David says, "Yeah, at one point..."

Or he's saying, at one time.

Hitchhiking In Europe Vocabulary Lesson

“I decided that I didn’t really care what direction the car was going...”

So he’s saying, I didn’t really care. It didn’t matter what direction or which way the car was going.

“as long as it was warm and dry, I was getting in.”

I was getting into the car.

And Joe says, “Wait, did you, were you actually like, uh, did you believe that you were headed to Prague at that point or were you just...”

Now headed to... Headed to means going to. Going to Prague. For example: I was headed to work yesterday when I saw Kathleen. Headed to.

And David says, “Yeah...I was...” And Joe says, “headed wherever?”

Wherever meaning anywhere.

And David says, “No, I was headed to Prague, but I didn’t really care if it took me a while or what.”

Now a while.... That means some time. He didn’t care if it took him some time. He didn’t care if he got there in a hurry or not. And when David says or what, at the end of the sentence... This is just filler. It’s not really needed. You could take it away and the sentence would still make sense.

And Joe says, “Oh, that’s cool.”

Now cool means good. Cool. For example: San Francisco is a cool place to live. Cool.

And then David says, “So I just kind of went with the flow of what was happening.”

Now went with the flow, or go with the flow. This means to do something without planning. Went with the flow. I can remember sometimes when teaching my class in the past, I would just go with the flow. So go with the flow, or went with the flow.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, what did you think of Germany while you were there, because I’ve never been there...” And David says, “Kind of weird...”

Or he’s saying, a little strange.

And Joe says, “either.” And David says again “kind of weird. Uh, y’know, being, uh, being a Jew,

Hitchhiking In Europe Vocabulary Lesson

uh..."

So Jew... *This is short for Jewish. And what David is saying is Jewish person. David is Jewish.*

And then Joe laughs. And David says, "I was kind of aware of the history."

So he's saying, I knew about the history.

And Joe says, "Yeah, I'm sure that that's something that is pretty hard..."

Or very difficult.

"to forget." And David says, "Yeah, although..."

And although is just like an afterthought here.

And David goes on to say, "you know interestingly..."

Or he's saying, it was interesting.

"the only person I met in Europe who was a deadhead was in Germany."

Now a deadhead... This is a fan of the American rock and roll music band, the Grateful Dead. Deadhead.

And Joe says, "Oh really!" And David says, "Yeah, and he was like so happy that I was into the Dead when he met me and I gave him one tape that I had..."

The Dead. The Dead is short for the Grateful Dead, the American rock and roll music band. The Dead. And tape... Tape here means cassette tape. Tape. For example: I used to listen to tapes before I bought a CD player. Tape.

And then Joe laughs. And David says, "and he was just ecstatic..."

Ecstatic. This means very happy. Ecstatic. For example: I was so ecstatic when my family visited me in San Francisco. I couldn't believe they were coming. I was ecstatic.

And David goes on to say, "because they weren't able to get tapes like we were at that point." And Joe says, "Oh, so he was actually German." And David says, "Yeah." And Joe laughs and says, "That's great." And David says, "Because this was before computers."

Hitchhiking In Europe Vocabulary Lesson

So what David is talking about here is now it would be much easier for someone from another country to get this music, the Grateful Dead's music, by just going onto the internet. But this was before computers. So this guy, this German guy didn't have a lot of Grateful Dead music.

So then Joe says, "Yeah, well if you think about it..."

Or he's saying, if you remember.

"the Dead played there..."

So he's saying, the Dead played. The Grateful Dead played in Germany in concert.

"in, uh, '81, and, uh..."

When he says '81, he's talking about 1981. The year 1981.

And David says, "Yeah, he, he knew about them. He knew what was up..."

Knew what was up. This means to know about something. Know what was up or knew what was up. He knew what was up.

And David says, "but he was like, 'y'know..."

What David is... When he says, when he says here, he was like. What he's starting to say is, the German guy said, y'know.

And then Joe says, "Yeah." And David goes on to say, "I could use some music."

So David is saying, the German guy was like I could use some music. Or he's saying the German guy said I could use some music.

And then David goes on to say, "And he had a Dead shirt on. He showed me. It was funny." And Joe says, "Wait, he, he was actually wearing a Grateful Dead shirt when you met him?"

Grateful Dead. This is the American rock and roll music band that we keep hearing about... the references deadhead, the Dead. So Grateful Dead.

And then David says, "Uh-huh."

So David is basically just saying yes to Joe here.

Hitchhiking In Europe Vocabulary Lesson

And then Joe laughs and says, “That’s great.” And David says, “It was like underneath a sweatshirt.”

A sweatshirt is like a thick warm shirt.

And then David goes on to say, “He was like, ‘No, really.’”

So what David is saying here is the German guy said no really. He was like no really.

And then David goes on to say, “He pulls over... He lifts up the sweatshirt.”

So David is just describing now... He was taking the sweatshirt off to show him his Grateful Dead t-shirt underneath that he was wearing.

And then David goes on to say, “he was like ‘Look’.”

So again... What David is saying here is, he said, the German guy said, look.

And then David says, “It was like an old tie-dye.”

So tie-dye. This is a colorful t-shirt. Tie-dye. For example: I have a friend named Jason and he has a lot of tie-dyes. He wears a lot of tie-dyes. Tie-dye.

And Joe says, “Were you wearing one also?” And David said, “No.” And Joe says, “Oh, so how did he know?”

So Joe is asking David, well how did he know that you liked the Grateful Dead, too?

And David says, “Uh, I just started talking about it and I had bootlegs with me.”

Now bootlegs. Bootlegs are cassette tapes with recordings of music bands playing in concert. Bootlegs. This is an example of bootlegs: When I first met Joe, he used to have a lot of bootlegs... mostly of the Grateful Dead. Bootlegs.

And then Joe ends the conversation by saying, “Oh, that’s great.”

* * * * *

Okay, now this is the end of the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Hitchhiking In Europe.” Now if you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary, go ahead and go on to the mini-story. Otherwise, go back and



Hitchhiking In Europe Vocabulary Lesson

listen to this lesson as many times as you need to, but in a relaxed way. And then when you feel ready, go to the mini-story.

Alrighty, see you next time. Bye bye.

Moving As A Child Part 1 Conversation

Kristin: Hey, I was on the phone with my mom earlier today. I had a nice long conversation with her.

Joe: Oh, how's she doin'?

by the way: *in addition to but less important*

Kristin: Yeah, she's doin' good. She said to tell you hello, **by the way**.

Joe: Oh, nice.

out of the blue: *sudden and unexpected*

Kristin: Yeah, I thought this kind of came **out of the blue**. I'd never heard it before. But she was tellin' me how my nephew moved.

Joe: Oh, he just moved?

Kristin: Yeah, um, they had been living in the city limits and now they're living in the county. So that means he's no longer gonna be going to the city schools. He'll be going to a county school. He's changed school districts.

traumatic: *difficult and upsetting*

Joe: Oh, wow, that can actually be pretty **traumatic** to do something like that as a kid. I mean...

Kristin: Yeah, and they've just started back to school. So I'm wondering how he's doing at a completely new school...new, new kids, everything being new.

educational standpoint: *describing education*

Joe: Well, at least he didn't have to move, like, mi-, in the middle of the school year. I mean, that can be really difficult from an **educational standpoint**. And, y'know, it's really tough to get **settled in**. Y'know, especially when you do it mid-year, um...

settled in: *adjusted or used to*

Kristin: That's true. And although, y'know, he's still in the same area, he's close enough to still be participating in the same, uh, **little league sports**. Like, I think he's still gonna be on the same baseball team. So he'll still see those same kids.

little league sports: *group of sports teams for children*

transition: *change*

Joe: Oh, that's good. That'll make the **transition** easier.

fortunate: *lucky*

Kristin: Right.

army brats: *children of parents who are in the military who usually move a lot*

Joe: Wow, eh... Man. Y'know what? That just made me remember the time when I moved as a kid. Y'know, I was pretty **fortunate**. I only moved one time. And, y'know, some kids have to move a lot. Like, I mean, like **army brats**, for example.

Moving As A Child Part 1 Conversation

Kristin: Yeah.

comes a point: comes a time
teenager: a person between 13 and 19 years old

Joe: I mean, I've had some friends whose parents were in the Army and they moved a lot. But, y'know, I, I guess it's easier when you're younger. But there **comes a point** where, y'know, it gets really difficult. Like when you're a **teenager**. Like...

Kristin: Oh, yeah, I, I've...

Joe: When I moved I was just about a teenager, so I know.

Kristin: Well, I, I've only moved once, too, when I was a child and I was eight. And that was pretty tough for me.

Joe: Yeah, well you can't imagine how difficult it must have been for me. I mean, I moved from New York where I had lived my entire life. My whole family was there. Uh, y'know, I'd, I had never moved before so all my friends lived there. And then I moved to **Pennsylvania, rural** Pennsylvania. I mean, it was a complete...

Kristin: Oh gosh.

Joe: ...**culture shock**.

Kristin: Yeah, **I bet**.

Joe: And, y'know, what's worse is, uh, not only did it seem different to me, I seemed totally different to all the kids there...

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: ...because, I mean first off I had this really thick New York **accent**...

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: ...so **right off the bat**, y'know, they knew right away that I was not from there.

Kristin: [laugh] Right.

Joe: Y'know, it was obvious I was the **new kid on the block**.

Kristin: Uh-huh.



Moving As A Child Part 1 Conversation

style: *fashion*

Joe: And I looked different also because the **style** in New York was much different than it was in Pennsylvania.



Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Hello and welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Moving As A Child Part 1.”

Let's get started with the story.

* * * * *

Alex is twelve years old. He is an army brat. His dad joined the Army before he was born.

Alex and his parents had lived on the moon for two years. Then, out of the blue, they moved to America.

Right off the bat, he hated it. The town they moved to was rural, so it was a culture shock after living on the moon. Everyone at school knew he was the new kid on the block. He did not have any friends. He really missed living on the moon.

After one month, Alex started to play little league sports. Then he made some friends. Soon he was feeling settled in.

Now Alex really likes living in America and he does not miss living on the moon anymore.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's the end of the story. Now I'm going to read the story again and this time I will ask you some questions. You can answer the questions out loud and you can always pause your computer or iPod if you feel like you need a little more time to think before you answer the questions and if you just feel like listening and not answering the questions, well that's fine as well.

Okay let's get started.

* * * * *

Alex is twelve years old.

How old is Alex?

Twelve years old, Alex is twelve years old.

Who is twelve years old?

Alex, Alex is twelve years old.



Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Is Alex or Andy twelve years old?

Alex is. Alex is twelve years old.

How many years old is Alex? Is he twelve or fifteen years old?

Twelve, Alex is twelve years old.

He is an army brat.

What is he?

An army brat, he is an army brat.

Is he an army brat or a plumber?

An army brat, he is an army brat.

Who is an army brat? Is Alex an army brat?

Yes, he is. Alex is an army brat.

Are his parents in the military?

Yes, yes, they are. He is an army brat which means that his parents are in the military and by the military; we mean the Army, or the Navy, or the Air Force, or the Marines.

Does his family move a lot because they are in the military?

Yes, they do. He is an army brat and to be an army brat means that your parents are in the military and you move around a lot and that you are a child or that you are younger, let's say. So when we say he is an army brat that means he has parents who are in the military and that they move around a lot as a result of them being in the military.

His dad joined the Army before he was born.

Did his dad join the Army before he was born?



Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did. His dad joined the Army before he was born.

What did his dad do?

He joined the Army, his dad joined the Army.

Did his dad join the Army or go to college?

He joined the Army. His dad joined the Army.

Who joined the Army?

His dad, his dad joined the Army.

Did Alex join the Army?

No, Alex didn't join the Army; he's only twelve years old. He can't join the Army yet.

Did his dad join the Army?

Yes, he did. His dad joined the Army.

Whose dad joined the Army?

Alex's, Alex's dad joined the Army.

Did Alex's dad or Alex's mom join the Army?

His dad, his dad joined the Army.

What did his dad join? Did he join the Navy or the Army?

The Army, he joined the Army.

When did he join the Army?

Well, he did it before Alex was born. He joined the Army before Alex was born.

Did he join the Army last week?



Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

No, not last week, he joined it before Alex was born.

Did he join the Army before Alex was born?

Yes, he did. He joined the Army before Alex was born.

Alex and his parents had lived on the moon for two years.

Had Alex and his parents lived on the moon for two years?

Yes, yes, they did. Alex and his parents had lived on the moon for two years.

Who had lived on the moon? Had Alex's grandmother lived on the moon?

No, it wasn't Alex's grandmother.

Had Alex lived on the moon?

Yes, he had. Alex had lived on the moon.

Had Alex's father lived on the moon?

Yes, he had, too.

Had Alex's mother lived on the moon?

Yes, she did. Alex and his parents had lived on the moon, so his mother had lived on the moon, his father had lived on the moon and Alex as well had lived on the moon.

Where had they lived?

On the moon; they had lived on the moon.

Had they lived on a farm?

No, not a farm.

Had they lived on the moon?



Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *they had lived on the moon.*

How long had they lived on the moon?

Two years, they had lived on the moon for two years.

Had they lived on the moon two years or eleven days?

Two years, they had lived on the moon for two years.

Had they lived on the moon for two or seven years?

Two, they had lived on the moon for two years.

Had Alex and his parents lived on the moon for two years?

Yes, they had. Alex and his parents had lived on the moon for two years.

Then, out of the blue, they moved to America.

Did they move to America out of the blue?

Yes, they did. Out of the blue, they moved to America.

Did they move to America suddenly?

Yes, they moved to America out of the blue, which means that they moved to America suddenly.

Did they move to America unexpectedly?

Yes, yes, they did. They moved to America out of the blue and out of the blue means suddenly and unexpectedly.

Did they expect to move to America?

No, no, they did not. It was out of the blue, which means they did not expect to move.

Who moved to America?



Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Alex and his parents, Alex and his parents moved to America.

Did Alex and his parents move to America out of the blue?

Yes, they did. They moved to America out of the blue.

Did Alex and his parents move to America suddenly and unexpectedly?

Yes, they moved to America out of the blue, which is the same as saying they moved to America suddenly and unexpectedly. Out of the blue means suddenly and unexpectedly.

Where did they move?

To America, they moved to America.

Did they move to France?

No, they didn't move to France.

Did they move to America?

Yes, they did. They moved to America.

Did they move to America out of the blue?

Yes, yes, they did. They moved to America out of the blue. They moved to America suddenly and unexpectedly.

Right off the bat, he hated it.

Did he hate it right off the bat?

Yes, he did. He hated it right off the bat.

Did he hate it right away?

Yes, yes, he did. He hated it right off the bat, which is the same thing as saying he hated it right away. Right off the bat means right away.



Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Did he hate it immediately?

Yes, he did. He hated it right off the bat, which is the same as saying he hated it immediately. Right off the bat means right away or immediately.

Who hated it?

Alex, Alex hated it.

Did Alex or Andy hate it right off the bat?

Alex, Alex hated it right off the bat.

Did Alex hate it immediately?

Yes, he did. He hated it right off the bat, which is the same as saying he hated it immediately.

What did he hate? Did he hate living in America or flying to the moon?

Living in America, he hated living in America.

Did Alex hate living in America right off the bat?

Yes, he did. Right off the bat, he hated it. He hated living in America right off the bat.

Did Alex hate living in America right away?

Yes, he did. He hated it right off the bat, which is the same as saying he hated it right away.

The town they moved to was rural,

Did they move to a town that was rural?

Yes, yes, they did. They moved to a town that was rural.

What was rural?

Well, the town they moved to. They town they moved to was rural.



Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Was the town that they moved to rural?

Yes, yes, it was. The town that they moved to was rural.

Did the town that they moved to have a lot of farmland?

Yes, it did. It was rural, which is the same thing as saying it had a lot of farmland. Rural means it had a lot of farmland.

Did they move to a city?

No, they didn't move to a city. A city doesn't have a lot of farmland. A city is not rural.

What was rural? Was New York rural?

No, New York is definitely not rural, it is a big city.

Was the town that they moved to rural?

Yes, it was. The town that they moved to was rural.

Did the town that they moved to have a lot of farmland?

Yes, it did. The town that they moved to was rural, which is the same thing as saying the town that they moved to had a lot of farmland. Rural means it has a lot of farmland.

so it was a culture shock after living on the moon.

Was it a culture shock?

Yes, it was. It was a culture shock.

Was it uncomfortable?

Yes, yes, it was uncomfortable for them. It was a culture shock, which means that it was not comfortable.

Was it a culture shock for him because the people were different than the people who live on the moon?

Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, *it was*. *It was a culture shock, which means that it was uncomfortable when he went to another place because the people were different than the people from where he came from, which was the moon. So it was a culture shock, it was uncomfortable for him because the people were different than the people that he used to know on the moon.*

What was a culture shock? Was living in a rural town a culture shock?

Yes, yes, *it was*. *Living in a rural town was a culture shock and probably living in America was a culture shock after living on the moon.*

Did living in a rural town make them feel uncomfortable?

Yes, *it did*. *It was a culture shock which means that they were uncomfortable.*

Did living in a town that had a lot of farmland make them feel uncomfortable?

Well, they said that they moved to a rural town so it was like a culture shock. So they were uncomfortable living in a rural area and a rural area has a lot of farmland, so living in a town that had a lot of farmland made them feel uncomfortable or made them feel like it was culture shock.

Everyone at school knew he was the new kid on the block.

Did everyone at school know that he was the new kid on the block?

Yes, *they did*. *Everyone at school knew that he was the new kid on the block.*

Did everyone at school know that he was new to the area?

Yes, that's correct. They knew that he was the new kind on the block which means that they knew he was new to the area or he was new to the school. When you're the new kid on the block, that means that you are new and you have not been there before. So he was new to the area or he was new to the school. He was the new kid on the block.

What did everyone at school know?

Well, they knew that he was the new kid on the block.

Who knew?



Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Everyone at school, everyone at school knew.

Who was the new kid on the block?

Alex, Alex was the new kid on the block.

Was Alex the new kid on the block?

Yes, yes, he was. Alex was the new kid on the block.

Was Alex new to the school?

Yes, he was. He was the new kid on the block. He was new to the school, being the new kid on the block means that you are new to the area or, in this case, new to the school.

Did only some people at school know that Alex was the new kid on the block?

No, everyone knew, not just some people. Everyone at school knew that he was the new kid on the block.

He did not have any friends.

Did he have any friends?

No, no, he didn't. He did not have any friends.

How many friends did he have?

Well, he did not have any friends, so that means he had zero friends, he had none.

Who did not have any friends?

Alex, Alex did not have any friends.

Did he not have any friends or not have a bicycle?

Friends, he did not have any friends.

Did Alex have any friends?

Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

No, no, he did not. He did not have any friends.

He really missed living on the moon.

Did he really miss living on the moon?

Yes, he did. He really missed living on the moon.

Who really missed living on the moon?

Alex, Alex really missed living on the moon.

Did Alex or his mother really miss living on the moon?

Alex, Alex really missed living on the moon.

What did he miss?

Well, he missed living on the moon.

Did he miss his grandmother or living on the moon?

Living on the moon, he missed living on the moon.

Where did he miss living, on the moon or on a farm?

On the moon, he missed living on the moon.

After one month, Alex started to play little league sports.

Did Alex start to play little league sports?

Yes, he did. Alex started to play little league sports.

What did Alex start to do?

To play little league sports, he started to play little league sports.



Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Did he start to ride his bicycle or start to play little league sports?

Play little league sports, he started to play little league sports.

Did he start to play sports on a team with other children?

Yes, yes, he did. He started to play little league sports, which is the same thing as saying he started to play sports on a team with other children. Little league sports are a group of sports teams for children.

Who started to play little league sports?

Alex, Alex started to play little league sports.

When did he start to play little league sports?

After one month. After one month, Alex started to play little league sports.

Did he start to play after one year or one month?

One month, after one month.

After how many months did he start to play?

One, after one month.

Did he start to play little league sports after one or three months?

One, after one month.

Did he start to play sports on a team with other children after one month?

Yes, he did. After one month, he started to play little league sports and little league sports are a group of sports teams for children, so he started to play sports on a team with other children after one month.

Then he made some friends.

Did he make some friends?

Yes, he did. He made some friends.

Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

What did he do?

He made some friends.

Did he ride his bicycle or make some friends?

Make some friends, he made some friends.

Who made some friends?

Alex, Alex made some friends.

Did Alex or his mother make some friends?

Alex did. Alex made some friends.

Did Alex make a cake or make some friends?

He made some friends. Alex made some friends.

Soon he was feeling settled in.

How was he feeling?

Settled in, soon he was feeling settled in.

Was he feeling settled in?

Yes, he was. He was feeling settled in.

Was he feeling adjusted to living there?

Yes, yes, he was. He was feeling settled in, which is the same thing as saying he was feeling adjusted to living there, settled in means being adjusted to.

Was he feeling uncomfortable living there?

No, he was feeling settled in. Settled in does not mean uncomfortable.

Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Who was feeling settled in?

Alex, Alex was feeling settled in.

Was Alex or Andy feeling settled in?

Alex, Alex was feeling settled in.

Was Alex feeling used to living there?

Yes, yes, he was. He was feeling settled in, which means he was feeling used to living there or he had felt adjusted to living there, settled in means being used to or being adjusted to.

Now Alex really likes living in America

Does Alex really like living in America?

Yes, yes, he does. He really likes living in America.

Does Alex hate living in America?

No, he doesn't hate it. He really likes it.

Who really likes living in America?

Alex, Alex really likes living in America.

Does Alex like living in America just a little?

No, he really likes living in America, which means he likes it a lot.

Does Alex like living in America a lot?

Yes, he does. He really likes living in America. He likes it a lot.

Where does Alex really like to live?

In America, he really likes living in America.



Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Does Alex really like to live in Paris?

No, not Paris.

Does Alex really like to live in America?

Yes, he does. Alex really likes living in America. He really likes to live in America.

and he does not miss living on the moon anymore.

Does he miss living on the moon?

No, he does not miss living on the moon anymore.

Who doesn't miss living on the moon?

Alex, Alex does not miss living on the moon.

What does he not miss?

Living on the moon, he does not miss living on the moon.

Does Alex still wish he lived on the moon?

No, no, he doesn't. He doesn't miss it anymore.

Why doesn't Alex miss living on the moon?

Well, because he really likes living in America now so he no longer misses living on the moon.

* * * * *

Okay, so we've come to the end of our story and that means we are now at the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation "Moving As A Child Part 1." Now it is your turn to tell the story by yourself. Remember you do not need to memorize every word. But you should use the idioms and the vocabulary words that we went over in the story. So those are: "army brat," "out of the blue," "right off the bat," "rural," "culture shock," "new kind on the block," "little league sports," and "settled in." Now remember, you can listen to this lesson



Moving As A Child Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

as many times as you need to in order to feel that you know the idioms and the vocabulary words well enough. So now please tell the story by yourself.

Thanks a lot. We'll see you next time.



Moving As A Child Part 1 POV Lesson

Hi. Welcome to the point of view stories for "Moving As A Child Part 1". Today we are going to hear four different versions of the story from the mini-story lesson "Moving As A Child Part 1". Each time I tell the story I'm going to change the time in which the story is being told or I'm gonna change the person who is telling the story. So let's start by telling the story as if it's happening right now, or in the present. Okay, here we go.

* * * * *

Alex is twelve years old. He is an army brat. His dad joins the Army before he is born.

Alex and his parents live on the moon for two years. Then, out of the blue, they move to America.

Right off the bat, he hates it. The town they move to is rural, so it is a culture shock after living on the moon. Everyone at school knows he is the new kid on the block. He does not have any friends. He really misses living on the moon.

After one month, Alex starts to play little league sports. Then he makes some friends. Soon he is feeling settled in.

Now Alex really likes living in America and he does not miss living on the moon anymore.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's the end of the story being told as if it is happening right now. Next let's hear the story as if it happened last year.

* * * * *

Last year, Alex was twelve years old. He was an army brat. His dad joined the Army before he was born.

Alex and his parents lived on the moon for two years. Then, out of the blue, they moved to America.

Right off the bat, he hated it. The town they moved to was rural, so it was a culture shock after living on the moon. Everyone at school knew he was the new kid on the block. He did not have any friends. He really missed living on the moon.

After one month, Alex started to play little league sports. Then he made some friends. Soon he felt settled in.

Alex really liked living in America and he did not miss living on the moon anymore.

Moving As A Child Part 1 POV Lesson

* * * * *

Okay, so that is the story as if it is happening in the past; as if it has already happened. Now let's hear the story as if it is happening in the future. So we will think of the story happening four years from now or, say, in four years. Okay, here we go.

* * * * *

In four years Alex'll be twelve years old. He'll be an army brat. His dad will join the Army.

Alex and his parents are gonna live on the moon for two years. Then, out of the blue, they'll move to America.

Right off the bat, he'll hate it. The town they move to will be rural, so it'll be a culture shock after living on the moon. Everyone at school is going to know he is the new kid on the block. He won't have any friends. He is really going to miss living on the moon.

After one month, Alex is going to start to play little league sports. Then he's gonna make some friends. Soon he'll be feeling settled in.

Then Alex will really like living in America and he won't miss living on the moon anymore.

* * * * *

Okay so that's the end of this version of the story, where we have the events take place four years from now. Notice that instead of saying something like, "he will not miss" we shorten it by saying, "he won't miss". Won't is really the same thing as will not. It's probably more likely to be heard in spoken English than to be seen in written English.

Alright now let's hear the story from Alex's point of view. So in this version Alex is going to be telling the story. Here we go.

* * * * *

I am twelve years old. I am an army brat. My dad joined the Army before I was born.

My parents and I lived on the moon for two years. Then, out of the blue, we moved to America.

Right off the bat, I hated it. The town we moved to is rural, so it is a culture shock after living on the



Moving As A Child Part 1 POV Lesson

moon. Everyone at school knows that I am the new kid on the block. I do not have any friends. I really miss living on the moon.

After one month, I started to play little league sports. Then I made some friends. Soon I was feeling settled in.

Now I really like living in America and I do not miss living on the moon anymore.

* * * * *

Alright so that is the end of the point of view stories for the lesson "Moving As A Child Part 1". Now please go back and listen to each version of the story again. Then when you feel like you understand one of the stories go back and tell that story on your own. Do this for each of the stories. And if you're having a little trouble, don't worry, just relax. Take your time. And then when you're able to tell each of the stories on your own then go to the next lesson. Okay, thanks and we'll see you next time.



Moving As A Child Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Hello. Welcome back. This is the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Moving As A Child Part 1.” This is a two part conversation. Now in this first conversation, I am talking with Joe about my nephew moving. Then Joe and I start talking about how we each moved when we were younger.

Okay, let's begin with the conversation.

* * * * *

I start out by saying, “Hey...”

Hey is just... I'm just trying to get Joe's attention here.

So I say, “Hey, I was on the phone with my mom earlier today. I had a nice long conversation with her.” And Joe says, “Oh, how's she doin'?”

Now oh here... This is just filler. It's not really needed. You could take it away from the sentence and the sentence would still make sense. How's she doin'. How's is short for how is. And doin' is short for doing. Now as I say in every lesson, you will hear words that are shortened and you won't really see these shortened words in written English. You'll definitely hear them though in conversational English.

Okay, moving along... And then I say, “Yeah...”

Yeah is just slang or informal or casual for yes.

And I go on to say, “she's doin' good.” And then I say, “She said to tell you hello, by the way.”

Now by the way... This means in addition to but it's less important. It's not as important as what I had been talking about. By the way. An example of this would be if... Let's say Joe and I were talking about a trip that we're going to be taking to Africa at the end of the year. So we're talking about this trip to Africa. And then I say, “Oh, by the way, I'm going to eat dinner with AJ tonight.” That's an example of by the way.

Okay and then getting back to the conversation... Joe says, “Oh, nice.” And then I say, “Yeah, I thought this kind of came out of the blue.”

Kind of is just filler here. It's not really needed. Out of the blue. Out of the blue means sudden and unexpected. Out of the blue. For example: Out of the blue, my mother told me today that my cousin just had a baby. I didn't even know that she was pregnant. Out of the blue.

And I go on to say, “I'd never heard it before. But she was tellin' me how my nephew moved.”



Moving As A Child Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Tellin'. This is short for telling.

And then Joe says, “Oh, he just moved?”

Now just... This is really filler here. You could take it away and this sentence would still make sense.

And I say, “Yeah, um...”

Um is just filler.

And I go on to say, “they had been living in the city limits...”

Or I am saying they had been living inside the city.

And then I say, “and now they’re living in the county.”

Now a county... This is a large area that has a city or cities within it. For example: You have a city or cities and then you have a county that has the city or cities within it. And then a state has counties in it, within it.

And I go on to say, “So that means he’s no longer gonna be going to the city schools.”

Now gonna... This is just slang for going to.

And I go on to say, “He’ll be going to a county school. He’s changed school districts.”

Or he’s changed schools. So basically what I’m saying here is my nephew has been living in a city called Gainesville. It’s in the state of Georgia. And he and his family have moved out from out of the city, moved into the county. So he’s changing schools. He won’t be going to a Gainesville city school anymore. He’ll be going to a school that’s in the county, in the area that’s outside of the city.

And then Joe says, “Oh, wow...”

Now here he’s just showing emotion such as, wow, I feel sorry for him.

And Joe goes on to say, “that can actually be pretty traumatic...”

Now actually is just filler here. It’s not really needed. And pretty here is very, very traumatic. Traumatic. This means something that is difficult and upsetting. Traumatic. For example: When Kim was a child, she was in the car when her mother crashed the car. It was a traumatic experience. Traumatic.



Moving As A Child Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Okay so getting back to the conversation... Joe is saying, "can actually be pretty traumatic to do something like that as a kid."

To do something such as that as a kid, or child.

And Joe says, "I mean..."

So Joe is starting to say, what I'm trying to say...

And then I say, "Yeah, and they've just started back to school."

So I'm saying, they've just started the new school year.

And then I say, "So I'm wondering..."

Or I'm saying, I've been thinking about him.

And I go on to say, "how he's doing at a completely new school...new, new kids, everything being new." And Joe says, "Well..."

Well is just filler here. It's not really needed.

Joe says, "at least..."

Or he's saying, it's good.

"he didn't have to move, like, mi-, in the middle of the school year. I mean, that can be really difficult..."

Or that can be very difficult.

"from an educational standpoint."

Now educational standpoint... This is describing education. For example: When I was a child and my family moved, we moved to an area that had much better schools. So I would say that moving was good from an educational standpoint. Educational standpoint.

And Joe goes on to say, "And, y'know..."

Y'know is short for you know.



Moving As A Child Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

And Joe says, “it’s really tough...”

Or he’s saying, *it’s very difficult.*

“to get settled in.”

Settled in. This means adjusted or used to. *Settled in.* For example: *I can remember the flight to Thailand being twenty hours long. It was so long. Because it was so long it took me a day to get settled in.* *Settled in.*

And then Joe goes on to say, “Y’know, especially...”

Or he’s saying *most importantly.*

“when you do it mid-year, um...”

Now mid-year... This means *in the middle of the year.*

And then I say, “That’s true. And although...”

Or I’m saying *even though.*

“y’know, he’s still in the same area, he’s close enough to still be participating in...”

Or he’s close enough to be still playing in.

“the same, uh, little league sports.”

Now uh is just filler. It’s not really needed. Little league sports. This is a group of sports teams for children. Little league sports. An example of little league sports would be: *Joe played little league sports when he was a child. He loved to play baseball. Little league sports.*

And then I go on to say, “Like...”

And like is just filler here.

“Like, I think he’s still gonna be on the same baseball team. So he’ll still see those same kids.”

Or he’ll still be around those same kinds.

Moving As A Child Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

And Joe says, “Oh, that’s good. That’ll make the transition easier.”

Transition. This is change. Transition. For example: When Joe moved at the age of twelve it was a difficult transition. He missed his friends in New York. Transition.

And then I say, “Right.”

So I’m just saying, yes. I’m agreeing with Joe.

And then Joe says, “Wow, eh... Man.”

Now, he’s just showing emotion here.

And Joe goes on to say, “Y’know what? That just made me remember the time when I moved as a kid. Y’know, I was pretty fortunate.”

Fortunate. This means lucky. Fortunate. An example of fortunate is: Harry is very fortunate. One day he was walking home from work and he found \$100. Fortunate.

And then Joe goes on to say, “I only moved one time. And, y’know, some kids have to move a lot. Like, I mean, like army brats, for example.”

Army brats. These are children of parents who are in the military who usually move a lot. Now military... The military is the Army, or the Navy, or the Air Force, or the Marines. That’s what military is or means. An example of army brats would be: When I was younger I knew a girl named Katie. She was an army brat. Her family moved five times in six years. Army brat, or in this example army brats. And continuing with the conversation.

I then say, “Yeah.”

Just agreeing with Joe.

And then Joe says, “I mean, I’ve had some friends whose parents were in the Army and they moved a lot. But, y’know, I, I guess it’s easier when you’re younger. But there comes a point where...”

Now comes a point... This means comes a time. There comes a time. For example: There comes a point when most Americans leave their parents’ home or homes, to go to college, to start working or to start a family. Comes a point.

And Joe goes on to say, “y’know, it gets really difficult. Like when you’re a teenager. Like...”

Moving As A Child Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Now teenager... This is a person between thirteen and nineteen years old. Teenager. An example of teenager would be: In America teenagers are not allowed to drink alcohol. You have to be twenty-one years old. Teenager.

And then I say, "Oh, yeah, I, I've..." And Joe says, "When I moved I was just about a teenager, so I know."

So Joe is saying I was just about a teenager. I was almost a teenager.

And then I say, "Well, I, I've only moved once, too..."

Or I'm saying I've only moved once also.

And I go on to say, "when I was a child and I was eight."

So I'm saying I was eight years old.

And I go on to say, "And that was pretty tough for me." And Joe says, "Yeah, well you can't imagine..."

Or he's saying you can't even think.

"how difficult it must have been for me. I mean, I moved from New York where I had lived my entire life."

Or he's saying I had lived my whole life.

And then he says, "My whole family was there."

Now what he's talking about is his grandparents, his aunts, his uncles, his cousins. So that would be his extended family. His immediate family would be his mother, his father, his brothers, his sisters. So he's saying his whole family was there... his whole extended family, his grandparents, his aunts, his uncles, his cousins.

And then Joe goes on to say, "Uh, y'know, I'd, I had never moved before so all my friends lived there. And then I moved to Pennsylvania..."

Now Pennsylvania... This is a northeastern state in America. Pennsylvania.



Moving As A Child Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

And Joe goes on to say, “rural Pennsylvania.”

Rural. This is an area where there is farmland. Rural. An example of rural would be: Joe moved from New York to a rural part of the country. He had never lived near a farm before that time. Rural. It's the opposite of city.

And then Joe goes on to say, “I mean, it was a complete...”

Or he's starting to say here, it was a total...

And I say, “Oh gosh.”

I'm just showing emotion, like I don't believe it.

And then Joe finishes by saying, “culture shock.”

It was a complete or total culture shock. Culture shock. This is a feeling, or this is when you feel uncomfortable when you move to another place and the people are different than the place you lived before. So feeling uncomfortable when you move to another place and the people are different than the place you lived before. That's culture shock. For example: I can remember when I moved to Korea. It was a culture shock. I had never been to an Asian country before. It was very different from America. Culture shock.

And then I say, “Yeah, I bet.”

I bet means I agree. I bet.

And then Joe says, “And...”

And... And here is just filler. It's not really needed.

Joe goes on to say, “y'know, what's worse is, uh, not only did it seem different to me, I seemed totally...”

Or he's saying, I seemed completely or very...

“different to all the kids there...” And then I just laugh. And Joe says, “because, I mean first off...”

Or he's saying, first.

And he goes on to say, “I had this really thick...”

Moving As A Child Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Or he's saying, *I had this very strong...*

"New York accent..."

Now accent... This is the way it sounds when someone speaks. Accent. For example: The people in the southern part of America have a strong accent. Accent.

And then I just laugh. And Joe says, "so right off the bat..."

Or he's saying right away, immediately, right off the bat. For example, an example of right off the bat: I found a job right off the bat when I moved to San Francisco. Right off the bat.

And Joe goes on to say, "y'know, they knew right away that I was not from there." And then I laugh again and I say, "Right."

Just agreeing with him.

And Joe says, "Y'know, it was obvious..."

Or he's saying, everyone knew.

"I was the new kid on the block."

New kid on the block. This means new to an area or new person to an area. New kid on the block. For example: When I first moved to San Francisco I really felt like the new kid on the block. I did not even know where a grocery store was located. New kid on the block.

And then I say, "Uh-huh."

Just agreeing with Joe.

And then Joe says, "And I looked different also because the style in New York was much different..."

Or he's saying, was very different.

"than it was in Pennsylvania."

Now style, style is fashion. Style. For example: I really liked the way the women in India were dressed when I was there. They have a much different style than the women in America. Style.



Moving As A Child Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

* * * * *

Okay, this is the end of the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Moving As A Child Part 1.” If you feel that you need to, go back and listen as many times as you need to, to make sure that you understand or have a basic understanding of the vocabulary. And then when you’re ready, move on to Joe’s mini-story.

Alright, see you for “Moving as a Child Part 2.” Bye bye.

Moving As A Child Part 2 Conversation

Michigan: a state in America

Midwestern states: states in the middle of America

accent: the way it sounds when someone speaks

pop: a drink

soda: a drink; same as pop

ridiculed: made a mean joke about someone

affluent: rich

old clunkers: old cars that have a lot of problems and look bad

neighborhood: the area where you live

brand new: completely new

pretty obvious: really easy to understand

turn a lot of heads: get a lot of attention; make people look

blue collar: the people have jobs that do not make a lot of money

Gremlin: the name of an American car that is no longer made

designer clothes: expensive clothes

keep up with the Joneses: to try to own all the same things as people you know in order to seem as good as them

stressful: makes you worry

couldn't afford it: did not have enough money

Kristin: That makes me think, um, when we moved, I was, we were living in **Michigan**. At the time we always considered it "the North". But actually it's the north of the **Midwestern states**. But then moving to a southern state, I definitely had a northern **accent**. And some of the words I used were different, too, like "**pop**" for, for...

Joe: **Soda.**

Kristin: ...soda. So I was, I was **ridiculed** by kids for my accent, for sure.

Joe: Yeah, you know another difficult thing for me was that the area that we moved to was **affluent**. And, I mean, we certainly were not rich. So, y'know, uh, and you could see it from the clothes we wore to the cars that my parents drove. I mean...

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: ...y'know, we had these **old clunkers** and everyone else in the **neighborhood** has these **brand new** cars, y'know. So it was **pretty obvious**, like, we would **turn a lot of heads** driving past people.

Kristin: Oh my god, that sounds so much like, like my situation. We moved from a very **blue collar** area - my, my parents being teachers, were very blue collar as well - to a very affluent area, a lot of doctors and lawyers. And I can remember moving. We [laugh]... My mom drove this yellow and black **Gremlin** [laugh]...

Joe: [laugh] Yeah, they don't make those anymore...

Kristin: [laugh] No. I....

Joe: ...and there's a reason for it.

Kristin: [laugh] I would get dropped off at school from... come in the Gremlin. I would be so embarrassed. And then, y'know, we didn't have the **designer clothes** that all the kids we went to school with wore. So, we w-, it just was very stressful trying to **keep up with the Joneses** and buying these designer clothes. It was, uh, very **stressful** for me and my brothers. But also we put a lot of pressure on our parents to buy these. And they just **couldn't afford it**.

Joe: Yeah, that sounds familiar.

Moving As A Child Part 2 Conversation

knickers: a type of girls pants that do not go below the knees

back in style: to be fashionable again

horrible: very bad

playground: a place where children play

standing in the corner: standing away from the other children

cruel: mean

I'll tell you what: this is what I think

Pennsylvania: a state in America

tackled: thrown to the ground

cryin' wolf: to try to get attention by saying something that is not true

screamin' at the top of my lungs: yelling very loud

wimp: someone who is weak

Kristin: I c-, I gotta tell you one story I can remember. My mom actually, she can't sew. And she had sewn me this pair of **knickers**... Knickers at one point were **back in style**. Do you know what those are?

Joe: Yes, yeah.

Kristin: And they were **horrible** looking. And I wore 'em to school and all the kids were makin' fun of me on the **playground**.

Joe: Oh, my gosh.

Kristin: I was just **standing in the corner** by myself about to cry. And then I went home and I was like "Mom, I want real knickers. I want you to buy 'em in the store for me."

Joe: Yeah, kids can be **cruel**.

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: I know kids can be cruel because, **I'll tell you what**, I had to, uh... I had a really bad experience right before I started school the summer that I moved to **Pennsylvania**. I'm playin' football with the kids in the neighborhood...

Kristin: Uh-huh.

Joe: ...and, of course, what happens is, I get **tackled** and someone falls on my leg and it breaks my ankle.

Kristin: [laugh] Oh no.

Joe: I couldn't believe it. So I'm sittin' there, tryin' to, y'know, act as, uh, if, like, it doesn't hurt that much. But, I mean, it hurt a lot. And then, y'know, the kids thought I was **cryin' wolf**. They didn't really think I was hurt at all.

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: So I have to walk away and, uh, walk home on a broken ankle. And, I mean, I just felt like **screamin' at the top of my lungs**. I was in so much pain. But I couldn't. I couldn't do it because I didn't want the kids to think I was, like, some **wimp**.

Moving As A Child Part 2 Conversation

Kristin: [laugh] Oh, oh...

cast: something that is put on you're arm or leg when it is broken

Joe: So, it gets worse [laugh]. I have to go to school with a **cast** on my leg to start the school year.

Kristin: [laugh]

look out of place: to look like you do not belong or fit in

Joe: So I'm the new kid with the thick accent, the clothes that **look out of place**, y'know. Nobody knows me and I have a cast on my foot. And my, y'know, I can't take a shower, y'know. I can't shower the leg so my toes are a little dirty...

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: ...I mean I wanted nothin' more than to move back to New York that very moment, the first day of school.

stuck out like a sore thumb: look out of place; to look like you do not belong or fit in; same as **look out of place**

Kristin: God, I bet you **stuck out like a sore thumb**.

Joe: Oh ma-, you can't imagine. It was the worst. I, I mean I think for the first two years I lived in Pennsylvania I just wanted to **hop on a bus** and get back to New York as fast as I could.

Kristin: Yep, that was me... wanting to move back to Michigan, too.

Joe: Wh- [laugh]...

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: But, uh, y'know, I, at least you moved at an earlier age. It's a lot easier because, y'know, when you're younger it's just, uh... Y'know, all the kids are **getting familiar with** each other. But when you move, and you're a little older, the kids already know each other. Y'know, they've already **combined** the **elementary schools** into the **middle school**, uh, for when I had moved there.

Kristin: Yeah, but you know, **ironically** enough, um, my older brother, I think, had an easier time **adapting**. And he was starting seventh grade. I was starting third grade. My younger brother was starting second grade. And my younger brother and I had a really **rough** time.

ironically: something you would not think is true but it is

adapting: getting used to
rough: difficult

Moving As A Child Part 2 Conversation

looking back: *to think of a time in the past*

a blessing in disguise: *something that is good that you do not think is good at first*

Joe: Yeah, well, y'know, as much as I hated it when I first, uh, had moved to Pennsylvania, now in **looking back**, I think it was really **a blessing in disguise**. I mean there were so many other opportunities that came available to us from living in Pennsylvania and going to a school district that, y'know, was, uh, had a lot more money. And the education that we got was better. And it just provided me, uh, with a much better starting point for, uh, college.

Kristin: Right.



Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Hi, welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Moving As A Child Part 2.”

Okay, let’s get started with the story.

* * * * *

Julia Roberts’ house in Los Angeles was on fire. She called her friend Will Smith. He thought that she was just crying wolf. Then she started to scream at the top of her lungs. So Will Smith called the fireman.

The fire truck got to her house but they could not stop the fire.

The house burned down so Julia Roberts had to move.

It was pretty obvious that she was upset. But she had to leave Los Angeles.

She moved to a very small town. At first it was rough. She was the only movie star in town so she stuck out like a sore thumb. But the people were nice so it was easy to get familiar with them.

One day she met a nice man at a café. They fell in love and got married.

When she looks back on her wedding she smiles and now she thinks that the fire was a blessing in disguise.

* * * * *

Okay, so that’s our story. Now I will read the story again and I will ask questions as I read it this time. Please answer the questions out loud and if you need a little more time to think then you can always pause your computer or your iPod and then when you’re ready to answer the question then you can press play again. And, as always, if you do not wish to answer the questions out loud and you prefer to just sit and listen well then that’s fine as well.

Okay, let’s get started.

* * * * *

Julia Roberts’ house in Los Angeles was on fire.

Was Julia Roberts’ house on fire?



Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, it was. Her house was on fire.

What happened to the house?

Well, it was on fire, the house was on fire.

Whose house was on fire?

Julia Roberts', Julia Roberts' house was on fire.

Was Will Smith's house on fire?

No, it wasn't Will Smith's house.

What was on fire?

A house, Julia Roberts' house was on fire.

Was Julia Roberts' car or house on fire?

Her house, her house was on fire.

Where was Julia Roberts' house?

In Los Angeles, her house was in Los Angeles.

Was her house in Paris?

No, it wasn't in Paris.

Was her house in Los Angeles?

Yes, yes, it was. Her house was in Los Angeles.

She called her friend Will Smith.

Did she call her friend Will Smith?

Yes, she did. She called her friend Will Smith.



Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

What did she do?

Well, she called her friend Will Smith.

Did she call Will Smith or make a hamburger?

She called Will Smith. She didn't make a hamburger.

Who called Will Smith?

Julia Roberts, Julia Roberts called Will Smith.

Did Tom Cruise call Will Smith?

No, it wasn't Tom Cruise.

Did Julia Roberts call Will Smith?

Yes, she did. Julia Roberts called Will Smith.

Who did she call?

Will Smith, she called Will Smith.

Did she call Tom Cruise or Will Smith?

Will Smith, she called Will Smith.

Is Will Smith her friend?

Yes, he is. She called her friend Will Smith, so Will Smith is her friend.

He thought that she was just crying wolf.

Did he think that she was just crying wolf?

Yes, yes, he did. He thought that she was just crying wolf.



Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

What did he think?

That she was crying wolf, he thought that she was crying wolf.

Did he think that she was just trying to get attention by saying something that was not true?

Yes, he did. He thought that she was crying wolf, which is the same as saying he thought that she was just trying to get attention by saying something that was not true. Crying wolf means to say something that is not true in order to get attention.

Did he think that the house was on fire?

No, no, he didn't. He thought that she was crying wolf so he thought that she was saying something that was not true so he did not think that the house was on fire.

Who thought that she was just crying wolf?

Will Smith, Will Smith did. He thought that she was just crying wolf.

Did Will Smith or Tom Cruise think that she was crying wolf?

Will Smith did. Tom Cruise did not think she was just crying wolf.

Did Will Smith think that she was just trying to get attention?

Yes, yes, he did. He thought that she was just crying wolf, which means the same thing as he thought that she was just trying to get attention.

Who did he think was crying wolf?

Julia Roberts, he thought that Julia Roberts was crying wolf.

Did he think that his wife was crying wolf?

No, he didn't think that his wife was crying wolf.

Did he think that Julia Roberts was trying to get attention?

Yes, if you're crying wolf, you're trying to get attention.

Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did he think that Julia Roberts was trying to get attention by saying something that was not true?

Yes, he did. He thought that she was crying wolf, which is the same thing as saying he thought that she was trying to get attention by saying something that was not true. Crying wolf means to try to get attention by saying something that was not true. In this case he thought that the house being on fire was what was not true that she was saying, so he thought that she said the house was on fire even though it wasn't just to get attention.

Then she started to scream at the top of her lungs.

Did she start to scream at the top of her lungs?

Yes, she did. She started to scream at the top of her lungs.

What did she start to do?

Scream at the top of her lungs, she started to scream at the top of her lungs.

Did she talk quietly?

No, she did not talk quietly. She was screaming at the top of her lungs.

Did she start to yell very loudly?

Yes, she did. She started to scream at the top of her lungs, which is the same thing as saying she started to yell very loudly. If you scream at the top of your lungs, you are yelling very loudly.

Who started to scream at the top of her lungs?

Julia Roberts, Julia Roberts started to scream at the top of her lungs.

Did Julia Roberts start to scream at the top of her lungs?

Yes, yes, she did. Julia Roberts started to scream at the top of her lungs.

Did Julia Roberts start to yell very loudly?

Yes, she did. She started to scream at the top of her lungs, which is the same thing as saying she started to yell very loudly.

Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Why did she start to scream at the top of her lungs?

Well, she started to scream at the top of her lungs because her house was on fire.

So Will Smith called the fireman.

Did Will Smith call the fireman?

Yes, he did. Will Smith called the fireman.

So what did Will Smith do?

He called the fireman.

Did he get some water or call the fireman?

Called the fireman, he called the fireman.

Who called the fireman?

Will Smith, Will Smith called the fireman.

Did Will Smith or Julia Roberts call the fireman?

Will Smith, Will Smith called the fireman.

Who did Will Smith call?

The fireman, Will Smith called the fireman.

Did Will Smith call Julia Roberts or the fireman?

The fireman, Will Smith called the fireman.

The fire truck got to her house

Did the fire truck get to her house?



Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, it did. The fire truck got to her house.

What got to her house?

The fire truck, the fire truck got to her house.

Did the fire truck or the plumber get to her house?

The fire truck, the fire truck got to her house.

Where did the fire truck go?

To her house, the fire truck went to her house.

Did the fire truck go to her house or to the library?

Her house, it went to her house.

Whose house did the fire truck go to?

Julia Roberts' house, it went to Julia Roberts' house.

Did the fire truck go to Julia Roberts' house or Will Smith's house?

Julia Roberts' house, the fire truck got to Julia Roberts' house.

but they could not stop the fire.

Did they stop the fire?

No, they could not stop the fire.

Who was not able to stop the fire?

The firemen, the firemen were not able to stop the fire.

What were they unable to stop?



Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

The fire, they were unable to stop the fire.

Were they unable to stop the fire or the fire truck?

The fire, they were unable to stop the fire.

The house burned down so Julia Roberts had to move.

Did the house burn down?

Yes, it did. The house burned down.

What happened to the house?

It burned down.

What burned down?

The house, the house burned down.

Did the house or the tree burn down?

The house, the house burned down.

Whose house burned down?

Julia Roberts' house, Julia Roberts' house burned down.

Did Will Smith's house burn down?

No, it wasn't Will Smith's house that burned down.

Did Julia Roberts' house burn down?

Yes, Julia Roberts' house burned down.

Did Julia Roberts have to move?

Yes, she did. She had to move.



Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

What did Julia Roberts have to do?

To move, she had to move.

Did she have to eat dinner or move?

Move, she had to move.

Why did Julia Roberts have to move?

Well, it was because her house burned down so she didn't have a house to live in anymore.

It was pretty obvious that she was upset.

Was it pretty obvious that she was upset?

Yes, yes, it was. It was pretty obvious that she was upset.

Was it easy to understand that she was upset?

Yes, it was. It was pretty obvious, so that's the same thing as saying it was pretty easy to understand that she was upset. Pretty obvious means easy to understand.

What was pretty obvious?

That she was upset. It was pretty obvious that she was upset.

Was it pretty obvious that she was happy or upset?

That she was upset, it was pretty obvious that she was upset.

Who was upset?

Julia Roberts, Julia Roberts was upset.

Was Will Smith upset?

No, Will Smith wasn't upset.

Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Was Julia Roberts upset?

Yes, yes, she was. She was upset.

Was it easy to understand that she was upset?

Yes, it was pretty obvious that she was upset, which is the same thing as saying it was easy to understand that she was upset. When something is pretty obvious it means that it is easy to understand.

But she had to leave Los Angeles.

Did she have to leave Los Angeles?

Yes, yes, she did. She had to leave Los Angeles.

What did she have to do?

Leave Los Angeles, she had to leave Los Angeles.

Did she have to go to the beach or leave Los Angeles?

Leave Los Angeles, she had to leave Los Angeles.

Who had to leave Los Angeles?

Julia Roberts, Julia Roberts had to leave Los Angeles.

Did Will Smith have to leave Los Angeles?

No, Will Smith didn't have to leave Los Angeles.

Did Julia Roberts have to leave Los Angeles?

Yes, Julia Roberts had to leave Los Angeles.

Where did she have to leave?

Los Angeles, she had to leave Los Angeles.



Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did she have to leave New York?

No, she didn't have to leave New York.

Did she have to leave Los Angeles?

Yes, she had to leave Los Angeles.

She moved to a very small town.

Did she move to a very small town?

Yes, she did. She moved to a very small town.

Did she fly to Paris or move to a very small town?

She moved to a very small town.

Who moved to a very small town?

Julia Roberts did. Julia Roberts moved to a very small town.

Did Will Smith or Julia Roberts move to a very small town?

Julia Roberts did. Julia Roberts moved to a very small town.

Where did she move?

To a very small town, she moved to a very small town.

Did she move to Paris?

No, she did not move to Paris. Paris is not a very small town.

Did she move to a very small town?

Yes, she did. She moved to a very small town.

Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did she move to a large town?

No, no, she did not move to a large town, she moved to a very small town.

At first it was rough.

Was it rough at first?

Yes, it was. At first it was rough.

Was it easy at first?

No, it wasn't easy, it was rough.

Was it difficult at first?

Yes, yes, it was. At first it was rough, which is the same thing as saying at first it was difficult. Rough means difficult.

When was it rough?

At first, at first it was rough.

Was it rough four years later?

No, it wasn't rough four years later. It was rough at first, which is the same thing as saying in the beginning it was rough.

What was rough at first?

Moving to a small town, moving to a small town was rough at first.

She was the only movie star in town

Was she the only movie star in town?

Yes, she was. She was the only movie star in town.



Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Who was the only movie star in town?

Julia Roberts, Julia Roberts was the only movie star in town.

Was Will Smith the only movie star in town?

No, it wasn't Will Smith.

Was Julia Roberts the only movie star in town?

Yes, Julia Roberts was the only movie star in town.

Was Tom Cruise in town?

No, Tom Cruise wasn't in town. He's a movie star and Julia Roberts was the only movie star in town so Tom Cruise wasn't in town.

How many movie stars were in town?

One, just one, Julia Roberts was the only movie star in town, so there was only one movie star in town.

Were there two movie stars in town?

No, there was only one and Julia Roberts was the only one. She was the only movie star in town.

so she stuck out like a sore thumb.

Did she stick out like a sore thumb?

Yes, she did. She stuck out like a sore thumb.

Did she look like she did not belong?

Yes, yes, she did. She stuck out like a sore thumb, which is the same thing as saying she looked like she did not belong. Stuck out like a sore thumb means to look like you do not belong.

Who stuck out like a sore thumb?

Julia Roberts, Julia Roberts stuck out like a sore thumb.

Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did Tom Cruise stick out like a sore thumb?

No, it wasn't Tom Cruise.

Did Julia Roberts look like she did not belong?

Yes, Julia Roberts looked like she did not belong. She stuck out like a sore thumb which is the same thing as saying she looked like she did not belong.

Why did she stick out like a sore thumb?

Well, it was because she was the only movie star in town. People probably recognized her from her movies and they were not used to seeing a movie star in town so when they saw her she stuck out like a sore thumb.

But the people were nice

Were the people nice?

Yes, they were. The people were nice.

What were the people like?

They were very nice, the people were very nice.

Were the people mean?

No, they weren't mean, they were very nice.

Were the people friendly?

Yes, they probably were, because they were very nice so they were probably friendly as well.

Who were nice? Were the people in the town nice?

Yes, they were. The people in the town were nice.

Who were the people in the town nice to? Were they nice to Julia Roberts?



Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, we can say that. We can say that the people were nice to Julia Roberts.

so it was easy to get familiar with them.

Was it easy to get familiar with them?

Yes, it was. It was easy to get familiar with them.

What was easy to do?

To get familiar with them, it was easy to get familiar with them.

Was it easy to get to know them?

Yes, it was. It was easy to get familiar with them, which is the same thing as saying it was easy to get to know them. To get familiar with means to get to know.

Who was it easy to get familiar with?

The people in the town, it was easy to get familiar with the people in the town.

Was it easy to get familiar with the people in the town?

Yes, yes, that's correct. It was easy to get familiar with the people in the town.

Was it easy to get to know the people in the town?

Yes, yes, it was. It was easy to get familiar with the people in the town which is the same thing as saying it was easy to get to know the people in the town. Get familiar means to get to know.

Why was it easy to get familiar with the people in the town?

Well, it was because they were so nice. They were so nice so it was easy to get familiar with them, or it was easy to get to know them.

One day she met a nice man at a café.

Did she meet a nice man at a café?

Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, *she did*. She met a nice man at a café.

What did she do?

She met a nice man at a café.

Did she eat a hamburger or meet a nice man at a café?

She met a nice man at a café?

Who met a nice man at a café?

Julia Roberts, Julia Roberts met a nice man at a café.

Did Will Smith meet a nice man at a café?

No, it wasn't Will Smith.

Did Julia Roberts meet a nice man at a café?

Yes, Julia Roberts met a nice man at a café.

Who did she meet?

A nice man, she met a nice man.

Did she meet a woman with brown hair or a nice man?

A nice man, she met a nice man.

Did she meet an angry man?

No, he wasn't angry.

Did she meet a nice man?

Yes, yes, she did. She met a nice man.

Where did she meet a nice man?

Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

At a café, she met a nice man at a café.

Did she meet him at the library or at a café?

At a café, she met him at a café.

Did Julia Roberts meet a nice man at a café?

Yes, she did. Julia Roberts met a nice man at a café.

They fell in love and got married.

Did they fall in love and get married?

Yes, they did. They fell in love and got married.

Okay, so what did they do?

They fell in love and got married.

Did they fall on the ground?

No, they didn't fall on the ground.

Did they fall in love?

Yes, they did. They fell in love.

Did they get married?

Yes, they fell in love and got married.

Who fell in love and got married?

Well, Julia Roberts and the nice man she met at the café fell in love and got married.

Did Julia Roberts fall in love?

Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, she did. Julia Roberts fell in love.

Did Julia Roberts get married?

Yes, she did, Julia Roberts got married, too.

Did Julia Roberts fall in love with the man she met at a café?

Yes, she did. Julia Roberts fell in love with the man she met at a café.

Did Julia Roberts get married to the man that she met at a café?

Yes, she did. Julia Roberts got married to the man that she met at a café.

When she looks back on her wedding she smiles

Does she smile when she looks back on her wedding?

Yes, she does. She smiles when she looks back on her wedding.

Does she smile when she thinks about her wedding?

Yes, she does. She smiles when she looks back on her wedding, which is the same thing as saying she smiles when she thinks about her wedding. When you look back on something, that means you think about something that has happened already.

What does she do when she looks back on her wedding?

She smiles, she smiles when she looks back on her wedding.

What does she do when she thinks about her wedding?

She smiles, she smiles when she looks back on her wedding, which is the same thing as saying she smiles when she thinks about her wedding.

Does she get angry when she thinks about her wedding?

No, she doesn't get angry, she smiles.

Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Who smiles when she looks back on her wedding?

Julia Roberts, Julia Roberts smiles when she looks back on her wedding.

Does Julia Roberts' mom smile?

No, it's not her mom.

Does Julia Roberts smile?

Yes, Julia Roberts smiles.

When does she smile?

Well, she smiles when she looks back on her wedding or when she thinks about her wedding.

Does she smile when she sees her dog?

No, it not when she sees her dog that she smiles.

Does she smile when she looks back on her wedding?

Yes, she does. She smiles when she looks back on her wedding.

Does Julia Roberts smile when she thinks about her wedding?

Yes, she does. Julia Roberts smiles when she looks back on her wedding which is the same thing as saying Julia Roberts smiles when she thinks about her wedding. To look back means to think about something that has already happened.

and now she thinks that the fire was a blessing in disguise.

Does she think that the fire was a blessing in disguise?

Yes, she does. She thinks that the fire was a blessing in disguise.

What was a blessing in disguise?

The fire, the fire was a blessing in disguise.



Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did she first think that the fire was bad?

Yes, yes, she did. She thinks that the fire was a blessing in disguise which means at first she did not think it was good, she thought it was bad.

Does she now think that the fire was good?

Yes, she does. She thinks that it was a blessing in disguise. If something is a blessing in disguise, it means that you think it is good but you did not think it was good at first. So she thought it was a blessing in disguise, which means that she did not think the fire was good at first but now she does think the fire was good.

Does she now think that it was good that her house in Los Angeles burned down?

Yes, she does. She thinks that it was a blessing in disguise.

Who thinks that the fire was a blessing in disguise?

Julia Roberts, Julia Roberts thinks that it was a blessing in disguise.

Does Will Smith or Julia Roberts think that the fire was a blessing in disguise?

Julia Roberts does, Julia Roberts thinks that the fire was a blessing in disguise.

Does Julia Roberts now think that the fire was good?

Yes, she does. She thinks that it was a blessing in disguise.

Did Julia Roberts first think that the fire was bad?

Yes, she did. She now thinks that it is a blessing in disguise, which means that at first she thought it was bad but now she thinks that it was good.

* * * * *

Okay, that brings us to the end of our story which means we are now at the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation "Moving As A Child Part 2." Now it is your turn to tell the story by yourself. Remember that you do not need to memorize every word in the story, but that you do need to use the idioms and vocabulary words that we discussed. Okay, so those are: "crying wolf," "scream at the top of her lungs," "pretty obvious," "rough," "stuck out like a sore thumb," "get familiar with," "looks back," and "a blessing in disguise."



Moving As A Child Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Okay, so now tell the story on your own. And remember, you can listen to this mini-story lesson as many times as you need to.

Okay, good luck. See you next time.



Moving As A Child Part 2 POV Lesson

Hi. You are listening to the point of view stories for "Moving As A Child Part 2". Today I'll be telling you three different versions of the story that you first heard in the mini-story lesson "Moving As A Child Part 2". Each story will either be told from a different point in time or by a different person. Let's get started by telling the story as if it is happening right now. Okay, let's go.

* * * * *

Julia Roberts' house in Los Angeles is on fire. She calls her friend Will Smith. He thinks that she is just crying wolf. Then she starts to scream at the top of her lungs. So Will Smith calls the firemen.

The fire truck gets to her house but they can not stop the fire.

The house burns down so Julia Roberts has to move.

It's pretty obvious that she is upset. But she has to leave Los Angeles.

She moves to a very small town. At first it is rough. She is the only movie star in town so she sticks out like a sore thumb. But the people are nice so it is easy to become familiar with them.

One day she meets a nice man at a café. They fall in love and get married.

When she looks back on her wedding she smiles and now she thinks that the fire was a blessing in disguise.

* * * * *

Okay, so that is the story as if it is happening right now. Now let's hear the story as if it will happen sometime in the future. So we will think of the story happening two years from now. Okay, here we go.

* * * * *

Two years from now Julia Roberts' house in Los Angeles will be on fire. She will call her friend Will Smith. He's gonna think that she is just crying wolf. Then she's gonna start to scream at the top of her lungs. So Will Smith'll call the firemen.

The fire truck'll get to her house but they will not be able to stop the fire.

The house is going to burn down so Julia Roberts will have to move.

It will be pretty obvious that she is going to be upset. But she will have to leave Los Angeles.



Moving As A Child Part 2 POV Lesson

She is going to move to a very small town. At first it'll be rough. She will be the only movie star in town so she's gonna stick out like a sore thumb. But the people will be nice so it's gonna be easy to become familiar with them.

One day she's gonna meet a nice man at a café. They'll fall in love and get married.

When she looks back on her wedding she'll smile and she'll think that the fire was a blessing in disguise.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's the end of the story where we talk about the events that are going to happen two years from now. Now we're gonna hear the story from Julia Roberts' point of view. So in this version it is going to be as if Julia Roberts is telling you the story. Okay, here we go.

* * * * *

My house in Los Angeles was on fire. I called my friend Will Smith. He thought that I was just crying wolf. Then I started to scream at the top of my lungs. So Will Smith called the firemen.

The fire truck got to my house but they could not stop the fire.

The house burned down so I had to move.

It was pretty obvious that I was upset. But I had to leave Los Angeles.

I moved to a very small town. At first it was rough. I was the only movie star in town so I stuck out like a sore thumb. But the people were nice so it was easy to get familiar with them.

One day I met a nice man at a café. We fell in love and got married.

When I look back on my wedding I smile and now I think that the fire was a blessing in disguise.

* * * * *

Okay, that brings us to the end of the point of view stories for "Moving As A Child Part 2". Now go back and listen to each of these stories. Listen to them many times. After you feel like you know the stories then try to tell each story on your own. Remember to take your time and relax. Go through the stories slowly if you



Moving As A Child Part 2 POV Lesson

need to and make sure that you learn them deeply. Okay, that's all for now. We'll see you next time.



Moving As A Child Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Hi and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Moving As A Child Part 2.” This is the second part to the conversation “Moving as a Child.” Now in this conversation Joe and I each continue talking about our experiences of moving when we were younger.

Okay, let’s begin.

* * * *

I start off by saying, “That makes me think, um...”

Um is just a filler here. It’s not really needed.

Then I go on to say, “when we moved, I was, we were living in Michigan.”

Now Michigan is a state in America. It’s actually in the north of the middle states. Michigan.

And I go on to say, “At the time we always considered it...”

Or I’m saying, we always thought of it as...

“the North’. But actually...”

Or I’m saying, but really...

“it’s the north of the Midwestern states.”

Midwestern states. These are states in the middle of America. Midwestern states.

And then I say, “But then moving to a southern state, I definitely had a northern accent.”

Now accent... This is the way it sounds when someone speaks. Accent. For example: The people in the southern part of America have a strong accent. Accent.

And then I say, “And some of the words I used were different, too, like...”

Or I’m saying, such as.

“pop’ for, for...”

Now pop... This is a drink. Pop.



Moving As A Child Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

And then Joe says, “Soda.”

Soda is a drink also. It's the same as pop. Soda.

And then I finish by saying, “soda.” And then I say, “So...”

And so is just a filler here. It's not really needed.

And I go on to say, “I was, I was ridiculed by kids for my accent, for sure.”

Now kids... This is just slang for children. And when I say ridiculed... Ridiculed means made a mean joke about someone. Ridiculed. For example: My brothers were mean to me when we were young. They ridiculed me a lot. Ridiculed.

Then Joe says, “Yeah...”

Now yeah is slang or casual or informal for yes.

And Joe goes on to say, “you know another difficult thing for me was that the area that we moved to was affluent.”

Now affluent... This means rich. Affluent. For example: When you drive through affluent parts of San Francisco you see very nice houses. Affluent.

And Joe goes on to say, “And, I mean...”

Or he's saying, what I'm trying to say is that...

And he says, “we certainly were not rich.”

Or we definitely were not rich.

And Joe says, “So, y'know...”

And y'know is just short for you know. You won't see this in written English but you will hear it in conversational English.

And then Joe says, “uh...”



Moving As A Child Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

And uh is just filler. It's not really needed.

And Joe goes on to say, “and you could see it from the clothes we wore to the cars that my parents drove. I mean...” And then I just laugh. And Joe says, “y’know, we had these old clunkers...”

Now old clunkers... These are old cars that have a lot of problems and look bad. Old clunkers. For example: My parents used to drive old clunkers when I was younger because we did not have a lot of money. Old clunkers.

And Joe goes on to say, “and everyone else in the neighborhood has these brand new cars...”

Now neighborhood... This is the area where you live. Neighborhood. An example of neighborhood would be: There were a lot of children in my neighborhood when I was a child. Neighborhood. And when Joe says brand new cars... Brand new. This means completely new. Brand new. An example of brand new would be: I have never owned a brand new car. Brand new.

And then Joe goes on to say, “y’know. So it was pretty obvious...”

Pretty obvious. This means really easy to understand. Pretty obvious. For example: Math might be pretty obvious for some people but it is difficult for me. Pretty obvious.

And then Joe says, “like...”

And like is just filler here. It's not really needed.

“like, we would turn a lot of heads driving past people.”

Turn a lot of heads. Turn a lot of heads means to get a lot of attention or to make people look. Turn a lot of heads. For example: When the fire truck drove by it turned a lot of heads because it was so loud. Turn a lot of heads, or in this example, turn or turned a lot of heads.

And then I say, “Oh my god...”

Now I’m just showing emotion such as, I don’t believe it.

And I go on to say, “that sounds so much like, like my situation.”

Or I’m saying, like what happened to me.

And I go on to say, “We moved from a very blue collar area...”

Moving As A Child Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Now blue collar... This is... Blue collar area. This is where the people have jobs that do not make a lot of money. Blue collar.

And I go on to say, “my, my parents being teachers, were very blue collar as well...”

Or I'm saying, they were very blue collar also.

And then I say, “to a very affluent area, a lot of doctors and lawyers. And I can remember moving. We...” And I laugh, “My mom drove this yellow and black Gremlin.” And I laugh again.

Now Gremlin... This is the name of an American car that is no longer made. They don't make it anymore. A Gremlin.

And then Joe laughs and he says, “Yeah, they don't make those anymore...” And I laugh and say, “No. I...” And Joe says, “and there's a reason for it.”

So Joe is saying this because Gremlins were not very good cars. They weren't reliable or not very good cars.

And then I laugh and I say, “I would get dropped off at school...”

Or I'm saying, I would get taken to school.

“from... or come in the Gremlin. I would be so embarrassed. And then, y'know, we didn't have the designer clothes that all the kids we went to school with wore. So...”

Designer clothes. Designer clothes. These are expensive clothes. Designer clothes. For example: I have never had enough money to buy designer clothes. Designer clothes.

And then I go on to say, “So, we w-, it just...”

And just is just filler here. It doesn't really mean anything.

And I go on to say, “was very stressful trying to keep up with the Joneses...”

Stressful means makes you worry. Stressful. For example: When you have children it can be stressful. Stressful. And when I say keep up with the Joneses... This means to try to own all the same things as people you know in order to seem as good as them. Keep up with the Joneses. For example: Let's say when I was younger that I would come home from school and tell my mom that I wanted her to buy me some designer shirts and some designer jeans because that's what all the other children were wearing. My mom

Moving As A Child Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

might say, "No, I'm not buying those for you because they're too expensive. So stop trying to keep up with the Joneses."

And then I go on to say, "and buying these designer clothes. It was, uh, very stressful for me and my brothers. But also we put a lot of pressure on..."

Or I'm saying, we always asked our parents.

"put a lot of pressure on our parents to buy these. And they just couldn't afford it."

Now couldn't afford it... This means did not have enough money. Did not have enough money to buy something. Couldn't afford it. For example: Even if I wanted to buy a new car, I couldn't afford it.

And then Joe says, "Yeah, that sounds familiar."

Or he's saying, that sounds like what happened to me.

And I say, "I c-, I gotta tell you one story I can remember."

I gotta. This is short or slang for I've got to.

And I go on to say, "My mom actually..."

And actually is just filler here. It's not really needed.

And I go on to say, "she can't sew."

Sew meaning she can't make clothes, in this situation.

And I say, "And she had sewn me this pair of knickers..."

Now knickers... This is a type of girl's pants that do not go below the knees. Knickers. Now when I say pair of knickers... A pair usually means two. But we say pair when talking about one pants or one pant. So I would say a pair of jeans, a pair of pants, a pair of knickers.

And I go on to say, "Knickers at one point..."

Or I'm saying, at one time.

"were back in style. Do you know what those are?"

Moving As A Child Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Now *back in style*... This means to be fashionable again. *Back in style*. An example of *back in style* would be: Music made in the 1980s is *back in style*. *Back in style*.

And Joe says, “Yeah or yes, yeah.” And I say, “And they were horrible looking.”

Now *horrible* means very bad. For example: The weather was *horrible*. It rained all day. *Horrible*.

And I go on to say, “And I wore ‘em to school...”

I wore ‘em. ‘Em is short for them.

“I wore ‘em to school and all the kids were makin’ fun of me on the playground.”

Makin’. This is short for *making*. *Making fun of me*. This means they were teasing me. Or they were making jokes about me. They were laughing at me. *On the playground*. *Playground* is a place where children play. *Playground*. For an example of *playground*: The park near my house has a very nice *playground*. I always see children playing there. *Playground*.

And Joe says, “Oh, my gosh.”

And he’s just showing emotion here.

And I say, “I was just standing in the corner by myself about to cry.”

Or almost ready to cry. Now *standing in the corner*... *Standing in the corner* means standing away from the other children. *Standing in the corner*. For example: The teacher made the child stand in the corner because she was bad. *Standing in the corner*.

And then I go on to say, “And then I went home and I was like...”

Or I’m saying, I told my mom. I was like. I told my mom.

“Mom, I want real knickers. I want you to buy ‘em in the store for me.” And Joe says, “Yeah, kids can be cruel.”

Cruel. This is mean. Kids can be mean. *Cruel.* For example: My brothers were sometimes *cruel to me* when I was a child. *Cruel*.

And then I just laugh. And Joe says, “I know kids can be cruel because, I’ll tell you what...”

Moving As A Child Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Now what Joe is saying here is, this is what I think. Or I'll tell you what.

And Joe goes on to say, “I had to, uh... I had a really bad experience right before I started school the summer that I moved to Pennsylvania.”

I had a really bad experience. What Joe is saying here is I had something bad happen right before I started school. Now right is a filler word. It's not really needed. Right before I started school. The summer that I moved to Pennsylvania. Pennsylvania this is a state in the northeast of America. Pennsylvania.

And Joe says, “I’m playin’ football with the kids in the neighborhood...”

Now playin’... This is short for playing. Playin’.

And I say, “Uh-huh.”

Just to let Joe know that I understand what he’s saying or that I’m listening to him.

And Joe goes on to say, “and, of course...”

Or he’s saying, and then.

“what happens is, I get tackled...”

Tackled. This means thrown to the ground. Tackled. For example: The thief was tackled by the policeman. Tackled.

And Joe goes on to say, “and someone falls on my leg and it breaks my ankle.”

Ankle is the part of your body where the lower leg connects to the foot.

And then I laugh and say, “Oh no.”

So I’m showing emotion such as feeling sorry for Joe getting hurt.

And then Joe says, “I couldn’t believe it. So I’m sittin’ there...”

Sittin’ is short for sitting.

“sittin’ there, tryin’ to...”



Moving As A Child Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Tryin' is short for *trying*.

"tryin' to, y'know, act as, uh, if, like, it doesn't hurt that much."

Or it doesn't hurt a lot.

"But, I mean, it hurt a lot."

When Joe says, I mean, he's saying... Or what I'm trying to say is that it hurt a lot. So when Joe is talking about getting hurt, he's just sitting there after he gets hurt. He's sitting on the ground and he's trying to show the other children that it doesn't hurt. But it really did hurt him.

And then Joe goes on to say, "And then, y'know, the kids thought I was cryin' wolf."

Cryin' is short for *crying*. *Crying wolf* means to try to get attention by saying something that is not true. *Crying wolf*. For example: Thomas always seems to be sick. Sometimes I think that he is just *crying wolf*. *Crying wolf*.

And then Joe says, "They didn't really think I was hurt at all." And I laugh. And then Joe says, "So I have to walk away and, uh, walk home on a broken ankle. And, I mean, I just felt like screamin' at the top of my lungs."

Screamin'. This is short for *screaming*. *Screamin'*. *Screaming at the top of my lungs*. This means yelling very loud. *Screaming at the top of my lungs*. For example: When the thief took the woman's purse, she screamed at the top of her lungs.

And then Joe goes on to say, "I was in so much pain."

Or he's saying, *it hurt so much*.

And Joe says, "But I couldn't. I couldn't do it because I didn't want the kids to think I was, like, some wimp."

Wimp. This is someone who is weak, not strong. They are weak.

And then I laugh and I say, "Oh, oh..."

Just showing emotion.

Moving As A Child Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

And Joe says, “So, it gets worse.” And then he laughs. And Joe goes on to say, “I have to go to school with a cast on my leg to start the school year.”

Cast. Cast is something that is put on your arm or leg when it is broken. Cast. For example: I broke my arm when I fell off a horse. So the doctor put a cast on it. Cast.

And then I just laugh. And Joe says, “So I’m the new kid with the thick accent...”

Or he’s saying, with the strong accent.

And he goes on to say, “the clothes that look out of place...”

Look out of place. This means to look like you do not belong or fit in. Look out of place. For example: Women in Las Vegas wear a lot of make up and I don’t wear any make up. So I felt like I really looked out of place when I was in Las Vegas. Look out of place.

And Joe goes on to say, “y’know. Nobody knows me and I have a cast on my foot. And my, y’know, I can’t take a shower, y’know. I can’t shower the leg...”

Or he’s saying, I can’t clean my leg.

“so my toes are a little dirty...” And I’m just laughing. And then Joe goes on to say, “I mean I wanted nothin’ more than...”

Nothin’ is short for nothing. So he’s saying, I really wanted.

And he goes on to say, “to move back to New York that very moment...”

Or he’s saying, right then, at that time. I really wanted to move back to New York at that time.

And then Joe says, “the first day of school.”

So the first day of school he just wanted to move right back to New York.

And then I say, “God...”

Just showing emotion.

“I bet you stuck out like a sore thumb.”

Moving As A Child Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

I bet. Here bet means I think. I think you stuck out like a sore thumb. Stuck out like a sore thumb. This means same as look out of place. To look like you do not belong or fit in. For example: Women in Las Vegas wear a lot of make up. And again I don't wear any make up. So I felt like I stuck out like a sore thumb when I was in Las Vegas. Stuck out like a sore thumb.

And Joe says, “Oh ma-, you can’t imagine.”

Or he’s saying, you can’t even begin to think about, about it.

And then Joe says, “It was the worst. I, I mean I think for the first two years I lived in Pennsylvania I just wanted to hop on a bus and get back to New York as fast as I could.”

Hop on a bus. This means get on a bus. Hop on a bus. He’s not really hopping onto the bus. It just means to get on a bus. For example: I hopped on the bus to get to work. Hop on a bus.

And then I say, “Yep...”

This is just slang for yes.

And I say, “that was me...”

Or I’m saying, that was the same as me.

And I go on to say, “wanting to move back to Michigan, too.” And Joe says, “Wh-.” And he just laughs. And then I laugh. And Joe says, “But...”

And but is just filler here. It doesn’t really mean anything.

And Joe goes on to say, “uh, y’know, I, at least you moved at an earlier age.”

Or he’s saying, it’s good that you moved at an earlier age.

And he goes on to say, “It’s a lot easier because, y’know, when you’re younger it’s just, uh... Y’know, all the kids are getting familiar with each other.”

Getting familiar with. This means getting to know. Getting familiar with. For example: Michael met a girl at a bar. They started talking to get familiar with each other. Getting familiar with.

And then Joe goes on to say, “getting familiar with each other. But when you move, and you’re a little older, the kids already know each other. Y’know, they’ve already combined the elementary



Moving As A Child Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

schools into the middle school, uh, for when I had moved there.”

So combined... This means to put together. Combined. For example: There are more people in America than in Thailand and Cambodia combined. Combined. So they've combined the elementary schools. Elementary schools are primary schools. This is school for children between ages five and ten. Elementary schools. And when Joe says middle school... They've combined the elementary schools into the middle school. Middle school is school after primary school. So this is school for children between ages eleven and thirteen. Middle school.

And then I say, “Yeah, but you know, ironically enough...”

Ironically. This means something you would not think is true but it, but it is true.

And I go on to say, “um, my older brother, I think, had an easier time adapting.”

Adapting means getting used to. Adapting. For example: It can be difficult to adapt to living in another country. Adapting.

And I go on to say, “And he was starting seventh grade.”

Seventh grade. This is when children are twelve and thirteen years old in this school grade.

Then I go on to say, “I was starting third grade.”

Third grade is... Children are eight and nine years old when they're in this school grade.

And I go on to say, “My younger brother was starting second grade.”

Second grade is... Children are seven and eight years old at this time or in this school grade.

And then I say, “And my younger brother and I had a really rough time.”

Or I'm saying, we had a very rough time. Now rough... This means difficult. Rough. An example of rough is: It can be rough to adapt to living in another country. Rough.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, well...”

And well is just filler here. It's not really needed.

And Joe goes on to say, “y'know, as much as I hated it...”



Moving As A Child Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Or he's saying, as much as I did not like it.

"when I first, uh, had moved to Pennsylvania, now in looking back..."

Looking back. This means to think of a time in the past. Looking back. For example: I always smile when I look back on the time I lived in Thailand. Looking back.

And then Joe goes on to say, "I think it was really a blessing in disguise."

A blessing in disguise is something that is good that you do not think is good at first. Something that is good that you do not think is good at first. A blessing in disguise. For example: I hated living in Georgia when I first moved there. But it was a blessing in disguise because I got a good education. Blessing in disguise.

And then Joe goes on to say, "I mean there were so many other opportunities that came available to us..."

Or he is saying, there are so many good things that happened to us.

And he goes on to say, "from living in Pennsylvania and going to a school district..."

Or going to a school within a certain area.

And Joe goes on to say, "that, y'know, was, uh, had a lot more money. And the education that we got was better. And it just provided me..."

Or it just gave me.

"uh, with a much better starting point for, uh, college."

Or he's saying, with a lot better starting point for college.

And then I end the conversation by saying, "Right."

Just agreeing with Joe.

* * * * *

So that is the end of the conversation now, the conversation "Moving As A Child Part 2." So before moving on to Joe's mini-story, make sure that you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary. Go back and listen



Moving As A Child Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

to it again if you need to. But make sure that you're doing it in a stress-free, relaxed way. And as always, as I always say, when you're ready to move on to the mini-story then go to it. Go for it.

And I will see you next time. Alright. Bye, bye.

Parents Conversation

Joe: Y'know, I don't think that people really appreciate their parents until they get older. I mean, at least I can say that about myself. And I think it's true of, y'know, here in America.

culture: the way group of people think and act

totally: definitely; completely

looking back: to think of a time in the past

sacrifice(s): something(s) that causes you to be unable to do something else that you would like to do

couldn't even tell: did not know

method to his madness: at the time you did not know why he did something but later you were able to understand

hang out: to casually pass time

Kristin: Yeah, I was gonna say in this **culture**, anyway. Yeah I can **totally** agree with that.

Joe: Yeah, I, eh, y'know, **looking back**, I think I only really came to, y'know, see all the **sacrifices** my parents made, and appreciate those sacrifices, when I went away to college.

Kristin: Mm-hm. That's probably when I started appreciating my parents, too.

Joe: Yeah, I mean, y'know, now looking back I can see that my dad... He was always trying to teach me things. And at the time I, I **couldn't even tell** that it was going on. But, y'know, now I see there's **method to his madness**, like...

Kristin: Like, what's an example?

Joe: Alright, well, for example, like on Saturdays, y'know, what I liked to do was probably what any, y'know, little boy used to do. I liked to go out, play with my friends, y'know, play some baseball or some football or, y'know, just, just **hang out** with my friends.

Kristin: Right.

Joe: Well, my dad on the other hand, y'know, he was really **strict**. And, uh, **he ran a tight ship**. **I'm tellin' ya**. I mean, I, I think there was this unspoken **motto** that he had which was **my way or the highway**.

Kristin: [laugh] I can see that.

Joe: So come Saturday morning, it was time to do some work, and...

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: ...so it was time to spoil the fun I wanted to have.

Kristin: Right.

Parents Conversation

Joe: So, he'd say something like, "Hey, y'know, uh, today we have to change the oil on the car, I'll show you how to do it."

Kristin: Oh boy.

Joe: I'd be thinkin', yeah, I'd be thinkin', oh that sounds like fun...y'know. Or like, uh, y'know, another time he'd say, "Okay, uh, y'know, we have to change the brakes today. And I think that, uh, I'll show you how to do it this time. And you'll... You can do it next time." And I'm sittin' there, I, I must be eleven years old, I'm thinkin' to myself, I'm not gonna remember how to do this. I'm not gonna **retain** any of it.

Kristin: Right.

sure enough: as expected
Joe: But **sure enough**, he showed me how to do it. And, y'know, now looking back, y'know, I can see that, y'know, it was, uh, probably something that he wanted to make sure I knew how to do as I grew older...

Kristin: Sure.

pay attention: listen to
Joe: ...but I didn't really **pay attention**, y'know. I couldn't appreciate it at the time.

basics: simple things
dread: to not want to do something
long-winded: speaking or writing that is very long
Kristin: Yeah, my, my dad, uh, taught me some things about the car, not as detailed as changing the brakes or changing the oil. But he taught me **basics** like just checking my fluids, like power steering fluid, um, brake fluid, the oil. At the time, y'know, I would **dread** him teaching me. I wouldn't retain it. I would forget so he would constantly be teaching me. And it would just... I knew it would be this **long-winded** lecture. When I would be wanting just to get in the car and leave, go meet my friends.

Joe: Yeah, sure.

Kristin: But now I, I appreciate that he taught me those... how to, uh... check my fluids actually. It's a useful thing to know.

stands out in my mind: I remember it very well
Joe: Yeah, there, there were some things that my father would teach me, like, when I was younger, and I did appreciate it. And I mean like the one thing that **stands out in my mind** is learning how to cook. Y'know, my dad was really good about allowing us to be in the kitchen while he was cooking. 'Coz my dad's an amazing cook, and...

Kristin: Yeah, he is.

Parents Conversation

growing up: getting older; also refers to the time when you were a child

Joe: ...y'know, when we were **growing up**... I remember like all my friends and, uh, my mom's side of the family, it was only the women who cooked. But...

Kristin: Uh-huh.

Joe: ...from my dad's side of the family, the men totally cooked. I mean, I just said my dad was a great cook. He learned from his father, my grandfather, who was a great cook. My grandfather's brother, my great-uncle...

Kristin: Mm-hm.

gender specific trait: something done only by a male or only by a female

Joe: ...he was a great cook. So it really wasn't a **gender specific trait** in my family. And I think as a result, uh, we weren't afraid to be in the kitchen. And my father allowed us to. So, uh, y'know... And my dad was always good about teaching me how to cook. I mean I remember this one time. . . I was a little kid. I must have been six years old. I wake up on a Sunday morning. And I go downstairs and I say, uh, "Hey Dad, can you make me **French toast** for breakfast?" And I remember him saying something like, "Okay, yeah, I'll make it for ya. I'll teach you how to make it and then the next time you make it for me."

Kristin: [laugh] That's great.

Joe: So I was thinkin' this is great! I'm gonna be able to make French toast for myself whenever I want. And then, y'know, also I wanted to try and impress my dad, uh, y'know. So I wanted to make it for him, too.

Kristin: Uh-huh.

bonding experience: something that makes people become closer

Joe: So, y'know, that was, y'know, that was something that was a **bonding experience** with my father and I as well.



Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Hi. Welcome to the mini-story for the conversation “Parents.”

Let's get started with the story.

* * * * *

Freddie the frog lives in the country of Frogland. When he was growing up his father ran a tight ship. He made Freddie practice jumping ten hours every day. Freddie was always tired so he could not pay attention in school. Sometimes he couldn't even tell what day it was.

“I'm telling you, I just want to chase flies with my friends,” Freddie said to his dad.

Then his dad said, “It's my way or the highway.”

His dad always told him that he would be a jumping champion. Sure enough, when he was 18 years old, he became the jumping champion of his country.

Now Freddie is 55 years old. He thinks about his dad a lot. Now he knows that there was method to his dad's madness.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's the end of our story. Now I will go back and read the story again and this time I will ask questions as I read it. And you can answer the questions out loud and if you need a little more time to answer the questions, then feel free to pause your iPod or your computer or whatever you're playing the lesson on, and then play it again when you have had enough time to think about the question. And, of course, if you just feel like listening, well that's okay, too.

Okay, let's start.

* * * * *

Freddie the frog lives in the country of Frogland.

Does Freddie the frog live in the country of Frogland?

Yes, *he does*. *Freddie the frog lives in the country of Frogland.*

Who lives in Frogland?



Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Freddie the frog, Freddie the frog lives in Frogland.

Does Freddie the frog or Mary the lamb live in Frogland?

Freddie the frog, Freddie the frog lives in Frogland.

What type of animal is Freddie?

A frog, Freddie is a frog.

Is Freddie a frog or a rabbit?

A frog, Freddie is a frog. He's not a rabbit.

Where does Freddie live?

In Frogland, Freddie lives in Frogland.

Does Freddie live in Canada or Frogland?

Frogland, Freddie lives in Frogland.

Does Freddie live in Canada?

No, Freddie doesn't live in Canada.

Does Freddie live in Frogland?

Yes, he does. Freddie lives in Frogland.

What is Frogland? Is Frogland a country?

Yes, it is. Frogland is a country. It is the country where Freddie the frog lives. Freddie the frog lives in the country of Frogland.

When he was growing up his father ran a tight ship.

Did his father run a tight ship when he was growing up?



Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did. His father ran a tight ship when he was growing up.

What did his father do?

He ran a tight ship. His father ran a tight ship.

Did his father run a race or run a tight ship?

He ran a tight ship. He did not run a race.

Did his father own a boat?

No, his father did not own a boat.

Did his father run a tight ship?

Yes, he did. His father ran a tight ship.

Was his father strict?

Yes, yes, he was. He ran a tight ship, which is the same as saying he was strict. To run a tight ship means to be strict.

Did his father control what he did?

Yes, he did. His father ran a tight ship, which is the same thing as saying his father was controlling, or that he controlled what he did. So his father ran a tight ship, which is the same as saying his father was strict, or you could say his father was controlling, his father controlled what he did, this is all the same thing.

Who ran a tight ship?

His father, his father ran a tight ship.

Did his mother or his father run a tight ship?

His father, his father ran a tight ship.

Whose father ran a tight ship?

Freddie's, Freddie's father ran a tight ship.



Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Did Freddie's father run a tight ship?

Yes, *he did. Freddie's father ran a tight ship.*

Was Freddie's father strict?

Yes, *Freddie's father was strict. Freddie's father ran a tight ship.*

Did Freddie's father control what Freddie did?

Yes, *he did. His father ran a tight ship. His father was controlling. His father was strict. These all mean the same thing.*

When did his father run a tight ship?

When he was growing, when Freddie was growing up his father ran a tight ship.

Did his father run a tight ship when Freddie was growing up?

Yes, *he did. He ran a tight ship when Freddie was growing up.*

Did his father run a tight ship when Freddie was an adult?

No, it was when he was growing up, not when he was an adult.

Did his father run a tight ship when Freddie was a child?

Yes, when Freddie was a child his father ran a tight ship. Or you could say when Freddie was growing up his father ran a tight ship, it's the same thing. When you are talking about growing up, you are talking about the time when you are a child.

Was his father strict when Freddie was a child?

Yes, he was. He ran a tight ship when Freddie was growing up, which is the same thing as saying his father was strict when he was a child.

He made Freddie practice jumping ten hours every day.



Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Did he make Freddie practice jumping ten hours every day?

Yes, he did. He made Freddie practice jumping ten hours every day.

What did he make Freddie do?

Practice jumping, he made Freddie practice jumping.

Did he make Freddie practice jumping or clean the house?

Practice jumping, he made Freddie practice jumping.

Who made Freddie practice jumping?

His dad, his dad made him practice jumping.

Did Freddie's Uncle Kenny make him practice jumping?

No, it wasn't his Uncle Kenny.

Did Freddie's dad make him practice jumping?

Yes, he did. Freddie's dad made him practice jumping.

Who had to practice?

Freddie, Freddie had to practice. His dad made him practice.

Did Freddie or his father have to practice?

Freddie did. Freddie had to practice. His father made him practice.

Did Freddie have to practice?

Yes, he did. Freddie had to practice. His father made him practice.

What did Freddie have to practice?

Jumping, he had to practice jumping.



Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Did Freddie have to practice playing the guitar or jumping?

Jumping, he had to practice jumping.

How much time did Freddie have to practice?

Ten hours, he had to practice ten hours.

Did he have to practice for ten hours or seven minutes?

Ten hours, he had to practice for ten hours.

How many hours did he practice?

Ten, he practiced for ten hours.

Did he practice for six or ten hours?

Ten, he practiced for ten hours.

How often did he practice?

Every day, he had to practice every day.

Did he only practice on Tuesdays?

No, he practiced more than just on Tuesdays.

Did he practice every day?

Yes, he did. He practiced every day.

Did Freddie's dad make him practice jumping every day?

Yes, he did. His dad made him practice jumping every day.

Freddie was always tired

Was Freddie always tired?



Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he was. Freddie was always tired.

Who was tired?

Freddie, Freddie was tired.

Was Freddie or his father tired?

Freddie, Freddie was tired.

Was Freddie happy?

No, he wasn't happy.

Was Freddie tired only sometimes?

No, he wasn't tired only sometimes, he was tired more than that.

Was Freddie always tired?

Yes, he was. Freddie was always tired.

Why was Freddie always tired?

Well, it was because his father made him practice jumping for ten hours every day. That's why he was tired.

so he could not pay attention in school.

Could Freddie pay attention in school?

No, he could not pay attention in school.

What was Freddie unable to do?

Pay attention in school, he could not pay attention in school.

Was Freddie unable to eat lunch or pay attention in school?



Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Pay attention, he was unable to pay attention in school.

Was Freddie able to listen in school?

No, no, he wasn't. He was not able to pay attention in school which is the same thing as saying he was unable to listen in school. To pay attention means to listen to.

Who could not pay attention in school?

Freddie, Freddie could not pay attention in school.

Was it Freddie or his sister who was unable to pay attention in school?

Freddie, it was Freddie. Freddie could not pay attention in school.

Was Freddie unable to listen to his schoolteachers?

Yes, yes, we can say that. He could not pay attention in school so he was unable to listen to his schoolteachers.

Why was Freddie unable to pay attention in school?

Well, because he was too tired, that's why.

Sometimes he couldn't even tell what day it was.

Could he tell what day it was?

Well, sometimes he could not tell what day it was so, yeah, sometimes he could tell what day it was but not always.

Who couldn't tell what day it was?

Freddie, Freddie couldn't even tell what day it was.

Did Freddie know what day it was?

Well, sometimes he did but sometimes he did not know what day it was. If you say that you couldn't even tell what day it was, that's the same thing as saying you didn't even know what day it was.



Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Did Freddie ever know what day it was?

Well, yes, it was only sometimes that he could not tell what day it was, which means that sometimes he did not know what day it was. So sometimes he did know what day it was, but other times he did not know.

“I’m telling you, I just want to chase flies with my friends,” Freddie said to his dad.

Did Freddie tell his dad he just wanted to chase flies?

Yes, he did. He said, “I just want to chase flies.”

Was Freddie joking?

No, no, he was not joking. When he said to his dad “I’m telling you,” that means that he was not joking. I’m telling you means I’m serious, I’m not joking.

Was Freddie serious?

Yes, he was. He said, “I’m telling you,” which means I’m serious or it means I’m not joking.

What did Freddie want to do?

Well, he wanted to chase flies with his friends.

Did Freddie want to go to school or chase flies?

He wanted to chase flies.

Who wanted to chase flies?

Freddie, Freddie wanted to chase flies.

Did Freddie’s dad want to chase flies?

No, it wasn’t Freddie’s dad.

Did Freddie want to chase flies?



Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did. Freddie wanted to chase flies.

What did Freddie want to chase?

Flies, he wanted to chase flies.

Did he want to chase cars or flies?

Flies, he wanted to chase flies. He didn't want to chase cars.

Was Freddie joking when he said he wanted to chase flies?

No, he was not. He said, "I'm telling you, I just want to chase flies," which is the same thing as saying I'm not joking, I want to chase flies or I am serious, I want to chase flies.

Did Freddie really want to chase flies?

Well, yes, he did. He said he was serious or he was not joking and that he wanted to chase flies, so I guess he really did want to chase flies.

Who did Freddie want to chase flies with?

His friends, he wanted to chase flies with his friends.

Did he want to chase flies with his dad?

No, he did not want to chase flies with his dad.

Did Freddie tell his dad he was serious?

Yes, he did. He said, "I'm telling you," which means I'm serious.

Did Freddie tell his dad that he was not joking?

Yes, he did. He said, "I'm telling you," which means I'm not joking.

Then his dad said, "It's my way or the highway."

Did his dad say "It's my way or the highway"?

Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did. That's what his dad said. His dad said, "It's my way or the highway."

What did his dad say?

Well, he said, "It's my way or the highway."

Did his dad tell Freddie that he had to do what he said?

Well, yes, he told him "It's my way or the highway," which means he was telling Freddie that he had to do what he said.

Did his dad tell him to do as he told him or leave?

Yes, he did. His dad told him "It's my way or the highway," which is the same thing as saying that he had to do what his father told him or he had to leave. When someone says my way or the highway it means you have to do what I am saying or you have to leave.

Who said, "It's my way or the highway"?

Freddie's dad, Freddie's dad said it.

Did Freddie say "It's my way or the highway"?

No, Freddie didn't say it.

Did Freddie's dad say "It's my way or the highway"?

Yes, he did. It was Freddie's dad who said, "It's my way or the highway."

Who was his dad talking to?

Well, he was talking to Freddie.

Was he talking to Freddie or Freddie's mom?

Freddie, he was talking to Freddie.

Did Freddie's dad say that he had to leave if he did not do what he said?

Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did. Freddie's dad said, "It's my way or the highway," which is the same thing as saying Freddie's dad said that Freddie had to do what he said or he had to leave.

His dad always told him that he would be a jumping champion.

Did his dad always tell him that he would be a jumping champion?

Yes, he did. His dad always told him that he would be a jumping champion.

What did his dad tell him?

Well, he told him that he would be a jumping champion.

Did his dad tell him that he would be the best jumper?

Well, yeah, that's correct. He said he would be a jumping champion and if you're a jumping champion that means that you must be the best jumper.

Who told him that he would be a jumping champion?

His dad, his dad told him that he would be a jumping champion.

Did Freddie's dad tell him that he would be a jumping champion?

Yes, he did. Freddie's dad told him that he would be a jumping champion.

Who would be a jumping champion? Would Freddie or his father be a jumping champion?

Freddie, Freddie would be a jumping champion.

What would Freddie be? Would he be a football player or a jumping champion?

A jumping champion, Freddie would be a jumping champion.

Sure enough, when he was 18 years old, he became the jumping champion of his country.

Did he become the jumping champion of his country when he was 18 years old?

Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did. He became the jumping champion of his country when he was 18 years old.

Did he become the champion sure enough?

Yes, sure enough, he became the champion.

Did he become the champion as expected?

Yes, he did. He became the champion sure enough, which is the same thing as saying he became the champion as expected. Sure enough means as expected.

Was it expected that he would become the champion?

Yes, it was. Sure enough, he would become the champion, which is the same thing as saying it was expected that he would become the champion.

Was it believed that he would become the champion?

Yes, it was. Sure enough, he would become champion, or it was believed that he would become the champion.

Who became the jumping champion?

Freddie, Freddie became the jumping champion.

Did Freddie or his father become the jumping champion?

Freddie did. Freddie became the jumping champion.

What did Freddie become? Did he become the jumping champion?

Yes, he did. He became the jumping champion.

Did he become the jumping champion of his country?

Yes, he did. He became the jumping champion of his country.

What country did he become the jumping champion of? Did he become the jumping champion of France?

No, it wasn't France.



Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Did he become the jumping champion of Frogland?

Yes, he did. He became the jumping champion of Frogland.

When did he become the jumping champion?

When he was 18 years old, when he was 18 years old he became the jumping champion.

How old was he when he became the jumping champion?

Eighteen years old, he was 18 years old when he became the jumping champion.

Was he 16 or 18 years old?

Eighteen, he was 18 years old.

Did Freddie become the champion sure enough?

Yes, he did. Sure enough, Freddie became the champion.

Did Freddie become the champion as expected?

Yes, he did. He became the champion sure enough, which is the same thing as saying he became the champion as expected. Sure enough means as expected.

Now Freddie is 55 years old.

Is Freddie now 55 years old?

Yes, he is. Freddie is now 55 years old.

Who is now 55 years old?

Freddie, Freddie is now 55 years old.

Is Kenny or Freddie now 55 years old?

Freddie, Freddie is now 55 years old.



Parents Mini-Story Lesson

How old is Freddie?

Fifty-five years old, Freddie is 55 years old.

Is he 55 years old or 25 months old?

Fifty-five years old, Freddie is 55 years old.

How many years old is Freddie?

Fifty-five, he is 55 years old.

Is he 55 or 63 years old?

Fifty-five, he is 55 years old now.

Was he 55 years old three years ago?

No, he's 55 years old now.

He thinks about his dad a lot.

Does he think about his dad a lot?

Yes, he does. He thinks about his dad a lot.

What does he do?

He thinks about his dad a lot.

Does he race cars or think about his dad a lot?

He thinks about his dad a lot. He doesn't race cars.

Who thinks about his dad a lot?

Freddie, Freddie thinks about his dad a lot.

Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Does Roger the rabbit think about his dad a lot?

No, not Roger the rabbit.

Does Freddie the frog think about his dad a lot?

Yes, he does. Freddie the frog thinks about his dad a lot.

Who does he think about?

His dad, he thinks about his dad.

Does he think about his mother or his father?

His father, he thinks about his father a lot.

Does he think about his father just a little?

No, he thinks about his father more than just a little.

Does he think about his father a lot?

Yes, he does. He thinks about his father a lot.

Now he knows that there was method to his dad's madness.

Does he now know that there was method to his dad's madness?

Yes, he does. He now knows there was method to his dad's madness.

What does he know?

Well, he knows that there was method to his dad's madness.

When he was younger was Freddie able to understand why his father made him practice every day?

No, no, he was not able to understand why his father made him practice every day.

Does Freddie now know why his father made him practice every day?

Parents Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, now he knows. He knows that there was method to his dad's madness, which means he now understands why his dad made him practice every day.

Who knows that there was method to his dad's madness?

Freddie, Freddie knows that there was method to his dad's madness.

Does Freddie or his mother now know that there was method to his dad's madness?

Freddie, Freddie now knows that there was method to his dad's madness.

Does Freddie now know that there was method to his dad's madness?

Yes, he does. Freddie now knows that there was method to his dad's madness.

Does Freddie now understand why his dad made him practice jumping?

Yes, he does. He understands now, he knows that there was method to his dad's madness, so he didn't understand back then why his father made him practice jumping, but now he does.

* * * * *

Okay, so we are now at the end of the story which means we are at the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation "Parents." Now it's your turn to tell this story on your own. Remember that you do not need to memorize every word in the story, but that you do need to use the vocabulary words and idioms that we discussed. Those are: "growing up," "ran a tight ship," "pay attention," "couldn't even tell," "I'm telling you," "my way or the highway," "sure enough," "method to his madness." Okay, so good luck telling the story and remember you can listen to this lesson as many times as you need to.

Okay, see you next time.

Parents POV Lesson

Hello and welcome to the point of view stories for "Parents". Today we are going to hear four different versions of the same story. Each version's gonna have a different time for the story or it will have a different person telling the story. Okay, let's start now.

* * * * *

Freddie the frog lives in the country of Frogland. His father runs a tight ship. He makes Freddie practice jumping ten hours every day. Freddie is always tired so he cannot pay attention in school. Sometimes he cannot even tell what day it is.

"I'm telling you, I just wanna chase flies with my friends," Freddie says to his dad.

Then his dad says, "It's my way or the highway."

His dad always tells him that he will be a jumping champion. Sure enough, when he is 18 years old, he becomes the jumping champion of his country.

Now Freddie is 55 years old. He thinks about his dad a lot. Now he knows that there is method to his dad's madness.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's the end of the story being told as if it is happening right now. Next let's hear the story as if it happened last year. Here we go.

* * * * *

Last year Freddie the frog lived in the country of Frogland. When he was growing up his father ran a tight ship. He made Freddie practice jumping ten hours every day. Freddie was always tired so he could not pay attention in school. Sometimes he couldn't even tell what day it was.

"I'm telling you, I just want to chase flies with my friends," Freddie said to his dad.

Then his dad said, "It's my way or the highway."

His dad always told him that he would be a jumping champion. Sure enough, when he was 18 years old, he became the jumping champion of his country.

Freddie was 55 years old. He thought about his dad a lot. Then he knew that there was method to his dad's madness.



Parents POV Lesson

* * * * *

Okay, so that is the story as if it happened last year. It has already happened. Now let's hear the story as if it is happening in the future. So we will think of the story happening next year. Here we go.

* * * * *

Next year Freddie the frog will live in the country of Frogland. His father is gonna run a tight ship. He'll make Freddie practice jumping ten hours every day. Freddie'll always be tired so he will not be able to pay attention in school. Sometimes he won't be able to even tell what day it is.

"I'm telling you, I just want to chase flies with my friends," Freddie'll say to his dad.

Then his dad'll say, "It's my way or the highway."

His dad is always gonna tell him that he will be a jumping champion. Sure enough, when he is 18 years old, he will become the jumping champion of his country.

When Freddie is 55 years old he'll think about his dad a lot. He'll know that there is method to his dad's madness.

* * * * *

Okay so that's the end of this version of the story, where the events that are taking place take place next year. Now let's hear the story from Freddie's point of view. So in this version Freddie is actually going to be telling the story. So here he goes.

* * * * *

I lived in the country of Frogland. When I was growing up my father ran a tight ship. He made me practice jumping ten hours every day. I was always tired so I could not pay attention in school. Sometimes I couldn't even tell what day it was.

"I'm telling you, I just want to chase flies with my friends," I said to my dad.

Then my dad said, "It's my way or the highway."

My dad always told me that I would be a jumping champion. Sure enough, when I was 18 years old, I



Parents POV Lesson

became the jumping champion of my country.

I was 55 years old. I thought about my dad a lot. Then I knew that there was method to my dad's madness.

* * * * *

Alright so now we have finished the point of view stories for the lesson "Parents". Now please go back and listen to each version of the story again. Then when you feel like you understand the stories try to tell each story yourself. Try your best and don't be upset if you're having any trouble. Just relax and listen to the story again. This takes time. Listen to it until you feel comfortable telling the story on your own and then you can move on. Okay, that's all for now. We'll see ya next time.



Parents Vocabulary Lesson

Hello and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Parents.” Now this is a conversation that Joe and I are having together about our parents, mostly our fathers, and things that they taught us when we were younger.

So let's begin with the conversation.

* * * * *

Joe starts off by saying, “Y’know...”

And now as I’ve said in many, many lessons, y’know is short for you know.

And Joe goes on to say, “I don’t think that people really appreciate their parents until they get older.”

What Joe is saying here is, I don’t think people really appreciate - really admire their parents. Or really think a lot of good things about their parents. Or think a lot of good thoughts about their parents, until they get older.

And Joe goes on to say, “I mean...”

Or he’s saying here, what I’m trying to say...

And he goes on to say, “at least...”

Or, in any case.

“I can say that about myself. And I think it’s true of, y’know, here in America.” And then I say, “Yeah...”

And now yeah... This is slang or casual or informal for yes.

And I go on to say, “I was gonna say...”

Gonna is short or slang for going to.

And I go on to say, “in this culture, anyway.”

Now anyway... This is just filler. It’s not really needed in the sentence. Culture. Culture is the way a group of people think and act. Culture. So in this sentence I was talking about the way things are here in America. Culture.

Parents Vocabulary Lesson

And I go on to say, “Yeah I can totally agree with that.”

Totally. *Totally* means definitely or completely. *Totally.* For example: *When I was younger, my parents would get totally angry with me whenever I came home late for dinner. Totally.*

And then Joe says, “Yeah, I, eh...”

Now eh... *This is just a filler word. Doesn’t really mean anything.*

Joe goes on to say, “y’know, looking back...”

Looking back. *This means to think of a time in the past. Looking back. For example: When I look back on the time I lived in Thailand, it makes me smile. Looking back.*

And Joe goes on to say, “I think I only really came to...”

Really here is just filler. It’s not really needed in this sentence. You could take it away and the sentence would still make sense.

And then Joe goes on to say, “y’know, see all the sacrifices my parents made...”

Sacrifice or sacrifices. *This is something that causes you to be unable or not able to do something else that you would like to do. Sacrifices. For example: When I lived in Thailand, I had to make a sacrifice. I could not take my cats with me. Sacrifices, or in this example, sacrifice.*

And Joe goes on to say, “and appreciate those sacrifices, when I went away to college.”

Or he is saying, when I moved away to go to college.

And then I say, “Mm-hm.”

So I’m just making this noise agreeing with Joe.

And I go on to say, “That’s probably...”

Or I’m saying, that’s about the time.

“when I started appreciating my parents, too.”



Parents Vocabulary Lesson

Or I'm saying, that's when I started appreciating my parents also.

And then Joe says, "Yeah, I mean, y'know, now looking back..."

Or he's saying, now remembering.

"I can see that my dad..."

Or he's saying, I can understand that my dad.

And he goes on to say, "He was always trying to teach me things. And at the time I, I couldn't even tell that it was going on."

Or that it was happening. Now couldn't even tell... This means did not know. Couldn't even tell. For example: I couldn't even tell that the cook put chili peppers in the soup. It did not taste spicy. Couldn't even tell.

And then Joe says, "But..."

And but is just a filler word here. It's not really needed in the sentence.

And he goes on to say, "y'know, now I see there's method to his madness, like..."

Or he's saying, such as, or for example. Now method to his madness... This means at the time Joe did not know why his father did something but later he was able to understand. So method to his madness... At the time you do not know why somebody is doing something but later you understand. Method to his madness. For example: My friend Kim makes clothes. When she was ten years old she did not understand why her mother wanted to teach her how to sew. But later Kim understood the method to her madness.

And then I say, "Like, what's an example?"

Like is a filler word here. It's not really needed.

And Joe says, "Alright, well..."

So he's saying, okay. And well... This is a filler word. It's not really needed.

And Joe goes on to say, "for example, like on Saturdays, y'know, what I liked to do was probably what any, y'know, little boy used to do. I liked to go out, play with my friends, y'know, play some baseball or some football or, y'know, just, just hang out..."



Parents Vocabulary Lesson

Just. This is a filler word. It's not really needed in the sentence.

So Joe is saying, “hang out with my friends.”

Now *hang out*... This means to casually pass time. *Hang out.* For example: I like to *hang out at the park.* It is relaxing. *Hang out.*

And then I say, “Right.”

So I'm just agreeing with Joe here.

And then Joe says, “Well, my dad on the other hand...”

Or he's saying, *my dad*, though.

And Joe goes on to say, “y'know, he was really strict.”

Or he was very strict. *Strict.* This means controlling. *Strict.* For example: My parents were very strict when I was younger. They would not let me date until I was 16 years old. *Strict.*

And Joe goes on to say, “And, uh...”

And uh is just a filler word. It's not really needed.

And Joe says, “he ran a tight ship.”

He ran a tight ship. What Joe is saying here is that his father was very strict or very controlling. *He ran a tight ship.* For example: Joe's father ran a tight ship. He made sure that Joe studied for school every night or he could not watch TV. *He ran a tight ship.*

And then Joe says, “I'm tellin' ya.”

Now *tellin'*... This is short for *telling*. And *ya*... This is short for *you*. *I'm tellin' ya.* This means I am not joking. I am serious. For example: *I'm tellin' ya, if I had one million dollars, I'd travel for two years.* *I'm tellin' ya.*

And then Joe says, “I mean, I, I think there was this unspoken motto...”

Or this not talked about motto. Now a motto... This is a word or a group of words that is important to

Parents Vocabulary Lesson

someone or something. **Motto.** An example of motto would be: Joe's motto is to treat people the way he would want them to treat him. **Motto.** And Joe goes on to say... So he's saying his father had this unspoken or not talked about motto.

And then Joe says, "that he had which was my way or the highway."

My way or the highway. This means do as I say or leave. *My way or the highway.* An example of my way or the highway would be: The owner of the restaurant made sure that the cooks did what he said. "It's my way or the highway..." he'd say to them.

And then I just laugh and say, "I can see that."

So what I'm saying is, I can imagine or I can think about Joe's dad being strict.

And then Joe says, "So..."

And so is just a filler word here. It's not really needed.

And he goes on to say, "come Saturday morning..."

Or he's saying on Saturday morning.

"it was time to do some work, and..." And I just laughed. And Joe says, "so it was time to spoil the fun I wanted to have."

Or to ruin the fun I wanted to have. So what Joe is saying is his dad did not let him have the fun that he wanted to have.

And then I say, "Right." And Joe says, "So, he'd say something like, 'Hey...'"

And hey is just a filler word here.

So his dad would say, "Hey, y'know, uh, today we have to change the oil on the car, I'll show you how to do it."

Or I'll teach you how to do it. When Joe's dad says to him change the oil on the car, what he's saying is we have to put new oil in the car.

And I say, "Oh boy."



Parents Vocabulary Lesson

I'm just showing emotion here like wow, that must not have been fun. Having to work like that on Saturdays.

And then Joe says, "I'd be thinkin'..."

And thinkin' is short for thinking.

And Joe goes on to say, "yeah, I'd be thinkin', oh that sounds like fun...y'know."

Now when Joe says oh that sounds like fun, he's not being serious about changing the car's oil sounding like fun. He's not being serious about this. He's joking. This is called sarcasm.

And Joe goes on to say, "Or like, uh, y'know, another time he'd say, 'Okay, uh, y'know, we have to change the brakes today.'"

Now brakes are what help a car to stop. So Joe's dad is talking about putting new brakes on their car.

And Joe goes on to say, "And I think that, uh, I'll show you how to do it this time. And you'll... You can do it next time."

So Joe is just repeating what his father had said when he was younger. Today we have to change the brakes. And I'll show, I'll show you or I'll teach you how to do it this time. And next time you can do it.

And then Joe says, "And I'm sittin' here..."

Sittin' is short for sitting.

"I, I must be eleven years old, I'm thinkin' to myself, I'm not gonna remember how to do this. I'm not gonna retain any of it."

Retain. This means to remember. Retain. For example: I was unable to retain anything I learned in all of my math classes. Retain.

And then I say, "Right." And Joe says, "But sure enough..."

And sure enough means as expected. Sure enough. For example: Ken said that he would meet me at the café at 11:00. And sure enough he was there right at 11:00.

And Joe goes on to say, "he showed me how to do it. And, y'know, now looking back, y'know, I can see that, y'know, it was, uh, probably something that he wanted to make sure..."

Parents Vocabulary Lesson

Or he wanted to be certain.

“I knew how to do as I grew older...” And I say, “Sure.”

Just agreeing with Joe.

And Joe goes on to say, “but I didn’t really pay attention...”

Pay attention. This means listen to. Pay attention. For example: Sometimes it is difficult to get my students to pay attention, especially when I teach a class for two hours. Pay attention.

And Joe goes on to say, “y’know. I couldn’t appreciate it at the time.” And then I say, “Yeah, my, my dad, uh, taught me some things about the car, not as detailed...”

Or I’m saying, not as many things.

“as changing the brakes or changing the oil. But he taught me basics...”

Now basics... This means simple things or easy things. Basics. For example: I do not speak French well but I know the basics. Basics.

And I go on to say, “like just checking my fluids...”

Or or liquids is what fluids means.

And I go on to say, “like power steering fluid, um, brake fluid, the oil.”

So power steering fluid, brake fluid, the oil... What I’m saying here is these are all fluids or liquids that are needed in a car. And my dad taught me how to change these.

And then I go on to say, “At the time, y’know, I would dread him teaching me.”

Dread. This means to not want to do something. Dread. For example: I used to dread going to math class. Dread.

And I go on to say, “I wouldn’t retain it. I would forget so he would constantly...”

Or I’m saying, he would always.

“be teaching me. And it would just... I knew it would be this long-winded lecture.”

Parents Vocabulary Lesson

Lecture is just a speech or explanation. Now long-winded... This means speaking or writing that is very long. Long-winded. For example: My dad can be long-winded, especially when he talks about cars. Long-winded.

And then I go on to say, “When I would be wanting to jus- or when I would be wanting just to get in the car and leave, go meet my friends.” And Joe says, “Yeah, sure.”

Agreeing with me.

And I say, “But now I, I appreciate that he taught me those... how to, uh... check my fluids actually...”

And actually is just a filler word here. It's not really needed.

And I go on to say, “It’s a useful...”

Or I'm saying, it's a helpful.

“thing to know.” And then Joe says, “Yeah, there, there were some things that my father would teach me, like, when I was younger, and I did appreciate it. And I mean like the one thing that stands out in my mind is learning how to cook.”

Or learning how to prepare or make food. Stands out in my mind. This means I remember it very well. Stands out in my mind. For example: The food in Thailand really stands out in my mind. It was so spicy and good. Stands out in my mind.

And Joe goes on to say, “Y’know, my dad was really good about allowing...”

Or about letting.

“us be in the kitchen while he was cooking. ‘Coz...”

And ‘coz is short for because.

“‘Coz my dad’s an amazing cook...”

Or what he’s saying is my dad’s a very good cook.

“and...” And then I say, “Yeah, he is.” And Joe says, “y’know, when we were growing up...”

Now growing up... This means getting older. It also means... it’s the time when you were a child... getting

Parents Vocabulary Lesson

older when you were a child. It's only really used when speaking about someone who is young. You would not say this about your grandparents, for example. An example of growing up is: Joe liked to play baseball when he was growing up. Growing up.

And then Joe goes on to say, “I remember like all my friends and, uh, my mom’s side of the family, it was only the women who cooked. But...”

Now when Joe says my mom’s side of the family... what he’s saying is my mom’s relatives. For example, Joe’s mother’s mother... so this would be his grandmother... and Joe’s mother’s sisters... so these would be his aunts, etc., etc.

And then I say, “Uh-huh.”

So I’m just agreeing with Joe and just letting him know I’m listening.

And then Joe goes on to say, “from my dad’s side of the family...”

So Joe is talking about his dad’s relatives. For example: Joe’s father’s father, which would be his grandfather... Which would be Joe’s grandfather. And Joe’s grandfather’s brother, which would be Joe’s great uncle, etc., etc.

Joe goes on to say, “the men totally cooked.” And Joe says, “I mean, I just said my dad was a great cook. He learned from his father, my grandfather, who was a great cook. My grandfather’s brother, my great-uncle...” And I say, “Mm-hm.” And Joe says, “he was a great cook. So it really wasn’t a gender specific trait in my family. And I think as a result...”

Or Joe is saying, I think what happened from this. Now going back, gender specific trait... This is something done only by a man or by men or only by a woman or by women. So something done only by a male or only by a female. For example: Sewing is thought of as a gender specific trait. I do not know a lot of men who can sew. Gender specific trait.

And then Joe goes on to say, “uh, we weren’t afraid to be in the kitchen.”

So he’s saying, we weren’t worried about not knowing how to cook.

And then he goes on to say, “And my father allowed us to. So, uh, y’know... And my dad was always good about teaching me how to cook. I mean I remember this one time... I was a little kid. I must have been six years old. I wake up on a Sunday morning. And I go downstairs and I say, uh, ‘Hey Dad, can you make me French toast for breakfast?’”



Parents Vocabulary Lesson

Now French toast... This is just a breakfast food. French toast.

And then Joe goes on to say, “And I remember him saying something like, ‘Okay, yeah, I’ll make it for ya.’”

Ya is just short for you.

And then Joe goes on to say, or his dad is saying, “I’ll teach you how to make it and then the next time you make it for me.” And I just laugh and say, “That’s great.” And then Joe says, “So I was thinkin’ this is great! I’m gonna be able to make French toast for myself whenever I want. And then, y’know, also I wanted to try and impress my dad...”

Or he’s saying, I wanted to show my dad I could make it.

And Joe says, “uh, y’know. So I wanted to make it for him, too.” And then I say, “Uh-huh.” And Joe says, “So, y’know, that was, y’know, that was something that was a bonding experience with my father and I as well.”

Or he’s saying, with my father and I also. Now going back, bonding experience... This is something that makes people become closer. Bonding experience. For example: When I was a child my mother used to read to me. It was a bonding experience.

* * * * *

Okay, this is the end of the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Parents.” So if you need to, go back and keep listening until you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary. And when you’re ready to move on, go to the mini-story.

See you next time. Goodbye.

Burning Man Conversation

Labor Day: American holiday; the first Monday in September

Burning Man: an American festival that takes place in the desert

fell through: to not happen

that sucks: it's unfortunate

quite a few: a lot

saving grace: something you like about something although you do not like anything else about it

can't stand: do not like

in over their heads: to be involved with something that is too difficult to do

to know what you're getting into: to know what to expect

can't believe your eyes: what you see is not believable

something to behold: amazing

anything goes: you can do anything you wish to do

express yourself: show something about yourself

outfits: clothes or a costume

Joe: Hey, Terence, so how'd you spend your **Labor Day** weekend?

Terence: Um, I spent my Labor Day weekend not doing anything except wishing I was at **Burning Man**. I had, uh, plans to go but they **fell through**.

Joe: Oh, man, **that sucks**, because I know that, uh, you've really enjoyed it in the past.

Terence: Yeah, I've, I've... As you know, I've gone **quite a few** years in a row. But this year I couldn't make it. Um, y'know, but I guess that the, the **saving grace** about it is that I'm not in the heat. And I really **can't stand** the dust.

Joe: Oh yeah? I know. I hear that the heat and the dust can be overwhelming. I've had some friends who have gone in the past years and they didn't prepare enough. And they said they were **in over their heads**.

Terence: Oh yeah, yeah, it's definitely the kind of thing that, um, it helps **to know what you're getting into** with the conditions and just what to expect. Because no amount of description can really, really help with what you're gonna experience.

Joe: Yeah. I was talking with a friend of mine who lives in Canada and I mentioned Burning Man and he'd never heard it. And he was like, "Well, y'know, what's it about?" And he wanted me to describe it. And I realized that, y'know, I wasn't really... I'm not really able to describe it to him because I've never been.

Terence: Yeah, um, it's, it's one of those things, it's kind of hard to describe. I mean the first time you go you really can't... you really **can't believe your eyes**. What you see, I mean just all the people and all the effort they put into it, all the creativity. It's really **something to behold**.

Joe: So, um, how would you describe it though, like...

Terence: I would describe it just as a, just really large festival where basically **anything goes**. Anything you wanna do is accepted. Um, any way you wanna **express yourself**, it's okay, whether it's how you dress, what you say, um, the kind of music you wanna play, anything.

Joe: Yeah, I've heard there's some pretty wild **outfits**. People just dress up as, uh, crazy as they possibly can.

Burning Man Conversation

never cease to be amazed: not surprised

get a little old: no longer fun

blown away: pleased and very surprised

creature comforts: things that are comfortable and familiar

out of hand: very bad

Terence: Yeah, you never kn-, you never know what people are gonna do, um, I'm, I, I **never cease to be amazed** with what's gonna, I'm gonna see there.

Joe: [laugh] Nice, that's great. How long...

Terence: But...

Joe: ...is it, uh, oh, I'm sorry, go ahead.

Terence: Y'know, but, y'know, like I said, it's, it's, I've gone five years and the, the process of going does **get a little old**. I mean the first time I went, y'know, I definitely was, um, had that first time **blown away** feeling...

Joe: Yeah.

Terence: ...but, y'know, then after a while, you, subsequent years, y'know, it's not quite as, as exciting and fresh. So you start to maybe focus a little more on some of the, um, discomforts. Y'know, you, you have no **creature comforts** when you're there.

Joe: Yeah, and the traffic's **out of hand**, too. I hear you end up sitting in like traffic jams for hours.

Terence: You can. You can. Especially, y'know, towards the end of the week when everybody's in a rush to get there, it, it's absolutely can be that way...

Joe: What were...

Terence: ...but then, y'know...go ahead.

Joe: When do people start getting there?

Terence: Um, some people go as early as a week before. I mean they really wanna, they really wanna get there and maximize their time.

Joe: Yeah.

Terence: You, you can be up there basically, um, for, uh, nine days, if you...

Joe: Is that like people who wanna build like structures and stuff?

Burning Man Conversation

Terence: Yeah, definitely, there's some people who can actually go even before it starts and you can, y'know, if you're building a special art project, you could get there as early as a month beforehand. But the maj-, y'know, people that are there setting up big camps they, they tend to get there, um, probably like nine days beforehand.

Joe: It sounds like it's just like a really art-, uh, artistic event, like where everyone just trying to express themselves and their artistic sides and **showing off** their art and stuff and just acting a little crazy.

Terence: Absolutely, absolutely. It's definitely an environment where, it's, and the fact that it's in the desert, um, you, it just adds to the just **surreal** atmosphere of it. I mean you're there and you **might as well** be on the moon, with a...

Joe: [laugh]

Terence: ...with the costumes and people just totally **trick out** their cars.

Joe: Yeah. And then, eh, what do they do at the end? Like, I know they burn something. But I'm not even sure what it is. Because, like I said, I've never been there.

Terence: Yeah, it's kind of this... It's kind of the **culmination** of the event, um. It's why it's called Burning man. They, there's this giant man that's basically burned. I mean he, y'know, it's kind of this tribal festival that, um, reaches a **fever pitch**. Lots of fire dancers, uh, people just basically going crazy.

Joe: What's the man made out of?

Terence: Made of wood.

Joe: Oh, okay.

Terence: He's made of wood. And there's, and then there's definitely some neon light on him 'coz when you... The event is kind of surrounding a middle area and the man is in the middle. And that Saturday night, which is on Labor Day weekend, pretty much the entire place kind of just surrounds it and that's when it all starts. And then it's, finishes with him getting burned down. And the place just reaches a fever pitch at that point.

Burning Man Conversation

Nevada: a state in America

you never know what can come up: not sure what will happen

see how it goes: to see what happens

Joe: Yeah, I hear that, uh, it becomes like, with the number of people there, it becomes one of the largest, uh, towns in all of, uh, **Nevada...**

Terence: Yeah, I know it's...

Joe: ...for that weekend.

Terence: Yeah, I know it's top ten, yeah, definitely. It's a, it's a real good experience.

Joe: Yeah, you know what, I'd, I'd really like to go next year but, uh, y'know I'm, I'm gonna plan for it but **you never know what can come up**, y'know, so I'll just have to **see how it goes**.

Terence: Maybe I'll see you out there.

Joe: [laugh] Yeah, well if I go, you'll definitely be one of the first ones to know.

Terence: Awesome.



Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

Hello and welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Burning Man.”

Let's get started with the story.

* * * * *

Peter can't stand bathing. He has not taken a shower for two years. He smells very bad. His mother thinks that it has gotten out of hand. She has asked Peter to bathe but he will not do it.

Peter wants a girlfriend. He has asked quite a few girls for a date but they always say no. He thinks that he is in over his head. One time his sister found him a date with a nice girl. But then the girl got sick so the date fell through.

So Peter tried to meet a girl on a dating website. He met a very nice girl named Paula and they decided to meet for dinner. When Paula met Peter she did not know what she was getting into. He smelled awful. When Peter saw Paula, he could not believe his eyes. He was blown away because she was so beautiful.

They had a lot of fun that night. Paula told Peter she would have dinner with him again if he took a shower. Now Peter bathes every day.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's our story. Now I'm going to read the story again and, as always, I will ask questions this time and you can answer them out loud. If you need a little more time, please pause your player and take as much time as you need. And, as always, if you just feel like listening, that's fine, too.

Okay, let's get started.

* * * * *

Peter can't stand bathing.

Does Peter like to bathe?

No, no, he doesn't. He can't stand it.

Does Peter like to take showers?

No, he doesn't like to take showers. If he doesn't like to bathe, then he does not like to take showers.



Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

Who can't stand bathing?

Peter, Peter can't stand bathing.

Does Peter dislike bathing?

Yes, he does. He dislikes it, he can't stand it. When you say that you can't stand something that means you dislike it.

Does Peter hate to bathe?

Yes, that's true. He can't stand it which is the same thing as saying he dislikes it or he hates to do it.

He has not taken a shower for two years.

Has he taken a shower in the last two years?

No, he hasn't. He has not taken a shower for two years, whew.

What has he not done in two years?

Take a shower, he hasn't taken a shower.

Who has not taken a shower for two years, Peter or Charlie?

Peter. Peter has not taken a shower for two years.

So how long has it been since Peter took a shower?

Two years. It's been two years since he took a shower.

Has it been two years or seven years since he took a shower?

Two years. It's been two years since he took a shower.

How many years has it been since he took a shower? Has it been four or two years?

Two, it's been two years. He has not taken a shower for two years.

Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

He smells very bad.

Does he smell very bad?

Yes, he does. He has not taken a shower for two years so he smells very bad.

Does he smell good?

No, he definitely does not smell good after two years of not taking a shower.

Who smells very bad?

Peter, Peter smells very bad.

Does Peter or Paul smell very bad?

Peter does. Peter smells very bad.

How does Peter smell?

Well, he smells very bad. He smells so bad.

Does Peter smell very bad?

Yes, yes, he does. He smells very bad.

His mother thinks that it has gotten out of hand.

Does his mother think that it has gotten out of hand?

Yes, she does. His mother thinks that it has gotten out of hand.

What does his mother think? Does she think that gas is expensive or that it has gotten out of hand?

She thinks that it has gotten out of hand.

Does his mother think that it has become very bad?



Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, she does. *She thinks that it has gotten out of hand which is the same as saying she thinks that it has become very bad. Gotten out of hand is the same as become very bad.*

Does his mother think that the smell has got very bad?

Yes, she does. That's what she thinks has gotten out of hand, the smell. And the fact that he has not taken a shower in two years.

Who thinks that it has gotten out of hand? Does Peter's sister Jane think that it has gotten out of hand?

No, it's not his sister Jane.

Does Peter's mother think that it has gotten out of hand?

Yes, she does. His mother thinks that it has gotten out of hand.

Does Peter's mother think that it has become very bad?

Yes, she thinks it has gotten out of hand which means she thinks it has become very bad.

She has asked Peter to bathe but he will not do it.

Did she ask Peter to bathe?

Yes, she did. She has asked Peter to bathe.

What did she do?

She asked Peter to bathe.

Did she ask Peter to buy some bread or bathe?

Bathe, she asked him to bathe.

Who asked Peter to bathe? Did his sister Jane or his mother ask him to bathe?

His mother did. His mother asked him to bathe.

Did Peter's mother ask him to bathe?



Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, she did. She has asked Peter to bathe.

Who did she ask? Did she ask Peter's father?

No, she didn't ask Peter's father.

Did she ask Peter?

Yes, yes, she did. She asked Peter to bathe.

Will Peter bathe?

No, no, he will not. He will not do it.

Will Peter take a shower?

No, if he will not bathe then that means he will not take a shower.

Peter wants a girlfriend.

Does Peter want a girlfriend?

Yes, he does. He wants a girlfriend.

What does Peter want? Does he want to shower or a girlfriend?

A girlfriend, Peter wants a girlfriend.

Does Peter want a shower?

No, no, he definitely does not a shower.

Who wants a girlfriend? Does Peter or Paul want a girlfriend?

Peter does. Peter wants a girlfriend.

Does Paul want a girlfriend?



Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

No, Paul doesn't.

Does Peter want a girlfriend?

Yes, he does. Peter wants a girlfriend.

He has asked quite a few girls for a date but they always say no.

Has he asked quite a few girls for a date?

Yes, yes, he has. He has asked quite a few girls for a date.

What has he done? Has he watched a lot of television or asked quite a few girls for a date?

Asked quite a few girls for a date, he has asked quite a few girls for a date.

Has he asked quite a few girls for a date?

Yes, yes, he has.

Has he asked only one girl for a date?

No, he hasn't asked just one girl, he's asked quite a few girls.

Has he asked a lot of girls for a date?

Yes, he has, that's right. He has asked quite a few girls, which is the same as saying he has asked a lot of girls. When you say quite a few, that's the same as saying a lot.

Who has asked a lot of girls? Has Brad Pitt asked a lot of girls for a date?

No, not Brad Pitt.

Has Peter asked a lot of girls for a date?

Yes, he has. He has asked a lot of girls for a date. He has asked quite a few girls for a date.

What has Peter asked? Has he asked for a date or for a piece of bread?



Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

A date, he asked for a date. He didn't ask for a piece of bread.

Have any of the girls said yes when he asked for a date?

No, no, they haven't. They always say no, they never say yes.

Do the girls always say no when he asks them for a date?

Yes, yes, that's true. They always say no.

He thinks that he is in over his head.

Does he think that he is in over his head?

Yes, he does. He thinks that he is in over his head.

What does he think?

Well, he thinks that he is in over his head.

Does he think that it is too difficult to do?

Yes, that's exactly what he thinks. When you say in over his head, it's the same thing as saying it is too difficult for him to do.

What does he think is too difficult to do?

Well, he thinks that it's too difficult to find a girl to date.

Who thinks he is in over his head? Does Paul or Peter think he is in over his head?

Peter does. Peter thinks that he is in over his head. He thinks that it is too difficult to do.

Does Peter think that he is in over his head?

Yes, he does. He thinks that he is in over his head.

Does Peter think that it is too difficult to find a girl to date?



Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *he does. That's exactly what he thinks.*

One time his sister found him a date with a nice girl.

Did his sister find him a date with a nice girl?

Yes, yes, she did. His sister found him a date with a nice girl.

What did his sister do?

She found him a date with a nice girl.

Did his sister find a girl for him to date?

Yes, she did. She found him a date with a nice girl, so she found him one date with a nice girl.

Who found him a date? Did his mother find him a date?

No, it wasn't his mother.

Did his sister find him a date?

Yes, yes, she did. His sister found him a date.

Who did she find a date for? Did she find a date for Peter?

Yes, that's right. She found a date for Peter.

What did his sister find him? Did she find him a place to park his car?

No, that's not what she found him.

Did she find him a date?

Yes, yes, she did. She found him a date.

Who did she find him a date with? Did she find him a date with a gorilla?

A gorilla, no she didn't find him a date with a gorilla.



Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

Did she find him a date with a nice girl?

Yes, she did. She found him a date with a nice girl.

Was the girl mean?

No, the girl wasn't mean.

Was the girl nice?

Yes, yes, she was. She was a nice girl.

But then the girl got sick so the date fell through.

Did the date fall through?

Yes, it did. The date fell through.

Did the date happen?

No, no, it didn't. The date did not happen, the date fell through. Fell through means to not happen.

Did Peter go on a date with the girl?

No, he didn't, because the date fell through. The date did not happen so he did not go on a date with the girl.

Why did the date fall through?

Well, it fell through because the girl got sick.

Did the date fall through because the girl got sick?

Yes, yes, that's correct. That's why the date fell through. It fell through because the girl got sick.

Did the date not happen because the girl got sick?

Yes, that's correct. It fell through so it did not happen.



Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

Who got sick? Did Peter get sick?

No, it wasn't Peter who got sick.

Did the girl get sick?

Yes, yes, that's correct. The girl got sick.

So Peter tried to meet a girl on a dating website.

Did Peter try to meet a girl on a dating website?

Yes, he did. He tried to meet a girl on a dating website.

What did Peter do?

Well, he tried to meet a girl on a dating website.

Did he try to make a movie or meet a girl?

Meet a girl; he tried to meet a girl.

Who tried to meet a girl? Did Paul try to meet a girl?

No, it wasn't Paul.

Did Peter try to meet a girl?

Yes, yes, he did. Peter tried to meet a girl.

Where did he try to meet a girl? Did he try to meet a girl at a bar?

No, he didn't go to a bar to try to meet a girl.

Did he try to meet a girl on a dating website?

Yes, yes, that's correct. He tried to meet a girl on a dating website.

Did Peter try to meet a girl on a dating website?

Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did, that's true. Peter tried to meet a girl on a dating website.

He met a very nice girl named Paula

Did he meet a very nice girl named Paula?

Yes, yes, he did. He met a very nice girl named Paula.

What did he do?

Well, he met a very nice girl and her name was Paula.

Did he go to a football game or meet a very nice girl?

Meet a very nice girl. He met a very nice girl.

Who met a very nice girl? Did Peter or Mark meet a very nice girl?

Peter did. Peter met a very nice girl.

Did Mark meet a very nice girl?

No, it wasn't Mark.

Did Peter meet a very nice girl?

Yes, he did. Peter met a very nice girl.

What was the girl's name? Was it Paula or Mary?

Paula, it was Paula.

Was the girl named Paula?

Yes, she was, her name was Paula.

Was Paula mean?

Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

No, she wasn't mean.

Was Paula really nice?

Yes, yes, she was. She was very nice, or she was really nice.

Did Peter meet a very nice girl named Paula?

Yes, he did. He met a very nice girl named Paula.

and they decided to meet for dinner.

Did they decide to meet for dinner?

Yes, yes, they did. They decided to meet for dinner.

What did they decide to do? Did they decide to see a movie or meet for dinner?

Meet for dinner, they decided to meet for dinner.

Who decided to meet for dinner? Did Peter's sister and his mother decide to meet for dinner?

No, that's not who decided to meet for dinner.

Did Peter and Paula decide to meet for dinner?

Yes, they did. Peter and Paula decided to meet for dinner.

What did they decide to meet for? Did they decide to meet for lunch?

No, they didn't decide to meet for lunch.

Did they decide to meet for dinner?

Yes, they did. They decided to meet for dinner.

When Paula met Peter she did not know what she was getting into.

Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

Did Paula know what she was getting herself into when she met Peter?

No, no, she did not.

Did Paula know what to expect?

No, no, she didn't. She did not know what she was getting herself into, which is the same thing as saying she did not know what to expect, so she did not know what to expect.

Who did not know what she was getting into? Peter's sister or Paula?

Paula, Paula did not know what she was getting into.

Did Paula know what to expect when she met Peter?

No, no, she didn't. When she met Peter she did not know what she was getting into, which is the same thing as saying she did not know what to expect.

He smelled awful.

Did he smell awful?

Yes, he did. He had not taken a shower for two years so he smelled awful.

Did he smell good?

No way, he definitely did not smell good.

Did he smell bad?

Yes, yes, he smelled bad.

Did he smell clean?

No, he definitely did not smell clean.

Who smelled awful? Did Paula or Peter smell awful?

Peter did. Peter smelled awful. He smelled awful.

Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

Did Peter smell awful?

Yes, *he did. He smelled awful.*

When Peter saw Paula, he could not believe his eyes.

Could Peter believe his eyes when he saw Paula?

No, he could not. He could not believe his eyes.

Did Peter believe what he saw when he saw Paula?

No, no, he did not. He could not believe his eyes which is the same thing as saying he did not believe what he saw.

Was Peter happy when he saw Paula?

Yeah, I think he was actually. We're not absolutely sure but when you say you could not believe your eyes, a lot of the times that would mean that you're happy about what you saw, and I think in this case Peter is happy.

Who saw Paula? Did Peter's mother see Paula?

No, Peter's mother didn't see Paula.

Did Peter see Paula?

Yes, yes, he did. Peter saw Paula.

When did Peter not believe his eyes? Was it when he saw Paula?

Yes, yes, that's true. When Peter saw Paula, he could not believe his eyes.

He was blown away because she was so beautiful.

Was he blown away because she was so beautiful?



Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, that's correct. *He was blown away because she was so beautiful.*

What happened to him? Was he blown away?

Yes, *he was blown away.*

Was he pleased and very surprised?

Yes, *he was. He was blown away which means he was pleased and very surprised. If you are blown away, that means you are pleased and very surprised.*

Who was blown away? Was Peter blown away?

Yes, *he was. Peter was blown away.*

Why was Peter blown away? Was he blown away because the wind was blowing very strong?

No, *that's not why he was blown away, it's not like the blowing of the wind.*

Was he blown away because she was so beautiful?

Yes, yes, *that's why he was blown away. He was blown away because she was so beautiful.*

Who was so beautiful? Peter's mom or Paula?

Paula, Paula was so beautiful.

Was she ugly?

No, she wasn't ugly.

Was she so beautiful?

Yes, she was so beautiful.

Was she just a little beautiful?

No, she wasn't just a little beautiful, she was so beautiful, that means she was very beautiful.

Was Peter blown away because Paula was so beautiful?

Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *he was*. *He was blown away because she was so beautiful.*

They had a lot of fun that night.

Did they have a lot of fun that night?

Yes, *they did*. *They had a lot of fun that night.*

What did they have that night?

A lot of fun, they had a lot of fun.

Did they enjoy dinner that night?

Yes, yes, *we can say that, because they had a lot of fun when they went to dinner.*

Who had a lot of fun? Did Peter's mother and father have a lot of fun?

No, it wasn't Peter's mother and father.

Did Peter and Paula have a lot of fun?

Yes, *they did. Peter and Paula had a lot of fun.*

When did they have a lot of fun? Did they have a lot of fun later that week?

No, not later that week.

Did Peter and Paula have a lot of fun that night?

Yes, *that's when they had a lot of fun. They had a lot of fun that night.*

Paula told Peter she would have dinner with him again if he took a shower.

Did Paula tell Peter she would have dinner with him again if he took a shower?

Yes, yes, *that's what she did. She told Peter she would have dinner with him again if he took a shower.*

Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

What did Paula tell Peter? Did she tell him that she would have dinner with him if he took a shower?

Yes, she did. She said I will have dinner again with you Peter if you take a shower.

What will Paula do if Peter takes a shower? Will she buy him a new shirt?

No, she won't buy him a new shirt.

Will she have dinner with him again?

Yes, that's what she'll do if she takes a shower. She will have dinner with him again.

Who will have dinner with Peter if he takes a shower? His sister?

No, it's not his sister.

Will Paula have dinner with him if he takes a shower?

Yes, that's true. Paula will have dinner with him if he takes a shower.

Who will Paula have dinner with if he takes a shower?

Peter, she will have dinner with Peter if he takes a shower.

Will Paula have dinner again with Peter?

Well, she will if he takes a shower.

Now Peter bathes every day.

Does Peter bathe every day?

Yes, yes, he does. Now Peter bathes every day.

What does Peter do every day?

He bathes. Peter bathes every day.

Burning Man Mini-Story Lesson

Does he wash his car or bathe?

He bathes.

Who bathes every day? Does Paula bathe every day?

No, we're not talking about Paula.

Does Peter bathe every day?

Yes, that's correct, Peter. Peter bathes every day.

When does Peter bathe?

Every day, he bathes every day.

Does he bathe only on Tuesdays?

No, he doesn't bathe only on Tuesdays.

Does he bathe once a week?

No, he doesn't bathe just once a week.

Does he bathe every day?

Yes, he does. He bathes every day. Peter bathes every day.

* * * * *

Okay, so that brings us to the end of our story which means we are at the mini-story lesson for the conversation "Burning Man." Now it's your turn to tell the story by yourself. Remember that you do not need to memorize every word in the story, but you do need to use the idioms that we discussed. In this story we discussed these idioms: "can't stand," "out of hand," "quite a few," "in over his head," "fell through," "did not know what she was getting into," "could not believe his eyes," and "blown away." So now tell the story using these idioms.

Okay, good luck and we'll see you next time.

Burning Man POV Lesson

Hello. Welcome to the point of view stories for "Burning Man". Today we're gonna hear the same story from the "Burning Man" mini-story lesson and we're gonna hear it four different times. Each time we hear the story it will be from a different point of view. I'll either be changing the time of the story or the person who is telling the story. Okay, let's get started.

* * * * *

Peter can't stand bathing. He has not taken a shower for two years. He smells very bad. His mother thinks that it has gotten out of hand. She asks Peter to bathe but he will not do it.

Peter wants a girlfriend. He asks quite a few girls for a date but they always say no. He thinks that he is in over his head. One time his sister finds him a date with a nice girl. But then the girl gets sick so the date falls through.

So Peter tries to meet a girl on a dating website. He meets a very nice girl named Paula and they decide to meet for dinner. When Paula meets Peter she does not know what she is getting into. He smells awful. When Peter sees Paula, he cannot believe his eyes. He is blown away because she is so beautiful.

They have a lot of fun that night. Paula tells Peter she will have dinner with him again if he takes a shower. Now Peter bathes every day.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's the story told as if it is happening right now or in the present. Now let's tell the story as if it has already happened. Let's tell it as if it happened one year ago. Okay, here we go.

* * * * *

One year ago Peter could not stand bathing. He had not taken a shower for two years. He smelled very bad. His mother thought that it had gotten out of control. She had asked Peter to bathe but he would not do it.

Peter wanted a girlfriend. He asked quite a few girls for a date but they always said no. He thought that he was in over his head. One time his sister found him a date with a nice girl. But then the girl got sick so the date fell through.

So Peter tried to meet a girl on a dating website. He met a very nice girl named Paula and they decided to meet for dinner. When Paula met Peter she did not know what she was getting into. He smelled awful. When Peter saw Paula, he could not believe his eyes. He was blown away because

Burning Man POV Lesson

she was so beautiful.

They had a lot of fun that night. Paula told Peter she would have dinner with him again if he took a shower. Then Peter bathed every day.

* * * * *

Okay, so we have now heard the story as it happened one year ago. Now let's hear it as if it will happen one year from now. Let's begin.

* * * * *

One year from now Peter will not be able to stand bathing. He will not have taken a shower for two years. He's gonna smell very bad. His mother is going to think that it has gotten out of hand. She'll ask Peter to bathe but he will not do it.

Peter's gonna want a girlfriend. He's gonna ask quite a few girls for a date but they will always say no. He's going to think that he's in over his head. One time his sister will find him a date with a nice girl. But then the girl is gonna get sick so the date will fall through.

So Peter is going to try to meet a girl on a dating website. He'll meet a very nice girl named Paula and they'll decide to meet for dinner. When Paula meets Peter she'll not know what she's getting into. He's gonna smell awful. When Peter sees Paula, he won't be able to believe his eyes. He'll be blown away because she is going to be so beautiful.

They're gonna have a lot of fun that night. Paula is gonna tell Peter she'll have dinner with him again if he takes a shower. Then Peter'll bathe every day.

* * * * *

Okay, so now let's hear the story from Peter's point of view. So Peter will now be telling the story. Here we go.

* * * * *

I can't stand bathing. I have not taken a shower for two years. I smell very bad. My mother thinks that it has gotten out of hand. She asks me to bathe but I will not do it.

I want a girlfriend. I ask quite a few girls for a date but they always say no. I think that I am in over my head. One time my sister finds me a date with a nice girl. But then the girl gets sick so the date

Burning Man POV Lesson

falls through.

So I try to meet a girl on a dating website. I meet a very nice girl named Paula and we decide to meet for dinner. When Paula meets me she does not know what she is getting into. I smell awful. When I see Paula, I cannot believe my eyes. I am blown away because she is so beautiful.

We have a lot of fun that night. Paula tells me she will have dinner with me again if I take a shower. Now I bathe every day.

* * * * *

Okay so that brings us to the end of the point of view stories for “Burning Man”. Remember to listen to these stories until you know them well. Listen to them until you can tell the story on your own. Okay, enjoy the stories. I'll see ya next time.



Burning Man Vocabulary Lesson

Welcome back. This is the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Burning Man.” In this conversation Joe is speaking to one of his friends named Terence. They’re talking about this big festival that happens one time a year called Burning Man. Terence has been to Burning Man many times.

Okay, let’s begin with the conversation.

* * * * *

Joe starts out by saying, “Hey, Terence, so how’d you spend your Labor Day weekend?”

How’d. This is just short for how did. You won’t see how’d in written English but you’ll definitely hear it in conversational English. Labor Day. Labor Day is an American holiday. It’s the first Monday in September. Labor Day. And when Joe says Labor Day weekend, he’s just talking about the Saturday and Sunday before Labor Day, the holiday on Monday. So how’d you spend your Labor Day weekend... It just means what did you do for Labor Day weekend.

And then Terence says, “Um, I spent my Labor Day weekend not doing anything except wishing I was...”

Or he’s saying, thinking about how I wanted to be.

“at Burning Man.”

Burning Man. This is an American festival that takes place in the desert over Labor Day weekend. Burning Man. That’s the name of the festival.

And then Terence goes on to say, “I had, uh, plans to go but they fell through.”

Fell through. Now what Terence is saying here is his plans did not happen. If something falls through it does not happen. For example: I wanted to get a massage but my plans fell through because the massage therapist was sick. Fell through.

And then Joe says, “Oh, man, that sucks...”

Now oh man... He’s just showing some emotion here like, oh I don’t believe that. That sucks. That sucks means it’s unfortunate. That sucks. For example: It sucks that I got sick before the party because I really wanted to go. That sucks, or in this example, it sucks.

And Joe goes on to say, “because I know that, uh, you’ve really enjoyed it in the past.”



Burning Man Vocabulary Lesson

Or what Joe is saying is, you've really had a good time at Burning Man in the past.

And Terence says, "Yeah..."

Yeah being slang or casual or informal for yes.

And Terence goes on to say, "I've, I've, as you know, I've gone quite a few years..."

So he's saying, I've gone many years.

"in a row."

So what he's saying is, quite a few years in a row. He's gone to a lot of Burning Man festivals year after year after year. That's in a row.

And Terence goes on to say, "But this year I couldn't make it."

Or he's saying, I couldn't go.

"Um, y'know, but I guess that the, the saving grace about it..."

Now saving grace... This is something you like about something although you do not like anything else about it. For example: The movie theatre is small and dirty but its saving grace is that it shows good movies. So saving grace.

So Terence is saying, "the saving grace about it is that I'm not in the heat. And I really can't stand the dust."

Dust meaning dirt. So he's saying yeah, y'know, I really wanted to go but the saving grace, or the good thing about me not going even though I wanted to go, is that I'm not out in the heat. It gets really hot at Burning Man. And he says I'm not in the dirt. I'm not in the dust. When Terence says he really can't stand the dust... Can't stand means... it means do not like. Or he doesn't like the dust. For example: I can't stand waking up early. Can't stand.

And then Joe says, "Oh yeah?"

Or he's saying, oh really?

And Joe goes on to say, "I know. I hear that the heat and the dust can be overwhelming."

Burning Man Vocabulary Lesson

Or what Joe is saying is, it can be too much.

And then Joe says, “I’ve had some friends who have gone in the past years and they didn’t prepare enough.”

Or they didn’t get ready enough.

And then Joe says, “And they said they were in over their heads.”

In over their heads. This means to be involved with something that is too difficult to do. In over their heads. For example: I’m not good at math. So whenever I had to take a math test I was in over my head. In over their heads, or in this example, in over my head.

And then Terence says, “Oh yeah, yeah, it’s definitely the kind of thing that, um, it helps to know what you’re getting into...”

To know what you’re getting into. This means to know what to expect. To know what you’re getting into. For example: When I went trekking in Nepal, I did not know what I was getting into. So I was not prepared for the weather. To know what you’re getting into.

And Terence goes on to say, “with the conditions...”

What conditions means here is the weather. It gets really hot at Burning Man.. And because it’s in the desert, there are dust storms.

And then Terence goes on to say, “and just what to expect. Because no amount of description can really, really help with what you’re gonna experience.”

Now no amount of description means nothing anyone can tell you, or anything that you hear, is going to help prepare you for what you are really gonna experience, Or gonna being short for going to experience.

And then Joe says, “Yeah. I was talking with a friend of mine who lives in Canada and I mentioned...”

Or I told him about.

“Burning Man and he’d never heard it. And he was like...”

Like is just a filler word here. It doesn’t really mean anything.

“he was like well, y’know...”

Burning Man Vocabulary Lesson

Y'know is just short for you know.

"y'know, what's it about?"

So Joe's friend in Canada is asking what is it? What is Burning Man? What's it about?

And Joe goes on to say, "And he wanted me to describe it."

Or he wanted me to tell him about it.

And then Joe says, "And I realized that, y'know, I wasn't really... I'm not really able to describe it to him because I've never been." And Terence says, "Yeah, um, it's, it's one of those things, it's kind of hard to describe."

Or it's a little difficult to describe.

And Terence says, "I mean..."

Or what I'm trying to say.

"the first time you go you really can't... you really can't believe your eyes."

Now what he's saying here... Can't believe your eyes or could not believe my eyes... What you see does not seem real. Can't believe your eyes. For example: When I went to Nepal and saw the mountains I could not believe my eyes. They were so beautiful they did not look real. Can't believe your eyes. Or could not believe my eyes in this Nepal example.

And then Terence says, "What you see, I mean just all the people and all the effort..."

Or everything.

"they put into it, all the creativity."

Creativity is new and different ideas. Or new and different art or music, etc.

And Terence says, "It's really something to behold."

Something to behold. This means it's amazing. Something to behold. For example: The mountains in Nepal are something to behold.

Burning Man Vocabulary Lesson

And Joe says, “So, um, how would you describe it though, like...” And Terence says, “I would describe it just as a, just really large festival...”

Large meaning very big.

And Terence goes on to say, “where basically...”

Or he's saying really.

“anything goes.”

Now anything goes.... This means you can do anything you wish to do or you can do anything you want to do. Anything goes. For example: There are areas in Pakistan near the border of Afghanistan where there are no police and anything goes.

And then Terence goes on to say, “Anything you wanna do...”

Wanna is short for want to.

He's saying, “Anything you wanna do is accepted.”

Or it's okay to do.

And Terence says, “Um, any way you wanna express yourself, it's okay...”

Now express yourself. This means to show something about yourself. For example: Jane likes to express herself by painting. Express yourself.

And then Terence goes on to say, “whether it's how you dress, what you say, um, the kind of music you wanna play, anything.” And Joe says, “Yeah, I've heard there's some pretty wild outfits.”

Pretty wild. Pretty here means very. And wild just means very different, unusual, uncommon or not common. And outfits... Outfits means clothes or a costume. A costume is something that you wear or a style of dress for a party, festival, etc. So for example: The people at the party were wearing some funny outfits.

And then Joe goes on to say, “People just dress up as, uh, crazy as they possibly can.”

Now crazy here means as different or as unusual or uncommon as they possibly can.



Burning Man Vocabulary Lesson

And Terence says, “Yeah, you never kn-, you never know what people are gonna do...”

Gonna being short for going to.

And then Terence says, “um, I’m, I, I never cease to be amazed...”

Never cease to be amazed. What this means is not surprised. So Terence is saying, I’m never surprised with what I’m gonna see there. An example of this would be: The beauty of the mountains in Nepal never ceases to amaze me. Never cease to be amazed or never ceases to amaze me.

And Terence goes on to say, “with what’s gonna, I’m gonna see there.” And then Joe laughs and says, “Nice, that’s great. How long...” And Terence says, “But...” And then Joe says, “is it, uh, oh, I’m sorry, go ahead.”

So Joe’s saying, go ahead and talk. I didn’t mean to interrupt you. Go ahead.

And Terence says, “Y’know, but, y’know, like I said, it’s, it’s, I’ve gone five years and the, the process...”

Or he’s saying, everything you have to do to get ready for it.

“the process of going does get a little old.”

Get a little old. What this means is it’s no longer fun. Get a little old. For example: I always loved going to school the first day of a new school year. But it would get a little old by the end of the first week. Get a little old.

And then Terence goes on to say, “I mean the first time I went, y’know, I definitely was, um, had that first time blown away feeling...”

Blown away. What Terence is saying here is I had that first time pleased and very surprised feeling. For example: I was blown away by how large New York City is. Blown away.

And then Joe says, “Yeah.” And Terence says, “but, y’know, then after a while, you, subsequent years...”

Subsequent meaning years after or the following years.

And Terence says, “y’know, it’s not quite as, as exciting and fresh.”

Burning Man Vocabulary Lesson

Fresh meaning new.

And Terence says, “So you start to maybe focus...”

Or you start to maybe pay attention.

“a little more on some of the, um, discomforts...”

Discomforts meaning things that make you uncomfortable.

And Terence says, “Y’know, you, you have no creature comforts when you’re there.”

Creature comforts. These are things that are comfortable and familiar. Creature comforts.

And Joe says, “Yeah, and the traffic’s out of hand, too.”

Traffic is just a lot of cars that are not able to move. They are moving slowly because there are so many cars. So Joe’s saying, yeah the traffic’s out of hand. Out of hand means very bad. For example: The traffic in New York City is out of hand. It’s very bad.

And Joe goes on to say, “I hear you end up sitting in like traffic jams for hours.”

So a traffic jam is the same as traffic basically. It’s when there are so many cars going the same way that they’re not able to move forward. Or they’re moving forward very slowly. Traffic jam.

And Terence says, “You can. You can. Especially...”

Or you can most importantly.

“y’know, towards the end of the week when everybody’s in a rush...”

Or everybody’s in a hurry.

“to get there, it, it’s absolutely...”

Or it’s definitely.

“can be that way...” And Joe says, “What were...” And Terence says, “but then, y’know...” And Terence says, “go ahead.”



Burning Man Vocabulary Lesson

Or he's telling Joe, oh I'm sorry I didn't mean to interrupt. Go ahead and talk.

And Joe says, "When do people start getting there?" And Terence says, "Um, some people go as early as a week before. I mean they really wanna, they really wanna get there and maximize their time."

Or Terence is saying, they want to have as much time as possible. Maximize their time.

And Joe says, "Yeah."

Agreeing with him.

And then Terence says, "You, you can be up there basically, um, for, uh, nine days, if you..." And then Joe says, "Is that like people who wanna build like structures and stuff?"

What Joe's talking about here is how people build or how they make small buildings out of wood.

And Terence says, "Yeah, definitely, there's some people who can actually go even before it starts and you can, y'know, if you're building a special art project, you could get there as early as a month beforehand."

Or a month ahead.

And Terence says, "But the maj-, y'know, people that are there setting up big camps..."

Big camps meaning large areas where groups of people stay for the whole week.

And Terence says, "they, they tend to..."

Or they usually.

"get there, um, probably like nine days beforehand."

Or nine days ahead.

And Joe says, "It sounds like it's just like a really art-, uh, artistic event..."

Artistic event meaning a place where artists go or people who like art.

And then Joe goes on to say, "like where everyone just trying to express themselves..."

Burning Man Vocabulary Lesson

Joe should have said where everyone is just trying to express themselves but just probably speaking fast in the conversation he left is out. He didn't say is.

And then Joe goes on to say, “and their artistic sides...”

Artistic sides meaning people are trying to express artistic parts of their personalities.

And Joe says, “and showing off their art and stuff...”

Showing off. This means doing something to bring attention to yourself. Showing off. For example: Tim likes to show off his motorcycle because girls like it. Showing off.

And then Joe finishes saying, “and just acting a little crazy.”

Acting a little crazy here means just being a little different or acting a little unusual.

And then Terence says, “Absolutely, absolutely.”

He's saying definitely, definitely. He's agreeing with Joe.

And Terence says, “It's definitely an environment...”

Or he's saying it's definitely a place.

“where, it's, and the fact...”

Or since.

“it's in the desert, um, you, it just adds to the just surreal atmosphere of it.”

Or he's saying the surreal effect of it. Surreal means unreal. For example: The mountains in Nepal seemed surreal because they looked like a picture. They did not seem real. That's surreal.

And then Terence says, “I mean you're there and you might as well be on the moon, with a...”

Might as well. Might as well means could be or the same as. So he's saying you could be on the moon or it would be the same as being on the moon. For example: There was so much traffic when I was driving to work I might as well have been in Bangkok. Might as well.

Burning Man Vocabulary Lesson

And then Joe just laughs and Terence says, “with the costumes and people just totally...”

Or just completely.

“trick out their cars.”

Now *trick out*. This means to decorate. *Trick out*. For example: Lewis likes to *trick out* his truck. *Trick out*.

And Joe says, “Yeah. And then, eh, what do they do at the end? Like, I know they burn something.”

Or they set something on fire.

“But I’m not even sure what it is. Because, like I said, I’ve never been there.” And Terence says, “Yeah, it’s kind of this... It’s kind of the culmination...”

Culmination meaning the last thing. *Culmination*. For example: The *culmination* of the party was when AJ gave a speech. *Culmination*.

So he’s saying, “it’s kind of the *culmination* of the event...”

Event meaning festival.

And Terence goes on to say, “um. It’s why it’s called Burning Man. They, there’s this giant man...”

Or this very large man.

“that’s basically burned.”

Now it’s not really a man that’s burned. The man is made from wood. It’s not a real man.

And Terence goes on to say, “I mean...”

Or he’s saying, what I’m trying to say.

“he, y’know, it’s kind of this tribal festival that...”

Now what *tribal* means is that parts of Burning Man, the Burning Man festival, are based on indigenous peoples’ cultures or native peoples’ cultures.

And then Terence goes on to say, “it’s kind of this tribal festival that, um, reaches a fever pitch.”

Burning Man Vocabulary Lesson

Fever pitch. This means a lot of excitement. So the festival reaches a lot of excitement. An example of fever pitch would be: When the football team scored, the crowd reached a fevered pitch. Fever pitch, or in this example, fevered pitch.

And Terence says, “Lots of fire dancers...”

So people dancing with fire.

“uh, people just basically going crazy.”

Going crazy here means people just getting out of control. They’re so excited.

And Joe says, “What’s the man made out of?” And Terence says, “Made of wood.” And Joe says, “Oh, okay.” And Terence says, “He’s made of wood. And there’s, and then there’s definitely some neon light on him...”

Neon light meaning really bright light on him.

“coz when you...”

‘Coz. This is short for because.

So Terence is saying, “coz when you... The event is kind of surrounding a middle area and the man is in the middle.”

So what Terence is describing here or saying is that the burning of the wooden man takes place in the middle of the whole festival.

And Terence goes on to say, “And that Saturday night, which is on Labor Day weekend, pretty much...”

Or almost all of.

“the entire place kind of just surrounds it and that’s when it all starts...”

So what Terence is saying... almost all of the people there come to stand around the wooden man. So the entire place kind of just surrounds it. Everyone comes to stand around the wooden man.

And Terence goes on to say, “And then it’s, finishes with him getting burned down. And the place

Burning Man Vocabulary Lesson

just reaches a fever pitch...

Or everyone gets very excited.

“at that point.”

Or he's saying at that time.

And Joe says, “Yeah, I hear that, uh, it becomes like, with the number of people there, it becomes one of the largest, uh, towns in all of, uh, Nevada...”

Now Nevada... This is a state in America. So Burning Man takes place in the desert in Nevada. Nevada is over on the western side of America. And what Joe is saying here is that there are so many people staying there for the week of Burning Man that it becomes one of the biggest towns in Nevada.

And Terence says, “Yeah, I know it's...” And Joe says, “for that weekend.”

Joe keeps saying weekend. He kept thinking that Burning Man is only for a weekend, but actually it's for a week.

And Terence says, “Yeah, I know it's top ten...”

Or he's saying, it becomes one of the ten biggest towns in Nevada.

And then Terence goes on to say, “yeah, definitely. It's a, it's a real good experience.” And then Joe says, “Yeah, you know what, I'd, I'd really like to go next year but, uh, y'know I'm, I'm gonna plan for it but you never know what can come up...”

You never know what can come up. Now this means not sure what will happen. You never know what can come up. For example: I want to go to Thailand later this year but you never know what can come up.

And Joe goes on to say, “y'know, so I'll just have to see how it goes.”

Or he's saying, I'll have to see what happens. See how it goes. For example: I was going to buy a car but then I lost my job. So I will just have to see how it goes.

And then Terence says, “Maybe I'll see you out there.”

So what he's saying is, maybe I'll see you at Burning Man. Maybe I'll see you there at the festival.



Burning Man Vocabulary Lesson

And Joe laughs and says, “Yeah, well if I go, you’ll definitely be one of the first ones to know.”

So what Joe is saying is, *you’ll definitely be one of the first people I tell.*

And then Terence ends the conversation by saying, “Awesome.”

So, *awesome means great.*

* * * *

Alrighty, this is the end of the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Burning Man.” Now make sure before moving on to the mini-story that you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary. And then when you’re ready, go to the mini-story.

Good luck, goodbye, see you next time.

Ticket On The Train Conversation

Joe: So, uh, how's your day goin'?

Kristin: Oh, it could have started off better. Actually, I feel like I **woke up on the wrong side of the bed**.

Joe: Why, what happened?

Kristin: Well, things were going okay. I mean I'd gotten the e-mails done. I'd gotten all the dishes done. Took a shower. Got ready to go. Um, but as usual, I was **running against the clock**, trying to, uh, **get down** and **catch the train** on time.

Joe: Yeah.

Kristin: So, I got on the train. I go in the back like I usually do because I have a **pass**. Sit down, we go one stop. We, we're actually coming up to 18th, y'know, just the next stop. And I see the, the **ticket checkers**, for lack of a better word...

Joe: Oh, yeah. Yeah, yeah, I know who you're talkin' about.

Kristin: People who are always checking for passes...

Joe: Right.

Kristin: ...they're on and I thought, okay, great, yeah, I've, y'know, I've got my pass on me. So one of them comes up to me asking to see my pass. I start looking in my bag for the place that I always keep it, and it's not there.

Joe: Oh, are you serious?

Kristin: So, yeah! I'm looking, looking, thinking, oh where is it? Then suddenly...eh, y'know, and this is after, too, I start checking my pants and just **racking my brain** tryin' to think of where, where my pass could be. Then suddenly **it dawned on me** that I had left it in the pocket of a pair of pants that I'd worn two days before to work.

Joe: Oh, and they were still at home, I'm sure.

Kristin: Yes, they were still at home. So, I start explaining this to the woman. And she, um, she **whips her clipboard out**. And I'm like, "Y'know, I just got on." And she's like, "Oh right here?" 'Coz, y'know, we'd just gotten to 18th Street. And I was like, "No, no, no, no, I, I, um, I got on just one stop back at 20th. But I always have my

woke up on the wrong side of the bed: to feel a little angry at the start of the day

running against the clock: to be late

get down: to go to

catch the train: to get on the train

pass: a ticket that allows you to ride the train

ticket checkers: people who make sure that you paid to ride the train

racking my brain: thinking

it dawned on me: I recalled; I remembered

whips her clipboard out: took her clipboard out

Ticket On The Train Conversation

on me: with me

pass **on me** and that's why I got on the back. I've got money. I can go up and pay right now." And she's like, "Oh, just hold on a second." And she starts writing.

go out on a limb: to say something that seems unlikely

Joe: Let me guess. I'm gonna **go out on a limb** here and say that she still gave you the ticket.

citation: a ticket that means you have to pay money for doing something wrong

Kristin: Yes. I still got the **citation**. So, but, I thought that there still might be hope. So I keep trying to ask her questions, or... And letting her know I can go and pay. And she's like, "Just, **just hold on**, let me, let me focus on this and we'll talk in a minute when I get done writing." So then I start panicking, thinking, oh great, I am getting it, for sure. And I remember back to somebody telling me that they'd gotten one, a ticket once before on the train and, um, for not havin' their pass, and it ended up costing 'em like 250 **bucks**...

just hold on: wait

Joe: Well, I've gotten...

bucks: dollars

Kristin: And you know with the...

a pretty penny: a lot of money

Joe: ...one of those tickets before. And, and I mean, I recall it cost a **pretty penny**. But I don't remember it being that much.

Kristin: Well, eh, this is what I'm thinking it's gonna cost. And with the money that we're tryin' to save for our trip... I just, I almost started crying, thinkin' I can't afford this, y'know. So she finishes writing and hands it to me and it ends up being only 50 bucks.

cut down: to make smaller

Joe: Oh, they must have **cut down** the fine then, because I remember I paid more than that.

first offense: the first time you have been in trouble for something

Kristin: Yeah, she had circled 50 bucks. She's like "I'm assuming this is your **first offense**." And I was like "Yeah, it is." She's like "Okay, um, it'll be 50 bucks. Now I did write down here that you do, you claim you have a pass and you just left it in a pair of pants back in your apartment. So what you can do is go here. " And she's showing me all this on the ticket. "You can go here and **contest it**. So..."

contest it: fight it

Joe: Pffft. Yeah..yeah, go down there and contest it. That basically means you're gonna spend, y'know, most of a day sitting in the courtroom waiting for the case to get called. And then when it finally does get called, y'know, you gotta try and convince the judge that you actually had a ticket. I mean, it's a **total long shot**. I wouldn't, I mean...

Ticket On The Train Conversation

Kristin: I know.

Joe: ...I don't even know, it's a waste of time.

Kristin: Yeah, I agree. I was talkin' to somebody here at work about it and they were like, y'know, if you do that you're gonna be sitting there for a few hours at least...

Joe: Yeah.

Kristin: ...and it's just **not worth it**.

Joe: No, I agree.

not worth it: it is not important enough

chip on my shoulder: to be angry

badmouth: to speak badly about

water under the bridge: something that has happened and cannot be changed

bottom line: the final thing

to top it off: in addition to

it's probably done: it's probably destroyed

Kristin: Yeah, so, I'm tryin' not to have a **chip on my shoulder** about it. I don't wanna **badmouth** them. I know they're just doin' their job...

Joe: Pffft. Yeah, it's, it's...

Kristin: ...y'know...

Joe: ...yeah, I mean it's **water under the bridge** at this point, so, y'know, don't...

Kristin: It is.

Joe: ...get upset about it.

Kristin: Yeah, I. **Bottom line** is I'm gonna be havin' to pay 50 bucks, so...

Joe: Yeah, yeah, that sucks. I'm sure that was a great way to start the day, huh?

Kristin: Well, **to top it off** then, I also realized that the pair of pants that my pass, I left my pass in - the pocket that I left them in - I washed those pants last night.

Joe: [laugh] Oh, so the pass is probably shredded.

Kristin: So, it's probably shredded, **it's probably done**, yep.

Joe: Oh, yeah.



Ticket On The Train Mini-Story Lesson

Hello there. Welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Ticket On The Train.”

Let's get started with the story.

* * * * *

Brian the dog has a chip on his shoulder. He just got fired from his job as a bus driver. Then, to top it off, he locked his keys in his car.

He had been saving money because he wants to go to Thailand. It costs a pretty penny to buy a plane ticket to Thailand. So he's been racking his brain trying to think of how to pay for the ticket.

Then his brother Frankie called him. He told him about a job. The job was working at a café owned by Carla the cat. Carla the cat did not like dogs. Brian thought that it was a total long shot but he asked Carla about the job. Carla really liked Brian, so she offered him a job.

Later that week Brian had enough money to buy the plane ticket. He was no longer angry that he was fired from his job as a bus driver. It's just water under the bridge now.

* * * * *

Okay, so that brings us to the end of the story. Now, as always, I will begin at the start of the story and I will ask questions this time when I read the story. Please answer the questions out loud. If you need a little more time then you can press pause on your computer or your mp3 player and then you can press play again when you've had enough time. And, of course, if you just feel like listening and not answering the questions out loud, well then that's fine, too.

Okay, let's get started.

* * * * *

Brian the dog has a chip on his shoulder.

Does Brian the dog have a chip on his shoulder?

Yes, he does. He has a chip on his shoulder.

Who has a chip on his shoulder? Does Freddie the frog or Brian the dog have a chip on his shoulder?

Brian the dog, Brian the dog has a chip on his shoulder.



Ticket On The Train Mini-Story Lesson

Does Freddie the frog have a chip on his shoulder?

No, it's not Freddie the frog.

Does Brian the dog have a chip on his shoulder?

Yes, he does. Brian the dog has a chip on his shoulder.

Is Brian the dog happy?

No, no, he's not. He has a chip on his shoulder. That means he is not happy.

Is Brian the dog angry?

Yes, yes, he is. He has a chip on his shoulder which is the same thing as saying he is angry. If you have a chip on your shoulder then you are angry.

What type of animal is Brian? Is he a cat or a dog?

A dog, Brian is a dog.

He just got fired from his job as a bus driver.

Did he just get fired from his job as a bus driver?

Yes, he did. He just got fired from his job as a bus driver.

What happened to him? Did he get fired from his job or set his house on fire?

He got fired from his job.

Did he set his house on fire?

No, he didn't set his house on fire.

Did he get fired from his job?

Yes, yes, he did. He got fired from his job.



Ticket On The Train Mini-Story Lesson

Who got fired from his job? Did Brian's father get fired from his job?

No, it wasn't Brian's father.

Did Brian get fired from his job?

Yes, yes, he did. Brian got fired from his job.

What was Brian's job? Was his job an airplane pilot or a bus driver?

A bus driver, his job was a bus driver.

Did Brian get fired from his job as a bus driver?

Yes, he did. He got fired from his job as a bus driver.

Then, to top it off, he locked his keys in his car.

Did he lock his keys in his car?

Yes, he did. He locked his keys in his car.

What did he do? Did he lock his house?

No, he didn't lock his house.

Did he lock his keys in his car?

Yes, that's what he did. He locked his keys in his car.

Did he lock his keys in his car in addition to being fired?

Yes, he did. He locked his keys in his car in addition to being fired. To top it off, he locked his keys in his car. To top it off means in addition to.

Who locked his keys in his car? Did Brian lock his keys in his car?

Yes, yes, he did. Brian locked his keys in his car.



Ticket On The Train Mini-Story Lesson

Where were his keys? Where his keys in his car?

Yes, yes, they must have been in his car because he locked them in his car.

Did he lock his keys in his car?

Yes, he did. He locked his keys in his car.

He had been saving money because he wants to go to Thailand.

Was he saving money because he wants to go to Thailand?

Yes, yes, he was. He had been saving money because he wants to go to Thailand.

What had he been doing?

Well, he had been saving money.

Had he been saving money?

Yes, yes, he did. He had been saving money.

Who had been saving money? Had Brian or Pablo been saving money?

Brian did, Brian had been saving money.

Why had he been saving money?

Because he wants to go to Thailand, that's why he's been saving money.

Had he been saving money because he wants to buy a car or go to Thailand?

Go to Thailand, he's been saving money because he wants to go to Thailand.

Where does he want to go? Does he want to go to Paris?

No, he doesn't want to go to Paris.



Ticket On The Train Mini-Story Lesson

Does he want to go to Thailand?

Yes, he wants to go to Thailand.

Had he been saving money because he wanted to go to Thailand?

Yes, that's exactly true. He had been saving money because he wants to go to Thailand.

It costs a pretty penny to buy a plane ticket to Thailand.

Does it cost a pretty penny to buy a plane ticket to Thailand?

Yes, it does. It costs a pretty penny to buy a plane ticket to Thailand.

What costs a pretty penny?

A plane ticket to Thailand, it costs a pretty penny to buy a plane ticket to Thailand.

Does a boat ride to Thailand cost a pretty penny?

No, we're not talking about a boat ride here.

Does a plane ticket to Thailand cost a pretty penny?

Yes, yes, it does. It costs a pretty penny to buy a plane ticket to Thailand.

Does a plane ticket to Thailand cost a lot of money?

Yes, yes, it does. It costs a pretty penny, which is the same as saying it costs a lot of money because a pretty penny means a lot of money.

Is it expensive to buy a plane ticket to Thailand?

Yes, yes, it is. It costs a pretty penny, which means it costs a lot of money, which is the same thing as saying it is expensive.

Is a plane ticket to Thailand cheap?

No, it's certainly not cheap. It's expensive. It costs a pretty penny. It costs a lot of money.



Ticket On The Train Mini-Story Lesson

Does a plane ticket to New York cost a pretty penny?

No, it's not New York.

Does a plane ticket to Thailand cost a lot of money?

Yes, a plane ticket to Thailand costs a lot of money. A plane ticket to Thailand costs a pretty penny.

So he's been racking his brain trying to think of how to pay for the ticket.

Has he been racking his brain to think of how to pay for the ticket?

Yes, he has. He's been racking his brain trying to think of how to pay for the ticket.

What has he been doing?

Well, he's been racking his brain.

Has he been thinking about how to pay for the ticket?

Yes, that's correct. He's been racking his brain thinking of how to pay for the ticket which is the same thing as saying he's been thinking about how to pay for the ticket. When you say racking his brain, it's the same thing as saying he's thinking about.

Who has been racking his brain? Has Brian or Frankie been racking his brain?

Brian has, Brian has been racking his brain.

What is he racking his brain about? Is he racking his brain about how to pay for the ticket or how to buy a new car?

How to buy the ticket. He's racking his brain trying to think of how to pay for the ticket.

Then his brother Frankie called him.

Did his brother Frankie call him?



Ticket On The Train Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did. His brother Frankie called him.

What did Frankie do?

He called him. Frankie called him.

Did Frankie watch a football game or call him?

He called him.

Who called him? Did Frankie or Pablo call him?

Frankie, Frankie called him.

Who did Frankie call? Did he call Pablo?

No, he didn't call Pablo.

Did he call Brian?

Yes, yes, that's correct. He called Brian.

What is Brian's brother's name? Is Brian's brother's name Pablo or Frankie?

It's Frankie, his brother is named Frankie.

Is Brian's cousin named Frankie?

No, not his cousin.

Is Brian's brother named Frankie?

Yes, he is. Brian's brother is named Frankie.

He told him about a job.

Did he tell him about a job?

Yes, he did. He told him about a job.



Ticket On The Train Mini-Story Lesson

What did he do?

Well, he told him about a job.

Who told him about a job? Did Pablo tell him about a job?

No, it wasn't Pablo.

Did Frankie tell him about a job?

Yes, that's who it was. It was Frankie who told him about a job.

Who did he tell about a job? Did he tell Pablo about a job?

No, Frankie didn't tell Pablo about a job.

Did he tell Brian about a job?

Yes, yes, he did. He told Brian about a job.

What did Frankie tell Brian about? Did he tell him about a new car or a job?

A job, he told him about a job.

Did Frankie tell Brian about a job?

Yes, yes, he did. Frankie told Brian about a job.

The job was working at a café owned by Carla the cat.

Was the job working at a café owned by Carla the cat?

Yes, it was. The job was working at a café owned by Carla the cat.

Where was the job? Was the job at a café or a club?

A café, the job was at a café.



Ticket On The Train Mini-Story Lesson

Who owned the café? Did Frankie own the café?

No, Frankie did not own the café.

Did Carla the cat own the café?

Yes, she did. Carla the cat owned the café.

What type of animal is Carla? Is she a cat or a dog?

She is a cat. Carla is a cat.

Did a cat own the café?

Yes, a cat owned the café. Carla the cat owned the café.

Carla the cat did not like dogs.

Did Carla the cat like dogs?

No, she did not. Carla the cat did not like dogs.

Who did not like dogs? Did Freddie's mother not like dogs?

No, it's not Freddie's mother.

Did Carla not like dogs?

Yes, that's correct. Carla did not like dogs.

What did Carla not like? Dogs or cats?

Dogs, she did not like dogs.

Did Carla the cat like dogs?

No, no, she did not. Carla the cat did not like dogs.



Ticket On The Train Mini-Story Lesson

Brian thought that it was a total long shot

Did Brian think it was a total long shot?

Yes, he did. He thought it was a total long shot.

Did Brian think it was very unlikely?

Yes, he thought it was a total long shot which is the same thing as saying he thought it was very unlikely. A total long shot is something that is very unlikely.

Did Brian think that getting the job was a total long shot?

Yes, that's correct. That's what Brian thought was a total long shot. He thought getting the job was a total long shot.

Did Brian think that getting the job was very unlikely?

Yes, he did. He thought that it was a total long shot which means that he thought it was very unlikely. A total long shot is something that is very unlikely.

Did Brian think he would get the job?

No, no, he did not. He thought it was a total long shot. He thought it was very unlikely that he would get the job.

Did Brian think that Carla the cat would hire him for the job?

No, he didn't. He thought it was a total long shot. He thought it was very unlikely that she would hire him for the job.

Who thought it was a long shot? Did Frankie or Brian think that it was a total long shot?

Brian did, Brian thought that it was a total long shot.

Why did Brian think that it was a total long shot?

Well, he knew that Carla the cat hates dogs and he is a dog, so he thought that she would not want to hire him because he is a dog. So he thought it was a total long shot that she would hire him.



Ticket On The Train Mini-Story Lesson

but he asked Carla about the job.

Did he ask Carla about the job?

Yes, he did. He asked Carla about the job.

What did he do?

Well, he asked Carla about the job.

Did he drink some coffee or ask Carla about the job?

He asked Carla about the job.

Who asked Carla about the job? Did Freddie ask Carla about the job?

No, it wasn't Freddie who asked.

Did Brian ask Carla about the job?

Yes, yes, he did. Brian asked Carla about the job.

What did he ask her about?

The job, he asked her about the job.

Did he ask her about the weather or the job?

The job, he asked Carla about the job.

Carla really liked Brian,



Ticket On The Train Mini-Story Lesson

Did Carla really like Brian?

Yes, she did. She really liked Brian.

Did Cara dislike Brian?

No, she didn't dislike him, she really liked him.

Did Carla only like Brian a little bit?

No, she didn't like him only a little, she liked Brian a lot, she really liked Brian.

Did Carla like Brian a lot?

Yes, yes, she did. She really liked him, she liked him a lot.

Who really liked Brian? Did Freddie really like Brian?

No, it's not Freddie we're talking about.

Did Carla really like Brian?

Yes, that's correct. Carla really liked Brian.

Who did Carla really like? Did she really like Freddie or Brian?

Brian, she really liked Brian. Carla really liked Brian.

so she offered him a job.

Did she offer him a job?

Yes, she did. She offered him a job.

What did she do?

She offered him a job.



Ticket On The Train Mini-Story Lesson

Did she ask him to have dinner with her or offer him a job?

Offer him a job, she offered him a job.

Who offered him a job? Did Frankie offer him a job?

No, it wasn't Frankie.

Did Carla offer him a job?

Yes, that's correct. Carla offered him a job.

Who did Carla offer a job to? Did she offer a job to Pablo?

No, she didn't offer a job to Pablo.

Did she offer a job to Brian?

Yes, that's correct. She offered a job to Brian.

What did she offer him? Did she offer him some coffee or a job?

A job, she offered him a job.

Later that week Brian had enough money to buy the plane ticket.

Did Brian have enough money to buy the plane ticket?

Yes, he did. He had enough money to buy the plane ticket.

What did Brian have enough money to buy?

The plane ticket, he had enough money to buy the plane ticket.

Did he have enough money to buy a car or the plane ticket?

The plane ticket, he had enough money to buy the plane ticket.

Did he have enough money to buy a plane ticket to Paris?

Ticket On The Train Mini-Story Lesson

No, it's not Paris.

Did he have enough money to buy a plane ticket to Thailand?

Yes, that's where he wanted to go. He wanted to go to Thailand so he wanted to buy a plane ticket to Thailand.

Who had enough money to buy a plane ticket? Did Frankie or Brian have enough money to buy a plane ticket?

Brian did, Brian had enough money to buy the plane ticket.

When did Brian have enough money to buy the plane ticket? Did he have enough money later that day?

No, it wasn't that soon, it wasn't later that day.

Did he have enough money later that week?

Yes, that's correct. Later that week he had enough money to buy the plane ticket.

Later that week did Brian have enough money to buy the plane ticket?

Yes, he did. Later that week Brian had enough money to buy the plane ticket, the plane ticket to Thailand.

He was no longer angry that he was fired from his job as a bus driver.

Was he still angry that he got fired from his job as a bus driver?

No, no, he wasn't. He was no longer angry that he was fired from his job as a bus driver.

Was Brian still angry?

No, no, he wasn't. He was no longer angry.

Did Brian still have a chip on his shoulder?

No, no, he didn't. He was no longer angry which means he didn't still have a chip on his shoulder. Remember, to have a chip on your shoulder means to be angry.

Ticket On The Train Mini-Story Lesson

Was Brian ever angry about being fired from his job as a bus driver?

Yes, yes, he was. He had a chip on his shoulder at first which means he was angry but now he was no longer angry which means he was angry but he's not angry anymore.

It's just water under the bridge now.

Is it just water under the bridge now?

Yes, it is. It's just water under the bridge now.

Is it something that happened and cannot be changed?

Yes, yes, that's correct. It's water under the bridge which means that it is something that has happened and cannot be changed because water under the bridge means something that has happened and cannot be changed.

What is water under the bridge now? Is Brian being fired from his job as a bus driver water under the bridge now?

Yes, yes, that's what's water under the bridge now, Brian being fired from his job as a bus driver. It's now water under the bridge. It happened and it cannot be changed.

Is Brian being fired from his job as a bus driver something that happened and cannot be changed?

Yes, it is. It's water under the bridge now, which means it is something that happened and cannot be changed.

* * * * *

Okay, that brings us to the end of our story which means we have finished the mini-story lesson for the conversation "Ticket On The Train." Now it's time for you to tell this story by yourself. Remember, you do not need to memorize every single word but you should try to use all the idioms that we used. Okay, so here are the idioms that were used in this story: "chip on his shoulder," "to top it off," "a pretty penny," "racking his brain," "total long shot," and "water under the bridge." So remember to tell the story using these idioms now.

Okay, good luck and we'll see you next time.



Ticket On The Train POV Lesson

Hey everyone. Welcome to the point of view stories for “Ticket On The Train”. Today we’re going to hear the same story from the “Ticket On The Train” mini-story lesson but we’re going to tell it in four different points of view. So we’ll hear four different stories. Ok, let’s get started.

* * * * *

Brian the dog has a chip on his shoulder. He gets fired from his job as a bus driver. Then, to top it off, he locks his keys in his car.

He's saving money because he wants to go to Thailand. It costs a pretty penny to buy a plane ticket to Thailand. So he's racking his brain trying to think of how to pay for the ticket.

Then his brother Frankie calls him. He tells him about a job. The job is working at a café owned by Carla the cat. Carla the cat does not like dogs. Brian thinks that it is a total long shot but he asks Carla about the job. Carla really likes Brian, so she offers him a job.

Later that week Brian has enough money to buy the plane ticket. He is no longer angry that he was fired from his job as a bus driver. It's just water under the bridge now.

* * * * *

Okay, so as you can see we just heard the story told as if it is happening right now. Now let’s tell the story as if it has already happened. So let’s say it happened six months ago. Okay, let’s start.

* * * * *

Six months ago Brian the dog had a chip on his shoulder. He just got fired from his job as a bus driver. Then, to top it off, he locked his keys in his car.

He had been saving money because he wanted to go to Thailand. It costs a pretty penny to buy a plane ticket to Thailand. So he's been racking his brain trying to think of how to pay for the ticket.

Then his brother Frankie called him. He told him about a job. The job was working at a café owned by Carla the cat. Carla the cat did not like dogs. Brian thought it was a total long shot but he asked Carla about the job. Carla really liked Brian, so she offered him a job.

Later that week Brian had enough money to buy the plane ticket. He was no longer angry that he was fired from his job as a bus driver. It was just water under the bridge now.

* * * * *

Ticket On The Train POV Lesson

Okay, so that was the story told as if it happened six months ago. Now let's tell the story as if it's happening in the future. So let's think of the story told two years from now, as if it's happening two years from now.

* * * * *

Two years from now Brian the dog will have a chip on his shoulder. He's going to get fired from his job as a bus driver. Then, to top it off, he's gonna lock his keys in his car.

He'll be saving money because he wants to go to Thailand. It costs a pretty penny to buy a plane ticket to Thailand. So he'll be racking his brain trying to think of how to pay for the ticket.

Then his brother Frankie is gonna call him. He's going to tell him about a job. The job'll be working at a café owned by Carla the cat. Carla the cat isn't going to like dogs. Brian thinks that it will be a total long shot but he'll ask Carla about the job. Carla is really gonna like Brian, so she'll offer him a job.

Later that week Brian'll have enough money to buy the plane ticket. He'll no longer be angry that he was fired from his job as a bus driver. It'll just be water under the bridge.

* * * * *

Alright so that's the end of that story. Now let's hear the story from Brian's point of view. So in this story Brian is actually telling the story to us. Here we go.

* * * * *

I had a chip on my shoulder. I just got fired from my job as a bus driver. Then, to top it off, I locked my keys in my car.

I had been saving money because I wanted to go to Thailand. It costs a pretty penny to buy a plane ticket to Thailand. So I have been racking my brain trying to think of how to pay for the ticket.

Then my brother Frankie called me. He told me about a job. The job was working at a café owned by Carla the cat. Carla the cat did not like dogs. I thought that it was a total long shot but I asked Carla about the job. Carla really liked me, so she offered me a job.

Later that week I had enough money to buy the plane ticket. I was no longer angry that I was fired from my job as a bus driver. It was just water under the bridge now.



Ticket On The Train POV Lesson

* * * * *

Alright so that is the end of the point of view stories for the lesson "Ticket On The Train". Now it's time for you to go back and listen to each version of the story again. Listen to it many times. And when you feel that you know the story then try and tell the story on your own. And do this for each of the stories that we just heard in this lesson. Okay, that's all for now. Bye bye.



Ticket On The Train Vocabulary Lesson

Hello and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Ticket on the Train.” In this conversation Joe and I are talking about how I got a ticket one day riding the train here in San Francisco. Now let me first explain that there are two kinds of tickets, two different kinds of tickets. The first is a ticket that you can buy to go to something like a concert or a play. Or a ticket you buy to ride a bus or a plane, airplane, or a train. That’s the first kind of a ticket. The second kind of a ticket is one that you can get if you do something wrong, which means that you then have to pay money to the government. So in this conversation, both kinds of tickets are talked about. And I just wanted to clarify that before starting with the conversation so that it wouldn’t be too confusing.

Okay, let’s begin with the conversation.

* * * * *

Joe first says, “So, uh, how’s your day goin’?”

Now so, uh, at the beginning of the sentence... These are two words that are just filler. They’re not really needed. They have no meaning in the sentence. And then when he says how’s... How’s is short for how is. So you won’t really see that in written English but you’ll definitely hear it in conversational English.

“how’s your day goin’?”

Now, goin’... This is short for going. Again you won’t see that in written English but you will hear it in conversational English.

And then I say, “Oh, it could have started off better.”

Now when I start off the sentence by saying oh... Here again, that’s not really needed. It’s just filler. If you take it away from the sentence, the sentence will still make sense.

And then I say, “Actually...”

This is filler also. It’s not really needed.

I go on to say, “I feel like I woke up on the wrong side of the bed.”

Woke up on the wrong side of the bed. This means to feel a little angry at the start of the day or the beginning of the day. Woke up on the wrong side of the bed. For example: I can remember waking up one morning and yelling at Joe for no reason. So I think that I woke up on the wrong side of the bed that morning.

And then Joe says, “Why, what happened?” And I say, “Well...”



Ticket On The Train Vocabulary Lesson

And this is just a filler word. It's not needed.

And I go on to say, “things were going okay. I mean...”

Or what I'm trying to say is that...

“I'd gotten the e-mails done...”

Done, as in finished.

“I'd gotten all the dishes done. Took a shower. Got ready to go. Um, but...”

And those are two filler words as well.

And I go on to say, “as usual I was running against the clock...”

Now running against the clock... This means to be late. Running against the clock. For example: I always feel like I'm running against the clock when I have to be somewhere early in the morning. Running against the clock.

And then I go on to say, “trying to, uh...”

And uh is just a filler word. It's not really needed.

And I go on to say, “get down and catch the train on time.”

Now get down... What I'm saying here is to go to. To go to the place where I would catch the train. Get down. For example: I was running to get down to the train before I left. Get down. And when I say catch the train... Catch the train on time. Catch the train. What I'm saying here is to get on the train. I'm not really trying to catch it with my hands. I'm just going... I'm trying to get on the train. So catch the train. For example: I usually try to catch the train near my house at 20th and Church Streets. Catch the train.

And Joe says, “Yeah.”

Now yeah is just casual or informal for yes. So he's just agreeing with me.

And then I say, “So, I got on the train. I go in the back like I usually do because I have a pass.”

Now pass here... This is a ticket that allows you to ride the train. Or allows a person to ride the train. So in

Ticket On The Train Vocabulary Lesson

this situation, me. It's my pass. I usually buy a pass that will last me for one month. So I buy a ticket and I can ride the train for one month, as many times as I want. So that's pass. For example: I always try to get a pass so I do not get in trouble for riding the train without paying. Pass.

So I go on to say, “I sit down, we go one stop. We, we’re actually coming up to 18th...”

And this is supposed to be 18th Street.

And then I say, “y’know...”

Y’know is short for you know.

And I go on to say, “just the next stop. And I see the, the ticket checkers, for lack of a better word...”

Now I’m saying for lack of a better word just because I’m not sure exactly what they’re called, so... They probably have a certain name. But I just say ticket checkers because I’m not sure what that name is. Ticket checkers. These are people who make sure that you paid to ride the train. Ticket checkers. For example: I saw the ticket checkers going up to everyone on the train, making sure they had a ticket or pass. Ticket checkers.

And Joe says, “Oh, yeah. Yeah, yeah, I know who you’re talkin’ about.”

And when he says talkin’... This is short for talking.

And I say, “People who are always checking for passes...” And Joe says, “Right.”

Or he’s saying correct. He’s just agreeing with me.

And then I say, “they’re on and I thought, okay, great, yeah, I’ve, y’know, I’ve got my pass on me. So one of them comes up to me asking to see my pass. I start looking in my bag for the place that I always keep it, and it’s not there.” And Joe says, “Oh, are you serious?”

So he’s saying, oh no, really?

And I say, “So, yeah! I’m looking, looking, thinking, oh where is it? Then suddenly...”

Or I’m saying then right away.

“eh, y’know, and this is after, too, I start checking my pants...”



Ticket On The Train Vocabulary Lesson

Or I start looking in my pants.

“and just racking my brain...”

Now racking my brain. What this means is thinking. Thinking really hard about something. Thinking. For example: I was racking my brain trying to remember the directions to the airport. Racking my brain.

And I go on to say, “tryin’...”

Tryin’ is just short for trying.

“tryin’ to think of where, where my pass could be. Then suddenly it dawned on me...”

It dawned on me. This means I recalled or I remembered. It dawned on me. It dawned on me that I forgot to turn off the oven before I left the house today. It dawned on me.

And I go on to say, “it dawned on me that I had left it in the pocket of a pair of pants that I’d worn two days before to work.”

Now pair of pants. We say this whenever we are talking about one pants. We just say a pair, even though pair usually means two. Pair of pants.

And then Joe says, “Oh, and they were still at home, I’m sure.”

So he’s talking about my pair of pants that I wore two days earlier. He’s saying they’re probably still at home because I’m wearing a different pair of pants the day this happened.

And I say, “Yes, they were still at home. So, I start explaining...”

Or I start telling.

“this to the woman...”

The woman being the ticket checker.

“and, she, um, she whips her clipboard out.”

Now whips her clipboard out. This means she took her clipboard out. A clipboard is something to write on.

And I go on to say, “And I’m like...”

Ticket On The Train Vocabulary Lesson

Now like here is just filler. It's not really needed.

"I'm like, 'y'know, I just got on.' And she's like, 'oh right here?' 'Coz..."

And 'coz is short for because.

"'Coz, y'know, we'd just gotten to 18th Street. And I was like, 'no, no, no, no...'"

So I'm telling her, no, no, no, no, no.

"I, I, um, I got on just one stop back at 20th Street. But I always have my pass on me..."

Now on me... That means with me. I always have my pass with me or on me. For example: After I left the house I realized that I did not have my wallet on me.

And then I go to say, "and that's why I got on the back. I've got money. I can go up and pay right now..."

I'm saying all of this to the woman but I'm just repeating it to Joe.

And I go on to say, "and she's like..."

Or what this means is she said. The ticket checker said to me.

"Oh, just hold on a second..."

Or she's saying wait a minute.

"And she starts writing." And then Joe says, "Let me guess, I'm gonna..."

And gonna is short for going.

"I'm gonna go out on a limb here and say that she still gave you the ticket."

Go out on a limb. This means to say something that seems unlikely. To say something that seems like it didn't really happen. Unlikely. So Joe is actually joking when he says this because he's pretty sure, or he's very sure, that she wrote me a ticket. It's called sarcasm... Him joking with me like this.

And then I say, "Yes. I still got the citation."



Ticket On The Train Vocabulary Lesson

Now citation. This is a ticket that means you have to pay money for doing something wrong. This is the second kind of ticket I explained at the beginning of the vocabulary lesson. An example of citation would be: I got a citation because I did not pay before I got on the train. That's citation.

And then I go on to say, “So, but, I thought that there still might be hope.”

Or what I'm saying is, I thought that there still might be a chance that I wouldn't get the citation.

And then I say, “So I keep trying to ask her questions, or... And letting her know I can go and pay. And she's like...”

Or what I'm saying here is, she said. She's like, she said. The ticket checker said.

“Just, just hold on...”

Now what this means... First of all, just is a filler word. It's not really needed. But hold on means wait. I can remember when my mom used to pick me up at school and she would honk the horn and then I'd say, “Just hold on.” Or hold on.

And I go on to say, I'm telling Joe, the woman, - the ticket checker - is saying this to me “let me, let me focus on this...”

Or she's saying let me keep doing this.

“and we'll talk in a minute when I get done writing.’ So then I start panicking...”

I'm telling Joe this. I start panicking. I start getting very worried.

“thinking, oh great...”

Or oh no.

“I am getting it...”

Meaning I know I'm going to get the citation. I am going to get this ticket.

“for sure.” And then I say, “And I remember back to somebody telling me that they'd gotten one, a ticket once...”



Ticket On The Train Vocabulary Lesson

Or a citation. That they'd gotten this ticket once.

“before on the train and, um, for not havin’ their pass...”

Now havin’ is short for having.

And I go on to say, “and it ended up costing ‘em like 250 bucks...”

Now when I say costing ‘em... ‘Em is short for them. And then when I say 250 bucks... Bucks means dollars. It’s just a slang word for dollars. So that’s bucks. For example: The bread cost 2 bucks.

And then Joe says, “Well, I’ve gotten...” And then I say, “And you know with the...” And Joe says, “one of those tickets before. And, and I mean, I recall....”

Or he’s saying I remember.

“it cost a pretty penny.”

Now pretty penny. This means a lot of money. A pretty penny. For example: I can remember a plane ticket from San Francisco to Bangkok costing me a pretty penny. Pretty penny.

And then Joe goes on to say, “But I don’t remember it being that much.” And then I say, “Well, eh, this is what I’m thinking it’s gonna cost.”

Gonna is short for going to.

And I go on to say, “And with the money that we’re tryin’ to save for our trip...”

Tryin’ is short for trying.

And I go on to say, “I just, I almost started crying, thinkin’...”

Now thinkin’ is short for thinking.

“thinkin’ I can’t afford this...”

Or what I’m saying is, I can’t pay this because I don’t have enough money.

And I say, “y’know. So she finishes writing and hands it to me...”



Ticket On The Train Vocabulary Lesson

Or she gives it to me.

"and it ends up being only 50 bucks." And Joe says, "Oh, they must have cut down the fine then..."

Now cut down. This means to make smaller. Cut down. I can remember when my father cut down the apple tree in the back yard. Cut down. And when he says cut down the fine... fine is an amount of money to be paid for doing something wrong.

So Joe is saying, "Oh, they must have cut down the fine then..." And he goes on to say, "because I remember I paid more than that." And then I say, "Yeah, she had circled 50 bucks."

So what I'm saying is the woman, the ticket checker, put a circle around \$50 that was written on the ticket. It was already printed on the ticket, \$50. And she just circled it with her pen.

And then I say, "She's like..."

Or here, like again means said. She's like or she said.

"I'm assuming..."

Or I'm thinking.

"this is your first offense."

Now first offense... This means the first time you have been in trouble for something. First offense. I can remember when a friend of mine, Chris, got a speeding ticket. But it was only his first offense for speeding. First offense.

And then I go on to say, "and I was like, 'yeah, it is.'"

So I'm telling the woman, yeah. It is my first offense.

Then I go on to say to Joe "She's like..."

Or I'm saying the ticket checker said.

"Okay, um, it'll be 50 bucks. Now I did write down here that you do, you claim..."

Claim meaning you say.

Ticket On The Train Vocabulary Lesson

"you claim you have a pass and you just left it in a pair of pants back in your apartment. So what you can do is go here.' And she's showing me all this on the ticket. 'You can go here and contest it."

Go here. What the ticket checker is telling me is to go to a specific government building called a courthouse. And when she says contest it... what she's talking about is I can go and fight it. I can go and tell them, look I did have a pass. I left it in my apartment. I can go there and try to do this so I don't have to pay the 50 dollars. An example of contest it would be: Eric is going to contest the ticket that he got for speeding in his car. Contest it.

And then I say, "So..." And Joe says, "Pfffft."

Now this is just a noise showing emotion.

And Joe goes on to say, "Yeah..yeah, go down there..."

So he's saying, go to the courthouse.

"and contest it. That basically means you're gonna spend, y'know, most of a day sitting in the courtroom..."

Courtroom is a room in the courthouse. The government building I would have to go to to fight the ticket.

And Joe says, "waiting for the case to get called."

So what he's saying here is, I would be spending a good part of my day, many hours probably, waiting for the case to get called. Or waiting just to talk to someone about my ticket and not wanting to pay it.

And then Joe says, "And then when it finally does get called, y'know, you gotta..."

Gotta is short for you've got to.

And Joe says, "try and convince..."

Or you've got to try and convince.

"the judge..."

Or make the judge believe. The judge is a person who decides what will happen to someone when they have done something wrong.

Ticket On The Train Vocabulary Lesson

And then Joe goes on to say you have to “convince the judge that you actually...”

Or you really.

“had a ticket. I mean, it’s a total long shot.”

Now *total long shot*. This means very unlikely. *Total long shot*. Very unlikely that something will happen. For example: My favorite basketball team is not very good. It’s a *total long shot* that they will win more games than they will lose. *Total long shot*.

And then Joe goes on to say, “I wouldn’t, I mean...” And I say, “I know.”

I’m just agreeing with him.

And Joe says, “I don’t even know, it’s a waste of time.” And then I say, “Yeah, I agree. I was talkin’...”

Talkin’ is short for talking.

“I was talkin’ to somebody here at work about it and they were like, y’know, if you do that you’re gonna be sitting there for a few hours at least...”

Few hours at least. This is saying three or more hours.

Joe says, “Yeah.”

Agreeing with me.

And I say, “and it’s just not worth it.”

So what I’m saying is, it’s not important enough. It’s not important enough to go sit all day. Waste one day to go and try to talk to someone to not have to pay for 50 dollars. And it might not even... I might still end up having to pay.

And then Joe says, “No, I agree.” And then I say, “Yeah, so, I’m tryin’ not to have a chip on my shoulder about it.”

A chip on my shoulder. This means to be angry. A chip on my shoulder. For example: AJ had a chip on his shoulder after getting a ticket for speeding [in his] on his motorcycle. A chip on my shoulder, or in this example, a chip on his shoulder.

Ticket On The Train Vocabulary Lesson

And then I say, “I don’t wanna...”

And wanna is short for want to.

“I don’t wanna badmouth them. I know they’re just doin’ their job...”

Doin’ is short for doing. Now badmouth... Badmouth means to speak badly about. Badmouth. I can remember growing up my mother would always tell me that it was not nice to badmouth a person. Badmouth.

And then Joe says, “Pffft. Yeah, it’s, it’s...” And I say, “y’know...” And then Joe says, “yeah, I mean it’s water under the bridge at this point...”

So he’s saying it’s water under the bridge now. At this point. Now. Water under the bridge. This means something that has happened and cannot be changed. Water under the bridge. For example: I started to get angry after I got dirt on my white pants. But then I realized that it was just water under the bridge.

And then Joe goes on to say, “so, y’know, don’t...” And I say, “It is.”

I’m agreeing. It is water under the bridge.

And Joe says, “get upset about it.”

Upset just means angry or worried. He’s saying don’t get upset about it. Don’t get angry or worried about it.

And I say, “Yeah, I. Bottom line...”

Bottom line means the final thing.

“Bottom line is I’m gonna be havin’...”

Havin’ is short for having to.

“I’m gonna be havin’ to pay 50 bucks, so...” And Joe says, “Yeah, yeah, that sucks.”

Sucks here means that’s not good.

And Joe says, “I’m sure that was a great way to start the day, huh?”

When he says huh, he’s saying wasn’t it? I’m sure that was a great way to start the day wasn’t it? What Joe

Ticket On The Train Vocabulary Lesson

means here is... he's not being serious. He's joking again. Once again this is called sarcasm. He's not being serious with me because obviously that's not a great way to start my day.

And then I say, "Well, to top it off then..."

To top it off. This means in addition to. For example: I can remember two weeks ago my day started off badly. First I woke up late. Then I spilled coffee on my shirt. And to top it off I fell down and ripped my pants. So that's to top it off.

And I go on to say, "I also realized that the pair of pants that my pass, I left my pass in - the pocket that I left them in - I washed those pants last night."

Or I cleaned those pants last night.

And Joe laughs. And he says, "Oh, so the pass is probably shredded."

Shredded means torn into little pieces.

And I say, "So, it's probably shredded, it's probably done, yep."

Now yep. This is just slang for yes. It's probably done. What I'm saying here is, it's probably destroyed. It's probably done.

And Joe says, "Oh, yeah."

* * * * *

Now this is the end of the conversation for "Ticket On The Train." I hope it wasn't too confusing about the two different kinds of tickets. The one ticket, like I said - that you can buy to go to a concert, some kind of show, to ride on an airplane, to ride on a train, to ride on a bus - that's one kind of ticket. And then the second kind of ticket is a ticket you get for doing something wrong. So, for example, from this conversation, the ticket checker on the train writing me a ticket because I had not paid to ride the train. I did not have my pass. Okay, if you need to, go back and listen to this conversation or this lesson again. Just to make sure that you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary. And, as always, make sure that you are doing this in a relaxed way, you're not getting too worried or stressed if you're not understanding. And then when you're ready, go to the mini-story.

Alright, take care, bye bye. See you next time.

New School Year Conversation

started it up: to begin something

Joe: How's the, uh, how's the new school year goin'? I know you just **started it up** again.

off to a rough start: a difficult or challenging beginning

Richard: Uh, yeah, it's **off to a rough start**.

Joe: Really?

Richard: Yeah.

Joe: Why so?

prep: short for preparation

Richard: Uh, we have a new reading program, um.... It's called Reader's Workshop, um, and a new math program, Everyday Math, so a lot of **prep** work. Yesterday I was at school from about 9, 9 until 2...

Joe: Gosh.

launching: beginning; starting

Richard: Yeah, getting stuff ready. There's just a lot of preparation for **launching** the math program.

starting from scratch: to start at the beginning with no preparation

Joe: It sounds like you're probably **starting from scratch** because...

Richard: It is...

Joe: ...you're used to teaching the...

Richard: ...yeah...

methodologies: a way of doing something

Joe: ...same **methodologies** before.

Richard: Right, so, we, the last math series that we had, we had for, um, four years.

Joe: Uh-huh.

Richard: And, so, y'know, it was like easy to teach. Y'know, I didn't need to do any prep stuff for it. Y'know...

Joe: Right.

day to day: happens every day or most days

Richard: I knew what I was going to do from **day to day**...



New School Year Conversation

Joe: Mm-hm.

Richard: ...and now, tomorrow's Monday and we're launching the program. So it's lesson one and I don't know what I'm doing [laugh].

keep your eyes on: to watch closely

Joe: If it's not enough to **keep your eyes on** the kids the whole time, now...

Richard: Exactly!

Joe: ...you gotta also be wondering, oh, y'know, am I, am I delivering this new methodology correctly.

Richard: Right. Because I, because I want to, I want to teach it as though I know what I'm doing.

Joe: Yeah.

stumbling for: to be unsure of

Richard: So, I don't want to come across as I'm **stumbling for**, y'know, my words or stumbling for what comes next, so...

into it: to be excited about

Joe: Have the kids been **into it** so far?

play around with: to use

Richard: So far, yeah. Um, right now we've just been doing a lot of, um, exploration. So there's a lot of math tools that we just give them time to **play around with** so that when we actually teach the lesson, um.... They're focused on what we're doing and not focused on, y'know, that they have counting bears in front of them or coins in front of them, so...

Joe: Right.

Richard: ...so they just need a lot of time to play around with the tools. We call them tools, I mean they think of them as toys, but...

Joe: Games.

page through: to turn the pages (as of a book)

Richard: ...exactly. So, and, but they need that, y'know. It's the same with like a new book, y'know. I just give them time to **page through** it. Otherwise if I'm on page 2, they're on page 102, looking at y'know, something completely not related to what we're... what I'm teaching, so.

New School Year Conversation

Joe: Right, yeah.

Richard: But, y'know, it's the same with me. When I think about myself being in a class if I have a book in front of me. If I've already seen **the page that I'm on**, I'm gonna **flip, y'know, forward** in the pages and look for what's coming next.

the page that I'm on: the page that I am looking at

flip forward: to move ahead

Joe: Especially if the kids have pictures to look at, and it...

Richard: Yeah.

draws their eye: to get their attention

Joe: ...it **draws their eye**.

Richard: Yeah, and they're constantly, y'know.... Like I'm teaching one lesson, they're on completely different page saying "hey, look at this, look at this" and it has nothing, y'know.... It's a future lesson.

made up their mind: to decide

Joe: Yeah, once they've **made up their mind** to do something it's, y'know.... Whether it's looking at a page ahead of the, y'know, ahead of the teacher or not. It's, y'know, it's difficult to get them to change.



New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

Hello. Welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “New School Year.” Let’s start the story.

* * * * *

Penelope’s summer was off to a rough start. She had been saving money for five years. She wanted to buy a bright pink motorcycle.

On the first day of summer, Penelope went to the beach. She went in the ocean and she saw a shark. The shark asked her for two dollars because he wanted to buy a hamburger. So Penelope opened her wallet and she took out two dollars. Then the shark stole Penelope’s wallet and he swam away.

Penelope screamed, “Ugh! That shark just stole all my money. Now I have to start my savings from scratch.”

So Penelope made up her mind to find a job. She was really into photography so she found a job taking pictures for a rock and roll magazine.

Day to day Penelope looked for motorcycles that were for sale. She saved two thousand dollars and she bought a bright pink motorcycle that had really drawn her eye.

* * * * *

Okay. So that’s the end of our story so now let’s start at the beginning and I will ask you questions as I read the story and you can answer them out loud. If you feel that you need a little more time, please pause your player and take as much time as you need, answer the question, and then play the lesson again after that. Continue the lesson.

Okay. So let’s start now.

* * * * *

Penelope’s summer was off to a rough start.

Was Penelope’s summer off to a rough start?

Yes, Penelope’s summer was off to a rough start.

What was off to a rough start?

Well, Penelope’s summer was off to a rough start.



New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

Was Penelope's winter or Penelope's summer off to a rough start?

Penelope's summer was off to a rough start.

Was Penelope's winter off to a rough start?

No, it wasn't Penelope's winter that was off to a rough start.

Was Penelope's summer off to a rough start?

Yes, yes, that's correct. Penelope's summer was off to a rough start.

Did Penelope have a difficult start to her summer?

Yes, yes, she did. Penelope's summer was off to a rough start which is the same as saying her summer had a difficult beginning.

Did Penelope's summer begin well?

No, Penelope's summer was off to a rough start which means that it did not begin well.

Did Penelope's summer begin badly?

Yes, yes, you could say that because her summer was off to a rough start, which means that it started badly or difficultly.

Was Penelope's summer off to a rough start?

Yes, it was Penelope's summer was off to a rough start.

She had been saving money for five years.

Had she been saving money for five years?

Yes, she had. She had been saving money for five years.

What had she been doing for five years?



New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

Well, she had been saving money for five years.

Had she been saving money or eating grapes for five years?

No, she hadn't been eating grapes. She had been saving money for five years.

Who had been saving money for five years? Had Penelope been saving money for five years?

Yes, yes, Penelope had been saving money for five years.

How long had she been saving money?

Well, she had been saving money for five years.

Had she been saving money for two years or five years?

She had been saving money for five years.

Had she been saving money for two years?

No, she hadn't been saving money for two years.

Had she been saving money for five years?

Yes, that's correct. She had been saving money for five years.

She wanted to buy a bright pink motorcycle.

Did she want to buy a bright pink motorcycle?

Yes, yes, she did. She wanted to buy a bright pink motorcycle.

What did she want to do?

She wanted to buy a bright pink motorcycle.

Did she want to fly to Italy or did she want to buy a bright pink motorcycle?

She wanted to buy a bright pink motorcycle.



New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

Did she want to fly to Italy?

No, she didn't want to fly to Italy.

Did she want to buy a bright pink motorcycle?

Yes, that's what she wanted to do. She wanted to buy a bright pink motorcycle.

Who wanted to buy a bright pink motorcycle? Did Penelope want to buy a bright pink motorcycle?

Yes, yes, Penelope wanted to buy a bright pink motorcycle.

What did she want to buy?

She wanted to buy a bright pink motorcycle.

What did she want to buy, a red fish or a bright pink motorcycle?

She wanted to buy a bright pink motorcycle.

Did she want to buy a red fish?

No, she didn't want to buy a red fish.

Did she want to buy a bright pink motorcycle?

Yes, yes, she did. She wanted to buy a bright pink motorcycle.

On the first day of summer, Penelope went to the beach.

So, did Penelope go to the beach on the first day of summer?

Well, yes, she did. On the first day of summer, Penelope went to the beach.

What did Penelope do on the first day of summer?

That's right, Penelope went to the beach.



New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

Did she watch television or did she go to the beach?

She went to the beach.

Did Penelope watch television?

No, Penelope didn't watch television.

Did she go to the beach?

Yes, yes, she did. That's right, she went to the beach.

Who went to the beach on the first day of summer?

Penelope. Penelope went to the beach.

Did Penelope or Peter go to the beach?

Penelope went to the beach.

Did Peter go to the beach?

Peter? No, Peter didn't go to the beach.

Did Penelope go to the beach?

Yes, that's correct. Penelope went to the beach.

When did Penelope go to the beach?

Well, Penelope went to the beach on the first day of summer.

Did Penelope go to the beach on the first day of summer or the first day of spring?

On the first day of summer. Penelope went to the beach on the first day of summer.

Did Penelope go to the beach on the first day of spring?

No, she didn't go to the beach on the first day of spring.



New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

Did Penelope go to the beach on the first day of summer?

Yes, yes, *she did. Penelope went to the beach on the first day of summer.*

She went in the ocean

So, did she go in the ocean?

Yes, yes, *she did. She went in the ocean.*

What did she do?

She went in the ocean.

Did she eat a hamburger or go in the ocean?

She went in the ocean.

Did she go in the ocean?

Yes, yes, *she did. She went in the ocean.*

Who went in the ocean? Did Penelope go in the ocean?

Yes she did. Penelope went in the ocean.

Where did she go? Did she go in the house?

No, she didn't go in the house.

Did she go in the ocean?

Well, yes, that's what she did. She went in the ocean.

and she saw a shark.

Did she see a shark?



New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, she did. She saw a shark.

What did she see?

She saw a shark.

Did she see a whale or a shark?

A shark. She saw a shark.

Did she see a whale?

No, it wasn't a whale.

Did she see a shark?

Yes, yes, she did. She saw a shark.

Who saw a shark? Did Penelope see a shark?

That's true. Penelope saw a shark.

Did she see a shark?

Yes, yes, that's correct. She saw a shark.

The shark asked her for two dollars

Did the shark ask her for two dollars?

Yes, yes, the shark asked her for two dollars.

What did the shark do?

That's right. The shark asked her for two dollars.

Did the shark give her a sandwich or ask her for two dollars?

The shark asked her for two dollars.



New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

Did the shark give her a sandwich?

No, the shark did not give her a sandwich.

Did the shark ask her for two dollars?

Yes, that is correct. The shark asked her for two dollars.

What did the shark ask? Did he ask her to wash his car?

No, he didn't ask her to wash his car. Sharks don't have cars.

Did the shark ask her for two dollars?

Yes, yes, the shark asked her for two dollars.

because he wanted to buy a hamburger.

Did he want to buy a hamburger?

Yes, he did. He wanted to buy a hamburger.

What did he want to do?

He wanted to buy a hamburger.

Did he want to ride his bicycle or buy a hamburger?

He wanted to buy a hamburger.

Okay, so who wanted to buy a hamburger? Did the shark want to buy a hamburger?

Yes, that's correct. The shark wanted to buy a hamburger.

What did the shark want to buy?

He wanted to buy a hamburger.



New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

Did he want to buy a bicycle or a hamburger?

He wanted to buy a hamburger.

Did he want to buy a hamburger?

Yes, yes, he did. He wanted to buy a hamburger.

So Penelope opened her wallet

Did Penelope open her wallet?

Yes, she did. Penelope opened her wallet.

What did Penelope do?

Penelope opened her wallet.

Did Penelope open her wallet or eat an apple?

She opened her wallet.

Did Penelope eat an apple?

No, no, Penelope did not eat an apple.

Did Penelope open her wallet?

Yes, yes, that's correct. Penelope opened her wallet.

Okay, so who opened her wallet? Did Penelope's mom open her wallet?

No, it wasn't Penelope's mom.

Did Penelope open her wallet?

Yes, she did. Penelope opened her wallet.

Okay, so what did Penelope open?



New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

That's right, Penelope opened her wallet.

Did she open her wallet or her jacket?

She opened her wallet.

Did Penelope open her wallet?

Yes, she did. Penelope opened her wallet.

and she took out two dollars.

Did she take out two dollars?

Yes, yes, she did. She took out two dollars.

What did she do?

She took out two dollars.

Did she ride a motorcycle or take out two dollars?

That's right, she took out two dollars.

Did she ride a motorcycle?

No, she didn't ride a motorcycle. She took out two dollars.

Did she take out two dollars?

Yes, she did. She took out two dollars.

Who took out two dollars? Did Penelope take out two dollars?

Yes, yes, she did. Penelope took out two dollars.

What did she take out?



New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

She took out two dollars, good.

Did she take out two dollars or five dollars?

She took out two dollars.

Did she take out two dollars?

Yes, yes, she did. She took out two dollars.

Then the shark stole Penelope's wallet

Did the shark steal Penelope's wallet?

Yes, yes, the shark stole Penelope's wallet.

What did the shark do?

The shark stole Penelope's wallet, right.

Did the shark bake Penelope a cake or steal Penelope's wallet?

He stole her wallet.

Did the shark bake Penelope a cake?

No, the shark did not bake Penelope a cake.

Did the shark steal Penelope's wallet?

Yes, yes, that's exactly correct. The shark stole Penelope's wallet.

Who stole Penelope's wallet? Did Peter steal Penelope's wallet?

No, no, it was not Peter.

Did the shark steal Penelope's wallet?

Yes, yes, that's correct. The shark stole Penelope's wallet.



New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

Okay, so what did the shark steal?

Penelope's wallet, right. The shark stole Penelope's wallet.

Did the shark steal Penelope's jacket or wallet?

He stole her wallet.

Did the shark steal Penelope's cake?

Cake? No, not cake.

Did the shark steal Penelope's wallet?

That's correct. The shark stole Penelope's wallet.

and he swam away.

Did he swim away?

Yes, he did. He swam away.

What did he do?

He swam away, right.

Did he eat a hamburger or swim away?

He swam away.

Did he drive away?

No, he didn't drive away.

Did he swim away?

Yes, he did. He swam away.

New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

Penelope screamed, “Ugh! That shark just stole all my money.

Did Penelope scream, “Ugh! That shark just stole all my money.”?

Yes, that's correct. That's what Penelope screamed.

What did the shark do? Did the shark steal all her money?

Yes, yes, the shark stole all her money.

Who stole all her money? Did Brad Pitt steal all her money?

No, it wasn't Brad Pitt.

Did the shark steal all her money?

Yes, yes, that's what Penelope said. “That shark stole all my money.”

What did the shark steal?

The shark stole all her money.

Did the shark steal a guitar or all her money?

All her money. The shark stole all her money, good.

Did the shark steal all her money?

Yes, yes, he did. The shark stole all her money.

Now I have to start my savings from scratch.”

Does she have to start her savings from scratch?

Yes, yes, she does. She said “Now I have to start my savings from scratch.”

What does she have to do?



New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

Start her savings from scratch. She has to start her savings from scratch.

Does she have to play guitar or start her savings from scratch?

Start her savings from scratch, that's correct. She has to start her savings from scratch.

Does she have to start school?

No, no, she doesn't have to start school.

Does she have to start her savings from scratch?

Yes, yes, that's correct. She has to start her savings from scratch.

Does she have to begin to save money again?

Yes, yes, that's correct. She said "Now I have to start my savings from scratch" which means that she now has to begin to save money again. She has no money so she has to start to save again.

So Penelope made up her mind to find a job.

Did Penelope make up her mind to find a job?

Yes, yes, she did. She made up her mind to find a job.

What did Penelope do?

She made up her mind to find a job.

Did Penelope make up her mind to find a job or eat a hamburger?

She made up her mind to find a job.

Did Penelope eat a hamburger?

No, no, Penelope did not eat a hamburger.

Did Penelope make up her mind to find a job?



New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, she did. Penelope made up her mind to find a job.

Did Penelope decide to find a job?

Well, yes, she did. Penelope made up her mind to find a job which means that she decided to find a job.

Did Penelope make up her mind to find a job?

Yes, yes, she did. Penelope made up her mind to find a job. She decided to find a job.

She was really into photography

Was she really into photography?

Yes, she was. She was really into photography.

Who was really into photography? Was Penelope's mom really into photography?

No, not Penelope's mom.

Was Penelope really into photography?

Yes, she was. She was really into photography.

Did she really enjoy photography?

Yes, yes, she was really into photography which is the same as saying she really enjoyed photography. She loved photography. She really liked to take pictures.

Was she really into photography?

Yes, she was. She was really into photography.

so she found a job taking pictures for a rock and roll magazine.

Did she find a job taking pictures for a rock and roll magazine?

Yes, she did. She found a job taking pictures for a rock and roll magazine.

New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

Okay, so what did she do?

That's correct. She found a job taking pictures for a rock and roll magazine.

Did she call her brother Johnny or find a job taking pictures for a rock and roll magazine?

She found a job taking pictures for a rock and roll magazine.

Did she drive her car?

No, she did not drive her car.

Did she find a job taking pictures for a newspaper?

No, it wasn't a newspaper.

Did she find a job taking pictures for a rock and roll magazine?

Yes, she did. That's where she was going to take pictures, for a rock and roll magazine.

Day to day Penelope looked for motorcycles that were for sale.

Did Penelope look for motorcycles that were for sale day to day?

Yes, she did. That's what she did. Day to day Penelope looked for motorcycles that were for sale.

What did Penelope do day to day?

She looked for motorcycles that were for sale, right.

Did Penelope look for motorcycles that were for sale or read a book?

She looked for motorcycles that were for sale.

Did Penelope read a book?

No, Penelope did not read a book.

New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

How often did Penelope look for motorcycles that were for sale? Did she look for motorcycles that were for sale day to day?

Yes, that's correct. Day to day Penelope looked for motorcycles that were for sale.

Did Penelope look for motorcycles that were for sale every day?

Well, yes, she did. She did it day to day which is the same as saying she did it every day. Every day she looked for motorcycles that were for sale, or day to day she looked for motorcycles that were for sale. Day to day can also mean most days instead of every single day.

She saved two thousand dollars

Did she save two thousand dollars?

Yes, yes, she saved two thousand dollars.

What did she do?

That's right, she saved two thousand dollars.

Did she buy an airplane or save two thousand dollars?

She saved two thousand dollars.

Did she buy a boat?

A boat, no, not a boat. She didn't buy a boat.

Did she save two thousand dollars?

Yes, that's what she did. She saved two thousand dollars.

How much did she save?

Two thousand dollars, right. She saved two thousand dollars.

Did she save five thousand dollars?



New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

No, no, not five thousand dollars, not that much money.

Did she save two thousand dollars?

Yes, she did. That's how much money she saved, two thousand dollars. She saved two thousand dollars.

and she bought a bright pink motorcycle that had really drawn her eye.

Did she buy a bright pink motorcycle that had really drawn her eye?

Yes, yes, she did.

What did she do? Did she play tennis or buy a bright pink motorcycle?

She bought a bright pink motorcycle.

Okay, so who bought a bright pink motorcycle that had really drawn her eye? Jane?

No, it wasn't Jane.

Did Penelope buy a bright pink motorcycle that had really drawn her eye?

Yes, she did. It was Penelope.

What did she buy? Did she buy a house?

No, Penelope did not buy a house.

Did she buy a bright pink motorcycle that had really drawn her eye?

Yes, yes, she did. She bought a bright pink motorcycle that had really drawn her eye.

Did she buy a bright pink motorcycle that had got her attention?

Yeah, yes, she did. She bought a bright pink motorcycle that had really drawn her eye which is the same as saying she bought a bright pink motorcycle that had got her attention. If something draws your eye, it gets your attention.

Did she buy a bright pink motorcycle that she had seen before?

New School Year Mini-Story Lesson

Well, yes, when you say that something has drawn your eye, that means that you have seen it. It made you look at it, so she had bought a bright pink motorcycle that she had seen before.

Did she buy a bright pink motorcycle that she liked?

Yes, yes, we could say that. In this case when it said it had drawn her eye, it's the same thing as saying that it had got her attention, she had seen it before, and that she had liked it.

What color was the motorcycle?

That's right, bright pink. The motorcycle was bright pink.

Was the motorcycle light purple or bright pink?

It wasn't light purple, it was bright pink. A bright pink motorcycle.

Did she buy a bright pink motorcycle that had really drawn her eye?

Yes, she did. She bought a bright pink motorcycle that had really drawn her eye.

* * * * *

Okay, so we have now finished the story which means that we are at the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation "New School Year". Now it's time for you to tell the story on your own using the idioms that we covered. The idioms were "off to a rough start," "start from scratch," "made up her mind," "into photography," "day to day," and "drawn her eye." So now try to tell the story on your own. Remember, you can listen to this lesson as many times as you need to in order to become familiar with all the idioms and the story. Okay, good luck and we'll see you next time.

New School Year POV Lesson

Hi. Welcome to the point of view stories for "New School Year". We're going to tell the same story from the "New School Year" mini-story lesson but we're going to change the point of view by either changing the time or changing the person who's telling the story. Ok, let's get started.

* * * * *

Penelope's summer is off to a rough start. She's been saving money for five years. She wants to buy a bright pink motorcycle.

On the first day of summer, Penelope goes to the beach. She goes in the ocean and she sees a shark. The shark asks her for two dollars because he wants to buy a hamburger. So Penelope opens her wallet and she takes out two dollars. Then the shark steals Penelope's wallet and he swims away.

Penelope screams, "Ugh! That shark just stole all my money. Now I have to start my savings from scratch."

So Penelope makes up her mind to find a job. She's really into photography so she finds a job taking pictures for a rock and roll magazine.

Day to day Penelope looks for motorcycles that are for sale. She saves two thousand dollars and she buys a bright pink motorcycle that really draws her eye.

* * * * *

Okay, so as you can see we just heard the story told as if it's happening right now or, as we say, in the present. Now let's tell the story as if it's happening in the future. So we'll think of the story, say, two years from now. Okay.

* * * * *

Two years from now, Penelope's summer will get off to a rough start. She'll have been saving money for five years. She's gonna wanna buy a bright pink motorcycle.

On the first day of summer, Penelope's going to go to the beach. She'll go in the ocean and she'll see a shark. The shark is going to ask her for two dollars because he wants to buy a hamburger. So Penelope'll open her wallet and take out two dollars. Then the shark will steal Penelope's wallet and swim away.

So then Penelope will scream, "Ugh! That shark just stole all my money. Now I have to start my savings from scratch."



New School Year POV Lesson

So then Penelope is going to make up her mind to find a job. She's really into photography so she'll find a job taking pictures for a rock and roll magazine.

Day to day Penelope'll look for motorcycles that are for sale. She'll save two thousand dollars and buy a bright pink motorcycle that will really draw her eye.

* * * * *

Okay so that's the end of this version of the story, the version in which the story is in the future, where we talk about the events that are going to happen or events that will happen. Please notice that instead of saying something like, "Penelope will open her wallet" we can shorten it by saying, "Penelope'll open her wallet". This is more like how we would say it in spoken conversation. In a text book you'd be more likely to hear, "Penelope will" instead of, "Penelope'll". So you can see how you combine the words "Penelope" and "will" to be "Penelop'll". You also probably notice that sometimes instead of, "She is going to want" we might say, "She's gonna want" which also is more like spoken English.

Alright now let's hear the story from Penelope's point of view. We'll tell the story as if Penelope is actually the one telling the story to you. Okay, let's start.

* * * * *

My summer was off to a rough start. I had been saving money for five years. I wanted to buy a bright pink motorcycle.

On the first day of summer, I went to the beach. I went in the ocean and I saw a shark. The shark asked me for two dollars because he wanted to buy a hamburger. So I opened my wallet and I took out two dollars. Then the shark stole my wallet and he swam away.

So I screamed, "Ugh! That shark just stole all my money. Now I have to start my savings from scratch."

So I made up my mind to find a job. I am really into photography so I found a job taking pictures for a rock and roll magazine.

Day to day I looked for motorcycles that were for sale. I saved two thousand dollars and bought a bright pink motorcycle that really drew my eye.

* * * * *



New School Year POV Lesson

Alright so that is the end of the point of view stories for the lesson "New School Year". Now please listen to each version again and after you listen to one version then try to tell the story to yourself. If you can't it's okay, just relax, and go back and try to listen to it again. You can listen to it everyday until you feel comfortable telling the story to yourself. Okay, good luck and see ya next time.



New School Year Vocabulary Lesson

Hello, and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “New School Year.” In this conversation, Joe is talking with Richard. Richard is mine and Joe’s neighbor. He lives in the same building where mine and Joe’s apartment is. Richard is a first grade teacher and his new school year has just begun. So this is what he and Joe are talking about.

Okay, let’s begin with the conversation.

* * * * *

Joe first says, “How’s the...”

Now how’s here... This is short for how is.

Joe says, “How’s the, uh...”

Uh. This is a filler word. It really has no meaning. It’s not needed in the sentence.

Joe goes on to say, “How’s the new school year goin’?”

Now goin’... This is short for going.

And Joe says, “I know you just started it up again.”

Started it up. This means to begin something. Started it up. For example: I started up my degree in teaching in 2003. Started it up.

And then Richard says, “Uh, yeah...”

Yeah is casual or slang or informal for yes.

And then Richard goes on to say, “It’s off to a rough start.”

Off to a rough start. Now this means a difficult or challenging beginning, not an easy beginning. Off to a rough start. For example: After I locked my keys in the car, I knew my day was off to a rough start.

And then Joe says, “Really?” And Richard says, “Yeah.” And Joe says, “Why so?” And Richard says, “Uh, we have a new reading program, um...”

Now um... This is the same as uh. It’s just filler. It has no meaning. This um and uh are said a lot of times in conversations when people are maybe thinking of something else to say.



New School Year Vocabulary Lesson

And Richard goes on to say, "It's called Reader's Workshop, um, and a new math program, Everyday Math, so a lot of prep work."

Now prep... Prep is short for preparation. Prep. An example of prep would be: When you make vegetable soup, the prep work is cutting up onions, carrots, celery, etc., etc. Cutting up vegetables. That's the prep work.

And then Richard goes on to say, "Yesterday I was at school from about 9:00, 9:00 until 2:00." And Joe says, "Gosh."

Now, this is just showing emotion, uh, emotion. For example: I don't believe you have so much work to do to get ready for a new school year.

And then Richard says, "Yeah, getting stuff ready."

Or, getting everything ready.

"There is just a lot of preparation for launching the math program."

Now launching... This is beginning or starting something. Launching. Can also be used to describe the start of a website. For example: We are launching our website in October. Launching.

And then Joe says, "It sounds like you're probably starting from scratch because..."

Starting from scratch. What Joe is saying here is it sounds like you're probably starting at the beginning with no preparation. Starting from scratch. For example: Let's say that you were in college and you were studying science. You have been studying it for three years. Then you decide that you want to study something different. Maybe you want to study English. You will be starting from scratch because you will be starting to study English from the beginning. Starting from scratch.

And Richard says, "It is." Joe says, "You're used to teaching the..." And Richard says, "Yeah." Joe says, "same methodologies before."

Now methodologies or methodology... This is a way of doing something. For example: Teachers use different methodologies depending on the subject they teach. Methodologies.

And Richard says, "Right."

So he's saying that's correct. Or Richard is agreeing with Joe.



New School Year Vocabulary Lesson

And Richard says, “So...”

And so is just filler. It's not really needed here. It has really no meaning in this sentence.

So Richard says, “So, we, the last math series...”

Or the last math program.

"that we had, we had for, um, four years." And Joe says, “Uh-huh.”

Now, this doesn't really mean anything. Joe is just letting Richard know he is listening.

And Richard says, “And so, y'know...”

Y'know. This is short for you know. You won't see this in written English but you'll definitely hear y'know and other shortened words in conversational English.

So Richard goes on to say, “It was like, easy to teach.”

Like, easy to teach. Now like is... You probably know like is usually, um... Or it has a meaning of when you have positive feelings for someone. You like someone. But here it's just filler. It really has no meaning. It's not needed in the sentence.

Then Richard goes on to say, “Y'know, I didn't need to do any prep stuff...”

Or I didn't need to do any prep work.

“for it, y'know.” And Joe says, “Right.” And then Richard says, “I knew what I was going to do from day to day.”

Day to day. This means happens every day or most days. Day to day. For example: When I was in school I would go to the library day to day to study. Day to day.

And then Joe says, “Mm-hm.”

Now this doesn't really mean anything. Again, Joe is just letting Richard know he is listening.

And Richard says, “And now, tomorrow's Monday.”



New School Year Vocabulary Lesson

Tomorrow's. This is short for tomorrow is.

And Richard goes on to say, “And we’re launching the program. So it’s lesson one and I don’t know what I’m doing.” And he laughs. And Joe says, “If it’s not enough to keep your eyes on the kids the whole time...”

Or all the time.

"now..."

Keep your eyes on. This means to watch closely. Keep your eyes on. For example: When you drive a car, you can say that you keep your eyes on the road because you do not want to hit another car or a person crossing the street. Keep your eyes on. So Joe is saying if it's... You know you already have to watch the kids, or the children, all the time. And now here you have this new teaching methodology that you have to get ready for.

And then Richard says, “Exactly.”

So what Richard is saying here is he is just agreeing with Joe. Exactly. You're right.

And Joe says, “You gotta also be wondering...”

Gotta is short for got to. So you won't see gotta in written English but you'll definitely hear it in conversational English. So what he's saying is, “You have got to also be wondering or thinking.”

“oh, you know, am I, am I delivering this new methodology correctly?”

Now when Joe says, oh, that's just filler. It really has no meaning. It's not needed in the conversation. When he says delivering this new methodology, he's saying teaching. Teaching this new methodology correctly.

And Richard says, “Right, because I, because I want to, I want to teach it as though I know what I'm doing.” And Joe says, “Yeah.” And Richard says, “So I don't want to come across...”

Or I don't want to look like.

“as I'm stumbling for, y'know, my words, or stumbling for what comes next, so...”

Stumbling for. Stumbling for means, in this situation, to be unsure of. Stumbling for. For example: I did not want to be stumbling for words when I gave a speech at school. Stumbling for.



New School Year Vocabulary Lesson

And then Joe says, “Have the kids...”

Or have the children...

“been into it so far?”

Into it. This means to be excited about. For example: Tim is really into football. He watches football whenever he can. Into it.

And Richard says, “So far, yeah.”

So far. That means until now.

And then Richard says, “Um, right now...”

Or at this moment.

“We’ve just been doin’ a lot of...”

Just. This is just filler. It has no meaning. It’s not really needed. It’s just put into the conversation but it doesn’t have to be there.

Richard goes on to say, “um, exploration.”

So, he’s saying exploration, or they’re trying... trying it. Trying this new method.

Richard goes on to say, “So there’s a lot of math tools that we just give them time to play around with...”

Play around with. This means to use. It usually means that you are not very familiar with the thing you are playing around with. Or that you do not use it very often or very much. For example: Todd likes to play around on motorcycles. He only rides them two times a year. Play around with.

Richard goes on to say, “so that when we actually teach the lesson...”

Or when we teach the lesson. Actually is not really needed in the conversation. It’s filler. It has no meaning.

Richard goes on to say, “um, they’re focused...”

Or they’re thinking.

New School Year Vocabulary Lesson

“on what we’re doing and not focused on, y’know, that they have counting bears in front of them or coins in front of them, so...”

Counting bears and coins. These are two examples Richard is giving Joe of the math tools that he was talking about.

And then Joe says, “Right.” And Richard says, “So, they just need a lot of time to play around with the tools. We call them tools, I mean...”

Or what I’m trying to say is.

“they think of them as toys but...” And Joe says, “Games.” And Richard says, “Exactly. So, and, but they need that.”

Now but... You’ll hear this in a lot of, used in a lot of conversations. And it, here, it has no meaning. It’s just put in but it really is not needed.

And Richard goes on to say, “Y’know, it’s the same with like a new book, y’know. I just give them time to page through it.”

Page through. This means to turn the pages. For example: To turn the pages of a book. I like to page through the newspaper in the morning. That’s an example of page through.

And Richard goes on to say, “Otherwise, if I’m on Page 2, they’re on Page 102, looking at, y’know, something completely not related...”

Or something, something very different.

“to what we’re, what I’m teaching, so.” And Joe says, “Right, yeah.” And Richard says, “But, y’know, it’s the same with me. When I think about myself being in a class, if I have a book in front of me, I’ve already seen the page that I’m on.”

Now the page that I’m on... This is if you were looking at a book or a magazine. It’s... it refers to the page that you are looking at. The page that I’m on.

And Richard goes on to say, “I’m gonna flip, y’know, forward in the pages and look for what’s coming next.”

I’m... I’m gonna flip. Gonna. This is short for going to. Again, you wouldn’t see this in written English but

New School Year Vocabulary Lesson

you would definitely hear it in conversational English. Flip forward. Flip forward means to move ahead. For example: When I read a book that has pictures in it, I like to flip forward. Flip forward.

Then Joe says, “Especially...”

Or he’s saying most importantly.

“if the kids have pictures to look at and it...” And Richard says, “Yeah.” And Joe says, “it draws their eye.”

Draws their eye or draws my eye. What Joe is saying here is to get their attention. Draws their eye. For example: Bright colors draw my eye.

And then Richard says, “Yeah, and they’re constantly...”

Or they’re always.

“y’know... Like I’m teaching one lesson they’re on completely different page saying...”

What he’s saying is they’re on another page.

“saying, hey look at this, look at this, and it has nothing, y’know... It’s a future lesson.”

Or what he’s saying is it’s a lesson that hasn’t been taught yet.

And Joe says, “Yeah, once they’ve made up their mind to do something.”

Now made up their mind... This means to decide. Made up their mind. For example: My dad made up his mind that I could not buy a car until I was eighteen years old. Made up their mind, or in this example, made up his mind.

Joe goes on to say, “It’s, y’know, whether it’s looking at a page ahead of the, y’know, ahead of the teacher or not, it’s, y’know, it’s difficult to get them to change.”

* * * * *

Okay, this is the end of the conversation. I would like to say that in real English conversations you’ll hear words that have been shortened. For example, “gonna” which is short for going to. Or “goin’” which is short for going. Or “gotta” which is short for got to. You’ll also hear words that don’t really have a meaning in the sentence. For example, “like”, “uh”, “um”, “so”. They’re just kind of put in as filler but they really have no



New School Year Vocabulary Lesson

meaning. You could take them out and the sentence would still make sense. You would still be able to understand the sentence. And then you'll hear in conversations some slang such as "yeah". You'll hear in this conversation and many of the other conversations, "yeah", which is just short, or not really short, but it's casual or informal for yes. Or slang for yes. And then you'll hear words showing the emotion of "I don't believe it", for example, "gosh". And then in conversations you'll hear sounds where one person is agreeing or just letting the other person know that they are still listening. For example, "uh-huh", or "mm-hm".

Okay, this is the end of the vocabulary lesson for the conversation "New School Year." Now if you need to, go back and listen to this lesson a few times until you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary. But make sure that you're staying relaxed, you're not getting too worried or too stressed if you're not understanding. Always stay relaxed. When you're ready, then go to the mini-story. See you next time. Bye-bye!

Music Festival Part 1 Conversation

festival: here it means a music concert

Kristin: So, what'd ya think of the **festival** tonight?

Joe: Oh, I thought it was great. I had a great time the entire day, actually.

Kristin: Yeah, good, good, me too.

Joe: Y'know, I thought it was a great idea for us all to meet over at Tim's place. I mean you and I were obviously **running late** because he lives out in the **boonies**. But, uh, y'know, **better late than never**.

Kristin: Yeah, I agree. When you get a group of people together to go to an event like this, it just adds to the enjoyment, y'know, the fun. And it's kind of like the saying goes, **the more the merrier**.

Joe: Yeah, I totally agree. And, y'know, I, I think it was really important that we all went to the concert together in one group. Because, y'know, it was so large it would have made it really difficult to find, uh, people in our group if we would have all gone separately.

Kristin: Right. I mean a...

Joe: It actually, it actually surprised me because, that the crowd was so large. I mean the tickets **cost an arm and a leg**. So I was kinda thinkin' that maybe the crowd wouldn't be as big.

Kristin: Yeah, but, price doesn't usually **deter** you from going to hear music, right?

Joe: No, it's true. You're right.

Kristin: But, um, speaking of us staying together, it just was making me think of the crowds. And I just didn't think that in general the, the festival was **laid out** that well.

Joe: Well, there were four different stages.

Kristin: No, there were six.

Joe: Oh there were six stages?

Kristin: Yeah.

Music Festival Part 1 Conversation

Joe: S-, see we only went to two of 'em.

Kristin: I know.

kind of: sort of
impractical: not useful

Joe: But, the, uh, stages were **kind of** far apart and y'know what the, the most **impractical**, uh, design was? I thought that they, uh, they had very narrow walkways between the stages.

Kristin: Yes.

tunnel: a place that goes through or under a blocked area

Joe: And sometimes you had to go through a little **tunnel**, like a foot tunnel...

Kristin: Yep.

Joe: ...and, uh, there'd be thousands of people trying to go through a space that only maybe twenty people could go through at a time.

Kristin: Oh, yeah. The crowd would get completely, completely **bottlenecked**.

Joe: Yeah, exactly. So tryin' to go from one stage to the next was just, uh... It took a lot of time and effort.

Kristin: Yeah, I agree.

Joe: So that was one thing that was, y'know, just not properly planned for on their part.

Kristin: No! And then there'd be all these **random** trails through the woods that people were trying to **forge** their way through.

hassle: inconvenience

Joe: Yeah, true. Y'know, another thing that, uh, was a real **hassle** was tryin' to get a beer.

Kristin: Oh my god, yeah.

ID: short for identification

wristband: something that you wear around your wrist

Joe: I mean, the wait, the line was like, y'know, a hundred and twenty people long. Every time you wanted to go get a beer.

Kristin: Yeah, well first you had to stand in line just for them to check your **ID** and get the **wristband**.

Music Festival Part 1 Conversation

Joe: Yeah, and...

Kristin: That was bad enough.

Joe: Oh, that was an even longer line.

Kristin: Yeah.

Joe: Yeah.

battling the lines:
waiting in a long line

Kristin: I mean once you had the wristband, though, then it was **battling the lines** just to get a beer. Each time. Yeah, it was ridiculous.

Joe: Yeah, and if you wanted to go get a beer while the band was playing, you basically had to decide whether you wanted to see the music...

Kristin: Yep.

Joe: ...or you really wanted a beer. Which was more important to you?

Kristin: Right.

Joe: You had to make a choice, y'know?

pros and cons: the good
and bad points

Kristin: Yeah. Make a list of **pros and cons** [laugh].

Joe: Yeah, yeah...how thirsty am I versus how much do I want to hear this music. And the lines to the bathroom were really long also.

Kristin: Yeah, the lines in general were just a hassle, I have to agree.

Joe: Yeah. I mean, I remember when we were leaving the event. It took us over an hour just to get out of the, uh, the **stadium**.

stadium: a large place
where they have sports or
music concerts

Kristin: Oh god.

Joe: Remember, there were all these people who were startin' to climb the fences...

Kristin: Yeah.

Music Festival Part 1 Conversation

Joe: ...instead of going through the little, uh, tunnel. I mean...

Kristin: Yes.

Joe: ...and the, the fence, it looked like it was gonna break. I mean it was totally ***an accident waiting to happen.***

Kristin: Right. That was something I didn't understand. Like, at ***Hardly Strictly Bluegrass*** I never, I didn't remember seeing fences like that.

Joe: Well, y'know, Hardly Strictly Bluegrass, that festival is free... So, y'know, I don't think...

Kristin: Oh yeah...

Joe: ...they had to put up the **barriers** to, uh...

Kristin: ...that's, okay...

Joe: ...to entry.

Kristin: ...that makes sense. I was wondering ***what the deal was*** with the fences.

Joe: Yeah. S...

Kristin: Okay.

Joe: So that's why that's, y'know, that's why you never have that problem at that festival.

Kristin: Right.

an accident waiting to happen: dangerous

Hardly Strictly Bluegrass: a music festival in San Francisco

barriers: something used to keep people or animals from entering

what the deal was: what was happening



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Hi and welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Music Festival Part 1.”

Okay, let’s get started with the story.

* * * *

It was Sam the spider’s 30th birthday. None of his friends wished him a happy birthday.

“My friends forgot my birthday,” he said.

Tom and Melissa called Sam. They invited him to come to their house to watch a movie.

“The more the merrier,” said Tom.

Sam thought about the pros and cons of going to their house. It was a hassle because they lived ten miles away from his house. A taxi ride to their house would cost an arm and a leg. But he did not want to be alone on his birthday, so he decided to go.

He was running late because he had to spin some webs.

“Better late than never,” he said.

He arrived at Tom and Melissa’s house but no one was home. He wondered what the deal was. Then he saw all of his friends.

“Happy Birthday Sam!” they yelled.

Now Sam was happy. It was the best birthday he had ever had.

* * * *

Okay, so that’s our story. Now I will read the story again and this time I will ask questions. You can answer the questions out loud and if you need a little more time, feel free to pause your iPod or your computer and then when you feel like you’ve had enough time to answer the question, then press play again. Of course, if you just feel like listening as I ask the questions and not answering, well that’s fine, too.

Okay, let’s get started.

* * * *



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

It was Sam the spider's 30th birthday.

Was it Sam's 30th birthday?

Yes, it was. It was Sam's 30th birthday.

What day was it?

Well, it was Sam's 30th birthday, that's what day it was.

Whose birthday was it?

Sam's, it was Sam's birthday.

Was it Bill's birthday?

No, it wasn't Bill's birthday.

Was it Sam's birthday?

Yes, yes, it was. It was Sam's birthday.

How old was Sam?

Thirty years old, he was 30 years old.

Was he 30 or 20 years old?

Thirty, he was 30 years old.

Is Sam a spider or a butterfly?

A spider, Sam is a spider.

Is Sam a spider?

Yes, he is. Sam is a spider.

None of his friends wished him a happy birthday.



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Did his friends wish him a happy birthday?

No, none of his friends wished him a happy birthday.

What did none of his friends do?

Wish him a happy birthday. None of his friends wished him a happy birthday.

None of whose friends wished him a happy birthday?

Sam's, none of Sam's friends wished him a happy birthday.

Did Sam's friend Tom wish him a happy birthday?

No, no, none of Sam's friends wished him a happy birthday, so that means Sam's friend Tom did not wish him a happy birthday.

“My friends forgot my birthday,” he said.

Did he say that his friends forgot his birthday?

Yes, he did. He said, “My friends forgot my birthday.”

Who forgot his birthday?

His friends, his friends forgot his birthday.

Did his parents forget his birthday?

No, not his parents.

Did his friends forget his birthday?

Yes, his friends, his friends forgot his birthday.

Whose birthday did they forget?

Sam's, they forgot Sam's birthday.



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Did they forget Tom's birthday?

No, not Tom.

Did they forget Sam's birthday?

Yes, they forgot Sam's birthday. He said they forgot my birthday.

What did his friends forget?

Well, Sam said they forgot his birthday, so they forgot Sam's birthday.

Tom and Melissa called Sam.

Did Tom and Melissa call Sam?

Yes, they did. Tom and Melissa called Sam.

What did Tom and Melissa do?

They called Sam. Tom and Melissa called Sam.

Did Tom and Melissa write him a letter or call him?

They called him. Tom and Melissa called him.

Who called Sam?

Tom and Melissa, Tom and Melissa called Sam.

Did Bill and Hillary call Sam?

No, not Bill and Hillary.

Did Tom and Melissa call Sam?

Yes, yes, they did. Tom and Melissa called Sam.



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Who did Tom and Melissa call?

Sam, they called Sam. Tom and Melissa called Sam.

They invited him to come to their house to watch a movie.

Did they invite him to come to their house to watch a movie?

Yes, they did. They invited him to come to their house to watch a movie.

What did they do?

Well, they invited him to come to their house to watch a movie.

Did they invite him to come to their house for dinner or for a movie?

A movie, they invited him to come to their house to watch a movie.

Who invited him to come to their house?

Tom and Melissa, Tom and Melissa invited him to come to their house.

Did Tom and Melissa invite him to come to their house?

Yes, they did. Tom and Melissa invited him to come to their house.

Who did they invite?

Sam, they invited Sam.

Did they invite Bill or Sam?

Sam, they invited Sam.

Why did they invite him to their house?

To watch a movie, they invited him to their house to watch a movie.



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

“The more the merrier,” said Tom.

What did Tom say?

Well, he said, “The more the merrier.”

Did Tom say if there are more people with him then it will be more fun?

Yes, he did. He said, “The more the merrier,” which is the same thing as saying the more people that are with him, then the more fun that it will be. The more the merrier means the more people that you are with, the more fun that you will have.

Did Tom think that it would be more fun if Sam came to his house?

Yes, he did. He said, “The more the merrier.”

Sam thought about the pros and cons of going to their house.

Did Sam think about the pros and cons of going to their house?

Yes, he did. That’s what he did. He thought about the pros and cons of going to their house.

What did Sam think about?

The pros and cons of going to their house, he thought about the pros and cons of going to their house.

Did Sam think about the pros and cons of the weather?

No, it wasn’t about the weather that he was thinking about the pros and cons.

Did Sam think about the good points and the bad points?

Yes, he did. He thought about the pros and cons, which is the same thing as saying he thought about the good points and the bad points. The pros and cons are the good points and the bad points.

Who thought about the pros and cons?

Sam, Sam thought about the pros and cons.



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Did Sam or Tom think about the pros and cons?

Sam, Sam did. Sam thought about the pros and cons.

What did Sam think about the pros and cons of?

Going to their house, he thought about the pros and cons of going to their house.

Did Sam think about the pros and cons of going to Paris?

No, he didn't think of the pros and cons of going to Paris.

Did he think about the pros and cons of going to their house?

Yes, he did. He thought about the pros and cons of going to their house.

Did he think about the good and the bad points of going to their house?

Yes, he did. He thought about the pros and cons, which means that he thought about the good and the bad points. The pros and cons are the good and the bad points of something.

It was a hassle because they lived ten miles away from his house.

Was it a hassle because they lived ten miles away from his house?

Yes, it was. It was a hassle because they lived ten miles away from his house.

What was a hassle? Was going to their house or making dinner a hassle?

Going to their house was a hassle, because they lived so far away.

Was going to their house inconvenient?

Yes, it was. Going to their house was a hassle, which is the same thing as saying going to their house was inconvenient. Something that is a hassle is something that is inconvenient.

Why was it a hassle?

Well, it was a hassle because they lived ten miles away.



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Was it inconvenient because they lived ten miles away from his house?

Yes, it was. It was a hassle because they lived ten miles away from his house, which is the same thing as saying it was inconvenient because they lived ten miles away from his house.

Who lived ten miles away from his house?

Tom and Melissa, Tom and Melissa lived ten miles away from his house.

Did Tom and Melissa live ten miles away from his house?

Yes, they did. Tom and Melissa lived ten miles away from his house.

Was it inconvenient to go to Tom and Melissa's house?

Yes, it was. It was a hassle, which means that it was inconvenient.

How far away from his house did they live?

Ten miles, they lived ten miles away from his house.

Did they live ten miles or ten meters away from his house?

Ten miles, they lived ten miles away from his house.

How many miles away from his house did they live?

Ten, they lived ten miles away from his house.

Did Tom and Melissa live ten miles away from his house?

Yes, they did. They lived ten miles away from his house.

A taxi ride to their house would cost an arm and a leg.

Would a taxi ride to their house cost an arm and a leg?

Yes, it would. A taxi ride to their house would cost an arm and a leg.



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Would a taxi ride to their house be cheap?

No, it would not be cheap. It would cost an arm and a leg.

Would a taxi ride to their house cost a lot of money?

Yes, it would. It would cost an arm and a leg, which is the same thing as saying it would cost a lot of money. An arm and a leg means a lot of money.

What would cost an arm and a leg?

A taxi ride to their house, a taxi ride to their house would cost an arm and a leg.

Would a taxi ride to their house or a loaf of bread cost an arm and a leg?

A taxi ride to their house, not an arm and a leg.

Would a taxi ride to their house be expensive?

Yes, it would. It would cost an arm and a leg, which is the same thing as saying it would cost a lot of money or that it would be expensive. When something costs an arm and a leg it means that it is expensive.

But he did not want to be alone on his birthday,

Did he want to be alone on his birthday?

No, no, he did not. He did not want to be alone on his birthday.

What did he not want?

To be alone on his birthday, he did not want to be alone on his birthday.

Who did not want to be alone on his birthday?

Sam, Sam did not want to be alone on his birthday.

When did he not want to be alone?



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

On his birthday, he did not want to be alone on his birthday.

so he decided to go.

Did he decide to go?

Yes, he did. He decided to go.

What did he decide?

To go, he decided to go.

Did he decide to stay or go?

Go, he decided to go.

Who decided to go?

Sam, Sam decided to go.

Did Tom or Sam decide to go?

Sam did. Sam decided to go.

Where did he decide to go?

To Tom and Melissa's house, he decided to go to Tom and Melissa's house.

Did he decide to go to Tom and Melissa's house or to a dance club?

Tom and Melissa's house, he decided to go to Tom and Melissa's house.

Why did he decide to go?

Well, he decided to go because he did not want to be alone on his birthday.

He was running late because he had to spin some webs.



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Was he running late?

Yes, he was. He was running late.

Was he late?

Yes, yes, he was. He was running late which is the same thing as saying he was late. Running late means to be late.

Who was running late?

Sam, Sam was running late.

Was Sam late?

Yes, he was. Sam was late, he was running late.

Did he have to spin some webs?

Yes, yes, he did. He had to spin some webs. To spin some webs here means he had to make some webs. Spiders make webs to catch flies or bugs so Sam wanted to make some webs so he could catch some flies or some bugs probably.

Who had to spin some webs?

Sam, Sam had to spin some webs.

Did Sam or Tom have to spin some webs?

Sam, Sam had to spin some webs.

Why was Sam late?

Well, he was late because he had to spin some webs.

“Better late than never,” he said.

Did he say “Better late than never”?



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did. He said, "Better late than never."

Did he say that it was better to go late than not at all?

Yes, he said, "Better late than never." Better late than never means better to go late than not to go at all.

Who said, "Better late than never"?

Sam, Sam said, "Better late than never."

Did Sam or Tom say "Better late than never"?

Sam did, Sam said, "Better late than never."

Did Sam say that it was better to go late than not to go at all?

Yes, he did. That's what he said. He said, "Better late than never," which is the same thing as saying better to go late than not to go at all. Better late than never means it's better to go late than not to go at all.

He arrived at Tom and Melissa's house but no one was home.

What did he do?

He arrived at Tom and Melissa's house.

Did he arrive at the library or at Tom and Melissa's house?

At Tom and Melissa's house, he arrived at Tom and Melissa's house.

Who arrived at Tom and Melissa's house?

Sam, Sam arrived at Tom and Melissa's house.

Did Sam or Nathan arrive at Tom and Melissa's house?

Sam did, Sam arrived at Tom and Melissa's house.

Whose house did he arrive at?



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Tom and Melissa's, he arrived at Tom and Melissa's house.

Did he arrive at his parents' house?

No, he didn't arrive at his parents' house.

Did he arrive at Tom and Melissa's house?

Yes, yes, he did. He arrived at Tom and Melissa's house.

Was anybody home?

No, there wasn't. There was no one home.

He wondered what the deal was.

Did he wonder what the deal was?

Yes, he did. He wondered what the deal was.

Did he wonder what was happening?

Yes, yes, he did. He wondered what the deal was, which is the same thing as saying he wondered what was happening.

Who wondered what the deal was?

Sam, Sam wondered what the deal was.

Did Tom or Sam wonder what the deal was?

Sam did. Sam wondered what the deal was.

Did Sam wonder what was happening?

Yes, he did. He wondered what the deal was, which is the same thing as saying he wondered what was happening. When you say what the deal was it's the same thing as saying what was happening.



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Then he saw all of his friends.

Did he see all of his friends?

Yes, he did. He saw all of his friends.

Who saw all of his friends?

Sam, Sam did. Sam saw all of his friends.

Did Tom see all of his friends?

No, it wasn't Tom.

Did Sam see all of his friends?

Yes, he did. Sam did. Sam saw all of his friends.

What did he see?

All of his friends, he saw all of his friends.

Did he see a dog or all of his friends?

All of his friends, he saw all of his friends.

“Happy Birthday Sam!” they yelled.

Who yelled “Happy Birthday Sam!”?

His friends, Sam’s friends yelled “Happy Birthday Sam!”

Did his friends wish him a happy birthday?

Yes, they did. They yelled “Happy Birthday Sam!”, so they wished him a happy birthday.

Who did they wish a happy birthday?

Sam, they wished Sam a happy birthday.



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Now Sam was happy.

Was Sam angry?

No, he wasn't angry.

Was Sam happy?

Yes, he was. Sam was happy.

Who was happy?

Sam, Sam was happy.

Was Sam or Tom happy?

Sam, Sam was happy.

It was the best birthday he had ever had.

Was it the worst birthday he had ever had?

No, it wasn't the worst birthday he had ever had.

Was it the best birthday he had ever had?

Yes, it was. It was the best birthday he had ever had.

Had he ever had a better birthday?

No, no, he had not. It was the best birthday he had ever had.

Did Sam have a good birthday?

Yes, yes, he did. He had the best birthday he had ever had.

* * * *



Music Festival Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Okay, so that is the end of our story which means we are the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation "Music Festival Part 1." Now please tell the story on your own. Remember you do not need to remember every single word in the story but you do need to use the idioms and the vocabulary words that we discussed, and those were: "the more the merrier," "pros and cons," "hassle," "an arm and a leg," "running late," "better late than never," and "what the deal was." Okay, so now try to tell the story on your own. Remember that you can listen to this mini-story lesson as many times as you need to, so if you need to listen to it a few more times, then go ahead.

Okay, that's all for now. Thanks and we'll see you next time.



Music Festival Part 1 POV Lesson

Hi, it's me Joe. I hope you're doing well today. We're going to start now the point of view stories for "Music Festival Part 1". Now in the original story from the mini-story lesson "Music Festival Part 1" the story is told as if it has already happened. So today we're gonna hear three other versions of the story. We'll hear a version where it's happening right now. We'll hear a version where it's going to happen in the future. And then we'll hear a version of the story where Sam actually tells the story. Okay, let's start by telling the story as if it is happening right now. Here we go.

* * * * *

It is Sam the spider's 30th birthday. None of his friends wish him a happy birthday.

"My friends forgot my birthday," he says.

Tom and Melissa call Sam. They invite him to come to their house to watch a movie.

"The more the merrier," says Tom.

Sam thinks about the pros and cons of going to their house. It's a hassle because they live ten miles away from his house. A taxi ride to their house costs an arm and a leg. But he does not want to be alone on his birthday, so he decides to go.

He is running late because he has to spin some webs.

"Better late than never," he says.

He arrives at Tom and Melissa's house but no one is home. He wonders what the deal is. Then he sees all of his friends.

"Happy Birthday Sam!" they yell.

Now Sam is happy. It is the best birthday he has ever had.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's the end of the story being told as if it is happening in the present, meaning as if it is happening right now. Next let's hear the story as if it is going to happen next year. So here we go.

* * * * *

Next year it is going to be Sam the spider's 30th birthday. None of his friends are going to wish him a

Music Festival Part 1 POV Lesson

happy birthday.

“My friends forgot my birthday,” he will say.

Tom and Melissa are gonna call Sam. They’ll invite him to come to their house to watch a movie.

“The more the merrier,” Tom’ll say.

Sam is going to think about the pros and cons of going to their house. It will be a hassle because they live ten miles away from his house. A taxi ride to their house will cost an arm and a leg. But he’s not going to want to be alone on his birthday, so he’ll decide to go.

He’ll be running late because he’s gonna have to spin some webs.

“Better late than never,” he’ll say.

He’s gonna arrive at Tom and Melissa’s house but no one’ll be home. He’s gonna wonder what the deal is. Then he’s gonna see all of his friends.

“Happy Birthday Sam!” they’re gonna yell.

Then Sam’s going to be happy. It’ll be the best birthday he has ever had.

* * * * *

Okay so that’s the end of this version of the story, where the events are taking place next year. Now let’s hear the story from Sam’s point of view. So in this version we are about to hear Sam is going to be telling the story himself. Here goes.

* * * * *

It’s my 30th birthday. None of my friends wish me a happy birthday.

I say, “My friends forgot my birthday.”

Tom and Melissa call me. They invite me to come to their house to watch a movie.

“The more the merrier,” says Tom.

I think about the pros and cons of going to their house. It’s a hassle because they live ten miles away



Music Festival Part 1 POV Lesson

from my house. A taxi ride to their house costs an arm and a leg. But I do not want to be alone on my birthday, so I decide to go.

I'm running late because I have to spin some webs.

"Better late than never," I say.

I arrive at Tom and Melissa's house but no one is home. I wonder what the deal is. Then I see all my friends.

"Happy Birthday Sam!" they yell.

I'm happy. It's the best birthday I've ever had.

* * * * *

Alright so we've now reached the end of the point of view stories for the lesson "Music Festival Part 1". Now it's time for you to listen to each version again. Then when you feel like you understand the stories try to tell the story yourself. Just try to do your best and don't be upset if you're having any sort of trouble. Just relax and listen to it again and you'll start to hear how each story changes. Listen until you feel comfortable telling the story on your own. Okay, that's all for now. See you next time.



Music Festival Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Hello and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Music Festival Part 1.” This is the first part of a second part conversation and lesson. In this conversation Joe and I are talking about a big music festival that we went to about a month and a half ago with many of our friends. The festival was in a really big park here in San Francisco. The name of the park is Golden Gate Park.

Okay, let's begin with the conversation.

* * * * *

I start off by saying, “So...”

And so is just a filler word here. It's not really needed.

I say, “So, what'd ya think of the festival tonight?”

What'd is short for what did and ya is short for you. So I'm saying, what did you - I'm speaking to Joe - what did you think of the festival tonight? Festival. Here it means a music concert. A festival can be different events though or different things. But here it means a music concert. Festival. An example of festival would be: I really enjoyed the music festival. My favorite band played there. Festival.

And then Joe says, “Oh...”

And oh is a filler word here. It's not really needed. You could take it out of the sentence and the sentence would still make sense.

Joe goes on to say, “I thought it was great.”

So he's saying, I thought it was very good.

And then Joe goes on to say, “I had a great time the entire day...”

Or he's saying the whole day.

“actually.”

And actually... When Joe ends the sentence with actually, that's a filler word. It's not really needed.

And then I say, “Yeah...”

Yeah is casual or informal or slang for yes.



Music Festival Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

And I go on to say, “good, good, me too.” And then Joe says, “Y’know...”

And y’know is short for you know. Y’know.

And Joe goes on to say, “I thought it was a great idea for us all to meet over at Tim’s place. I mean...”

And what Joe is saying here is, what I’m trying to say is.

And he goes on to say, “you and I were obviously running late...”

Or he’s saying, you and I were for sure running late. Running late. This means late. Running late. And we’re not really running here. Running late. It just means late. For example: I was running late to work because the train was not working. Running late.

And Joe goes on to say, “running late because he lives out in the boonies.”

Now boonies... This is an area where there is not a lot of other things like restaurants or stores. Boonies. For example: Tim lives out in the boonies. The closest store is one mile away from his house. Boonies.

And Joe goes on to say, “But, uh...”

And uh is just a filler word here. It’s not really needed.

And Joe says, “y’know, better late than never.”

Better late than never. This means it is better to do something late than not at all. Better late than never. For example: Sometimes my students come to class late. But it is better late than never.

And then I say, “Yeah, I agree. When you get a group of people together to go to an event like this...”

Or I’m saying to go to a festival like this or such as this.

“it just adds to the enjoyment...”

So I’m saying or it makes it more of a good time.

And I go on to say, “y’know, the fun. And it’s kind of like the saying goes, the more the merrier.”

Now kind of... Kind of is just a filler here. It’s not really needed. Kind of like the saying goes. Saying. A



Music Festival Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

saying is a group of words with an important meaning. So it's kind of like the saying goes, the more the merrier. So the more the merrier... This is a saying. And what it means is the more people with you, the more fun you will have. The more the merrier. For example: We went to the concert with ten people. We had a great time. I always think the more the merrier. Okay, moving on with the conversation.

Joe goes on to say, "Yeah, I totally agree."

So he's saying yeah, I completely agree.

And he goes on to say, "And, y'know..."

And is a filler word here. It's not needed.

And Joe says, "I, I think it was really important..."

Or he's saying I think it was very important.

"that we all went to the concert together in one group. Because, y'know, it was so large..."

Or he's saying it was very big.

And he goes on to say, "it would have made it really difficult to find, uh, people in our group if we would have all gone separately."

Or if we would have all gone by ourselves.

And then I say, "Right."

Right meaning yes. I'm just agreeing with Joe.

And I go on to say, "I mean a-..." And Joe says, "It actually..."

Or he's saying it really.

"it actually surprised me because, that the crowd was so large."

Crowd meaning all the people at the festival.

And Joe says, "I mean the tickets cost an arm and a leg."



Music Festival Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

An arm and a leg. What this means is the tickets cost a lot. Arm and a leg. It means costs a lot. For example: It costs an arm and a leg to buy a new car. Now it doesn't really mean that you're paying an arm and a leg for the car, obviously. It just means it costs a lot of money. An arm and a leg.

And then Joe goes on to say, "So I was kinda thinkin'..."

Kinda is short for kind of. And thinkin' is short for thinking.

And Joe says, "that maybe the crowd wouldn't be as big."

Or he's saying, I was thinking the crowd wouldn't be so big.

And I say, "Yeah, but, price doesn't usually deter you from going to hear music, right?"

So I'm saying, cost doesn't usually deter you from going to hear music or to listen to music, right? Does it? Deter. Deter means prevent or to keep from. Or to keep someone from doing something, I should say. Deter. For example: People can go to jail if they drive drunk. But this does not deter people from doing it. Does not keep people from doing it. Deter.

And then Joe says, "No, it's true. You're right." And I say, "But, um..."

Both of these are just filler words. They're not needed for what I'm about to say.

Then I go on to say, "speaking of us staying together..."

Or talking of us staying together.

"it just..."

Just is a filler word here.

"it just was making me think of the crowds. And I just didn't think that in general..."

Or I'm saying overall.

"the, the festival was laid out that well."

Or I'm saying it just didn't seem like overall the festival was laid out that well. Or it wasn't laid out very good. Now laid out... This means organized. Laid out.

Music Festival Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

And Joe says, “Well...”

And well is a filler word here.

And Joe goes on to say, “there were four different stages.”

Stages or a stage. This is something that bands play on or where actors or actresses perform plays. It's usually made out of wood and is made higher than standing or sitting crowds of people, so that the people performing on the stage can be seen from far away.

And then I say, “No, there were six.”

So I'm saying no, there were six stages, not four.

And Joe says, “Oh there were six stages?” And I say, “Yeah.” And Joe says, “S-, see we only went to two of ‘em.”

'Em here is short for them.

And I say, “I know.” And Joe says, “But, the, uh, stages were kind of far apart...”

Kind of here means sort of. Kind of. Kind of far apart. For example: I kind of like when it rains, though I like sunshine better. Kind of.

And Joe goes on to say, “and y'know what the, the most impractical, uh, design was?”

Design. This means the layout or the organization of the festival. And impractical... Impractical means not useful or helpful. Impractical. For example: I thought that some of my classes in college were impractical. Impractical.

And Joe goes on to say, “I thought that they, uh, they had very narrow walkways between the stages.”

Narrow walkways. This... What Joe is talking about here is places to walk between stages or from one stage to another stage to another stage. Places to walk between stages that did not have a lot of space.

And then I say, “Yes.”

Agreeing with Joe.



Music Festival Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

And then Joe says, “And...”

And is just a filler word here. It's not needed.

Joe goes on to say, “sometimes you had to go through a little tunnel, like a foot tunnel...”

Now tunnel... This is a place to walk that goes through or under a blocked area. So it lets you or it allows you to walk through or under a blocked area. Tunnel.

And I say, “Yep.”

Yep is just slang for yes.

And Joe says, “and, uh, there'd be thousands of people trying to go through a space that only maybe twenty people could go through at a time.”

Or he's saying only twenty people could go through at one time.

And I say, “Oh, yeah. The crowd would get completely, completely bottlenecked.”

Bottlenecked. This means unable to move because it is too crowded. Bottlenecked. For example: Everyone left at the end of the concert. There were so many people that we could not move. It was a complete bottleneck. Bottlenecked or, in this example, bottleneck.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, exactly.”

Or he's saying yeah, for sure. Definitely.

And Joe goes on to say, “So tryin'...”

Tryin' is short for trying.

“tryin' to go from one stage to the next...”

Or he's saying to go from one stage to another stage.

And he goes on to say, “was just, uh... It took a lot of time and effort.”

Or he's saying it took a lot of time and energy.

Music Festival Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

And I say, “Yeah, I agree.” And Joe says, “So that was one thing that was, y’know, just not properly planned for...”

Or he’s saying it was not very well planned for.

And he goes on to say, “on their part.”

What he means here, on their part, he’s saying, it wasn’t very well planned for by the people who planned or designed the festival. Or who organized the festival.

And I say, “No!”

So what I’m saying here is no, not at all. I’m agreeing with Joe. It wasn’t very well planned.

And I go on to say, “And then there’d be all these random trails through the woods...”

Now random means scattered. Random. And trails through the woods... These are walking paths through areas with a lot of trees. Trails through the woods.

And I go on to say, “that people were trying to forge their way through.”

Forge means to push through. Forge.

And Joe says, “Yeah, true.” And he goes on to say, “Y’know, another thing that, uh, was a real hassle...”

Or he’s saying was a big hassle. And hassle is inconvenience. Hassle. For example: Flying is a hassle because it takes so long to go through security. Hassle.

So Joe... Joe goes on to say, or he's saying it was a, a real hassle... "was tryin' to get a beer." And I say, “Oh my god, yeah.”

So I’m just showing a lot of emotion while agreeing with Joe.

And then Joe says, “I mean, the wait, the line was like...”

And like here is a filler word.

And he goes on to say, “y’know, a hundred and twenty people long.”

Music Festival Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Now a *line*. This is people standing one behind another one, waiting to buy something or to do something.

And then Joe goes on to say, “Every time you wanted to go get a beer.” And I say, “Yeah, well first you had to stand in line just for them to check your ID...”

And when I say *them*, I mean the people working at the festival. And I’m saying to check or to look at your *ID*. And *ID*... This is short for identification. So I’m speaking about people working at the festival. They would look at *ID* cards to make sure people wanting to drink beer were 21 years old or older. So they were 21 years old. They were of the legal age to drink beer. 21 years or older. So I’m saying these people were checking *IDs*.

And then I go on to say, “and get the wristband.”

Wristband. This is something that you wear around your wrist. *Wristband*. So after these people at the festival - working at the festival - would check your *ID* to make sure you were 21 years or older, then they would give you this *wristband* - this thing to wear around your wrist.

And Joe says, “Yeah, and...” And then I say, “That was bad enough.”

So what I’m saying here is, that was bad enough to stand in this long *line* to have your *ID* checked. It was bad enough without having to wait in a second *line* then to buy beer.

And Joe says, “Oh, that was an even longer *line*.”

So he’s saying there were more people in the *line* where festival workers were looking at *ID* cards for legal ages to drink beer - that *line* was longer than the *line* to buy beer.

And I say, “Yeah.”

Agreeing with him.

And then Joe says, “Yeah.” And I say, “I mean once you had the *wristband*, though, then it was battling the *lines* just to get a beer.”

Battling the lines. This means waiting in a long *line*. *Battling the lines*. For example: I hated battling the *lines* each time I wanted to buy a beer. *Battling the lines*.

And then I go on to say, “Each time.”

So I’m saying every time you wanted to buy a beer.

Music Festival Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

And then I go on to say, “Yeah, it was ridiculous.”

Ridiculous meaning, it was a big inconvenience.

And Joe says, “Yeah, and if you wanted to go get a beer while the band was playing, you basically...”

Basically is just a filler word here. It's not really needed.

So Joe is saying, “you basically had to decide...”

Or you had to choose.

“whether...”

Or if.

“you wanted to see the music...” And I say, “Yep.” And Joe goes on to say, “or you really wanted a beer.”

Really here... This is filler. It's not needed in the sentence.

And then Joe goes on to say, “Which was more important to you?”

So he's saying you had to decide: Was it more important to buy a beer or to listen to the music?

And then I say, “Right.”

Agreeing with him.

And then Joe says, “You had to make a choice, y'know?” And I say, “Yeah.” And I go on to say, “Make a list...”

Or I'm saying you had to write down.

“Make a list of pros and cons...”

Now pros and cons... These are the good and bad points. Pros and cons. Now obviously, I'm not at this music festival writing down the good and the bad points about whether I wanted to choose to listen to music or to choose to stand in a long line to buy beer. I'm just saying this, kind of joking. I'm not being serious.

Music Festival Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

This is... This could be called sarcasm. I'm joking. I'm not being serious here. An example of pros and cons: I thought about the pros and cons of going to college in the state of Florida. But I ended up going to school in Georgia. Pros and cons.

And then Joe says, "Yeah, yeah...how thirsty am I..."

Or he's saying, how much do I want to drink? How thirsty am I?

"versus..."

Or compared to.

"how much do I want to hear this music."

So he's just responding to me saying make a list of pros and cons.

And Joe goes on to say, "And the lines to the bathroom were really long also." And then I say, "Yeah, the lines in general were just a hassle. I have to agree." And then Joe says, "Yeah. I mean, I remember when we were leaving the event. It took us over an hour..."

Or he's saying it took us more than one hour.

And he goes on to say, "just to get out of the, uh, the stadium."

Now stadium... This is a large place where they have sports or music concerts. A stadium is a building where they have sports or music concerts. I don't know why Joe said stadium here. He really didn't mean stadium because this music festival was just outside in a park. It wasn't in an actual stadium. But that's what stadium means... A large place or a large building where they have sports or music concerts.

And then I say, "Oh god."

Just showing emotion.

And Joe says, "Remember, there were all these people who were startin'..."

Startin' is short for starting.

"there were all these people who were startin' to climb the fences..."

So there were all these people who were starting to go over the fences. A fence is something used to keep

Music Festival Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

people or animals from entering... and, or from coming in, from entering, from coming in.

And I say, “Yeah.” And Joe says, “instead of going through the little, uh, tunnel.”

So he’s saying, not going through the little tunnel. People were climbing over the fences. They weren’t going through the tunnel.

And then Joe goes on to say, “I mean...” And then I say, “Yes.” And Joe says, “and the, the fence, it looked like it was gonna break.”

Gonna. This is short or slang for going to. Gonna break. So the fence looked like it was gonna break or it was gonna fall down. There were so many people going over it, climbing over it.

And then Joe goes on to say, “I mean it was totally an accident waiting to happen.”

An accident waiting to happen. This means dangerous, not safe. An accident waiting to happen. For example: One of the steps to Tim’s house is broken. It is an accident waiting to happen.

And then I say, “Right. That was something I didn’t understand. Like, at Hardly Strictly Bluegrass I never, I didn’t remember seeing fences like that.”

Hardly Strictly Bluegrass. This is a music festival in San Francisco. It’s the name of the music festival. Hardly Strictly Bluegrass.

And Joe says, “Well, y’know, Hardly Strictly Bluegrass, that festival is free...”

Free. Meaning it doesn’t cost any money.

And Joe goes on to say, “So, y’know, I don’t think...” And then I say, “Oh yeah...”

Like I’m remembering, oh yeah, it’s free. It doesn’t cost money.

And then Joe says, “they had to put up barriers to, uh...”

So he’s saying, the workers of the festival... I don’t think they had to put up barriers. Now barriers... This is something used to keep people or animals from entering, like fences. Barriers. Something used to keep people or animals from entering or from coming in. So Joe is saying because this other music festival, Hardly Strictly Bluegrass, is free, they don’t put up fences for that because people don’t pay. They can just go in anywhere into the park. But the music festival that we’re speaking of that we’d just... that we had just gone to, you did have to pay for that. So they had fences up everywhere. They had these barriers. These things



Music Festival Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

to keep people from coming in who had not paid.

And then I say, “that’s, okay...”

So I’m saying this because it’s making sense to me now why there were fences for this festival and not fences at the Hardly Strictly Bluegrass festival.

And then Joe says, “to entry.”

So he’s saying, y’know, they didn’t have to put up these barriers to entry. Entry meaning the area or areas where you would go into the festival.

And then I say, “that makes sense.”

Or that... I’m saying that’s understandable.

And I go on to say, “I was wondering what the deal was with the fences.”

So I’m saying, I was wondering or I was asking myself what the deal was. What the deal was. This means what was happening. What the deal was. For example: I went to the restaurant at 5:00 p.m. but it was closed. I was wondering what the deal was. Then someone told me that the restaurant closes early on Sundays. What the deal was.

And Joe says, “Yeah. S-...”

Starts to say something.

And I say, “Okay.” And then Joe says, “So that’s why that’s, y’know, that’s why you never have that problem at that festival.” And I say, “Right.”

Like okay. Yeah. I agree with you.

* * * *

Okay, this is the end of the conversation for “Music Festival Part 1.” And it’s the end, also, of the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Music Festival Part 1.” So, as always, go back if you need to and listen, making sure that you’ve got a basic understanding of the vocabulary before you move on to the mini-story. And then after the mini-story, go on to “Music Festival Part 2.”

Alright, see you next time. Bye bye.

Music Festival Part 2 Conversation

Joe: So I guess I need not ask who your favorite, uh, band was during the evening.

Radiohead: an English music band

Kristin: **Radiohead!**

Joe: Yeah, I figured it...

Kristin: Of course.

the main attraction:
here it means the band that everyone wanted to see the most

Joe: ...would be them. They were **the main attraction**.

Beck: the name of an American musician

Kristin: Yeah, I mean, I, y'know, I'm a fan of **Beck**, too. But I think that I was just so... Beck playing at a different stage than Radiohead and playing right before Radiohead. I was just so focused on getting back to the stage to get a good spot to see Radiohead. I just couldn't fully, uh, **get into** Beck. And, yeah, it, it's just, he, the music just wasn't **resonating with me** tonight, unfortunately. 'Coz that's the first time I've ever seen Beck **live**.

get into: enjoy

resonating with me: it was nothing special to me

Joe: Yeah, y'see, for me, it was totally different because I really, really enjoyed Beck's performance and, uh, y'know...

live: in concert

Kristin: Y-, you, you missed half of it, goin' to the bathroom, what are you talkin' about?

nature calls: have to go to the bathroom

Joe: Well, y'know, sometime **nature calls**.

a good vibe: a good feeling

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: But, uh, y'know, I, I also, I wasn't familiar with Radiohead's music at all. I really enjoyed it. And, uh, y'know, I, I would definitely go see them again. But I, I'm more familiar with Beck's music so maybe that helped me to enjoy it. Plus, I, I just like that style, Beck's style of music, more than Radiohead's, y'know? But I really did enjoy the Radiohead music. I liked the fact that, uh, the crowd was really into them.

Y'know, like you looked out in the crowd and you saw everyone smiling. Y'know, everyone seemed happy. And like some people were dancing. And, uh, a lot of people were singing their songs. You could tell that they, they were very familiar with the music. So, uh, y'know, it was just **a good vibe**. I, and I really enjoyed that part of it.

off the hook: excellent

Kristin: Oh, they were **off the hook**. I mean they sounded just as if I had put a CD in the CD player.

Music Festival Part 2 Conversation

Joe: Yeah, well, y'know ...

Kristin: And, that's...

Joe: ... *practice makes perfect*.

Kristin: Yeah, it's difficult to find that live. But, I will say, too, well, *let me back up*. I'm, I'm really glad I *took it easy* last night, just so I could save some energy up for tonight 'coz *I danced my ass off*. And I thought that I would.

Joe: Yeah.

Kristin: And I did, I had so much fun. But, um, going back to what you were saying about the crowd being really into them... They were, I agree. But I would say that more people didn't dance than those that did, which kind of surprised me. It's so different compared to the music we usually go to see.

Joe: Yeah, I mean I totally agree. When we usually go see music, everybody is dancing. And, uh, you're right in that there were maybe - I wouldn't even say half the crowd was dancing.

Kristin: Yeah. I guess there were more people singing, as you experienced. [laugh] Some people standing next to you...

Joe: Yeah, there was a guy who was standing next to me who was singing. I mean he was, it was like he was *screaming at the top of his lungs*. I just could not, uh, hear the music at points. I had to move away from him at one point.

Kristin: [laugh] That's so funny.

Joe: And then there were some *teeny boppers* who were over near me who were just like screaming. They weren't even singing the music. They were just yelling. Y'know, so...

Kristin: Oh, just like out of excitement, I mean...

Joe: Yeah, they were so excited...

Kristin: ...yeah.

Music Festival Part 2 Conversation

more power to 'em: that is good for them

Joe: ...yeah, they were just like yelling. But, you know what, they were having a good time. And the way I look at it, this was their favorite band probably. So, y'know, **more power to 'em.** They were having a great time and I was happy to see that.

Kristin: Well, without a doubt Radiohead is one of my favorite bands. So I was happy to see them live. I hadn't seen them live since I was in college and didn't even appreciate 'em then.

Joe: Yeah, well, y'know, uh, maybe next year they'll play the festival again.

Kristin: Yeah, if they have one. Wasn't this the first year they had this festival?

Joe: Yeah, that's true.

Kristin: Yeah, and this was the first time ever someone played **at dark** in Golden Gate Park.

Joe: Yeah, that's true. I hope that, uh, we didn't **wear out our welcome**, as fans.

Kristin: How so?

Joe: Well, y'know, people...

Kristin: Leaving trash and stuff behind?

Joe: No, I think more so when people were leaving the concert. Since **Golden Gate Park borders**, uh, y'know...

Kristin: Oh.

Joe: ...a bunch of neighborhoods, people were walking out of the concert at the end of the night and making a lot of noise and...

Kristin: Right.

Joe: ...I think that, and it was getting late at night. So I think that it, uh, might have woken up a lot of the people who live in the area. So I just hope that the people weren't, uh, y'know, too much of a **burden** on the neighborhood.

burden: something that is difficult; something that is a problem

Music Festival Part 2 Conversation

suck: not good

cut out: to stop working because there is a problem

asleep at the wheel: being careless about what you are supposed to be doing; not doing what you are supposed to be doing

Kristin: Yeah, y'know it did kind of **suck** that the sound **cut out** twice, but I guess that's just...

Joe: Yeah, what was up with that? I mean the guy who was at the soundboard must have been **asleep at the wheel**.

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: That's like so unprofessional.

Kristin: Yeah, that was, that was really disappointing.

Joe: Well, at least when the music was playing, uh, it sounded good and the band performed well.

Kristin: Yeah.



Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Hello and welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Music Festival Part 2.”

Okay, I’m going to start with the story now.

* * * * *

Carlos the cat is in love with Katy the mouse. He never asked her for a date because he did not know how to dance. So he asked his sister Patti to teach him to dance. He danced his ass off every day. He knew that practice makes perfect.

Then Saturday at dark he went to a dance club. He knew that Katy would be at the club. He took it easy Friday night so he would not be too tired to dance.

At first he could not get into the music. It just did not resonate with him. Then he saw Katy, so he asked her to dance.

“Maybe later,” said Katy.

Carlos was upset. But he decided to dance by himself.

Katy saw him dancing.

“You are a great dancer,” she said to Carlos.

Katy then asked him to dance. Carlos was so happy. He and Katy danced together all night.

Now they are in love and next year they are getting married.

* * * * *

Okay, so that’s our story. Now, as always, I will read the story again and I will ask questions when I read it this time. You can answer the questions out loud after I ask them and if you need a little more time, feel free to pause your iPod or your computer, whatever you’re playing the lesson on, and then play it again after you’ve had enough time to answer the question. Of course, if you just feel like listening, well that’s fine as well.

Okay, here we go.

* * * * *



Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Carlos the cat is in love with Katy the mouse.

Is Carlos the cat in love with Katy the mouse?

Yes, he is. Carlos the cat is in love with Katy the mouse.

Who is in love with Katy the mouse?

Carlos, Carlos is in love with Katy the mouse.

Is Carlos or Kenny in love with Katy?

Katy, Carlos is in love with Katy.

Who is Carlos in love with?

Katy, Carlos is in love with Katy.

Is Carlos in love with Katy or Stephanie?

Katy, Carlos is in love with Katy.

So what type of animal is Carlos?

A cat, Carlos is a cat.

Is Carlos a cat or a dog?

A cat, Carlos is a cat.

What type of animal is Katy?

A mouse, Katy is a mouse.

Is Katy a cat or a mouse?

A mouse, Katy is a mouse.

Is Carlos a mouse?



Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

No, Carlos isn't a mouse.

Is Katy a mouse?

Yes, she is. Katy is a mouse.

He never asked her for a date

Did he ever ask her for a date?

No, no, he did not. He never asked her for a date.

Who never asked her for a date?

Carlos, Carlos never asked her for a date.

Did Carlos ask her for a date one time?

No, Carlos never asked her for a date so he did not ask her for a date one time. He never asked her for a date.

Who did he never ask for a date?

Katy, he never asked Katy for a date.

because he did not know how to dance.

Did he know how to dance?

No, no, he didn't. He did not know how to dance.

What didn't he know how to do?

Dance, he did not know how to dance.

Who didn't know how to dance?

Carlos, Carlos did not know how to dance.



Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Why didn't Carlos ask Katy for a date?

Well, it was because he did not know how to dance.

So he asked his sister Patti to teach him to dance.

Did he ask his sister Patti to teach him to dance?

Yes, he did. He asked his sister Patti to teach him to dance.

What did he do?

Well, he asked his sister Patti to teach him to dance.

Who asked his sister?

Carlos, Carlos asked his sister.

Did Will Smith or Carlos ask his sister?

Carlos did. Carlos asked his sister.

What did he ask his sister?

To teach him to dance, he asked his sister to teach him to dance.

Did he ask his sister for money or to teach him to dance?

To teach him to dance, he asked his sister to teach him to dance.

What is Carlos' sister's name?

It's Patti, he asked his sister Patti to teach him to dance.

Is his sister named Patti or Katy?

Patti, his sister's name is Patti.



Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

What did he ask his sister to teach him?

To dance, he asked his sister to teach him to dance.

He danced his ass off every day.

Did he dance his ass off every day?

Yes, he did. He danced his ass off every day.

What did he do?

Well, he danced his ass off.

Did he run or dance his ass off?

Dance his ass off, he danced his ass off.

Did he dance a lot?

Yes, he did. He danced his ass off, which is the same thing as saying he danced a lot. To dance your ass off means to dance a lot.

Who danced his ass off?

Carlos, Carlos danced his ass off.

Did Carlos dance a lot?

Yes, he did. Carlos danced his ass off, which is the same thing as saying, Carlos danced a lot.

When did he dance?

Every day, he danced every day.

Did he only dance on Tuesdays?

No, he danced more than that.



Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did he dance his ass off every day?

Yes, he did. Every day, he danced his ass off every day.

Did he dance a lot every day?

Yes, he did. He danced a lot every day. He danced his ass off every day, these are the same things.

He knew that practice makes perfect.

Did he know that practice makes perfect?

Yes, he did. He knew that practice makes perfect.

Did he know that the more that he practices dancing then the better he will become at dancing?

Yes, yes, he did. That's what practice makes perfect means. It means the more you do something or the more you practice doing something, the better that you will become at it.

Who knew that practice makes perfect?

Carlos, Carlos did. Carlos knew that practice makes perfect.

Did Carlos know that he would become a better dancer if he practiced?

Yes, he did. He said that he knew that practice makes perfect, which is the same thing as saying he will become a better dancer if he practiced a lot.

Then Saturday at dark he went to a dance club.

Did he go to a dance club Saturday at dark?

Yes, he did. He went to a dance club Saturday at dark.

What did he do Saturday at dark?

He went to a dance club.



Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did he go to a dance club Saturday night?

Yes, yes, he did. He went there Saturday at dark, which is the same thing as saying he went there Saturday night. At dark means night.

Who went to a dance club?

Carlos, Carlos went to a dance club.

Did Patti or Carlos go to a dance club?

Carlos, Carlos went to a dance club.

What day did he go to a dance club?

Saturday, he went to a dance club on Saturday.

When did he go to the dance club?

At dark, Saturday at dark.

Did he go to a dance club Saturday afternoon?

No, he didn't go Saturday afternoon.

Did he go to a dance club Saturday night?

Yes, he did. He went to the dance club Saturday at dark, which is the same thing as saying he went to the dance club Saturday night.

He knew that Katy would be at the club.

Did he know that Katy would be at the club?

Yes, he did. He knew that Katy would be at the club.

What did he know?

Well, that Katy would be at the club. He knew that Katy would be at the club.



Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Who knew that Katy would be at the club?

Carlos, Carlos knew that Katy would be at the club.

Did Carlos or Charlie know that Katy would be at the club?

Carlos, Carlos knew that Katy would be at the club.

Who did he know would be at the club, Katy or Patti?

Katy, he knew that Katy would be at the club.

Where would Katy be?

At the club, Katy would be at the club.

Would Katy be at the library or at the dance club?

The dance club, Katy would be at the dance club.

He took it easy Friday night so he would not be too tired to dance.

Did he take it easy Friday night?

Yes, he did. He took it easy Friday night.

What did he do Friday night? Did he take it easy?

Yes, he did. He took it easy.

Did he relax on Friday night?

Yes, yes, he did. He took it easy, which is the same thing as saying he relaxed on Friday night. To take it easy means to relax.

Who took it easy on Friday night?

Carlos, Carlos took it easy Friday night.

Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did Katy take it easy Friday night?

No, it wasn't Katy.

Did Carlos take it easy Friday night?

Yes, yes, he did. Carlos took it easy Friday night.

Did Carlos relax on Friday night?

Yes, he did. He took it easy on Friday night, which is the same thing as saying he relaxed on Friday night.

When did Carlos take it easy?

On Friday, he took it easy Friday night.

Did Carlos relax on Friday?

Yes, he did. He took it easy on Friday, which is the same thing as saying he relaxed on Friday. To take it easy means to relax.

Why did he take it easy on Friday night?

Well, he took it easy on Friday night so he would not be too tired to dance on Saturday night.

At first he could not get into the music.

Was he able to get into the music at first?

No, no, he was not. At first he could not get into the music.

Was he able to enjoy the music at first?

No, no, he was unable to enjoy the music at first. He could not get into the music at first, which is the same thing as saying he was not able to enjoy the music at first.

Who could not get into the music?



Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Carlos, Carlos could not get into the music.

Did Carlos get into the music at first?

No, he didn't. He could not get into the music at first.

Did Carlos enjoy the music at first?

No, no, he did not. He was not able to get into the music, which means he did not enjoy the music at first. To get into means to enjoy.

It just did not resonate with him.

Did it resonate with him?

No, no, it did not. It did not resonate with him.

Was it special to him?

No, it was not. It did not resonate with him, which is the same thing as saying it was not special with him. To resonate with him means to be special to him.

What did not resonate with him?

The music, the music did not resonate with him.

Was he impressed with the music?

No, no, he was not. It did not resonate with him, which means it was not special to him or did not impress him.

Then he saw Katy,

Did he see Katy?

Yes, he did. He saw Katy.

What did he do?



Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Well, he saw Katy.

Who saw Katy?

Carlos, Carlos saw Katy.

Did Carlos or Charlie see Katy?

Carlos, Carlos saw Katy.

Who did he see?

Katy, he saw Katy.

Did he see Mary or Katy?

Katy, he saw Katy.

so he asked her to dance.

Did he ask her to dance?

Yes, he did. He asked her to dance.

What did he do?

He asked her to dance.

Did he ask her to dance or leave the club?

He asked her to dance.

Who asked her to dance?

Carlos, Carlos asked her to dance.

Who did Carlos ask to dance?

Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Katy, he asked Katy to dance.

Did he ask his mother to dance?

No, he didn't ask his mother to dance.

“Maybe later,” said Katy.

Did Katy say “Maybe later”?

Yes, she did. Katy said, “Maybe later.”

Did Katy want to dance with Carlos now?

No, no, she did not. When he asked her to dance she said, “Maybe later,” so she did not want to dance with him now.

Did Katy want to dance with him later?

Well, we're not sure. She said maybe, so maybe she wants to dance with him later.

Carlos was upset.

Was Carlos upset?

Yes, he was. Carlos was upset.

Was Carlos happy?

No, he was not happy. He was upset.

Who was upset?

Carlos was, Carlos was upset.

Was Carlos or Katy upset?

Carlos, Carlos was upset.



Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

But he decided to dance by himself.

Did he decide to dance by himself?

Yes, he did. He decided to dance by himself.

What did he decide to do?

Dance by himself, he decided to dance by himself.

Did he decide to play football or dance by himself?

Dance by himself, he decided to dance by himself.

Who decided to dance by himself?

Carlos did, Carlos decided to dance by himself.

Did Katy decide to dance by herself?

No, it wasn't Katy.

Did Carlos decide to dance with someone else?

No, he did not. Carlos decided to dance by himself.

Katy saw him dancing.

Did Katy see him dancing?

Yes, she did. Katy saw him dancing.

What did Katy do?

Well, she saw him dancing.

Who saw him dancing?

Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Katy did. Katy saw him dancing.

Did Patti or Katy see him dancing?

Katy, Katy saw him dancing.

Who did she see dancing?

Carlos, she saw Carlos dancing.

What did Katy see? Did she see her brother running or Carlos dancing?

Carlos dancing, she saw Carlos dancing.

“You are a great dancer,” she said to Carlos.

Did she tell Carlos that he is a great dancer?

Yes, she did. She said to Carlos “You are a great dancer.”

Who told Carlos he was a great dancer?

Katy, Katy told Carlos he is a great dancer.

Did Katy or Patti tell him that he is a great dancer?

Katy, Katy told him that he is a great dancer.

Did Katy think that Carlos was a bad dancer?

No, she didn’t think that he was a bad dancer. She thought he was a great dancer.

Katy then asked him to dance.

Did Katy ask him to dance?

Yes, she did. She asked him to dance.



Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

What did Katy do?

She asked him to dance.

Did she sit on the floor or ask him to dance?

Asked him to dance, she asked him to dance.

Who did she ask to dance?

Carlos, she asked Carlos to dance.

Did she ask Will Smith or Carlos to dance?

Carlos, she asked Carlos to dance. She didn't ask Will Smith to dance.

Carlos was so happy.

Was Carlos happy?

Yes, he was. Carlos was so happy, he was really happy.

Was Carlos sad?

No, Carlos wasn't sad. He was happy.

Who was happy?

Carlos, Carlos was happy.

Why was he happy?

Well, he was happy because Katy asked him to dance.

He and Katy danced together all night.

Did he and Katy dance together all night?



Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *they did*. *He and Katy danced together all night.*

What did they do?

Well, they danced together all night.

Who danced together all night?

Katy and Carlos, Katy and Carlos danced together all night.

Did Patti and Kenny dance together?

No, it wasn't Patti and Kenny.

Did Carlos and Katy dance together?

Yes, they did. Carlos and Katy danced together.

How long did they dance together?

All night, they danced together all night.

Did they only dance together for a short time?

No, they danced together all night. They didn't just dance together for a short time, they danced together all night.

Now they are in love and next year they are getting married.

Are they in love now?

Yes, they are. Now they are in love.

Who is in love now?

Carlos and Katy, Carlos and Katy are in love now.

Does Katy love Carlos?

Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *she* does. *They are in love so she loves Carlos.*

Does Carlos love Katy?

Yes, *he* does. *They are in love so Carlos loves Katy.*

Are they going to get married?

Yes, *yes, they are.* *Next year they are getting married.*

Who is going to get married?

Katy and Carlos, Katy and Carlos are going to get married.

Are Bill and Hillary or Katy and Carlos going to get married?

Katy and Carlos, Katy and Carlos are getting married.

When are they getting married?

Next year, they are getting married next year.

Are they getting married this year?

No, they are not getting married this year.

Are they getting married next year?

Yes, they are. They are getting married next year.

Are Katy and Carlos getting married next year?

Yes, they are. Katy and Carlos are getting married next year.

* * * * *

Okay, so we have reached the end of our story which means that we are at the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation "Music Festival Part 2." Now it is your turn to tell the story by yourself and remember that you do not need to use every single word in the story but you should use the idioms that we discussed. And



Music Festival Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

those were: “danced his ass off,” “practice makes perfect,” “at dark,” “took it easy,” “get into,” and “resonate with him.” Okay, so please tell the story now using these idioms. Remember that you can listen to this mini-story lesson as many times as you need to.

Okay, that's all for now. Good luck and we'll see you next time.



Music Festival Part 2 POV Lesson

Hi there. I hope you're doing well today. We're about to start the point of view stories for "Music Festival Part 2". So we'll be hearing the same story that we heard in the mini-story lesson "Music Festival Part 2" but we're going to change the point of view. Okay, let's get started.

* * * * *

Carlos the cat is in love with Katy the mouse. He never asks her for a date because he does not know how to dance. So he asks his sister Patti to teach him to dance. He dances his ass off every day. He knows that practice makes perfect.

Then Saturday at dark he goes to a dance club. He knows that Katy will be at the club. He takes it easy Friday night so he will not be too tired to dance.

At first he can not get into the music. It just does not resonate with him. Then he sees Katy, so he asks her to dance.

"Maybe later," says Katy.

Carlos is upset. But he decides to dance by himself.

Katy sees him dancing.

"You're a great dancer," she says to Carlos.

Katy then asks him to dance. Carlos is so happy. He and Katy dance together all night.

Now they are in love and next year they are getting married.

* * * * *

Okay, so as you can see we just heard the story told as if it is happening right now or in the present. Now let's tell the story as if it is happening in the future. So we will think of the story happening in two months. Okay, here we go.

* * * * *

In two months Carlos the cat will be in love with Katy the mouse. He'll never ask her for a date because he won't know how to dance. So he's gonna ask his sister Patti to teach him to dance. He's gonna dance his ass off every day. He'll know that practice makes perfect.

Music Festival Part 2 POV Lesson

Then one Saturday at dark he's gonna go to a dance club. He's going to know that Katy will be at the club. He'll take it easy Friday night so he won't be too tired to dance.

At first he won't be able to get into the music. It just won't resonate with him. Then he'll see Katy, so he'll ask her to dance.

"Maybe later," Katy'll say.

Carlos is going to be upset. But he'll decide to dance by himself.

Katy'll see him dancing.

"You're a great dancer," she'll say to Carlos.

Katy is then going to ask him to dance. Carlos'll be so happy. He and Katy'll dance together all night.

Then they'll be in love and the next year they'll get married.

* * * * *

Alright that's the end of this version of the story, the version in which the story is in the future, where we talk about events that are going to happen or events that will happen, in this case, events that'll happen two months from now. Next, let's hear the story from Carlos' point of view. It will be as if Carlos is actually telling the story. So here we go.

* * * * *

I was in love with Katy the mouse. I never asked her for a date because I didn't know how to dance. So I asked my sister Patti to teach me to dance. I danced my ass off every day. I knew that practice makes perfect.

Then Saturday at dark I went to a dance club. I knew that Katy would be at the club. I took it easy Friday night so I would not be too tired to dance.

At first I couldn't get into the music. It just didn't resonate with me. Then I saw Katy, so I asked her to dance.

"Maybe later," said Katy.

I was upset. But I decided to dance by myself.



Music Festival Part 2 POV Lesson

Katy saw me dancing.

“You’re a great dancer,” she said to me.

Katy then asked me to dance. I was so happy. Katy and I danced together all night.

Now we are in love and next year we’re getting married.

* * * * *

Okay, great. We’ve now finished the point of view stories for the lesson “Music Festival Part 2”. Now you know it’s time to go back and listen to these stories again. Listen to ‘em as many times as you need to until you feel like you know them very well. Then try to tell the stories on your own. You can tell ‘em to yourself. You can tell ‘em to a friend, just whatever helps you most to learn them. And then when you’re done, you can move on to the next lesson. Okay, see ya next time.



Music Festival Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Hi and welcome back. This is the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Music Festival Part 2.” So this is the second part of the conversation “Music Festival,” the second part of the vocabulary lesson. In this conversation, Joe and I are continuing to talk about the music festival that we went to in Golden Gate Park here in San Francisco. So we’re just talking about our feelings and our thoughts about the music festival.

Okay, let’s begin with the conversation.

* * * * *

Joe says, “So...”

And so is just a filler word. It’s not really needed here.

Joe goes on to say, “I guess I need not ask...”

Or he’s saying, I don’t think I have to ask because I think I know already.

And Joe goes on to say, “who your favorite, uh, band was during the evening.”

When he says uh... That’s just a filler word. It’s not needed at all. Moving along in the conversation.

Then I say, “Radiohead!!”

Now Radiohead... This is an English music band. It’s the name of the English music band, or the band from England.

And then Joe says, “Yeah...”

And yeah is casual or slang or informal for yes.

And Joe says, “I figured it...”

And what he’s saying is, I thought it.

And then I say, “Of course.”

Of course meaning for sure.

And Joe goes on to say, “would be them.”



Music Festival Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

So Joe is saying, yeah, I thought it would be them. I thought it would be Radiohead that was your favorite band.

And then Joe goes on to say, “They were the main attraction.”

The main attraction. Here main attraction means the band that everyone wanted to see the most. The main attraction.

And then I say, “Yeah, I mean...”

And I mean... This is filler. It's not really needed in the sentence.

And I go on to say, “I, y’know...”

Y’know is short for you know.

And then I say, “I’m a fan of Beck, too.”

Or I’m saying I like Beck also. Now Beck... This is the name of an American musician.

And I go on to say, “But...”

And but is a filler word. It's not really needed here.

And I say, “I think that I was just so...”

Just so... These are both filler words. They are not really needed in the sentence.

And I go on to say, “Beck playing at a different stage than Radiohead...”

Now stage, if you’ll remember, I explained stage in Music Festival, Part 1. In this conversation a stage is something that a band plays on.

And I go on to say, “and playing right before Radiohead.”

Or I’m saying the hour before Radiohead.

And I go on to say, “I was just so focused on...”

Or I was thinking a lot about.



Music Festival Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

“getting back to the stage to get a good spot...”

Or a *good place*.

“to see Radiohead. I just couldn’t fully...”

Or *I’m saying I just couldn’t completely*.

“uh, get into Beck.”

Now get into... This means to enjoy. *Get into.* For example: *I was really able to get into the music. I loved the sound of the guitar. Get into.*

And I go on to say, “And...”

And and is a filler word here. *It’s not really needed.*

And I say, “yeah, it, it’s just, he, the music just wasn’t resonating with me tonight...”

Resonating with me. This means *it was nothing special to me.* *Resonating with me.* For example: *The sound of the guitar really resonates with me. Resonating with me. Or, in this example, resonates with me.*

And then I go on to say, “unfortunately.”

So what I’m meaning is I wish I had been enjoying the music. Unfortunately I was not.

And then I say, ““Coz...”

And ‘coz is short for because.

““Coz that’s the first time I’ve ever seen Beck live.”

Live. This means *in concert.* *Live.* For example: *I love to see live music. I prefer going to see a concert rather than listening to a CD. Live.*

And Joe says, “Yeah, y’see, for me...”

And y’see... This is short for *you see.*



Music Festival Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Joe goes on to say, “it was totally...”

Or he’s saying it was completely.

“different because I really, really...”

Or he’s saying I very much.

“enjoyed Beck’s performance...”

Or Beck’s show. Or Beck’s concert.

And Joe goes on to say, “and, uh, y’know...” And I say, “Y-, you, you missed half of it, goin’ to the bathroom...”

Goin’. This is short for going. Going... or goin’.

And I go on to say, “what are you talkin’ about?”

Talkin’. This is short for talking.

And Joe says, “Well...”

And well is just a filler word. It’s not really needed here.

Joe goes on to say, “y’know, sometime nature calls.”

Now Joe, I don’t really know why, but he should have said sometimes nature calls. But he just, for whatever reason, he just cut it shorter and said sometime. It doesn’t really make a lot of sense. But normally you would hear sometimes nature calls. Nature calls. This means have to go to the bathroom. Nature calls. For example: I did not want to leave the movie but nature was calling. I think I drank too much water before the movie started. Nature calls, or in this example, nature calling or nature was calling.

And then I just laugh. And then Joe says, “But, uh, y’know, I, I also, I wasn’t familiar with...”

Or he’s saying I didn’t know.

“Radiohead’s music at all. I really enjoyed it. And, uh, y’know, I, I would definitely go see them again.”



Music Festival Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Or he's saying, I would definitely go see them play again.

And Joe says, "But I, I'm more familiar with Beck's music so maybe that helped me to enjoy it. Plus..."

Or Joe is saying also.

"I, I just like that style..."

Or he's saying that kind.

Joe goes on to say, "Beck's style of music..."

Or he's saying Beck's kind of music.

"more than Radiohead's, y'know? But I really did enjoy the Radiohead music. I liked the fact that, uh, the crowd was really into them."

Now when he says crowd... He's speaking about all the people watching and listening to Radiohead.

And then Joe goes on to say, "Y'know, like..."

And like is just a filler word. It's not really needed here.

Joe goes on to say, "you looked out in the crowd and you saw everyone smiling. Y'know, everyone seemed happy. And like some people were dancing. And, uh, a lot of people were singing their songs. You could tell..."

Or he's saying you could see.

"that they, they were very familiar with the music. So, uh, y'know, it was just a good vibe."

A good vibe. This means a good feeling. A good vibe. For example: I liked the concert. It had a good vibe to it. A good vibe.

And then Joe says, "I, and I really enjoyed that part of it."

Or he's saying I really enjoyed that about the concert, that it had a good vibe. It had a good feeling.

And I say, "Oh..."

Music Festival Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

And oh is a filler word. It's not really needed.

And I go on to say, “they were off the hook.”

Now off the hook... This means excellent, very good. Off the hook. An example of off the hook would be: The food in Thailand is off the hook. I enjoyed it a lot.

And I go on to say, “I mean they sounded just as if I had put a CD in the CD player.” And Joe says, “Yeah, well, y’know ...” And I say, “And, that’s... And then Joe finishes by saying, “practice makes perfect.”

Practice makes perfect. This means if you do something enough times you become good at it. Practice makes perfect. For example: When I first started teaching 12 years ago, I was not sure that I was doing a good job. But now I feel that I am a better teacher. Practice makes perfect.

And then I say, “Yeah, it’s difficult to find that live.”

Or I’m saying, it’s not easy to find a perfect sound like on a CD.

And then I go on to say, “But, I will say, too, well, let me back up.”

Let me back up. This means let me start over again. Let me back up.

And I go on to say, “I’m, I’m really glad...”

Or I’m saying I’m really happy.

“I took it easy last night...”

Took it easy. This means that I relaxed. Took it easy. For example: Joe and I took it easy on Saturday. We went to the park and read a book. Took it easy, or just relaxed.

And then, moving along in the conversation, I go on to say, “just so I could save energy up for tonight ‘coz I danced my ass off.”

I danced my ass off. This means I danced a lot. I danced my ass off. For example: I danced my ass off at the concert last night so my legs were sore when I woke up. I danced my ass off.

And then I say, “And I thought that I would.” And then Joe says, “Yeah.” And I say, “And I did, I had



Music Festival Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

so much fun. But, um..."

And um is just a filler word here. It's not really needed.

And I go on to say, "going back to..."

Or what I'm saying is, speaking about.

"what you were saying about the crowd being really into them... They were, I agree. But I would say that more people didn't dance than those that did, which kind of surprised me."

And kind of here is really just filler. It's not needed.

And I go on to say, "It's so different compared to the music we usually go to see." And Joe says, "Yeah, I mean I totally agree. When we usually go see music, everybody is dancing. And, uh, you're right..."

Or he's saying you're correct.

"in that there were maybe - I wouldn't even say half the crowd was dancing." And I say, "Yeah. I guess there were more people singing, as you experienced."

Or I'm saying as you heard.

And I laugh and then I say, "Some people standing next to you..." And Joe says, "Yeah, there was a guy who was standing next to me who was singing. I mean he was, it was like he was screaming at the top of his lungs."

Screaming at the top of his lungs. This means yelling loudly. Screaming at the top of his lungs. For example: My neighbor's house was on fire. I could hear her screaming at the top of her lungs. Screaming at the top of his lungs. Or in this example, screaming at the top of her lungs.

And then Joe says, "I could..." Or he said, "I just could not, uh, hear the music at points."

He's saying I couldn't hear the music at times.

And then he says, "I had to move away from him at one point." And then I laugh and say, "That's so funny." And Joe says, "And then there were some teeny boppers..."

Teeny boppers. These are teenagers, or people who are between ages 13 and 19. Teeny boppers. For

Music Festival Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

example: I saw a group of teeny boppers at the ice cream store. They looked like they had just finished school for the day. Teeny boppers.

And Joe goes on to say, “who were over near me”

Or he's saying who were standing near me.

“who were just like screaming. They weren't even singing the music. They were just yelling. Y'know, so.” And I say, “Oh, just like out of excitement, I mean.”

And when I say just like out of excitement, I'm... What I'm saying is they were maybe screaming or yelling because they were so happy.

And Joe says, “Yeah, they were so excited.” And I say, “Yeah.” And then Joe says, “Yeah, they were just like yelling.” And Joe goes on to say, “But, you know what, they were having a good time. And the way I look at it, this was their favorite band probably.”

So what Joe is saying is I think this was their favorite band probably. The way I look at it. I think this was.

And then Joe goes on to say, “So, y'know, more power to 'em.”

Now 'em... This is short for them. More power to 'em or more power to them. That just means this is good for them. Or I'm sorry, that is good for them. More power to 'em. That is good for them.

And then Joe says, “They were having a great time and I was happy to see that.” And I say, “Well, without a doubt...”

Or I'm saying for sure or definitely. Without a doubt.

“Radiohead is one of my favorite bands. So I was happy to see them live. I hadn't seen them live since I was in college and didn't even appreciate 'em then.”

Appreciate means like. So I saw them in college but I didn't even like them, didn't appreciate them then.

Joe says, “Yeah, well, y'know, uh, maybe next year they'll play the festival again.”

Now if you'll remember from Music Festival, Part 1, I said what a festival is. In this conversation a festival is where a lot of bands are playing music.

And I say, “Yeah, if they have one. Wasn't this the first year they had this festival?” And Joe says,



Music Festival Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

"Yeah, that's true." And then I say, "Yeah, and this was the first time ever someone played at dark in Golden Gate Park."

At dark. This means *at night*. *At dark.* An example of *at dark* is: *The park closes at dark but then it opens again in the morning.* *At dark.*

And then Joe says, "Yeah, that's true. I hope that, uh, we didn't wear out our welcome, as fans."

Wear out our welcome. This means to make someone uncomfortable by staying too long or doing something too much. *Wear out our welcome.* For example: When I visited Colorado I slept at my friend Julie's house. I slept there for four nights. I did not want to stay another night because I did not want to wear out my welcome.

And then I say, "How so?"

So I'm asking Joe how did we wear out our welcome? Or the people at the festival.

And Joe says, "Well, y'know, people." And then I say, "Leaving trash and stuff behind?"

So I'm asking leaving garbage behind in the park?

And Joe says, "No, I think more so when people were leaving the concert. Since Golden Gate Park borders, uh, y'know..."

Golden Gate Park. This is the name of a park in San Francisco. This is where the music festival was. And borders... Borders means, is next to. Borders. For example: Thailand borders Cambodia. Borders.

And then I say, "Oh." And Joe says, "a bunch of neighborhoods..."

Or he's saying a lot of neighborhoods. Neighborhoods are areas where people live.

And Joe goes on to say, "people were walking out of the concert at the end of the night..."

End of the night meaning when the festival was finished.

And Joe says, "and making a lot of noise and..." And then I say, "Right."

And I'm just agreeing with Joe.

And then Joe says, "I think that, and it was getting late at night. So I think that it, uh, might have



Music Festival Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

woken up a lot of the people who live in the area. So I just hope that the people..."

And here he's talking about the people from the festival.

And he goes on to say, "weren't, uh, y'know, too much of a burden on the neighborhood."

Burden. This means something that is difficult, something that is a problem. Burden. For example: My grandmother always says that she feels like she is a burden on my mother because she cannot cook anymore. Burden.

And then I say, "Yeah, y'know it did kind of suck..."

Or I'm saying it did sort of suck. Suck means not good. Suck. For example: It sucks when you want to go to the beach but it is raining. Suck.

And I go on to say, "that the sound cut out twice..."

Or the sound cut out two times. Cut out means to stop working because there is a problem. Cut out.

And I say, "but I guess that's just."

Or I'm saying but I think that's just.

And Joe says, "Yeah, what was up with that?"

So he's saying yeah, why did that happen? Why did the sound stop two times?

And then Joe says, "I mean the guy..."

Or he's saying the man.

"who was at the soundboard must have been asleep at the wheel."

So Joe is saying the man who was making sure that the sound was okay, he must have been asleep at the wheel. Asleep at the wheel means being careless about what you are supposed to be doing. Or not doing what you are supposed to be doing or what you should be doing. For example: The cook burned the cake. He must have been asleep at the wheel.

And then I just laugh. And Joe says, "That's like so unprofessional."

Music Festival Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

So he's saying, the sound man did know what... did not seem to know what he was doing. That's so unprofessional.

And then I say, “Yeah, that was, that was really disappointing.”

Or I'm saying, that's not what I was wanting to happen.

And Joe says, “Well, at least...”

Or he's saying, it's a good thing that.

“when the music was playing, uh, it sounded good and the band performed well.”

Or he's saying, the band played well.

And I say, “Yeah.”

Agreeing with him.

* * * *

So now this is the end of the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Music Festival Part 2.” As always, if you need to, listen to this a few times but making sure you do it in a relaxed way. You don't want to get stressed or worried when listening. And you want to make sure that you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary. And then when you feel ready, go to the mini-story.

Okay, see you next time. Goodbye.

Assisted Living Conversation

Kristin: I just got off the phone with my mom.

Joe: Oh, how's she doin'?

stressed out: very worried

Kristin: Oh, she's a little bit **stressed out**. We, um, we just had a long conversation about my grandmother.

Joe: Oh, how's your grandmother doin'?

so-so: not good and not bad

Kristin: Eh, **so-so**. My...

Joe: Yeah?

have their hands full: very busy

Kristin: ...mom and my uncle have their hands, really **have their hands full** right now.

Joe: Yeah.

every once in a while: sometimes

Kristin: Yeah, y'know, they s-, a while back they started to notice things **every once in a while** with my grandmother. For example her starting to drive more **erratically**. And they got concerned about that. And went to her doctor and explained everything to her doctor. And the doctor agreed, "Yeah, she shouldn't be driving." So the next time my grandmother went in my uncle and mom both went and her d-, my grandmother's doctor confronted her and said, "Y'know, I just think it's time to give up the keys and not drive anymore."

Joe: Wow, I guess that was...

bound to happen: very likely to happen

Kristin: And understand-, understandably my grandmother was not happy but she did it.

sooner or later: at some time in the future

Joe: Yeah, I mean, y'know, when you get to that age I guess that's **bound to happen sooner or later**.

quite a few: many
passed away: died

Kristin: Yeah, but now, um, here lately there have been **quite a few** more things concerning my mom and uncle. So, y'know, ever since my grandfather **passed away** a few years ago, uh, my grandmother's just **kind of gone downhill** since. They'd been living in Florida and my mom and uncle decided to move my grandmother up just to be closer to them. There's no other family in Florida. She had friends there but no family. And I think it helped her a bit but, um... she's just, **in general**... I think,

Assisted Living Conversation

since he passed away, she's just been going downhill. For example, she has emphysema...

Joe: Uh-huh.

Kristin: ...but, um, just I'd say in the past year she's been on her oxygen tank **a good bit**, a lot, and, and was even hospitalized. So it's a... it's been a problem in the past several years. But it's got... definitely gotten worse over the past year. Uh, something else is... she's on **a bunch** of different medications, unfortunately. And she's just been **mixing them up** lately, which is not good. I think it just makes her **cloudy** and confused then, in general.

Joe: Yeah, I mean that can be really dangerous. I mean she could take a, uh, the wrong **dosage** of a medication. And it... it could be **lethal**.

Kristin: Yeah. Yeah, exactly. So...yeah, they're just... they're thinking more and more like I said, **assisted living**. Y'know, I'd say about a month or so ago they had, uh, sat my grandmother down and given her an **ultimatum**. Y'know, when... when they were noticing a few things here and there, like with her driving, they decided, "Okay it's time to do something." So they sat her down and, and said, "We're givin' you three choices. You can go into assisted living. Or you can have someone start coming in **regularly** to sit with you, make sure you're taking your medications, the correct ones at the correct times. Or you can go and live with, um, Susan"... my mom. And...my grandmother decided she didn't want to live with my parents. She didn't want to **put them out**. And she definitely didn't want to go to assisted living. So she chose to have a sitter. She didn't like that either, but she realized she had no choice. Well, she had to choose one of the three choices. So she's been having a woman coming in like three days a week. And since that - this woman has been coming in then - my mom and uncle have realized, "Oh, she needs someone actually, kinda seven days a week, not just three." And they talked to the agency. Uh, this particular woman couldn't come in seven days a week. So the agency actually found someone else. I think... I think she's only... this new person's only coming in two days. So that leaves still two days out of the week that my grandmother doesn't have anyone coming in. But my mom and uncle are even thinking it's to the point that she kinda needs someone **twenty-four seven**. Well, not when she's sleeping, I shouldn't say, but, when... definitely when she's awake.

Joe: Yeah, I mean that... this sounds like a really difficult situation. I really **feel for** your mom.

a good bit: a lot

a bunch: a lot

mixing them up:
confusing them

cloudy: not clear

dosage: amount

lethal: deadly

assisted living: a place
for older people to live
when they need extra
help

ultimatum: a last request
to do something before
action is taken

regularly: usually or
often

put them out: to
inconvenience

twenty-four seven: 24
hours a day seven days a
week

feel for: feel sorry for



Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

Hello and welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Assisted Living.”

Okay, let's get started with the story now.

* * * *

Jackie has her hands full. She works as a lawyer for twelve hours every day. She needs a vacation because she is really stressed out.

Jackie's cousin Mary lives in Thailand. She told Jackie to visit her in Thailand.

“I don't want to put you out,” said Jackie.

“I want you to visit,” said Mary.

So Jackie flew to Thailand.

Jackie really loved Thailand. Mary had told her that she would really like it so she knew it was bound to happen.

One day Jackie was at a café and she met a bunch of dolphins. The dolphins were playing music in the café. They needed a new singer so they asked Jackie to join the band. Jackie was so happy. She really enjoyed singing in the band so she decided to stay in Thailand.

Every once in a while Jackie thinks about being a lawyer, but she never wants to do it again.

* * * *

Okay, so that brings us to the end of our story. Now, as always, I will read the story again and I will ask questions as I read it this time. You can answer the questions out loud after I ask them if you wish and if you need a little more time, you can always press pause on your iPod or your computer or whatever you're playing the lesson on. And then you can press play again when you feel like you've had enough time to answer the question. And, of course, if you just want to listen, that's fine as well. You don't need to answer the questions out loud.

Okay, let's get started.

* * * *

Jackie has her hands full.



Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

Does Jackie have her hands full?

Yes, she does. Jackie has her hands full.

Is Jackie very busy?

Yes, yes, she is. Jackie has her hands full, which means that Jackie is very busy. When you have your hands full it means you're very busy.

Who has her hands full?

Jackie, Jackie has her hands full.

Does Jackie or Mary have her hands full?

Jackie does. Jackie has her hands full.

Is Jackie really busy?

Yes, she is. Jackie has her hands full, which is the same thing as saying, Jackie is really busy.

She works as a lawyer for twelve hours every day.

Does she work as a lawyer for twelve hours every day?

Yes, she does. She works as a lawyer for twelve hours every day.

What does she do?

Well, she works as a lawyer. She is a lawyer.

Does she go to school or work as a lawyer?

Work as a lawyer, she works as a lawyer.

Who works as a lawyer?

Jackie, Jackie works as a lawyer.



Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

Okay so what does Jackie work as? Does she work as a lawyer or as a teacher?

A lawyer, Jackie works as a lawyer.

How often does Jackie work?

Every day, she works every day.

Does she work only on Thursdays?

No, she works a lot more than just on Thursdays.

Does she work every day?

Yes, she does. She works every day.

How many hours does she work each day?

Twelve, she works twelve hours every day.

Does she work eight or twelve hours?

Twelve, she works twelve hours every day.

She needs a vacation because she is really stressed out.

Does she need a vacation?

Yes, she does. She really needs a vacation. She works more than twelve hours every day so I'm sure she really does need a vacation.

What does she need?

A vacation, she needs a vacation.

Does she need to work more?

No, she definitely does not need to work more if she is already working twelve hours every day.



Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

Who needs a vacation?

Jackie does. Jackie needs a vacation.

Does Jackie's brother need a vacation?

No, it's not her brother.

Does Jackie need a vacation?

Yes, yes, she does. Jackie needs a vacation.

Why does she need a vacation?

Well, she needs a vacation because she's stressed out. And she's probably stressed out because she works all the time, or at least she works twelve hours every day.

Is she really stressed out?

Yes, she is. She's really stressed out.

Is she really relaxed?

No, no, she's certainly not relaxed. She's stressed out. When you're stressed out that means you are not relaxed.

Is she really worried?

Yes, we could say that. When you're stressed out you say that you're worried or you're unable to relax so if she's stressed out then yes, she's worried and she's not relaxed.

Jackie's cousin Mary lives in Thailand.

Does Jackie's cousin Mary live in Thailand?

Yes, she does. Jackie's cousin Mary lives in Thailand.

Whose cousin Mary lives in Thailand?



Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

Jackie's, Jackie's cousin Mary lives in Thailand.

Does Bill's cousin live in Thailand?

No, Bill's cousin doesn't live in Thailand. Jackie's cousin lives in Thailand.

Who lives in Thailand?

Jackie's cousin Mary, Jackie's cousin Mary lives in Thailand.

Does Jackie's brother or cousin live in Thailand?

Her cousin, her cousin Mary lives in Thailand.

What is Jackie's cousin's name?

It's Mary. Jackie's cousin Mary.

Is her cousin's name Sara or Mary?

It's Mary. Her cousin's name is Mary.

Where does Mary live?

In Thailand, Mary lives in Thailand.

Does she live in Cambodia or Thailand?

She lives in Thailand. Mary lives in Thailand.

She told Jackie to visit her in Thailand.

Did she tell Jackie to visit her in Thailand?

Yes, she did. She told Jackie to visit her in Thailand.

What did she do?



Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

Well, she told Jackie to visit her in Thailand.

Who told Jackie to visit her?

Mary did, her cousin Mary told her to visit.

Did Mary or Beth tell Jackie to visit her?

Mary did, Mary told Jackie to visit her.

What did she tell Jackie?

To visit her in Thailand, she told Jackie to visit her in Thailand.

Did she tell her to cook dinner?

No, she didn't tell her to cook dinner?

Did she tell her to visit her in Thailand?

Yes, she did. She told her to visit her in Thailand.

Where did she tell her to visit her?

In Thailand, she told her to visit her in Thailand.

Did she tell her to visit her in Cambodia?

No, not Cambodia, Mary doesn't live in Cambodia.

Did she tell her to visit her in Thailand?

Yes, she did. She told her to visit her in Thailand.

“I don’t want to put you out,” said Jackie.

Did Jackie say that she did not want to put her out?

Yes, she did. She said, “I don’t want to put you out.”



Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

Did Jackie say that she did not want to inconvenience her?

Yes, yes, she did. She said, "I don't want to put you out," which is the same thing as saying I don't want to inconvenience you. To put someone out means to inconvenience them.

Who didn't want to put her out?

Jackie, Jackie's the one who said it. She said she didn't want to put her out.

Who did Jackie not want to put out?

Well, she didn't want to put out her cousin Mary.

Did Jackie want to put out Mary?

No, no, she didn't. She did not want to put out Mary.

Did Jackie want to inconvenience Mary?

No, she said she did not want to put her out, which is the same thing as saying she did not want to inconvenience her. To put someone out means to inconvenience them. So she did not want to inconvenience her.

“I want you to visit,” said Mary.

Did Mary want her to visit?

Yes, she did. She told her that she wanted her to visit.

What did Mary want?

Well, she wanted her to visit. That's what she wanted.

Who did she want to visit?

Jackie, she wanted her cousin Jackie to visit.

Did she want Tom Cruise to visit?



Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

No, she didn't tell Tom Cruise that she wanted him to visit. She told Jackie she wanted her to visit.

Did she want her cousin Jackie to visit?

Yes, she did. She told Jackie she wanted her to visit.

So Jackie flew to Thailand.

Did Jackie fly to Thailand?

Yes, she did. Jackie flew to Thailand.

What did Jackie do?

Well, she flew. She flew to Thailand.

Did she ride a motorcycle or fly?

She flew. She flew to Thailand.

Who flew to Thailand?

Jackie, Jackie flew to Thailand.

Did Jackie's brother fly to Thailand?

No, it wasn't her brother who flew to Thailand.

Did Jackie fly to Thailand?

Yes, she did. Jackie flew to Thailand.

Where did she fly to?

Thailand, she flew to Thailand.

Did she fly to France?



Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

No, she didn't fly to France.

Did she fly to Thailand?

Yes, she did. She flew to Thailand.

Jackie really loved Thailand.

Did Jackie really love Thailand?

Yes, yes, she did. She really loved Thailand.

Did Jackie hate Thailand?

No, she didn't hate it. She really loved it. She really loved Thailand.

Did Jackie love Thailand a lot?

Yes, yes, she did. She really loved it, which means she loved it a lot.

Who really loved Thailand?

Jackie, Jackie really loved Thailand.

Did Jackie or Sara really love Thailand?

Jackie, Jackie really loved Thailand.

Mary had told her that she would really like it

Did Mary tell her she would really like it?

Yes, she did. That's what Mary told her. Mary told her she would really like it.

What had Mary told her?

That she would really like it. She told her that she would really like it.

Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

Had Mary told her that she would really like Thailand?

Yes, yes, that's true. She told her that she would really like it meaning that she would really like Thailand.

Who told her?

Mary did. Mary told her she would really like Thailand.

Did Mary or Patti tell her?

Mary did. Mary told her.

Who did Mary tell?

Well, she told Jackie.

Did Mary tell Jackie?

Yes, she did. She told Jackie.

Did Mary tell Jackie to drink some coffee?

No, she didn't tell her to drink some coffee.

Did Mary tell Jackie that she would really like it?

Yes, she did. She told her she would really like it.

Did Mary tell Jackie that she would really like Thailand?

Yes, yes, that's what she meant when she said she would really like it. She meant she would really like Thailand.

so she knew it was bound to happen.

Did she know it was bound to happen?

Yes, she did. She knew it was bound to happen.

Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

Did she think that it probably would not happen?

No, no, that's not true. She knew it was bound to happen, not that it probably would not happen.

Did she know that it was very likely to happen?

Yes, she did. She knew it was bound to happen, which is the same thing as saying she knew it was very likely to happen. If something is bound to happen, then that means it's very likely to happen.

Who knew it was bound to happen?

Jackie, Jackie knew that it was bound to happen.

Did Jackie know that it was very likely to happen?

Yes, she did. Jackie knew it was bound to happen, which is the same thing as saying, Jackie knew that it was very likely to happen. Bound to happen means very likely to happen.

What was bound to happen?

Well, Jackie really loving Thailand was bound to happen.

Why did Jackie know it was bound to happen?

Well, she knew it was bound to happen or she knew that it was very likely to happen because Mary had told her that she would really like Thailand so she knew that falling in love with Thailand or really loving Thailand was bound to happen.

One day Jackie was at a café

Was Jackie at a café?

Yes, she was. Jackie was at a café.

Who was at a café?

Jackie, Jackie was at a café.

Was Sam or Jackie at a café?

Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

Jackie was. It wasn't Sam.

Where was Jackie?

At a café, she was at a café.

Was she at a café or a library?

At a café, Jackie was at a café.

And she met a bunch of dolphins.

Did she meet a bunch of dolphins?

Yes, she did. She met a bunch of dolphins.

What did she do?

Well, she met a bunch of dolphins.

Did she meet a bunch of gorillas or dolphins?

Dolphins, she met a bunch of dolphins, not a bunch of gorillas.

Did she meet just one dolphin?

No, she met a bunch of dolphins, not just one.

Did she meet a lot of dolphins?

Yes, she did. She met a bunch of dolphins, which is the same thing as saying she met a lot of dolphins. A bunch means a lot.

Where did she meet a bunch of dolphins?

At a café, she met them at a café.

Did she meet a lot of dolphins at a café?



Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *she did*. *She met a lot of dolphins at a café.*

The dolphins were playing music in the café.

Were the dolphins playing music at the café?

*Yes, *they were*. *The dolphins were playing music at the café.**

What were the dolphins doing?

*Well, *they were playing music.**

Were they playing football or music?

*They were playing music, *they weren't playing football.**

Who was playing music?

*The dolphins, *the dolphins were playing music.**

Was Jackie's cousin playing music?

*No, *her cousin wasn't playing music.**

Were the dolphins playing music?

*Yes, yes, *they were*. *The dolphins were playing music.**

Where were they playing music?

*At the café, *they were playing music at the café.**

Were they playing music at the beach?

*No, *they weren't playing music at the beach.**

Were they playing music at the café?

Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, that's where they were playing music. They were playing music at the café.

They needed a new singer

Did they need a new singer?

Yes, they did. They needed a new singer.

What did they need?

A singer, they needed a singer.

Did they need a guitar player or a singer?

A singer, they needed a singer.

Who needed a singer?

The dolphins, the dolphins needed a singer for their music group.

Did the sharks need a new singer?

No, it wasn't the sharks.

Did the dolphins need a new singer?

Yes, they did. The dolphins needed a new singer.

So they asked Jackie to join the band.

Did they ask Jackie to join the band?

Yes, they did. They asked Jackie to join the band.

Did they ask Jackie to join the music group?

Yes, they asked her to join the band, which is the same thing as saying they asked her to join the music group. So yes, they asked her to join the music group.



Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

What did they ask Jackie?

To join the band, they asked her to join the band.

Did they ask her to cook dinner?

No, they didn't ask her to cook dinner.

Did they ask her to join the band?

Yes, they did. They asked her to join the band.

Who asked Jackie to join the band?

The dolphins, the dolphins asked Jackie to join the band.

What did they ask her to join?

The band, they asked her to join the band, or they asked her to join the music group, it's the same thing as the band.

Did they ask her to join the Army or the band?

They didn't ask her to join the Army. They asked her to join the band. They wanted her to sing in the band.

Jackie was so happy.

Who was so happy?

Jackie, Jackie was so happy.

Was Mary or Jackie so happy?

Jackie, Jackie was so happy.

Was Jackie happy?

Yes, she was. She was so happy.



Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

Was Jackie upset?

No she wasn't upset.

Was Jackie just a little happy?

No, she was more than just a little happy.

Was Jackie really happy?

Yes, she was. She was so happy, she was really happy, she was very happy.

She really enjoyed singing in the band

Did she really enjoy singing in the band?

Yes, she did. She really enjoyed singing in the band.

Who really enjoyed singing in the band?

Jackie did. Jackie really enjoyed singing in the band.

Did Mary really enjoy singing in the band?

No, it wasn't Mary.

Did Jackie really enjoy singing in the band?

Yes, she did. Jackie really enjoyed singing in the band.

What did she really enjoy?

Well, she enjoyed singing in the band.

Did she really enjoy watching television or singing in the band?

Singing in the band, Jackie really enjoyed singing in the band.

Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

So she decided to stay in Thailand.

Did she decide to stay in Thailand?

Yes, she did. She decided to stay in Thailand.

What did she decide to do?

To stay in Thailand, she decided to stay in Thailand.

Did she decide to go back to her job as a lawyer?

No, she didn't. She decided to stay in Thailand.

Who decided to stay in Thailand?

Jackie, Jackie decided to stay in Thailand.

Did Sara or Jackie decide to stay in Thailand?

Jackie did. Jackie decided to stay in Thailand.

Where did she decide to stay?

In Thailand, she decided to stay in Thailand.

Did she decide to stay in France?

No, she didn't decide to stay in France.

Did she decide to stay in Thailand?

Yes, she did. She decided to stay in Thailand.

Every once in a while Jackie thinks about being a lawyer,

Does Jackie think about being a lawyer every once in a while?

Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, she does. Every once in a while Jackie thinks about being a lawyer.

How often does Jackie think about being a lawyer?

Every once in a while, she thinks about it every once in a while.

Does she think about it all the time?

No, she thinks it about it every once in a while. All the time does not mean every once in a while.

Does she think about it sometimes?

Yes, yes, that's true. She thinks about it every once in a while, which is the same thing as saying she thinks about it sometimes. Every once in a while is the same thing as sometimes.

Who thinks about being a lawyer?

Jackie does. Jackie thinks about being a lawyer.

Does Mary or Jackie think about being a lawyer?

Jackie does. Jackie thinks about being a lawyer.

What does Jackie think about?

Being a lawyer, she thinks about being a lawyer.

Does she think about school or being a lawyer?

Being a lawyer, she thinks about being a lawyer.

Does Jackie every once in a while think about being a lawyer?

Yes, she does. Every once in a while Jackie thinks about being a lawyer.

Does Jackie sometimes think about being a lawyer?

Yes, yes, that's true. Every once in a while she thinks about being a lawyer, which means sometimes she thinks about being a lawyer. Every once in a while means sometimes.



Assisted Living Mini-Story Lesson

but she never wants to do it again.

Does she ever want to do it again?

No, no, she does not. She never wants to do it again.

Who never wants to do it again?

Jackie, Jackie never wants to do it again?

What does she not want to do?

Be a lawyer, she never wants to be a lawyer again.

Does Jackie ever want to be a lawyer again?

No, no, she doesn't. She never wants to be a lawyer again.

* * * * *

Okay, so we have reached the end of our story, which means we are the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation "Assisted Living." Now please try to tell the story on your own and be sure to use the idioms that we used in the story. Those idioms were: "has her hands full," "stressed out," "put you out," "bound to happen," "a bunch," and "every once in a while." Now remember, you can listen to this mini-story lesson as many times as you need to, so please listen to it again whenever you need to.

Okay, so that's all. Thanks and we'll see you next time.



Assisted Living POV Lesson

Hi everyone. Welcome to the point of view stories for "Assisted Living". I hope that you're in a great mood and that you're excited to get started. Today we're going to hear the same story from the "Assisted Living" mini-story told in four different points of view. So we'll hear four different versions of this story. Okay, here we go.

* * * * *

Jackie has her hands full. She works as a lawyer for twelve hours every day. She needs a vacation because she's really stressed out.

Jackie's cousin Mary lives in Thailand. She tells Jackie to visit her in Thailand.

"I don't want to put you out," Jackie says.

"I want you to visit," Mary says.

So Jackie flies to Thailand.

Jackie really loves Thailand. Mary told her that she would really like it so she knows it was bound to happen.

One day Jackie is at a café and she meets a bunch of dolphins. The dolphins are playing music at the café. They need a new singer so they ask Jackie to join the band. Jackie is so happy. She really enjoys singing in the band so she decides to stay in Thailand.

Every once in a while Jackie thinks about being a lawyer, but she never wants to do it again.

* * * * *

Okay, so as you can see we just heard the story told as if it is happening right now or, as we say, happening in the present. Now let's tell the story as if it's happened, say five years ago. Okay, so here we go.

* * * * *

Five years ago, Jackie had her hands full. She worked as a lawyer for twelve hours every day. She needed a vacation because she was really stressed out.

Jackie's cousin Mary lived in Thailand. She told Jackie to visit her in Thailand.

"I don't want to put you out," said Jackie.



Assisted Living POV Lesson

"I want you to visit," said Mary.

So Jackie flew to Thailand.

Jackie really loved Thailand. Mary had told her that she would really like it so she knew it was bound to happen.

One day Jackie was at a café and she met a bunch of dolphins. The dolphins were playing music in the café. They needed a new singer so they asked Jackie to join the band. Jackie was so happy. She really enjoyed singing in the band so she decided to stay in Thailand.

Every once in a while Jackie thought about being a lawyer, but she never wanted to do it again.

* * * * *

Okay, so as you can see we just heard the story told as if it happened five years ago. Now let's tell the story as if it's happening in the future. So we'll think of the story two years from now.

* * * * *

In two years Jackie will have her hands full. She'll be working as a lawyer for twelve hours every day. She's gonna need a vacation because she'll really be stressed out.

Jackie's cousin Mary will be living in Thailand. She's gonna tell Jackie to visit her in Thailand.

"I don't want to put you out," Jackie'll say.

"I want you to visit," Mary'll say.

So Jackie'll fly to Thailand.

Jackie's really gonna love Thailand. Mary told her that she would really like it so she's going to know that it was bound to happen.

One day Jackie's gonna be at a café and she'll meet a bunch of dolphins. The dolphins will be playing music at the café. They're gonna need a new singer so they'll ask Jackie to join the band. Jackie'll be so happy. She'll really enjoy singing in the band so she'll decide to stay in Thailand.

Every once in a while Jackie will think about being a lawyer, but she'll never want to do it again.



Assisted Living POV Lesson

* * * * *

Alright now let's hear the story from Jackie's point of view. So Jackie's actually going to tell the story to us now.

* * * * *

I had my hands full. I worked as a lawyer for twelve hours every day. I needed a vacation because I was really stressed out.

My cousin Mary lived in Thailand. She told me to visit her in Thailand.

"I don't want to put you out," I said.

"I want you to visit," said Mary.

So I flew to Thailand.

I really loved Thailand. Mary had told me that I would really like it so I knew it was bound to happen.

One day I was at a café and I met a bunch of dolphins. The dolphins were playing music in the café. They needed a new singer so they asked me to join the band. I was so happy. I really enjoyed singing in the band so I decided to stay in Thailand.

Every once in a while I thought about being a lawyer, but I never wanted to do it again.

* * * * *

Alright so that's the end of the point of view stories for the lesson "Assisted Living". Now we've heard four different versions of this story so I'm sure you can hear the differences. Okay, now try listening to each version again and when you feel like you know one of the versions well then try to tell that story on your own. Then do this for each of the other stories until you can tell them each on your own. It's important to learn these stories very well so don't go too fast. Okay, that's all. See ya next time.



Assisted Living Vocabulary Lesson

Hello and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Assisted Living.” Now in this conversation I’m speaking with Joe about my grandmother. My grandmother is 88 years old. Actually, in about three months she will be 89 years old. And I’m just talking about problems that she’s starting to have from getting older.

Okay, let’s begin with the conversation.

* * * * *

I start off the conversation by saying, “I just got off the phone with my mom.”

Now when I say just... I’m talking about a short time before. So a short time before I got off the phone... phone being short for telephone. So a short time before I got off the telephone with my mom.

And Joe says, “Oh...”

And oh is just a filler word. It’s not really needed in this sentence.

And Joe goes on to say, “how’s she doin’?”

How’s. This is short for how is. And doin’ is short for doing. Now you won’t really see doin’ especially, and probably not how’s, in written English. But you will definitely hear them in conversational English.

And then I say, “Oh, she’s a little bit stressed out.”

Stressed out. This means very worried. Stressed out. For example: I used to get stressed out before taking a science test. Stressed out.

And I go on to say, “We, um...”

And um is just a filler word. It’s not really needed.

And then I say, “we just had a long conversation about my grandmother.” And then Joe says, “Oh, how’s your grandmother doin’?” And I say, “Eh...”

And eh, is just... It’s not really needed here either. It’s just filler.

And then I say, “so-so.”

Now so-so... This means not good and not bad. So-so. An example of so-so would be: I asked Joe what he



Assisted Living Vocabulary Lesson

thought of the movie. He said it was just so-so. So not good and not bad. So-so.

And then I start to say, “My...” And Joe says, “Yeah?”

And yeah here means, really?

And then I go ahead and finish... I say, “mom and my uncle have their hands, really have their hands full right now.”

Or I’m saying they really have their hands full at this time. Have their hands full. This means very busy. Have their hands full. For example: My friends Chuck and Patti have four children. They really have their hands full.

And then Joe says, “Yeah.”

And yeah here is just slang or casual or informal for yes. And so Joe is just agreeing with me.

And then I say, “Yeah, y’know...”

And y’know is short for you know.

And I go on to say, “they s-, a while back...”

Or I’m saying some time in the past.

“they started to notice...”

Or I’m saying they started to see.

“things every once in a while with my grandmother.”

Every once in a while. This means sometimes. Every once in a while. For example: Every once in a while I like to drink wine. Every once in a while.

And then I go on to say, “For example her starting to drive more erratically.”

And erratically... This means unpredictably. Erratically.

And I go on to say, “And they got concerned...”

Assisted Living Vocabulary Lesson

Or I'm saying they got worried.

"about that. And went to her doctor and explained..."

Or they told.

"everything to her doctor. And the doctor agreed, 'Yeah, she shouldn't be driving. So...'"

And so is just a filler word here. It's not really needed.

And I go on to say, "the next time my grandmother went in..."

And what I'm saying here is, the next time my grandmother went in for a doctor's appointment.

And I go on to say, "my uncle and my mom both went and her d-, my grandmother's doctor confronted her..."

Confronted meaning talked to her.

And then I say, "and said, 'Y'know, I just think..."

Or I really think.

"it's time to give up the keys and not drive anymore."

Now when the doctor is telling my grandmother that she needs to give up the keys what she's saying is that my grandmother should give her car keys to someone, such as my mom or my uncle, so that my grandmother would not try to drive whenever my uncle or my mother were not around her, were not with her.

And then Joe says, "Wow..."

And he's just showing emotion here.

And he goes on to say, "I guess that was..."

Or he's saying, I think maybe that was.

And I say, "And understand-, understandably..."

And, at the beginning of this sentence, is just filler. It's not really needed. And when I'm saying

Assisted Living Vocabulary Lesson

understandably... I'm saying not surprisingly.

And I go on to say, “my grandmother was not happy but she did it.”

So I'm saying she gave her car keys to... I think it was to my mother.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, I mean...”

Or he's saying, what I'm trying to say.

“y'know, when you get to that age...”

Or he's saying, when you get as old as your grandmother.

And Joe says, “I guess that's bound to happen sooner or later.”

Bound to happen. This means very likely to happen. Bound to happen. For example: I always knew that I wanted to live in another country aside from America. So when I moved to Korea I would have said that I believed that it was bound to happen. Bound to happen. And then when I say sooner or later... Sooner or later. An example of sooner or later would be that I always knew that I wanted to live in another country aside from America. So when I moved to Korea I would have said I knew that I would live in another country sooner or later.

Okay, moving on in the conversation, then I say, “Yeah, but now...”

And but here is just a filler word. It's not really needed.

And I go on to say, “um, here lately...”

Or I'm saying, about the past few weeks... few meaning more than two.

And I go on to say, “there have been quite a few more things concerning my mom and uncle.”

Now quite a few... This means many. Quite a few. For example: There were quite a few people at the party last night. Quite a few.

And I go on to say, “So, y'know, ever since...”

Or I'm saying after.



Assisted Living Vocabulary Lesson

“my grandfather passed away a few years ago...”

Now passed away... This means died. Passed away. For example: Joe’s grandfather passed away when he was 88 years old. Passed away.

And I go on to say, “uh...”

And uh is just a filler word here. It’s not really needed.

And then I say, “my grandmother’s just...”

And just is a filler word.

And I go on to say, “just kind of gone downhill since.”

Kind of. This means sort of. Sort of gone downhill since. An example of kind of would be: I kind of felt like I should have studied more for the test. Kind of. And when I say gone downhill... Gone downhill means to have become much worse. Gone downhill. For example: I used to really like the food at Mike’s Restaurant. But ever since they hired a new cook the food has gone downhill. Gone downhill.

And then I say, “They’d been living in Florida...”

Now Florida... This is a state in the southeast of America.

And I go on to say, “and my mom and uncle decided to move my grandmother up just to be closer to them.”

Now when I say that my mom and uncle decided - they made the choice - to move my grandmother up... Up meaning to Georgia where they both live. And that’s the state that I’m from. Georgia is a state also in the southeast of America. It’s north of Florida. That’s why I say they decided to move her up... up from Florida to Georgia just to be closer to them.

And then I go on to say, “There’s no other family in Florida. She had friends there but no family. And I think it helped her a bit...”

Or I’m saying I think it helped her a little.

“but, um... she’s just, in general... I think, since he passed away, she’s just been going downhill.”

In general. In general means overall. In general. For example: I liked a couple of parts in the movie. But in



Assisted Living Vocabulary Lesson

general I did not think it was very good. In general.

And then I go on to say in the conversation “For example, she has emphysema...”

Emphysema. This is a disease caused from smoking cigarettes for many, many years.

And then Joe says, “Uh-huh.”

So he’s just agreeing with me, or he’s showing me that he’s listening to me.

And I say, “but, um, just I’d say in the past year she’s been on her oxygen tank a good bit...”

Now oxygen tank... My grandmother has problems breathing because of the emphysema. So sometimes she has to breathe in and out from a machine. That’s what the oxygen tank is that I’m talking about. And when I say she’s been on her oxygen tank a good bit... A good bit means a lot. A good bit. An example of a good bit would be: I did a good bit of studying before my test. A good bit.

And then I say in the conversation “a lot, and, and was even hospitalized.”

So hospitalized... I’m saying that my grandmother had to stay in a hospital for a few days.

And then I go on to say, “So it’s a... it’s been a problem in the past several years.”

Or I’m saying, in the past many years.

“But it’s got... definitely...”

Or I’m saying for sure.

“gotten worse over the past year.”

Or I’m saying, it’s gotten really bad during the past year.

And I say, “Uh, something else is... she’s on a bunch of different medications, unfortunately.”

Now medications... These are just medicines, different medicines. And unfortunately... I say unfortunately because I wish that my grandmother didn’t need to take a lot of medicine. Going back, when I say she’s on a bunch of different medications, or she’s on a bunch of different medicines... A bunch means a lot. A bunch. For example: I bought a bunch of bananas at the store. A bunch.



Assisted Living Vocabulary Lesson

And then I go on in the conversation to say, “And she’s just been mixing them up lately...”

Mixing them up. This means confusing them. Mixing them up. For example: My cousin has so many children that I mix up their names. Mixing them up, or in this example, mix up.

And then I go on in the conversation to say, “which is not good.”

So I’m saying it’s not good she’s mixing up, or she’s confusing, all her different medicines or medications.

And then I say, “I think it just makes her cloudy and confused then, in general.”

Now when I say, it makes her cloudy... Cloudy means not clear or not thinking clearly. Cloudy. For example: Jimmy drank too much last night so he was a little cloudy this morning. Cloudy.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, I mean that can be really dangerous.”

Or he’s saying, that can be very dangerous.

And then Joe goes on to say, “I mean she could take a, uh, the wrong dosage of a medication. And it... it could be lethal.”

Dosage of a medication. This means amount of a medication. Dosage. And when Joe says, it could be lethal... lethal if it does this... Lethal means deadly. Lethal... meaning it could kill her.

And then I say, “Yeah. Yeah, exactly.”

Or I’m saying yeah, for sure.

And then I go on to say, “So...yeah, they’re just... they’re thinking more and more like I said...”

Or as I said.

“assisted living.”

Now assisted living... This is a place for older people to live when they need extra help. Assisted living.

And I go on to say, “Y’know, I’d say about a month or so ago they had, uh, sat my grandmother down...”

So I’m saying, they sat her down to talk to her.

Assisted Living Vocabulary Lesson

And I go on to say, “and given her an ultimatum.”

Ultimatum. This is a last request to do something before action is taken. Ultimatum.

And I go on to say, “Y’know, when... when they were noticing a few things here and there...”

Or I’m saying, when they were noticing a few things sometimes.

“like with her driving, they decided, ‘Okay, it’s time to do something.’”

So I’m saying, when my mother and my uncle were noticing things - seeing things, with my grandmother... seeing things she was having problems with, like her driving - then my mother and my uncle decided that it was time to do something.

And I go on to say, “So they sat her down... and said...”

So this is my uncle now and my mother saying.

“We’re givin’ you three choices.””

And givin’... This is short for giving.

And then I go on to say, speaking for my mother and my uncle, “You can go into assisted living.””

So they’re saying, you can go to live in assisted living. That’s the first choice that they’re giving my grandmother.

And I go on to say, “Or you can have someone start coming in...””

This meaning coming into my grandmother’s house. So they’re saying, you can have someone start coming in.

“regularly to sit with you...””

Now regularly means usually or often. Regularly. For example: I used to exercise regularly. Regularly. And when they’re saying, you can have someone start coming into your house regularly, or often, to sit with you. This is someone who would be going into my grandmother’s house just to make sure everything is going okay with her.



Assisted Living Vocabulary Lesson

And I go on to say, “make sure you’re taking your medications, the correct ones at the correct times.”

So they’re saying this to my grandmother. You can have someone come in to make sure you’re doing... everything is okay with you... you’re doing everything like taking your correct medicine at the right times, at the correct times. So that’s the second thing they’re telling my grandmother that she can choose.

And then I go on to say, to tell Joe, “Or you can go and live with, um, Susan’... my mom.”

So this is the third choice that my uncle and my mother gave to my grandmother... that my grandmother could go live with my mother, Susan.

And then I go on to say in the conversation “And...my grandmother decided she didn’t want to live with my parents. She didn’t want to put them out.”

Put them out. This means to inconvenience. Put them out. For example: When my parents visited San Francisco I asked them if they wanted to sleep in my bed. But they said they did not want to put me out. So they stayed in a hotel. Put them out, or in this example, put me out.

And then I go on to say, “And she definitely didn’t want to go to assisted living. So she chose to have a sitter.”

A sitter being a person to come to my grandmother’s house and help her.

And then I say, “She didn’t like that either, but she realized...”

Or she knew.

“she had no choice. Well, she had to choose one of the three choices. So she’s been having a woman coming in like three days a week. And since that - this woman has been coming in then - my mom and uncle have realized, ‘Oh, she needs someone actually...’”

Or she needs someone really.

“kinda seven days a week, not just three.”

Kinda. This is short for kind of.

And I go on to say, “And they talked to the agency.”

Assisted Living Vocabulary Lesson

An agency is the place where my mother and my uncle paid money for a sitter to go to my grandmother's house. So I'm saying that they talked to the agency.

And I go on to say, "Uh, this particular woman couldn't come in seven days a week."

So I'm telling Joe this woman that my mother and uncle started paying to go to my grandmother's house... she was only coming in three days a week. And she'd said she couldn't do it four more days a week. She couldn't do it for seven days total a week.

And I go on to say, "So the agency actually..."

Now actually is just a filler word here. It's not really needed.

So I'm saying, "the agency actually found someone else." And I say, "I think... I think she's only... this new person's only coming in two days. So that leaves still two days out of the week that my grandmother doesn't have anyone coming in. But my mom and uncle are even thinking it's to the point..."

Or I'm saying, they're even thinking it's time.

"that she kinda needs someone twenty-four seven."

Twenty-four seven. This means 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. Twenty-four seven. An example of twenty-four seven would be: A lot of stores in New York are open twenty-four seven.

And then I go on to say, "Well, not when she's sleeping, I shouldn't say, but, when... definitely when she's awake."

So when she's not sleeping... she needs someone there all the time when she's not sleeping.

And then Joe says, "Yeah, I mean that... this sounds like a really difficult situation. I really feel for your mom."

When Joe says feel for... this means he feels sorry for. He feels sorry for my mom. An example of feel for is: My friend Tom's father just died. I really feel for him. Feel for.

* * * * *

Okay, this is the end of the vocabulary lesson for the conversation "Assisted Living." So if you need to now, go back and listen to the conversation until you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary. But as always,



Assisted Living Vocabulary Lesson

you know, make sure that you're not getting too worried or stressed if you're not understanding. Just take your time. And when you feel ready, then go to the mini-story.

Alright. Enjoy the mini-story. Enjoy the rest of the lessons. Take care. Goodbye.

Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Conversation

put (her) up: have (her) someone stay at your home

thinking back: remembering

crammed in: to do a lot in a short time

confided in: told in secret

keeper: here it means someone good to continue dating

cool: good

go with the flow: to do without planning

catch her flight: to board or get on an airplane

pick her up: met and gave her a ride

grab a bite: to eat some food

before you know it: before you realized it (means that time went quickly)

we're off: we are leaving to go somewhere

The Warfield: the Warfield Theatre; a theatre in San Francisco where concerts are performed

Bay to Breakers: the name of a running race in San Francisco

thoroughly: completely

landmark: here it means a building that is important

Kristin: Hey, I just got an e-mail from Katy.

Joe: Oh, did she make it home okay?

Kristin: Yeah, she did. It was a really nice e-mail. She was thanking us for the nine days that we **put her up** when she was here and also for the great time that we showed her.

Joe: Yeah, I mean, **thinking back**, we really **crammed in** a lot.

Kristin: We did. She also said she enjoyed meeting you and getting to know you. She, uh, **confided in me** that you're a **keeper**.

Joe: [laugh] Oh, oh, that's nice. Good.

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: Yeah, I like, y'know, it was, it was **cool** the way she pretty much just was able to **go with the flow**. I mean, y'know, we pick her up at the airport. I knew that she was really tired because she had said that she had to get up really early in the morning to **catch her flight** and that she really only slept a few hours...

Kristin: Right.

Joe: ...so right after we **pick her up**, we go out and **grab a bite** to eat. And then we came home for, I don't know, maybe an hour? And **before you know it**, **we're off** to see that concert at **the Warfield**.

Kristin: Right. Yeah, and so we did that Saturday night. And then Sunday morning we had to wake up early and go to **Bay to Breakers** which she **thoroughly** enjoyed. And then that night we went back to the Warfield for the very last show before it closed.

Joe: Yeah, that was really cool that she was able to go to the Warfield because, I mean, that place is a **landmark**. It's been around since like, y'know, the late 1800s. And, uh, here it is now that they said that they were gonna be closing it. There really was no other opportunity to go and, y'know, to see a piece of history.

Kristin: Yeah. Yeah.

Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Conversation

iconic: famous or well known

pretty shocked: very surprised

Joe: What'd she have to say about Bay to Breakers? I mean that's an, that's an **iconic** San Francisco event.

Kristin: I think she was, uh, **pretty shocked**. Y'know Bay to Breakers, although it's a race, you would never, never be able to tell it because it seems like it's just a drunk costumed fest.

Joe: It seems like a party, actually, to me.

Kristin: It does. Or uncostumed, there are so many naked people as well.

Joe: Yeah, y'know what...

Kristin: So...

Joe: ...y'know what the mayor said when he ran it, uh, last year?

Kristin: I, I know what you're gonna say, but go ahead.

Joe: Yeah, he said, I was surprised there weren't more naked people.

Kristin: I know, I love that... that, he made...

Joe: That was funny.

Kristin: ...that comment. That was right when I first moved here. And I was like, yes, I've moved to the right place.

Joe: [laugh] That's great.

Kristin: [laugh] But you know, as far as like other things that we did... I think she also really enjoyed getting out of the city. Um, it, y'know, one day Tim took her to Muir Woods. So she really had a great time, uh, there...

Joe: Oh man.

Kristin: ...just seeing the **redwoods**.

Joe: Yeah, it's beautiful up there. I mean when you go through that area... I mean, it's **breathtaking**. **It makes for a great picture**.

Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Conversation

Kristin: Yeah. Yeah...

Joe: The other great thing is I love the fact that so many people come from all over the world to see, uh, the big redwoods. I mean it's really something that, y'know, you can **take for granted** living here. But then when you see all the people who come from, y'know, **far and wide** just to, y'know, come to see 'em, you really see like, y'know, how much of an appreciation you should have for them.

Kristin: Oh yeah. Yeah, and...

Joe: Some of those things you can't even put your arms around they're so big.

Kristin: I know.

Joe: You can step inside some of the trees. I mean, **it's crazy**, y'know.

Kristin: Yeah. And then, uh, remember that other day, too, he drove she and I down Highway 1. That's always nice, to drive along the coast. It's a really pretty drive.

Joe: Oh yeah, and you can stop and go to the beach. Man, San Francisco... We have the beach. We have mountains. We have the trees. Like, we have **the best of both worlds** here.

Kristin: I know. My brother commented on that when he visited here.

Joe: Yeah.

take for granted: to not appreciate

far and wide: everywhere

it's crazy: here it means unbelievable

the best of both worlds: having two great things that are different



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Hello there. Welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Visit To San Francisco Part 1.”

Okay, I’m going to start the story now.

* * * * *

Madonna got into a big fight with her husband. So she decided to go to Nepal for the day. She bought a plane ticket and she went to the airport to catch her flight.

When she got to Nepal, her friend Binaya picked her up. That day they crammed in a lot. They went on a short hike and then they ate lunch. Nepal had amazing food and beautiful mountains. It was the best of both worlds.

Then, after lunch, they visited a temple. There were a lot of monkeys at the temple and one of them jumped on Madonna’s back. The monkey kissed her and then ran away. It made for a great picture. Before she knew it, it was time to go home.

Madonna enjoyed her trip to Nepal but she missed her husband. She now knows that she should not take him for granted.

* * * * *

Okay, so that’s our story. Now I will read the story again and I will ask you questions this time. Please answer the questions out loud after I ask them. And if you need a little more time then pause your iPod or your computer or whatever you’re playing the lesson on, you can pause it. And then when you feel like you’ve had enough time to answer the question, then you can play it again. And, as always, if you just feel like listening and not answering the questions out loud well then that’s okay, too.

Okay, here we go.

* * * * *

Madonna got into a big fight with her husband.

Did Madonna get into a big fight with her husband?

Yes, she did. Madonna got into a big fight with her husband.

What did Madonna do? Did she get into a fight or sing a song?



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

She got into a fight.

Who got into a fight?

Madonna, Madonna got into a fight.

Did Madonna or Samantha get into a fight?

Madonna did. Madonna got into a fight.

Who did she get into a fight with?

Her husband, she got into a fight with her husband.

Did she get into a fight with her father or her husband?

Her husband, she got into a fight with her husband.

Did she get into a small fight with her husband?

No, it wasn't just a small fight.

Did she get into a big fight with her husband?

Yes, she did. She got into a big fight with her husband.

So she decided to go to Nepal for the day.

Did she decide to go to Nepal for the day?

Yes, she did. She decided to go to Nepal for the day.

What did she decide to do?

To go to Nepal, she decided to go to Nepal.

Who decided to go to Nepal?

Madonna did. Madonna decided to go to Nepal.



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Did Madonna's husband decide to go to Nepal?

No, no, her husband didn't decide to go to Nepal.

Did Madonna decide to go to Nepal?

Yes, yes, she did. Madonna decided to go to Nepal.

Where did she decide to go?

To Nepal, she decided to go to Nepal.

Did she decide to go to Germany or Nepal?

Nepal, she decided to go to Nepal.

She bought a plane ticket

Did she buy a plane ticket?

Yes, she did. She bought a plane ticket.

What did she do?

She bought a plane ticket, that's what she did.

Did she buy a plane ticket or a boat ticket?

A plane ticket, she bought a plane ticket.

Who bought a plane ticket?

Madonna, Madonna bought a plane ticket.

What did she buy?

A plane ticket, she bought a plane ticket.



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Did she buy a plane ticket or a car?

A plane ticket, she bought a plane ticket.

Did she buy a plane ticket to Nepal?

Yes, she did. She bought a plane ticket to Nepal.

and she went to the airport to catch her flight.

Did she go to the airport to catch her flight?

Yes, she did. She went to the airport to catch her flight.

What did she do?

Well, she went to the airport to catch her flight.

Did she go to the airport to get on a plane?

Yes, she did. She went to the airport to catch her flight, which is the same thing as saying she went to the airport to get on a plane.

Who went to the airport to catch her flight?

Madonna did. Madonna went to the airport to catch her flight.

Did Madonna's mother go to the airport to catch her flight?

No, her mother didn't go. Madonna went.

Where did she go?

To the airport, she went to the airport.

Did she go to the library?

No, she didn't go to the library. She went to the airport.



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Why did she go to the airport?

To catch her flight, she went to the airport to catch her flight.

Did she go to the airport to get on a plane?

Yes, she did. She went to the airport to catch her flight, which is the same thing as saying she went to the airport to get on a plane. To catch a flight means to get on a plane.

When she got to Nepal, her friend Binaya picked her up.

Did her friend Binaya pick her up when she got to Nepal?

Yes, he did. He picked her up when she got to Nepal.

Who picked her up?

Binaya picked her up, her friend Binaya.

Is Binaya her friend?

Yes, he is. Binaya is her friend.

What did Binaya do?

Well, he picked her up.

Did Binaya meet her at the airport and give her a ride?

Yes, he did. Binaya picked her up, which means that he met her at the airport and gave her a ride. When someone picks you up that means they usually meet you wherever you are and then they give you a ride. So Binaya met her at the airport and gave her a ride. He picked her up.

When did he pick her up?

Well, he picked her up when she got to Nepal.

Did he pick her up when she got to India?



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

No, it wasn't when she got to India.

Did he pick her up when she got to Nepal?

Yes, yes, he did. He picked her up when she got to Nepal.

Did he meet her at the airport when she got to Nepal?

Yes, he did. He picked her up when she got to Nepal and she came into the airport. So he met her at the airport when she got to Nepal.

Did he give her a ride when she got to Nepal?

Yes, he did. He picked her up, which means he met her when she arrived and give her a ride. Picked up means to meet someone and then to give them a ride.

That day they crammed in a lot.

Did they cram in a lot that day?

Yes, they did. That day they crammed in a lot.

What did they do that day?

They crammed in a lot.

Who crammed in a lot?

Binaya and Madonna, Binaya and Madonna crammed in a lot.

Did they do nothing that day?

No, they didn't do nothing that day. They crammed in a lot.

Did they do a lot in a short amount of time?

Yes, yes, they did. They crammed in a lot, which means that they did a lot in a short amount of time. Crammed in means to do a lot in a short time.



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

When did they cram in a lot?

That day, that day they crammed in a lot.

Did they cram in a lot the next day or that day?

That day, they crammed in a lot that day.

Did Madonna and Binaya cram in a lot that day?

Yes, they did. Madonna and Binaya crammed in a lot that day.

Did Madonna and Binaya do a lot of things in a short time that day?

Yes, yes, they did. They crammed in a lot, which means that they did a lot of things in a short time. Crammed in means to do a lot of things in a short time.

They went on a short hike and then they ate lunch.

Okay, so what did they do?

Well, they went on a short hike and then they ate lunch.

Did they go on a short hike?

Yes, they did. They went on a short hike.

Did they eat lunch?

Yes, yes, they did. They went on a short hike then ate lunch.

What did they do first? Go on a short hike or eat lunch?

Well, first they went on a short hike and then they ate lunch. So they went on a short hike first.

Who went on a short hike?

Madonna and Binaya, Madonna and Binaya went on a short hike.



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Did they go on a long hike?

No, they didn't go on a long hike. They went on a short hike.

Nepal had amazing food and beautiful mountains.

What did Nepal have?

Well, it had amazing food and beautiful mountains.

Did Nepal have bad food?

No, it didn't have bad food. It had amazing food, meaning very good food.

Did Nepal have amazing food?

Yes, yes, it did. It had amazing food. It had delicious food. It had really good food.

Did Nepal have beautiful mountains?

Yes, it did. Nepal had beautiful mountains. It still does have beautiful mountains.

Did Nepal have ugly mountains?

No, no, that is definitely not true. Nepal does not have ugly mountains.

Were Nepal's mountains beautiful?

Yes, Nepal's mountains were beautiful and Nepal's mountains still are beautiful.

It was the best of both worlds.

Was it the best of both worlds?

Yes, it was. It was the best of both worlds.

What was the best of both worlds?



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Well, Nepal had the best of both worlds and what they're referring to is the fact that they had both amazing food and they have beautiful mountains. So they have the best of both of those two worlds is what they're saying, food and mountains.

Did Nepal have two things that were very good?

Yes, yes, you could say that. They had the best of both worlds. When something is the best of both worlds, it means that it has two things that are different but that are both very good. And in this case they are talking about the food and the mountains, both being different but very good.

Then, after lunch, they visited a temple.

Did they visit a temple after lunch?

Yes, they did. They visited a temple after lunch.

What did they do?

Well, they visited a temple.

Who visited a temple?

Madonna and Binaya, Madonna and Binaya visited a temple.

Did Madonna visit a temple?

Yes, she did. Madonna visited a temple.

Did Madonna's husband visit a temple?

No, her husband didn't visit a temple. He's not even in Nepal.

Did Binaya visit a temple?

Yes, he did. Binaya visited a temple.

What did they visit? Did they visit a temple or a library?

A temple, they visited a temple.



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Okay, so when did they visit the temple?

After lunch, they visited the temple after lunch.

Did they visit the temple after dinner?

No, they didn't visit it after dinner.

Did they visit the temple before lunch?

No, they didn't visit the temple before lunch.

Did Madonna and Binaya visit the temple after lunch?

Yes, yes, they did. They visited the temple after lunch.

There were a lot of monkeys at the temple

Were there a lot of monkeys at the temple?

Yes, there were. There were a lot of monkeys at the temple.

What was at the temple?

Well, there were a lot of monkeys at the temple.

Were there a lot of birds or monkeys at the temple?

Monkeys, there were a lot of monkeys at the temple.

Was there just one monkey at the temple?

No, there was more than just one monkey.

Were there many monkeys at the temple?

Yes, there were a lot of monkeys, which means there were many monkeys at the temple.



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Where were there a lot of monkeys?

At the temple, there were a lot of monkeys at the temple.

Were there a lot of monkeys at the temple or the café?

The temple, there were a lot of monkeys at the temple.

and one of them jumped on Madonna's back.

Did one of them jump on Madonna's back?

Yes, one of them jumped on Madonna's back.

What jumped on Madonna's back?

A monkey, a monkey jumped on Madonna's back.

Did a lion or a monkey jump on Madonna's back?

A monkey, a monkey jumped on Madonna's back.

What did the monkey jump on?

Madonna's back, the monkey jumped on Madonna's back.

Did the monkey jump on Madonna or Will Smith's back?

On Madonna's back, the monkey jumped on Madonna's back, not Will Smith's back.

How many monkeys jumped on Madonna's back?

One, one monkey jumped on Madonna's back.

Did a monkey jump on Binaya's shoulder?

No, a monkey didn't jump on Binaya's shoulder.

Did a monkey jump on Madonna's back?

Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *that's what happened. A monkey jumped on Madonna's back.*

The monkey kissed her and then ran away.

Did the monkey kiss her and run away?

Yes, the monkey kissed her and ran away.

What did the monkey do?

It kissed her and ran away.

Did the monkey hug her?

No, the monkey didn't hug her.

Did the monkey kiss her?

Yes, the monkey kissed her.

Did the monkey walk away?

No, the monkey didn't walk away.

Did the monkey run away?

Yes, the monkey ran away.

Who kissed her?

The monkey, the monkey kissed her.

Who did the monkey kiss?

Madonna, the monkey kissed Madonna.

Did the monkey kiss Binaya or Madonna?



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Madonna, the monkey kissed Madonna and then ran away.

It made for a great picture.

Did it make for a great picture?

Yes, it did. It made for a great picture.

Did it look good enough to take a picture of?

Yes, yes, it did. It made for a great picture, which is the same thing as saying it looked good enough to take a picture of. When something makes for a great picture, it means that it looks good enough to take a picture of.

What made for a great picture?

Well, the monkey kissing Madonna made for a great picture. That would have been a great picture to see the monkey kissing Madonna.

Did the monkey look good enough to take a picture of?

Yes, yes, he did. When the monkey was kissing Madonna, it looked good enough to take a picture of. So, yes, the monkey looked good enough to take a picture of.

Before she knew it, it was time to go home.

Was it time to go home before she knew it?

Yes, yes, it was. Before she knew it, it was time to go home.

Was it time to go home before she realized it?

Yes, yes, it was. It was time to go home before she knew it, which is the same thing as saying it was time to go home before she realized it. Before she knew it means before she realized it.

Was it time for Binaya to go home?

No, it wasn't time for Binaya to go home.



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Was it time for Madonna to go home?

Yes, yes, *it was. It was time for Madonna to go home.*

Madonna enjoyed her trip to Nepal

Did Madonna enjoy her trip to Nepal?

Yes, she did. She enjoyed her trip to Nepal.

What did Madonna enjoy?

Her trip to Nepal, she enjoyed her trip to Nepal.

Did she enjoy some ice cream?

No, she didn't enjoy some ice cream.

Did she enjoy her trip to Germany?

No, she didn't go to Germany.

Did she enjoy her trip to Nepal?

Yes, she did. She enjoyed her trip to Nepal.

Did she really like her trip to Nepal?

Yes, yes, she did. She enjoyed it so she really liked it. She enjoyed her trip to Nepal.

but she missed her husband.

Did she miss her husband?

Yes, she did. She missed her husband.

Who missed her husband?



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Madonna, Madonna missed her husband.

Who did she miss?

Well, she missed her husband, that's who she missed.

Did she miss her father or her husband?

Her husband, she missed her husband.

Did Madonna miss her husband?

Yes, she did. Madonna missed her husband.

She now knows that she should not take him for granted.

Does she know that she should not take him for granted?

Yes, she does. She knows that she should not take him for granted.

What does she know?

Well, she knows that she should not take him for granted.

Who knows that she should not take him for granted?

Madonna, Madonna knows that she should not take him for granted.

Does she know that she should appreciate him?

Yes, yes, she does. She knows that she should not take him for granted, which is the same thing as saying she knows that she should appreciate him. When you take someone for granted that means that you do not appreciate them.

Who should she not take for granted?

Her husband, she should not take her husband for granted.

Should she appreciate her husband?

Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, she should. She should not take him for granted, which means that she should appreciate him.

Does Madonna now know that she should not take her husband for granted?

Yes, yes, she does. She now knows that she should not take him for granted.

Does Madonna now know that she should appreciate her husband?

Yes, she does. She knows that she should not take him for granted, which is the same thing as saying that she knows she should appreciate him. Taking someone for granted means that you do not appreciate them, so if she should not take him for granted, that means that she should appreciate him.

* * * *

Okay, so that brings us to the end of our story, which means that we have now reached the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Visit To San Francisco Part 1.” Now please tell the story by yourself. Remember you do not need to memorize all of the words in the story but you should use the idioms that we discussed. Okay, so in this story, here are the idioms that we did discuss: “catch her flight,” “picked her up,” “crammed in,” “the best of both worlds,” “it made for a great picture,” “before she knew it,” and “take him for granted.” Okay so now please try to tell the story by yourself. Remember you can listen to this mini-story lesson as many times as you need to, so please listen to it again if you do need to.

Okay, so that’s all. Thanks and we’ll see you next time.

Visit To San Francisco Part 1 POV Lesson

Hello everyone. Today we're going to listen to the point of view stories for "Visit to San Francisco Part 1". Now we've already heard one version of this story in the mini-story lesson. Today we're going to hear three other versions of the same story. Each one will have a different time for the story or it will have a different person telling the story. I hope you're ready because here we go.

* * * * *

Madonna gets into a big fight with her husband. So she decides to go to Nepal for the day. She buys a plane ticket and she goes to the airport to catch her flight.

When she gets to Nepal, her friend Binaya picks her up. That day they cram in a lot. They go on a short hike and then they eat lunch. Nepal has amazing food and beautiful mountains. It is the best of both worlds.

Then, after lunch, they visit a temple. There are a lot of monkeys at the temple and one of them jumps on Madonna's back. The monkey kisses her and then runs away. It makes for a great picture. Before she knows it, it is time to go home.

Madonna enjoys her trip to Nepal but she misses her husband. She now knows that she should not have taken him for granted.

* * * * *

Okay, so you can hear that we just heard the story being told as if it is happening right now. Next we're gonna hear the story as if it happened twelve days from now. So it's happening in the future. Okay, here we go.

* * * * *

Twelve days from now Madonna is going to get into a big fight with her husband. So she's gonna decide to go to Nepal for the day. She'll buy a plane ticket and go to the airport to catch her flight.

When she gets to Nepal, her friend Binaya will pick her up. That day they're gonna cram in a lot. They're gonna go on a short hike and then they'll eat lunch. Nepal will have amazing food and beautiful mountains. It'll be the best of both worlds.

Then, after lunch, they'll visit a temple. There're gonna be a lot of monkeys at the temple and one of them will jump on Madonna's back. The monkey'll kiss her and then run away. It'll make for a great picture. Before she'll know it, it's gonna be time to go home.



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 POV Lesson

Madonna's gonna enjoy her trip to Nepal but she'll miss her husband. She'll now know that she shouldn't take him for granted.

* * * * *

Okay so that's the end of this version of the story, where the events will take place twelve days from now. You can hear me saying "will" and "going to" because this is how we speak about something that has not yet happened, something that's going to happen in the future. Okay, now let's hear the story from Madonna's point of view. So in this version Madonna's gonna be telling us the story. Here goes.

* * * * *

I got into a big fight with my husband. So I decided to go to Nepal for the day. I bought a plane ticket and I went to the airport to catch my flight.

When I got to Nepal, my friend Binaya picked me up. That day we crammed in a lot. We went on a short hike and then we ate lunch. Nepal has amazing food and beautiful mountains. It's the best of both worlds.

Then, after lunch, we visited a temple. There were a lot of monkeys at the temple and one of them jumped on my back. The monkey kissed me and then ran away. It made for a great picture. Before I knew it, it was time to go home.

I enjoyed my trip to Nepal but I missed my husband. I now know that I should not take him for granted.

* * * * *

Alright so now we've finished the point of view stories for the lesson "Visit to San Francisco Part 1". Now it's time to go back and listen to these stories again on your own. Listen to them until you feel like you know them very well. Then try to tell the story to yourself or you can even tell it to a friend or one of your family members. If you're having trouble telling one of the stories then just listen to it again and then try to tell the story on your own. Remember learning a language takes time and we want to learn everything deeply so we do not forget it. Okay, that's all for now. See ya next time.



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Hello and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Visit To San Francisco Part 1.” So this conversation actually had two parts. This is the first part. In this conversation I am speaking with Joe about a friend of mine who came to visit us in San Francisco. And Joe and I are just talking about the things that we did when she was here visiting us.

Okay, let's begin with the conversation.

* * * * *

I start off by saying, “Hey...”

And I'm just saying this to get Joe's attention.

And I go on to say, “I just got an e-mail from Katy.”

Now just here means a short time ago.

And Joe says, “Oh...”

And oh is just a filler word. It's not really needed in this sentence.

And Joe goes on to say, “did she make it home okay?”

So he's asking, did she get home alright?

And I say, “Yeah, she did.”

Now yeah is slang or casual or informal for yes.

And I go on to say, “It was a really nice e-mail. She was thanking us for the nine days that we put her up when she was here...”

Now put her up or put up... This means have someone - or, in this conversation, have her - or have someone stay at your home. Put up. For example: When my younger brother and his girlfriend visited San Francisco, I put them up in my apartment for two nights. Put up.

Okay, going back to the conversation... I go on to say, “and also for the great time that we showed her.”

So I'm saying she's also thanking us for the great time that we all had together The great time that we



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

showed her.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, I mean...”

And I mean here is just filler. It's not really needed.

And Joe goes on to say, “thinking back, we really crammed in a lot.”

Thinking back. This means remembering. Thinking back. An example of thinking back would be: Thinking back to when I lived in Thailand, I have a lot of good memories. Thinking back. Now when Joe says, we really crammed in a lot... Crammed in means to do a lot in a short time. Crammed in. For example: When I went to Ireland for one week, I crammed in a lot. Crammed in.

And then I say, “We did.”

So I'm just agreeing with Joe.

And I go on to say, “She also said she enjoyed meeting you and getting to know you. She, uh...”

And uh is just a filler word here. It's not really needed.

And I go on to say, “confided in me that you're a keeper.”

Now confided in... This means told in secret. Confided in. For example: My brother confided in me that his wife was pregnant. He had not yet told anyone else. Confided in. And when I'm telling Joe that my friend Katy says that he's a keeper... What that means is, or specifically here it means, someone good to continue dating. A keeper.

And then Joe just laughs and says, “Oh, oh, that's nice. Good.” And then I laugh. And then Joe says, “Yeah, I like...”

And like is just a filler word here. It's not really needed in the sentence.

And Joe goes on to say, “y'know...”

And y"know is short for you know.

And Joe says, “it was, it was cool the way she pretty much just was able to go with the flow.”

Pretty much, meaning the way she was really able to go with the flow. When Joe says pretty much just was

Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

able to go with the flow... Just is just a filler word. It's not really needed. And when Joe says, it was cool the way she was able to go with the flow... What he's saying is it was good. Cool. Cool means here good. For example: My brother used to think that driving cars fast was cool. And when Joe said go with the flow... Go with the flow means to do without planning. Go with the flow. An example of go with the flow would be: Whenever I travel, I like to just go with the flow. I do not make many plans. Go with the flow.

And then Joe goes on to say, “I mean, y’know, we pick her up at the airport. I knew that she was really tired because she had said that she had to get up really early in the morning to catch her flight and that she really only slept a few hours...”

Few here means more than two but not very many. Usually it means three to four. So she only slept a few hours, maybe three to four hours. When Joe says catch her flight... Catch her flight means to board or get on an airplane. Catch her flight. For example: Sally was in a hurry to catch her flight. She did not want the plane to leave without her. Catch her flight.

And then I say, “Right.”

And I’m just agreeing with Joe.

And then Joe says, “so...”

And so is just a filler word here. It’s not really needed.

And he goes on to say, “right after...”

Or he’s saying soon after.

“we pick her up...”

Pick her up. This means soon after we met and gave her a ride. Pick her up... met and gave her a ride. For example: I had a friend coming to visit in Thailand. I had to be at the airport at 1:30 in the afternoon to pick her up. Pick her up.

And Joe goes on to say, “we go out and grab a bite to eat.”

Grab a bite. This means to eat some food. Grab a bite. For example: We grabbed a bite to eat before we went to the concert. Grabbed a bite, or grab a bite.

And then Joe goes on to say, “And then we came home for, I don’t know, maybe an hour? And...”



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

And here is a filler word. It's not really needed.

Joe goes on to say, “before you know it...”

Before you know it. This means before you realized it. Or it means that time went quickly. It went fast. Before you know it. For example: My nephew is getting older. Before you know it he will be driving a car. Before you know it.

So Joe is saying, “And before you know it, we’re off to see that concert at the Warfield.”

We’re off. This means we are leaving to go somewhere. We’re off. For example: Three months from now we are off to Africa. We’re off. And when Joe says, we’re off to see that concert at the Warfield... The Warfield. This is a theatre. It’s the Warfield Theatre... a theatre in San Francisco where concerts are performed. The Warfield.

And then I say, “Right. Yeah, and so we did that Saturday night. And then Sunday morning we had to wake up early and go to Bay to Breakers which she thoroughly enjoyed.”

Bay to Breakers. This is the name of a running race in San Francisco. Bay to Breakers. And when I say thoroughly enjoyed... Thoroughly means completely. She completely enjoyed. For example: I thoroughly cleaned the apartment before I moved in. Thoroughly.

And moving along in the conversation... I go on to say, “And then that night we went back to the Warfield for the very last show before it closed.”

Now when I’m speaking about the Warfield closing, what I’m talking about here is the Warfield closed for about three months. Everyone thought it was not ever going to reopen. However, after about three months it did reopen.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, that was really cool...”

Or he’s saying that was very cool.

“that she was able to go to the Warfield because, I mean, that place is a landmark.”

Landmark. Here landmark means a building that is important. Landmark.

And then Joe says, “It’s been around...”

Or he’s saying it’s been open.



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

“since like, y’know, the late 1800s. And, uh, here it is now that they said that they were gonna be closing it.”

Gonna. This is short or slang for going to. *Gonna.* You won’t really see this in written English, but you’ll hear it in conversational English.

And then Joe goes on to say, “There really was no other opportunity...”

Or he’s saying there really was no other chance.

“to go and, y’know, to see a piece of history.”

When Joe says, to see a piece of history, he’s talking about to visit such an old building.

And then I say, “Yeah. Yeah.”

Just agreeing with Joe.

And then Joe says, “What’d she have to say about Bay to Breakers?”

So what he’s asking here is, what did she think about Bay to Breakers?

And Joe goes on to say, “I mean that’s an, that’s an iconic San Francisco event.”

Iconic. This means famous or well-known. *Iconic.*

And I say, “I think she was, uh, pretty shocked.”

Pretty shocked. This means here very surprised. *Pretty shocked.* For example: I was pretty shocked by the way the movie ended. *Pretty shocked.*

And I go on to say, “Y’know Bay to Breakers, although...”

Or I’m saying even though.

“it’s a race, you would never, never be able to tell it...”

So I’m saying you would not know it.

Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

And I say, “because it seems like...”

Or I'm saying it seems as though.

“it's just a drunk costumed fest.”

Fest is short for festival. So what I'm saying here, a drunk costumed fest... I'm saying that it seems like a festival where there are a lot of drunk people all wearing costumes. Costumes are like crazy looking party clothes.

And then Joe says, “It seems like a party, actually, to me.”

So he's saying it seems like a party really to me.

And I say, “It does.”

Just agreeing with him.

And then I go on to say, “Or uncostumed...”

So what I mean here is people not wearing costumes.

And I go on to say, “there are so many naked people as well.”

Naked people, meaning people not wearing any clothes at all. So there are so many naked people as well, or so many naked people also.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, y'know what...” And I say, “So...” And Joe says, “y'know what the mayor said when he ran it, uh, last year?”

Now mayor... This is the highest government person for a city. When Joe says do you know what the mayor said when he ran it last year... The mayor of San Francisco really ran the Bay to Breakers race last year.

And then I say, “I, I know what you're gonna say, but go ahead.”

So I'm saying I know what you're going to say but go ahead and tell me anyway.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, he said, I was surprised there weren't more naked people.” And then I say, “I know, I love that...”



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Or I'm saying I really like that.

And I go on to say, “that, he made...” And then Joe says, “That was funny.” And then I finish by saying, “that comment...”

So I'm saying, I really like that the mayor made that comment, or I really like what the mayor said.

And then I say, “That was right when I first moved here. And I was like, yes, I've moved to the right place.”

Or I'm saying the right place for me to live... I've moved to the right place or I've moved to a good place for me to live.

And Joe laughs and says, “That's great.” And then I laugh and I say, “But you know, as far as like other things that we did... I think she also really enjoyed getting out of the city.”

So I'm saying that I think my friend Katy also had a good time going outside of San Francisco, or getting out of the city.

And then I go on to say, “Um...”

And um is just a filler word here. It's not really needed.

And then I say, “it, y'know, one day Tim took her to Muir Woods.”

Muir Woods. This is a place with a lot of beautiful... big beautiful trees. It's just maybe a thirty minute drive north of San Francisco... just right across the Golden Gate Bridge. So I'm saying Tim took her to Muir Woods.

And I go on to say, “So she really had a great time, uh, there...” And Joe says, “Oh man.”

So he's just showing emotion here, thinking about Muir Woods.

And then I say, “just seeing the redwoods.”

So I'm saying Katy, my friend, had a really good time at Muir Woods seeing the redwoods. Redwoods. Redwoods are a kind of tree. Redwood trees. Redwoods. For example: There are a lot of redwoods in California. And they're called redwoods because they actually are a little bit red in color.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, it's beautiful up there.”

Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

So when he says up there... He's speaking about Muir Woods where the redwood trees are. He's saying up there because Muir Woods is actually north of San Francisco.

And then Joe goes on to say, "I mean when you go through that area... I mean, it's breathtaking."

Breathtaking. This means amazing. Breathtaking. For example: The mountains of Nepal are breathtaking.

And then Joe says, "It makes for a great picture."

It makes for a great picture. This means it looks good enough to take a picture of. For example: The mountains of Nepal make for a great picture.

And then I say, "Yeah. Yeah..."

Agreeing with Joe.

And Joe says, "The other great thing is I love the fact that so many people come from all over the world..."

Or he's saying so many people come from around the world.

"to see, uh, the big redwoods. I mean it's really something that, y'know, you can take for granted living here."

Take for granted. This means to not appreciate. Take for granted. For example: People sometimes take their health for granted. They eat badly and do not exercise. Take for granted.

And then Joe goes on to say, "But..."

And but is a filler word. It's not really needed here.

And then he goes on to say, "then when you see all the people who come from, y'know, far and wide..."

Far and wide. This means from everywhere. Far and wide. For example: People come from far and wide to see the Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco. Far and wide.

So Joe's saying people come from far and wide "just to, y'know, come to see 'em..."

Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

'Em. This is short for them.

And then Joe goes on to say, “you really see like, y’know, how much of an appreciation...”

Or how much of a liking.

“you should have for them.” And then I say, “Oh yeah. Yeah, and...” And then Joe says, “Some of those things you can’t even put your arms around they’re so big.”

So what he’s speaking about here, when he says some of those things... he’s talking about the redwood trees. Some of them just get really, really big.

And then I say, “I know.” And Joe says, “You can step inside some of the trees. I mean, it’s crazy, y’know.”

When he says you can step inside some of the trees... You really can do this in some of the redwood trees because they have big open spaces at the bottom. And when he says it’s crazy, y’know... It’s crazy, here it means unbelievable. It’s crazy. For example: I can’t believe that Colby failed his driving test. It’s crazy. He’s such a good driver.

And then I say, “Yeah. And then, uh, remember that other day, too...”

Or I’m saying remember that other day also.

“he drove...”

And I’m talking about Tim, our friend.

“he drove she and I...”

So Tim drove me and my friend Katy.

“he drove she and I down Highway 1.”

Highway 1. This is a main road going north and south out of San Francisco. And I’m saying he drove down Highway 1 because we actually went south from San Francisco.

And I go on to say, “That’s always nice, to drive along the coast.”

Or I’m saying that’s always nice to drive next to the ocean.



Visit To San Francisco Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

And then I go on to say, “It’s a really pretty drive.” And Joe says, “Oh yeah, and you can stop and go to the beach. Man...”

And here, he’s just showing emotion.

And he goes on to say, “San Francisco... We have the beach. We have mountains. We have the trees. Like, we have the best of both worlds here.”

The best of both worlds. This means having two great things that are different. The best of both worlds. For example: California has beaches and mountains. It truly has the best of both worlds.

And then I say, “I know. My brother commented on that when he visited here.” And Joe says, “Yeah.”

Agreeing with me.

* * * * *

Now this is the end of the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Visit To San Francisco Part 1.” So if you feel you need to, go back and listen to the vocabulary lesson as many times... until you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary words. And then when you feel ready, go on to the mini-story.

Alright, see you for “Visit To San Francisco Part 2.” Bye bye.

Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Conversation

stood out in (Katy's) mind: remembered very well

always up for: always wants to do; always ready to do

ethnic: here it means from a country other than America

variety: different kinds

chains: stores or restaurants with many locations (e.g. McDonald's)

mom and pops: family owned stores and restaurants

independent: hear it means something not related to a chain

authentic: real

character: something that makes something different

support: give business to

Baobob: a restaurant in San Francisco

customarily: usually

regions: areas

Joe: So what else do you think, uh ... **stood out in Katy's mind?**

Kristin: Well...

Joe: From her visit.

Kristin: ...y'know, for me it was really fun taking her around to all my favorite bars. And she's **always up for** a drink. Uh, something else that just made me think... She really enjoyed all the **ethnic** restaurants. Y'know...

Joe: Oh yeah, there's great **variety** here.

Kristin: Yeah, we, we could eat something different every night. And although you can get ethnic food back east, they're **chains**, y'know. They're not the **mom and pops** that we have here.

Joe: Yeah, I'd much rather go to an **independent**, uh, restaurant. I mean there's so much more... they're so much more **authentic**. And they have so much more **character** when the people are actually from the area, uh, which the restaurant is, y'know, prov-, uh, serving food from.

Kristin: Yeah, and I would just rather **support** a family than some big company.

Joe: Totally. Yeah, like **Baobob**. That's a great example, y'know.

Kristin: Yeah. We went there one night. She loved it.

Joe: But, y'know, the people who work there and own it are from... Y'know, the food's East Senegalese. And all the people who work there are from West Africa. They dress, uh, y'know, in, uh... in clothes that are, y'know, uh, **customarily** worn by people in those **regions**. You look on the wall, you see all this artwork that was, uh, painted there.

Kristin: Yep.

Joe: Y'know, I love it. And then plus, my gosh, what about those coconut infused rum drinks there.

Kristin: Oh, that's my favorite.

Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Conversation

Joe: Oh, man.

Kristin: That's why I like to go there, just for those drinks.

Joe: Those things ***melt in your mouth***.

Kristin: I know.

Joe: I, I would love to have the recipe for that.

Kristin: Y'know, they have such great music, too. They really get good bands in there.

Joe: Yeah, my gosh. Uh, there was this one guy that we saw perform there. And I don't know what his name is. But he was playin' this instrument that was ***native*** to, uh, Africa. And I had never seen it before. But the sounds that were coming out of it just ***blew me away***.

Kristin: Oh, wow.

Joe: Yeah.

Kristin: Y'know, we, um, we definitely ***crammed a lot in*** that week. But we still... There's so much we didn't get to do. I mean she says she wants to come back. In fact, she's tryin' to talk two of my friends into coming back with her next year. So we could do those things that she didn't get to do when they all come back. But, I... Like, we went to ***Chinatown***. We went to ***North Beach***. We did that in one day. But, we just didn't...

Joe: Yeah, there's a lot to see there.

Kristin: There's a lot to see and we just kind of ***breezed in and breezed out***. So she'd probably definitely want to go back to Chinatown. We didn't make it to ***Japantown*** at all. Y'know, you and I live here in ***The Mission***. So she got to, to, uh, experience The Mission, y'know... see ***a good bit*** of The Mission I should say, but...

Joe: Yeah, we didn't even take her to ***The Haight***. She didn't get to see all the ***hippies*** and stuff.

Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Conversation

Kristin: No, no, no, we... no, we did.

Joe: Oh, I wasn't with you guys, that's right. You guys went one afternoon...

Kristin: No, no we went... no, we went for lunch one day, remember? Me, you, your friend Dan was in town, too.

Joe: Oh, yeah, yeah, yeah, okay. I do remember. Yeah, okay. Yep. Yeah, okay, good. So she did get to go to The Haight.

Kristin: Yeah.

Joe: Y'know what I would have, uh... that I really enjoyed doin' when she was here was goin' up to **Sonoma**. I mean I felt like...

Kristin: Yeah, that was a perfect way **to top off** her trip. That was the last day she was here.

Joe: I mean if you like **wineries**, I don't know how you couldn't like a trip like that.

Kristin: I know.

Joe: The other thing that was great is, this time when we went to Sonoma, we went to some really small wineries. And I just felt like they were so much more **accommodating** and welcoming when you went there, y'know? I mean, they like... some of 'em serve snacks even. But most of them had like free tastings. Whereas when we go to those larger wineries, you just don't get that sort of uh, um... They're just not as, uh, as friendly and...

Kristin: Yeah.

Joe: ...it seems like they don't **go out of their way** to try and, uh, y'know, **make you feel welcome**.

Kristin: Right. Yeah, I agree.

go out of their way: to try very hard to help others or make them feel comfortable

make you feel welcome: to try very hard to make you feel comfortable



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Hello and welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Visit To San Francisco Part 2.”

Okay, let's get started with the story now.

* * * * *

Jeffrey has spiders in his house. He hates them but he has not been able to get them to leave. Jeffrey wants to move but he does not have enough money.

His brother Mickey told him about a pizza eating contest. The person who eats the most pizza wins \$10,000. Jeffrey is always up for eating pizza so he goes to the contest.

When they bring out the pizza, it had spiders on it. Jeffrey wanted to leave but his brother talked him into staying. He ate a piece of pizza and it blew him away.

“It melts in your mouth,” he said.

Jeffrey ate 120 pieces of pizza and he won the \$10,000. After the contest he decided not to move. Instead he used the \$10,000 to open a restaurant. The restaurant serves only one thing: pizza with fried spiders.

Now he goes out of his way for the spiders because he needs them for his pizza.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's our story. Now I will read the story again and this time I will ask questions as I read it. You can answer the questions out loud and, as always, if you need a little more time to think about the answer, then feel free to pause your computer or your iPod or whatever you're playing the lesson on. And then when you've had enough time you can press play again. And, of course, if you just feel like listening as I ask the questions and not answering them out loud, well that's okay, too.

Alright, here we go.

* * * * *

Jeffrey has spiders in his house.

Does Jeffrey have spiders in his house?

Yes, *he does. Jeffrey has spiders in his house.*



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Who has spiders in his house?

Jeffrey, Jeffrey has spiders in his house.

Does Jeffrey or his brother have spiders in his house?

Jeffrey does. Jeffrey has spiders in his house.

What does he have in his house?

Spiders, he has spiders in his house.

Does he have spiders or mice in his house?

Spiders, he has spiders in his house.

Does Jeffrey have spiders in his car?

No, he doesn't have them in his car.

Does Jeffrey have spiders in his house?

Yes, he does. He has spiders in his house.

He hates them

Who hates them?

Jeffrey, Jeffrey hates them.

What does he hate?

The spiders, he hates the spiders that are in his house.

Does he hate mice or spiders?

Spiders, he hates spiders.



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Does Jeffrey love spiders?

No, he doesn't. He hates spiders.

Does Jeffrey hate spiders?

Yes, he does. He hates spiders.

but he has not been able to get them to leave.

Has he been able to get them to leave?

No, he hasn't. He has not been able to get them to leave.

Who has not been able to get them to leave?

Jeffrey, Jeffrey has been unable to get them to leave.

Has Jeffrey or his brother been unable to get them to leave?

Jeffrey, Jeffrey has been unable to get them to leave.

What has he not been able to do?

To get them to leave, he has not been able to get them to leave.

Has he been unable to get the spiders or the mice to leave?

The spiders, he's been unable to get the spiders to leave.

Jeffrey wants to move

Does Jeffrey want to move?

Yes, he does. Jeffrey wants to move.

What does Jeffrey want?



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Well, he wants to move, that's what he wants. He wants to move.

Does he want to run or to move?

To move, he wants to move. He doesn't want to run.

Does he want to move his car or his home?

His home, when we say he wants to move, really we're talking about the fact that he wants to move his home, or he wants to move to another house. So he says he wants to move, which means he wants to move his home.

but he does not have enough money.

Does he have enough money?

No, he does not. He does not have enough money.

Who doesn't have enough money?

Jeffrey, Jeffrey doesn't have enough money.

What doesn't Jeffrey have enough of?

Money, he does not have enough money.

Okay, so why can't Jeffrey move?

Well, it's because he doesn't have enough money. That's why he can't move.

Does Jeffrey have enough money to move?

No, he doesn't. He does not have enough money to move.

His brother Mickey told him about a pizza eating contest.

Did his brother Mickey tell him about a pizza eating contest?



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did. His brother Mickey told him about a pizza eating contest.

What did his brother Mickey do?

Well, he told him about a pizza eating contest.

What did he tell him about?

A pizza eating contest, he told him about a pizza eating contest.

Did he tell him about the weather or a pizza eating contest?

A pizza eating contest, he told him about a pizza eating contest.

Who told him about a pizza eating contest?

His brother Mickey, his brother Mickey told him about a pizza eating contest.

Did Mickey or Charlie tell him about the contest?

Mickey did. Mickey told him about the contest.

Who did Mickey tell about the contest?

He told Jeffrey. He told Jeffrey about the contest.

What is Jeffrey's brother's name?

Well, it's Mickey. His brother's name is Mickey.

Is Jackie's brother named Mickey or Charlie?

Mickey, his brother is named Mickey.

Is Mickey Jackie's brother or uncle?

It's his brother, it's not his uncle.

Did Mickey tell Jackie about an ice cream eating contest?



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

No, he didn't tell him about an ice cream eating contest.

Did Mickey tell Jackie about a pizza eating contest?

Yes, he did. He told him about a pizza eating contest.

The person who eats the most pizza wins \$10,000.

Does the person who eats the most pizza win \$10,000?

Yes, yes, that's true. The person who eats the most pizza wins \$10,000.

Who wins \$10,000?

The person who eats the most pizza, that's who. The person who eats the most pizza wins \$10,000.

Does the person who eats the most ice cream win?

No, not ice cream.

Does the person who eats the most pizza win?

Yes, they do. It's the person who eats the most pizza who wins.

What does the person win?

Well, they win \$10,000, that's what they win, a lot of money.

Does the person win a new car or \$10,000?

Ten thousand dollars, they don't win a car, they win \$10,000.

Okay, so how much money do they win?

Ten thousand dollars, that's how much, they win \$10,000.

Do they win \$10 or \$10,000?

Ten thousand dollars, they win \$10,000.



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Jeffrey is always up for eating pizza

Is Jeffrey always up for eating pizza?

Yes, he is. He's always up for eating pizza.

Who is always up for eating pizza?

Jeffrey, Jeffrey is always up for eating pizza.

Is Jeffrey or Mickey always up for eating pizza?

Jeffrey is. Jeffrey is always up for eating pizza, not Mickey.

Does Jeffrey always want to eat pizza?

Yes, he does. Jeffrey is always up for eating pizza, which means that he always wants to eat pizza. When you're always up for something that means you always want to do it.

Is Jeffrey always ready to eat pizza?

Yes, he is. Jeffrey is always up for eating pizza and if you're always up for something that means you're ready to do it anytime. So he's always ready to eat pizza, he's always up for eating pizza. You could also say he always wants to eat pizza. They all mean the same thing in this case.

What is Jeffrey always up for eating?

Pizza, he's always up for eating pizza.

Is he always up for eating ice cream?

No, it's not ice cream he's always up for eating.

Is he always up for eating pizza?

Yes, he is. He's always up for eating pizza.

Is he always ready to eat pizza?



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he is. He's always ready to eat pizza because he's always up for eating pizza.

Does he always want to eat pizza?

Yes, he does. He is always up for eating pizza, so that means he always wants to eat pizza or he's always ready to eat pizza.

so he goes to the contest.

Did he go to the contest?

Yes, he did. He went to the contest.

What did he do?

Well, he went to the contest, that's what he did.

Who went to the contest?

Jeffrey, Jeffrey went to the contest.

Did Peter go to the contest?

No, Peter didn't go to the contest.

Did Jeffrey go to the contest?

Yes, he did. Jeffrey went to the contest.

Where did he go?

To the contest, that's where he went. He went to the contest.

Did he go to the library or the contest?

The contest, he went to the pizza eating contest. He did not go to the library.

Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

When they bring out the pizza, it had spiders on it.

Did the pizza have spiders on it?

Yes, it did. The pizza had spiders on it.

What did the pizza have on it?

Spiders, it had spiders on it.

Did it have peppers or spiders on it?

Spiders, it had spiders on it.

Okay, so what had spiders on it?

The pizza, the pizza had spiders on it.

Did the pizza or the ice cream have spiders on it?

The pizza, the pizza had spiders on it.

Jeffrey wanted to leave but his brother talked him into staying.

Did Jeffrey want to leave?

Yes, he did. Jeffrey wanted to leave.

What did Jeffrey want to do?

To leave, he wanted to leave.

Did Jeffrey want to stay or leave?

Leave, he wanted to leave. He didn't want to stay.

Who wanted to leave?

Jeffrey, that's who. Jeffrey wanted to leave.



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did Jeffrey or Mickey want to leave?

Jeffrey did. Jeffrey wanted to leave.

Did his brother talk him into staying?

Yes, he did. His brother talked him into staying.

Did his brother convince him to stay?

Yes, yes, he did. He talked him into staying, which is the same thing as saying he convinced him to stay. When you talk someone into something that means you convince them of something. So he talked him into it or he convinced him. It's the same thing.

Who did his brother talk into staying?

Jeffrey, he talked Jeffrey into staying.

Did Mickey convince his brother Jeffrey to stay?

Yes, he did. He talked him into staying, which is the same thing as saying he convinced Jeffrey to stay. When you talk someone into something that means you convince them to do it.

Why did Jeffrey want to leave?

Because the pizza had spiders on it, that's why he wanted to leave. He wanted to leave because the pizza had spiders on it.

Why did Jeffrey stay?

Well, he stayed because his brother talked him into it. Mickey talked him into it or he convinced him to stay.

He ate a piece of pizza and it blew him away.

Okay, so what did he eat?

Well, he ate a piece of pizza.



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did he eat a hamburger?

No, he did not eat a hamburger.

Did he eat a piece of pizza?

Yes, he did. He ate a piece of pizza.

Who ate a piece of pizza?

Jeffrey, Jeffrey ate a piece of pizza.

Did Jeffrey or Mickey eat a piece of pizza?

Jeffrey did. Jeffrey ate a piece of pizza.

Did it blow him away?

Yes, it did. It blew him away.

Did he really enjoy it?

Yes, he did. It blew him away, which means he really enjoyed it.

What blew him away?

The piece of pizza blew him away, that's what blew him away, the piece of pizza.

Did he dislike the pizza?

No, it blew him away so that doesn't mean he disliked it, it means he did like it.

Did he really enjoy the pizza?

Yes, yes, he did. It blew him away, which means he really enjoyed it.

“It melts in your mouth,” he said.

Did Jeffrey say that it melts in your mouth?

Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he did. He said, "It melts in your mouth."

Did Jeffrey say that it tastes very good?

Yes, yes, he did. He said, "It melts in your mouth," which is the same thing as saying it tastes very good. When something melts in your mouth, it tastes very good.

What melts in your mouth?

The pizza, the pizza melts in your mouth.

Does the cake or the pizza melt in your mouth?

The pizza, the pizza melts in your mouth.

Does the pizza taste very good?

Yes, it does. It melts in your mouth, which is the same thing as saying it tastes very good.

Jeffrey ate 120 pieces of pizza

Did Jeffrey eat 120 pieces of pizza?

Yes, he did. He ate 120 pieces of pizza. Wow.

What did Jeffrey do?

Well, he ate 120 pieces of pizza. That's what he did.

Did he go to the beach or eat 120 pieces of pizza?

He ate 120 pieces of pizza. He didn't go to the beach.

Okay, so who ate 120 pieces of pizza?

Jeffrey did. Jeffrey ate 120 pieces of pizza.

Did Jeffrey or Mickey eat 120 pieces of pizza?



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Jeffrey did. Jeffrey ate 120 pieces of pizza.

What did he eat?

Pizza, that's what he ate. He ate pizza.

Did he eat salad or pizza?

Pizza, he ate pizza.

How many pieces of pizza did he eat?

One hundred and twenty, he ate 120 pieces of pizza.

Did he eat 130 or 120 pieces of pizza?

One hundred and twenty, he ate 120 pieces of pizza.

and he won the \$10,000.

Did he win the \$10,000?

Yes, he did. He won the \$10,000.

Okay, so who won the \$10,000?

Jeffrey did. Jeffrey won the \$10,000.

Did Mickey or Jeffrey win \$10,000?

Jeffrey did. Jeffrey won \$10,000.

What did he win?

Well, he won \$10,000.

Did he win a new car?



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

No, he didn't. He did not win a new car.

Did he win \$10,000?

Yes, that's what he won. He won \$10,000.

How much money did he win?

Ten thousand dollars, that's how much money he won. He won \$10,000.

Did he win \$10 or \$10,000?

Ten thousand dollars, he won \$10,000.

After the contest he decided not to move.

Did he decide not to move?

Yes, he did. He decided not to move.

Okay, so what did he decide?

Not to move, he decided not to move.

Did he decide to eat more pizza or not move?

Not move, he decided not to move.

Who decided not to move?

Jeffrey, Jeffrey decided not to move.

Did Jeffrey's mom decide not to move?

No, it wasn't Jeffrey's mom. It was Jeffrey who decided not to move.

When did he decide not to move?

After the contest, after the contest he decided not to move.



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did he decide before the contest?

No, he didn't decide before the contest.

Did he decide after the contest?

Yes, he did. He decided after the contest.

Instead he used the \$10,000 to open a restaurant.

Okay, so did he use the \$10,000 to buy a plane?

No, he didn't use the \$10,000 to buy a plane.

Did he use the \$10,000 to open a café?

No, he didn't use it to open a café either.

Did he use the \$10,000 to open a restaurant?

Yes, he did. He used the \$10,000 to open a restaurant.

Who used the \$10,000 to open a restaurant?

Jeffrey, Jeffrey used the \$10,000 to open a restaurant.

Did Jeffrey or Mickey open a restaurant?

Jeffrey did. Jeffrey opened a restaurant.

How much money did he use to open a restaurant?

Ten thousand dollars, he used the \$10,000 to open the restaurant.

Did he use \$10,000 or \$20,000 to open the restaurant?

Ten thousand dollars, he used the \$10,000 to open the restaurant.



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

The restaurant serves only one thing: pizza with fried spiders.

Does the restaurant serve only one thing?

Yes, it does. The restaurant serves only one thing.

How many things does the restaurant serve?

One, only one thing.

What does the restaurant serve?

Pizza with fried spiders, it serves pizza with fried spiders.

Does the restaurant serve hamburgers?

No, it does not. It only serves one thing and that one thing is pizza with fried spiders.

Does the restaurant serve pizza?

Yes, yes, it does. It does serve pizza.

Does the restaurant serve pizza with peppers?

No, it doesn't serve pizza with peppers.

Does the restaurant serve pizza with fried spiders?

Yes, it does. The restaurant serves pizza with fried spiders, and that's the only thing that it serves. It only serves one thing, pizza with fried spiders.

Now he goes out of his way for the spiders

Does he go out of his way for the spiders?

Yes, he does. He goes out of his way for the spiders.

Does he try very hard to help the spiders?

Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he does. He goes out of his way for the spiders and when you go out of your way for something that means you try very hard to help that thing. So he goes out of his way for the spiders, he tries very hard to help the spiders, they're the same thing.

Who goes out of his way?

Jeffrey, Jeffrey goes out of his way.

Does Jeffrey or Mickey go out of his way?

Jeffrey, Jeffrey goes out of his way.

Does Jeffrey try very hard to help the spiders?

Yes, he does. Jeffrey goes out of his way for the spiders, which is the same thing as saying, Jeffrey tries very hard to help the spiders.

What does he go out of his way for?

The spiders, he goes out of his way for the spiders.

Does he go out of his way for his cousin or the spiders?

The spiders, he goes out of his way for the spiders.

because he needs them for his pizza.

Does he need them for his pizza?

Yes, he does. He needs them for his pizza.

Who needs them for his pizza?

Jeffrey does. Jeffrey needs them for his pizza.

What does he need?

The spiders, he needs the spiders.

Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Does he need a new car or the spiders?

The spiders, he needs the spiders. He doesn't need a new car.

Does Jeffrey put spiders on his pizza?

Yes, he does. He puts fried spiders on his pizza. That's the only thing he serves at his restaurant.

Okay, so why does he need the spiders?

Well, he needs them because he puts them on his pizza.

* * * *

Okay, so we have reached the end of the story which means we are now at the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation "Visit To San Francisco Part 2." Okay, now it's your turn to tell the story. Remember that you do not need to memorize every word in the story but you should use the idioms that we discussed here. So those idioms are: "always up for," "talked him into," "blew him away," "melts in your mouth," and "goes out of his way." So please try to tell the story now by yourself and try to use these idioms. Remember that you can listen to this lesson as many times as you need to.

Okay, that's all. Thanks and I'll see you next time.



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 POV Lesson

Hey everyone. Welcome to the point of view stories for the lesson “Visit to San Francisco Part 2”. I hope that you’re having a great day and that you’re anxious to get started. I know I am so let’s begin.

* * * * *

Jeffrey has spiders in his house. He hates them but he's unable to get them to leave. Jeffrey wants to move but he doesn't have enough money.

His brother Mickey tells him about a pizza eating contest. The person who eats the most pizza wins \$10,000. Jeffrey's always up for eating pizza so he goes to the contest.

When they bring out the pizza, it has spiders on it. Jeffrey wants to leave but his brother talks him into staying. He eats a piece of pizza and it blows him away.

“It melts in your mouth,” he says.

Jeffrey eats 120 pieces of pizza and he wins the \$10,000. After the contest he decides not to move. Instead he uses the \$10,000 to open a restaurant. The restaurant serves only one thing: pizza with fried spiders.

Now he goes out of his way for the spiders because he needs them for his pizza.

* * * * *

Okay, so that’s the end of the story being told as if it is happening right now or in the present. Now let’s hear the story as if it happened three years ago. So let’s start.

* * * * *

Three years ago Jeffrey had spiders in his house. He hated them but he was unable to get them to leave. Jeffrey wanted to move but he didn't have enough money.

His brother Mickey told him about a pizza eating contest. The person who ate the most pizza won \$10,000. Jeffrey was always up for eating pizza so he went to the contest.

When they brought out the pizza, it had spiders on it. Jeffrey wanted to leave but his brother talked him into staying. He ate a piece of pizza and it blew him away.

“It melts in your mouth,” he said.

Visit To San Francisco Part 2 POV Lesson

Jeffrey ate 120 pieces of pizza and he won the \$10,000. After the contest he decided not to move. Instead he used the \$10,000 to open a restaurant. The restaurant served only one thing: pizza with fried spiders.

Then he went out of his way for the spiders because he needed them for his pizza.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's the story as if it already happened. Now let's hear the story as if it will happen in the future. So we'll think of the story happening, say, seven months from now. Okay.

* * * * *

In seven months Jeffrey'll have spiders in his house. He'll hate them but he will not be able to get them to leave. Jeffrey wants to move but he does not have enough money.

His brother is gonna tell him about a pizza eating contest. The person who eats the most pizza will win \$10,000. Jeffrey will always be up for eating pizza so he'll go to the contest.

When they bring out the pizza, it's gonna have spiders on it. Jeffrey'll want to leave but his brother will talk him into staying. He's gonna eat a piece of pizza that will blow him away.

"It melts in your mouth," he'll say.

Jeffrey's gonna eat 120 pieces of pizza and he'll win the \$10,000. After the contest he's going to decide not to move. Instead he'll use the \$10,000 to open a restaurant. The restaurant is going to serve only one thing: pizza with fried spiders.

Then he'll go out of his way for the spiders because he'll need them for his pizza.

* * * * *

Okay so that's the end of this version of the story where we talk about the events that are going to happen or events that will happen. Now as I've pointed out before you can see that we sometimes will combine words when speaking. For example, "he will need" will be shortened to "he'll need". You see the "he" and the "will" are combined. Sometimes people actually say "he will" sometimes they say "he'll". They mean the same thing. Okay, so let's move on to the next version of the story. In this version Jeffrey will actually be telling us the story, so it's from Jeffrey's point of view. Okay, here we go.

* * * * *



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 POV Lesson

I have spiders in my house. I hate them but I am unable to get them to leave. I want to move but I don't have enough money.

My brother Mickey told me about a pizza eating contest. The person who eats the most pizza wins \$10,000. I'm always up for eating pizza so I went to the contest.

When they brought out the pizza, it had spiders on it. I wanted to leave but my brother talked me into staying. I ate a piece of pizza and it blew me away.

"It melts in your mouth," I said.

I ate 120 pieces of pizza and I won the \$10,000. After the contest I decided not to move. Instead I used the \$10,000 to open a restaurant. The restaurant serves only one thing: pizza with fried spiders.

Now I go out of my way for the spiders because I need them for my pizza.

* * * * *

Alright so that's the end of the point of view stories for the lesson "Visit to San Francisco Part 2". Now go back and listen to each version of the story and try to tell it on your own. As you listen to each version of the story, pay attention to how the verbs change when we change the timing or how they change when a different person tells the story. Don't worry if you're having trouble. Just take your time and relax. Remember learning a language should be fun. Each time you listen I know you'll understand more. Okay, that's all for now. See ya next time.



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Hello. Welcome back. This is the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Visit To San Francisco Part 2.” In this conversation, Joe and I are continuing to talk about when my friend Katy visited us here in San Francisco. We’re just talking about the things that we did when she was here.

Okay, let’s begin with the conversation.

* * * * *

Joe starts off the conversation by saying, “So what else do you think, uh ... stood out in Katy’s mind?”

Now when Joe says so at the beginning of the sentence... This is a filler word. It’s not really needed. You could take it away from the sentence and the sentence would still make sense. And then when Joe says so what else do you think... He’s saying what other things to you think. Uh. And uh is just a filler word. It’s not really needed. When he says stood out in Katy’s mind... Stood out in Katy’s mind. This, this means remembered very well. So what was remembered very well by Katy. For example: After I left the party, I could not forget the clothes Sara was wearing. They stood out in my mind. So stood out in Katy’s mind or, in this example, stood out in my mind.

And then I say, “Well...” And Joe says, “From her visit.” And I say, “y’know...”

And y’know is short for you know. You won’t really see this in written English but you’ll definitely hear it in conversational English.

So I say, “y’know, for me it was really fun taking her around to all my favorite bars. And she’s always up for a drink.”

Always up for. This means always wants to do or always ready to do. Always up for. For example: I am always up for a good movie.

And I go on to say, “Uh, something else that just made me think... She really enjoyed all the ethnic restaurants. Y’know...”

And going back, when I say something else that just made me think I’m saying, something else that right now made me think. Just made me think. Right now made me think. And when I say ethnic restaurants... Ethnic, here it means from a country other than America. Ethnic. For example: I love to taste all kinds of ethnic foods. Ethnic.

And then Joe says, “Oh yeah, there’s great variety here.”

Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

When he says *oh yeah...* *Oh* is just a *filler word*. *It's not really needed*. And *yeah* is *slang or casual or informal* for yes. And when he says *there's great variety here...* *Great* meaning good... really good variety here. Variety. This means different kinds. Variety. For example: *The restaurant had food from many different countries. I loved the variety it had. Variety.*

And then I say, “Yeah, we, we could eat something different every night. And although you can get ethnic food back east, they’re chains, y’know.”

So when I say *although you can get ethnic food...* *I’m saying even though*. *Although*. Even though you can get ethnic food back east. East, here I’m talking about the eastern states of America. So I am from a state in the southeast of America. So you can get ethnic food back east. They’re chains, y’know. Chains. Chains are stores or restaurants with many locations. An example of a chain restaurant would be McDonald’s. Chains.

And then I go on to say, “They’re not the mom and pops that we have here.”

Mom and pops. These are family-owned stores and restaurants. *Mom and pops*.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, I’d much rather go to an independent, uh, restaurant.”

So he’s saying *I’d much rather go...* *I would want to go more, to an independent restaurant*. Independent, here it means something not related to a chain. Not related to a chain restaurant, specifically. Independent.

And then Joe goes on to say, “I mean there’s so much more... they’re so much more authentic.”

When he says I mean he’s saying, what I’m trying to say is there’s so much more, they’re so much more authentic. Authentic means real. Authentic.

And then Joe goes on to say, “And they have so much more character when the people are actually from the area, uh, which the restaurant is, y’know, prov-, uh, serving food from.”

So going back, when he says *and they have so much more character...* Character means something that makes something different. Character. For example: *The Nepali restaurant has a lot of character*. It is much different than other restaurants in the area. Character. So Joe’s talking about how the mom and pop restaurants have more character. And then when he says *when the people are actually from the area...* So he’s saying *when the people are really from the area*. And then when he says *which the restaurant is, y’know, serving food from...* Serving meaning making... making food from.

And then I say, “Yeah, and I would just rather support a family than some big company.”

Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Support. This means give business to. Support. For example: I like to support small restaurants. Support.

And then Joe says, “Totally.”

So totally meaning... it's kind of slang here for definitely.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, like Baobob.”

Or he's saying such as Baobob. Baobob. This is the name of a restaurant in San Francisco.

And then Joe goes on to say, “That's a great example, y'know.” And then I say, “Yeah. We went there one night. She loved it.”

So when I say she loved it I'm saying, she liked it a lot.

And then Joe says, “But...”

And but is a filler word. It's not really needed here.

So he's saying, “But, y'know, the people who work there and own it are from... Y'know, the food's East Senegalese. And all the people who work there are from West Africa. They dress, uh, y'know, in, uh... in clothes that are, y'know, uh, customarily worn by people in those regions.”

Now customarily... This means usually. Customarily. For example: Americans customarily eat with a fork and a knife. Customarily. So he's saying in this particular restaurant, this East Senegalese restaurant called Baobob, the people there customarily or usually wear clothes from that region. And region or regions means areas. Regions.

And then Joe goes on to say, “You look on the wall, you see all this artwork that was, uh, painted there.”

Now what Joe is saying here is, if you look on the wall in the restaurant, you see a lot of artwork that was painted in Senegal.

And then I say, “Yep.”

And yep... This is just slang for yes.

And then Joe says, “Y'know, I love it. And then plus...”



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Or he's saying, and then also.

"my gosh..."

My gosh just showing emotion.

And Joe says, "what about those coconut infused rum drinks there."

So what he's talking about is the Senegalese restaurant makes drinks that have coconut and rum mixed together.

And then I say, "Oh, that's my favorite." And Joe says, "Oh, man."

Just showing emotion.

And I say, "That's why I like to go there, just for those drinks."

Or I'm saying, that's why I like to go there, only for those drinks.

And Joe says, "Those things melt in your mouth."

Melt in your mouth. This means tastes very good. Melt in your mouth. For example: Aaron's cake is delicious. It melts in your mouth.

And then I say, "I know." And Joe says, "I, I would love to have the recipe for that."

So a recipe shows how to make something. So Joe is saying I would really like to have a recipe... I would really like to know how to make those coconut rum drinks.

And then I say, "Y'know, they have such great music, too."

So what I'm saying is, they have very good music also.

And I go on to say, "They really get good bands in there." And then Joe says, "Yeah, my gosh."

Just showing emotion. My gosh.

And Joe goes on to say, "Uh, there was this one guy..."

Or he's saying, there was this one person.

Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

“that we saw perform there.”

Or he's saying, there was this one person that we saw play there.

And Joe goes on to say, “And I don't know what his name is. But he was playin' this instrument that was native to, uh, Africa. And I had never seen it before.”

Now when Joe says playin'... This is short for playing. You won't see that in written English but you will definitely hear it in conversational English. A lot of times you will hear a lot of words that are made shorter. And when Joe's talking about this person, this guy, playing an instrument... Instrument is something that plays music. For example, like a guitar. So he's saying this guy was playing this instrument that was native to Africa. Native. This means belonging to since birth. Now that obviously means for a person. However, here Joe is talking about this instrument being native to Africa. So that just means this instrument is originally from Africa. Native. For example: These conversations were recorded with native English speakers. Native.

And moving along in the conversation... Joe goes on to say, “But the sounds that were coming out of it just blew me away.”

So he's saying but the sounds that were coming out of this instrument really blew me away. Blew me away. This means I really enjoyed it. Blew me away. For example: I really liked the concert. The guitar playing blew me away.

And then I say, “Oh, wow.”

Just showing emotion.

And Joe says, “Yeah.” And then I say, “Y'know, we, um, we definitely crammed a lot in that week. But we still... there's so much we didn't get to do.”

So when I say y'know, we, um... Um here is a filler word. It's not really needed. And when I say we definitely crammed a lot in... Crammed a lot in. This means to do a lot in a short time. Crammed a lot in. For example: The night before my test I crammed in a lot of studying. Crammed a lot in. So I'm saying I crammed a lot in that week but we still, there is so much... or I'm saying there's a lot... we didn't get to do.

And then I go on to say, “I mean she says she wants to come back. In fact, she's tryin' to talk two of my friends into coming back with her next year.”

Now when I say she's tryin'... Tryin' is short for trying.



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

And then I go on to say, “So we could do those things that she didn’t get to do when they all come back. But, I... Like, we went to Chinatown. We went to North Beach. We did that in one day. But, we just didn’t...”

And I kind of, I stop here for a minute. When I say like... Like is a filler word here. It’s not needed. Chinatown. Chinatown is an area of San Francisco. And then I speak about North Beach... North Beach is also an area of San Francisco.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, there’s a lot to see there.” And then I say, “There’s a lot to see and we just kind of breezed in and breezed out.”

So I’m saying we just sort of breezed in and breezed out.

And I go on to say, “So she’d probably definitely want to go back to Chinatown.”

When I say probably definitely... Probably means most likely. And definitely means for sure. So I don’t know why I said these two words together. It doesn’t really make sense. And usually you won’t hear them used together like that. And when I say breezed in and breezed out... So we breezed in and breezed out of Chinatown... What that means is we came in quickly and left quickly. Breezed in and breezed out. For example: I was in a hurry when I went to the store so I just breezed in and breezed out.

And then I go on to say, “We didn’t make it to Japantown at all.”

Japantown. This is another area of San Francisco.

And then I say, “Y’know, you and I live here in The Mission. So she got to, to, uh, experience The Mission, y’know... see a good bit of The Mission I should say, but...”

And when I’m speaking of The Mission... The Mission is short for the Mission District. District means area. So The Mission is an area of San Francisco. And when I say that my friend Katy got to see a good bit of The Mission... A good bit. This means a lot. A good bit. For example: I was at the library for a good bit of time today. A good bit.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, we didn’t even take her to The Haight.”

Now The Haight... This is short for the Haight District. The Haight is another area of San Francisco.

And then Joe goes on to say, “She didn’t get to see all the hippies and stuff.”

Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

When he says stuff... Stuff here is just slang for other things. She didn't get to see all the hippies and other things. Hippies, or hippie. This is a person or people with long hair. Now not all people with long hair are hippies. It's a certain kind of person. Hippies usually want peace and not war. John Lennon of the Beatles was a hippie. Hippie or hippies.

And then I say, "No, no, no, we... no, we did."

So I'm saying, yeah, we did go to The Haight.

And Joe says, "Oh, I wasn't with you guys, that's right."

So guys here means me and my friend Katy.

An then Joe goes on to say, "You guys went one afternoon..." And I say, "No, no we went... no, we went for lunch one day, remember? Me, you, your friend Dan was in town, too."

Now when I say your friend Dan was in town... I'm saying your friend Dan was visiting San Francisco also.

And then Joe says, "Oh, yeah, yeah, yeah, okay. I do remember. Yeah, okay. Yep. Yeah, okay, good. So she did get to go to The Haight." And then I say, "Yeah." And Joe says, "Y'know what I would have, uh... that I really enjoyed doin' when she was here was goin' up to Sonoma."

Now when Joe says I really enjoyed doin'... Doin' is short for doing. And when he says goin' up to Sonoma... Goin' is short for going. Sonoma. This is an area in California. And it's north of San Francisco. So that's why Joe says up to Sonoma.

And then Joe says, "I mean I felt like..." And I say, "Yeah, that was a perfect way to top off her trip."

So I'm saying that was a very good way to top off her trip or her visit to San Francisco. To top off. This means to end with. To top off. For example: Regina topped off her dinner with a glass of wine. To top off or, in this example, topped off.

And then I say, "That was the last day she was here." And then Joe says, "I mean if you like wineries, I don't know how you couldn't like a trip like that."

So he's saying I don't know how you couldn't like a trip or a visit to Sonoma like that. Wineries. When Joe says wineries... Wineries, these are places - or a winery is a place - where wine is made. Wineries.

And then I say, "I know." And then Joe says, "The other thing that was great is, this time when we

Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

went to Sonoma, we went to some really small wineries. And I just felt like they were so much more accommodating and welcoming when you went there, y'know?"

And when Joe says *accommodating*, when he's talking about the wineries being *accommodating*... Accommodating means *willing to please*. Accommodating. For example: Joe is very *accommodating* when our families visit. He always makes sure that we have their favorite drinks and food at our house. Accommodating.

And then Joe says, "I mean, they like... some of 'em serve snacks even."

So when I say... or when Joe says some of 'em... he's saying, *some of them*. 'Em here is short for *them*. Some of them serve snacks even. So what he's saying is, *some of them give you small amounts of food also*. A *snack* is a *small amount of food*.

And then Joe says, "But most of them had like free tastings. Whereas when we go to those larger wineries..."

Or when we'd go to those bigger wineries.

"you just don't get that sort of, uh..."

You just don't get that kind of.

"uh, um... They're just not as, uh, as friendly and..." And he kind of stops here.

Now when Joe says *free tastings*... When he's talking about some of the wineries having *free tastings*... Tastings are when you're able to try small amounts of different wine.

Okay, moving on in the conversation then, I say, "Yeah."

Just agreeing with Joe.

And then Joe says, "it seems like they don't go out of their way to try and, uh, y'know, make you feel welcome."

And when Joe says *go out of their way*... What this means is to try very hard to help others or make them feel comfortable. So he's saying the bigger wineries don't *go out of their way*. They don't try to help or to make people feel comfortable... not as much as the smaller wineries. An example of *go out of their way* would be: When my family visits, I *go out of my way* to make sure that they have everything they need. Go out of their way, or in this example, *go out of my way*. And when Joe says, *they don't go out of their way to make you*



Visit To San Francisco Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

feel welcome... Make you feel welcome. This means to try very hard to make you feel comfortable. Make you feel welcome. For example: When I first met Joe's family, they made me feel very welcome. I felt like I had known them for a long time. Make you feel welcome, or in this example, made me feel welcome.

And then, ending the conversation, I say, “Right.”

So I'm saying yes.

And then I say, “Yeah, I agree.”

* * * *

Okay, this is the end of the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Visit To San Francisco Part 2.” So if you feel that you need to, go back and listen to this lesson however many times it takes until you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary. And then when you feel like you're ready, go on to the mini-story.

Alright, see you again. Take care, goodbye.

Las Vegas Part 1 Conversation

Jaeson: Yeah, so I got, uh, the next few weeks. I'll just be, uh, just be me and the cat at the house.

Joe: Oh that's right. Gina went to, uh, Vegas with the kids, right?

Jaeson: Yeah, yeah, she's gonna be helpin' her sister out. Uh, her sister just had, uh, her baby...

Joe: Oh that's great.

Jaeson: ...and, and her husband had to go back to work after, after a week. So she's down there helpin' out.

Joe: So did she have a boy or a girl?

Jaeson: Had a boy, he's named Luke. He's...

Joe: Oh nice.

awesome: great

cool: calm or very good

mellow kid: a calm child

Jaeson: ...he's...yeah, he's **awesome**. He's really **cool**. He looks like a cute kid.

Joe: That's great you got to meet him when you were just there.

Jaeson: Yeah, yeah, he's, he's such a **mellow kid**. He's really awesome. And, uh...

Joe: Nice.

Jaeson: Yeah, she had him there at the house all by herself, too.

Joe: Oh wow.

Jaeson: Without the **midwives** or doctor or anything.

Joe: Oh yeah, Gina told me that she **went into labor** before the **midwife** could even arrive.

Jaeson: [laugh] Yeah...

Joe: Oh my gosh.

Las Vegas Part 1 Conversation

pretty crazy: difficult to believe

kind of: sort of

blue-collar town: the people in the town have jobs that do not need a college degree; they are not very educated

kinda': short for kind of
cutthroat: a person who does not care about other people; to only care about yourself

casino(s): place where people go to gamble; in Las Vegas a casino usually has a hotel

gambler: someone who plays a game to win money

a city that doesn't sleep: a city where everything is open until very late or where places are open all day and all night

twenty-four seven: 24 hours a day, 7 days a week

it (kinda') grows on you: you begin to like it

after a while: after some time passes

under the same roof: in the same building; can also mean in the same house

The Paris: short for The Paris Las Vegas which is the name of a hotel in Las Vegas

baptism: religious ceremony for a child

Jaeson: ...it was **pretty crazy.**

Joe: Yeah, oh man. You know, it, uh, thinking about you living in Vegas is really, it's really weird. Because you just don't seem like the, the type of person who would live in Vegas, y'know?

Jaeson: Yeah, y'know, it's **kind of a blue collar town**, y'know, **kinda' cutthroat.** Y'know, a lot of competition between all the different **casinos** and stuff. And y'know, if you're a **gambler**, y'know, I guess it's pretty cool, uh....

Joe: Man, that is just, that's **a city that doesn't sleep.**

Jaeson: Yeah, y'know, like the casinos are open **twenty-four seven.** Y'know, you can...

Joe: So are restaurants, right?

Jaeson: ...yeah you can go out to eat anytime of day, y'know. It's, **it kinda' grows on you after a while**, the 24 hour-ness of it.

Joe: Yeah, I mean, it, y'know.... Y'know what, what I always thought was weird, too, is when I go into some of those casinos, it's not just a casino. It's not as though all you see are slot machines and, uh, tables where they're playing cards or craps or whatever. They have all these, like, other things, y'know, that are **under the same roof** as the casino.

Jaeson: Oh yeah, yeah, yes shopping malls and stuff.

Joe: Yeah.

Jaeson: Well, well, you saw **The Paris**, right?

Joe: Dude, when I was at The Paris Las Vegas, that was the first time I had been to that casino, y'know.... When we were, uh, in Vegas a couple of weeks ago for your son's **baptism**...

Jaeson: Yeah, sure.

Joe: ...and, uh, I look up at the ceiling and it's all painted light blue like a sky. And

Las Vegas Part 1 Conversation

it (totally) threw me off: they also have, like, clouds painted there. I mean **it totally threw me off.** I thought I was outside for a second.

it confused me

Jaeson: [laugh] Yeah.

Joe: It was so weird!

Jaeson: Yeah, it's, it is pretty crazy the way they make it look like you're outside. And, y'know, they have like plants and trees in there and...

Joe: Yeah, that was another thing that made me feel like I was outside.

Jaeson: [laugh] Yeah, that's great. Yeah, Vegas is a lot of fun. Y'know, I'm not much of a gambler myself. But, uh, y'know, every once in a while, y'know, play some craps or, or play some blackjack or something.

Joe: Yeah.

Jaeson: I like sports, too.

Joe: You know what I like to do is, uh.... I'm not a gambler either, you know that. But, uh, what I like to do is to like just sit at one of the slot machines and, uh, play like, like play nickel slots. Right?

Jaeson: Oh yeah, you cannot lose too much that way.

Joe: Yeah, exactly, and then, you, you just put them in. You pull the, uh, you don't, you don't play too many times too fast, y'know. So you don't lose all your money.

Jaeson: Yeah.

on the house: for free
comped: given for free
high roller: someone who gambles a lot
the whole nine yards: everything; completely

Joe: But, uh, y'know, I'd just do it. Because then the waitresses come over and, y'know, they'll serve you drinks **on the house** as long as you're playing.

Jaeson: Oh yeah, yeah, y'know, you get your drinks **comped** if you're gamblin'. Or, y'know, shoot, if you're a **high roller**, then you get everything comped. You get the room comped, you get your drinks, you get free meals, uh, **the whole nine yards.**



Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Hello there and welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Las Vegas Part 1.”

Let's get started with the story.

* * * *

Mario lived in a small town named Smallsville.

It was 1:00 a.m. and Mario was hungry. But no restaurants were open twenty-four seven.

“New York is a city that doesn’t sleep,” Mario said. So he decided to drive to New York.

He arrived in New York at 3:00 a.m. After a while he found a restaurant. He ordered a hamburger with peanut butter.

“I like peanut butter on my hamburger,” he said to the waitress.

This totally threw the waitress off.

She said, “That’s pretty crazy. I do not know anyone who likes peanut butter on their hamburger.”

“You should try it, it kinda grows on you,” said Mario.

The waitress gave him a hamburger with peanut butter. After he was finished eating he wanted to pay for the hamburger.

“You don’t need to pay for the hamburger. Your food is on the house,” said the waitress.

Mario was surprised. “Wow, I’ve never had a hamburger comped before,” said Mario.

Mario really liked New York. The next day he decided to stay.

* * * *

Okay, so that brings us to the end of the story. Now I'm going to start the story again and this time I will ask you some questions. As always, feel free to answer these questions out loud if you wish or, if you need some more time to think about it, then you can press pause and then press play again when you're ready.

Okay, let's start at the beginning.



Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

* * * * *

Mario lived in a small town named Smallsville.

Who lived in a small town? Did Mario's brother live in a small town?

No, Mario's brother didn't live in a small town.

Did Mario live in a small town?

Yes, yes, he did. Mario lived in a small town.

Where did Mario live? Did he live in a big town?

No, he didn't live in a big town.

Did he live in a small town?

Yes, yes, he did. Mario lived in a small town.

What was the name of the town? Was it New York?

No, Mario didn't live in New York.

Was Smallsville the name of the town?

Yes, that's right. The town was named Smallsville.

Was Smallsville a big town?

No, Smallsville wasn't a big town.

Was Smallsville a small town?

Yes, Smallsville was a small town.

Did Mario live in a small town named Smallsville?

Yes, he did. Mario lived in a small town named Smallsville.



Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

It was 1:00 a.m. and Mario was hungry.

Was Mario hungry?

Yes, he was. Mario was hungry.

What time was it? Was it 5:00 p.m.?

No, it wasn't 5:00 p.m.

Was it 1:00 a.m.?

Yes, it was 1:00 a.m.

Who was hungry? Was Mario's brother hungry?

No, Mario's brother wasn't hungry.

Was Mario hungry?

Yes, Mario was hungry.

Was it 1:00 a.m. and Mario was hungry?

Yes, it was. It was 1:00 a.m. and Mario was hungry.

But no restaurants were open twenty-four seven.

Were there any restaurants open twenty-four seven?

No, there were no restaurants open twenty-four seven.

How many restaurants were open twenty-four seven? Were there five?

No, there weren't five restaurants open twenty-four seven.

Were there zero restaurants open twenty-four seven?



Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *that is correct. There were no restaurants open twenty-four seven.*

Were there any restaurants open twenty-four seven?

No, no, restaurants were open twenty-four seven.

Were there any restaurants open 24 hours a day, 7 days a week?

No there weren't, there were no restaurants open twenty-four seven, which means that there were no restaurants open 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

“New York is a city that doesn’t sleep,” Mario said.

Who said, “New York is a city that doesn’t sleep”? Did Mario’s brother say it?

No, Mario’s brother didn’t say it.

Did Mario say, “New York is a city that doesn’t sleep”?

Yes, that's correct. Mario said, “New York is a city that doesn’t sleep.”

What is a city that doesn’t sleep? Is Paris a city that doesn’t sleep?

No, no, it’s not Paris.

Is New York a city that doesn’t sleep?

Yes, New York is a city that doesn’t sleep.

Is New York a city where everything is open late at night?

Yes, it is. New York is a city where everything is open late at night, New York is a city that doesn’t sleep, they’re the same things. If you say that something is a city that doesn’t sleep that means it is a city where pretty much everything is open late at night.

So he decided to drive to New York.

Did he decide to drive to New York?



Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *he did. He decided to drive to New York.*

Who decided to drive to New York? Did Mario's mother decide to drive to New York?

No, Mario's mother didn't decide to drive to New York.

Did Mario decide to drive to New York?

Yes, yes, he did. He decided to drive to New York.

What did he decide to do? Did he decide to fly to New York?

No, he didn't decide to fly to New York.

Did he decide to drive to New York?

Yes, he decided to drive to New York.

Where did he decide to drive? Did he decide to drive to Paris?

No, he didn't decide to drive to Paris.

Did he decide to drive to New York?

Yes, he did. He decided to drive to New York.

He arrived in New York at 3:00 a.m.

Did he arrive in New York at 3:00 a.m.?

Yes, he did. He arrived in New York at 3:00 a.m.

When did he arrive in New York? Did he arrive in New York at 3:00 p.m.?

No, he didn't arrive in New York at 3:00 p.m.

Did he arrive in New York at 3:00 a.m.?



Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *he did*. He arrived in New York at 3:00 a.m.

Who arrived in New York at 3:00 a.m.? Did Mario's dog arrive in New York at 3:00 a.m.?

No, not Mario's dog.

Did Mario arrive in New York at 3:00 a.m.?

Yes, *yes, he did*. Mario arrived in New York at 3:00 a.m.

Where did Mario arrive at 3:00 a.m.? Did he arrive in Paris?

No, he didn't arrive in Paris.

Did he arrive in New York at 3:00 a.m.?

Yes, *he did*. He arrived in New York at 3:00 a.m.

Did Mario arrive in New York at 3:00 a.m.?

Yes, *he did*. Mario arrived in New York at 3:00 a.m.

After a while he found a restaurant.

Did he find a restaurant after a while?

Yes, *yes, he did*. After a while he found a restaurant.

When did he find a restaurant? Did he find a restaurant after a while?

Yes, *yes, he did*. After a while he found a restaurant.

Did he find a restaurant after some time had passed?

Well, *yes, he did*. He found a restaurant after a while which is the same as he found a restaurant after some time had passed.

Who found a restaurant? Did Mario's dad find a restaurant?



Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

No, not Mario's dad.

Did Mario find a restaurant?

Yes, that's correct. Mario found a restaurant. He found a restaurant.

What did Mario do after a while? Did he find a car?

No, he didn't find a car.

Did he find a restaurant?

Yes, he found a restaurant.

Did Mario find a restaurant after a while?

Yes, he did.

Did Mario find a restaurant after some time had passed?

Yes, that's correct. Mario found a restaurant after some time had passed which is the same thing as saying Mario had found a restaurant after a while.

He ordered a hamburger with peanut butter.

Did he order a hamburger with peanut butter?

Yes, yes, he did. He ordered a hamburger with peanut butter.

What did he order? Did he order a pizza?

No, he didn't order a pizza.

Did he order a hamburger with peanut butter?

Yes, that's what he ordered. He ordered a hamburger with peanut butter.

Who ordered a hamburger with peanut butter? Did Marcus order a hamburger with peanut butter?

Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

No, it wasn't Marcus who ordered a hamburger with peanut butter.

Did Mario order a hamburger with peanut butter?

Yes, Mario ordered a hamburger with peanut butter.

Did he order a hamburger with peanut butter?

Yes, he did. He ordered a hamburger with peanut butter.

"I like peanut butter on my hamburger," he said to the waitress.

Did he say to the waitress "I like peanut butter on my hamburger"?

Yes, yes, he did. He said to the waitress "I like peanut butter on my hamburger."

Who said, "I like peanut butter on my hamburger"? Did the waitress say it?

No, the waitress didn't say it.

Did Mario say, "I like peanut butter on my hamburger"?

Yes, Mario said, "I like peanut butter on my hamburger."

Who likes peanut butter on his hamburger? Does Mario's uncle like peanut butter on his hamburger?

No, not Mario's uncle.

Does Mario like peanut butter on his hamburger?

Yes, Mario likes peanut butter on his hamburger. He said, "I like peanut butter on my hamburger."

What does Mario like on his hamburger? Does he like tomato on his hamburger?

No, he doesn't like tomato on his hamburger.

Does he like peanut butter on his hamburger?

Yes, he does. He likes peanut butter on his hamburger.

Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Did Mario tell the waitress that he likes peanut butter on his hamburger?

Yes, *he did*. *He said, "I like peanut butter on my hamburger."* *He said that to the waitress.*

This totally threw the waitress off.

Did this totally throw the waitress off?

Yes, *it did*. *It totally threw the waitress off.*

Did this totally throw Mario off?

No, it didn't totally throw Mario off.

Did this confuse the waitress?

Yes, *yes, it did*. *If something threw the waitress off, that means it confused the waitress.*

Was the waitress confused?

Yes, *she was*. *The waitress was totally thrown off which is to say the waitress was confused.*

Did this totally throw the waitress off?

Yes, *it did*. *This totally threw the waitress off.*

She said, “That’s pretty crazy. I do not know anyone who likes peanut butter on their hamburger.”

Did she say, “That’s pretty crazy”?

Yes, *she did*. *She said, “That’s pretty crazy.”*

Who said, “That’s pretty crazy. I do not know anyone who likes peanut butter on their hamburger”? Did Mario say it?

No, Mario didn’t say it.

Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Did the waitress say it?

Yes, yes, that's correct. The waitress said it.

Did the waitress say, "That's pretty crazy"?

Yes, she did.

Did the waitress say it was difficult to believe?

Yes, yes, she did. She said, "That's pretty crazy," which means that is pretty difficult to believe.

Did the waitress say, "I do not know anyone who likes peanut butter on their hamburger"?

Yes, she did. The waitress said, "I do not know anyone who likes peanut butter on their hamburger."

Did Mario say, "I do not know anyone who likes peanut butter on their hamburger"?

No, Mario didn't say that. The waitress said it.

Does the waitress know anyone who likes peanut butter on their hamburger?

No, she doesn't. She said, "I do not know anyone who likes peanut butter on their hamburger."

"You should try it, it kinda grows on you," said Mario.

Did Mario say, "You should try it, it kinda grows on you?"

Yes, yes, he did. Mario said, "You should try it, it kinda grows on you."

Who should try it? Should Mario try it?

No, Mario shouldn't try it.

Should the waitress try it?

Yes, the waitress should try it.

Who said, "It kinda grows on you"? Did Mario say it?



Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *he did*. Mario said, “It kinda grows on you.”

Did Mario say that you begin to like it?

Well, yes, *he did*. When Mario said, “It kinda grows on you,” it was the same thing as saying you will begin to like it if you try it.

The waitress gave him a hamburger with peanut butter.

Did the waitress give him a hamburger with peanut butter?

Yes, *that's correct*. The waitress gave him a hamburger with peanut butter.

What did the waitress give him? Did she give him a turkey sandwich?

No, *she didn't give him a turkey sandwich*.

Did she give him a hamburger with tomato?

No, *she didn't give him a hamburger with tomato*.

Did she give him a hamburger with peanut butter?

Yes, yes, *she did*. She gave him a hamburger with peanut butter.

Who gave him a hamburger with peanut butter? Did the waitress give it to him?

Yes, *that's correct*. The waitress gave him a hamburger with peanut butter.

Did Mario's mother give him a hamburger with peanut butter?

No, *his mother didn't give him a hamburger with peanut butter*. The waitress gave him a hamburger with peanut butter.

Who did the waitress give the hamburger with peanut butter to? Did she give it to the policeman?

No, *she didn't give it to the policeman*.



Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Did she give it to Mario?

Yes, *that's correct. She gave it to Mario.*

Did the waitress give Mario a hamburger with peanut butter?

Yes, *she did. The waitress gave him a hamburger with peanut butter.*

After he was finished eating he wanted to pay for the hamburger.

Did he want to pay for the hamburger after he was finished eating?

Yes, *yes, he did. After he was finished eating he wanted to pay for the hamburger.*

When did he want to pay for the hamburger? Did he want to pay for it after he washed his hands?

No, that's not when he wanted to pay for it.

Did he want to pay for it before he finished eating?

No, he didn't want to pay for it before he finished eating.

Did he want to pay for it after he finished eating?

Yes, *that's correct. After he finished eating he wanted to pay for the hamburger.*

So who wanted to pay for the hamburger? Did Mario's uncle want to pay for the hamburger?

No, it wasn't Mario's uncle who wanted to pay for the hamburger.

Did Mario want to pay for the hamburger?

Yes, Mario wanted to pay for the hamburger. He wanted to pay for the hamburger.

What did he want to pay for? Did he want to pay for the soda?

No, he didn't want to pay for the soda.

Did he want to pay for the hamburger?



Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, he wanted to pay for the hamburger.

Did he want to pay for the hamburger after he finished eating?

Yes, he did. After he was finished eating he wanted to pay for the hamburger.

“You don’t need to pay for the hamburger. Your food is on the house,” said the waitress.

Did the waitress say, “You don’t need to pay for the hamburger. Your food is on the house”?

Yes, yes, she did. The waitress said, “You don’t need to pay for the hamburger. Your food is on the house.”

Who said, “You don’t need to pay for the hamburger”? Did Mario say it?

No, Mario didn’t say it.

Did the waitress say it?

Yes, yes, she did. The waitress said it.

Who did not need to pay for the hamburger? Mario?

Yes, that’s correct. The waitress told Mario he did not need to pay for the hamburger.

Whose food is on the house? Was the waitress’ food on the house?

No, the waitress’ food wasn’t on the house.

Was Mario’s food on the house?

Yes, Mario’s food was on the house.

What was on the house? Was Mario’s drink on the house?

No, Mario’s drink wasn’t on the house.

Was Mario’s food on the house?



Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, Mario's food was *on the house*.

Was Mario's food free?

Yes, Mario's food was free. When you say *his food was on the house*, that's the same thing as saying Mario's food was free.

Did Mario have to pay for his food?

No, Mario did not have to pay for his food. Mario's food was *on the house* which means he did not have to pay for his food.

Mario was surprised. "Wow, I've never had a hamburger comped before," said Mario.

Was Mario surprised?

Yes, Mario was surprised.

Did Mario say, "Wow, I've never had a hamburger comped before"?

Yes, Mario said, "Wow, I've never had a hamburger comped before."

Who was surprised? Was the waitress surprised?

No, the waitress wasn't surprised.

Was Mario surprised?

Yes, Mario was surprised.

Had Mario ever had a hamburger comped?

No, Mario said, "I've never had a hamburger comped before," so that means Mario had never had a hamburger comped.

Had Mario ever had a hamburger for free?

No, he never had a hamburger for free because he said he had never had a hamburger comped before and to have something comped means to get it for free.



Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

When had Mario had a hamburger comped before? Had he had a hamburger comped last month?

No, no, he didn't have a hamburger comped last month. He never had a hamburger comped before.

Why was Mario surprised? Was he surprised because he had his hamburger comped?

Yes, yes, that's true. Mario was surprised and he said, "Wow, I've never had a hamburger comped before," so that probably means he was surprised because he had never had a hamburger comped before.

Mario really liked New York.

Did Mario really like New York?

Yes, yes, he did. Mario really liked New York.

Who really liked New York? Did the waitress really like New York?

No, the waitress didn't really like New York.

Did Mario really like New York?

Yes, that's correct. Mario really liked New York.

What did Mario really like? Did he really like Paris?

No, he didn't really like Paris.

Did he really like New York?

Yes, Mario really liked New York.

Did Mario really like New York?

Yes, he did. Mario really liked New York.

The next day he decided to stay.

Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

The next day, did he decide to stay?

Yes, yes, he did. The next day he decided to stay.

What did he decide to do the next day? Did he decide to stay?

Yes, he did. He decided to stay.

Did he decide to leave?

No, he didn't decide to leave.

Did he decide to stay?

Yes, he decided to stay.

Who decided to stay? Did Mario's uncle decide to stay?

No, not Mario's uncle.

Did Mario decide to stay?

Yes, Mario decided to stay.

When did he decide to stay? Did he decide to stay that night?

No, he didn't decide that night.

Did he decide the next day?

Yes, he decided the next day.

The next day, did he decide to stay?

Yes, yes, that's correct. The next day he decided to stay.

* * * * *

Okay, so that brings us to the end of our story which means that we have now come to the end of our mini-lesson for the conversation "Las Vegas Part 1." Please, on your own, tell this story. Do your best to tell the



Las Vegas Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

entire story and use the idioms that we discussed. We discussed “twenty-four seven,” “a city that doesn’t sleep,” “after a while,” “threw the waitress off,” “pretty crazy,” “it kinda grows on you,” “on the house,” and “comped.” So be sure to use these idioms when you tell the story.

Okay, good luck and I’ll see you next time.

Las Vegas Part 1 POV Lesson

Hello again and welcome to the point of view stories for “Las Vegas Part 1”. Now, the mini-story for this lesson is actually told as if it has already happened. So today we’ll hear three different versions of this same story. We’ll hear one being told as if it’s happening right now. We’ll hear one being told as if it’s happening sometime in the future, say four years from now. And then we’ll also hear one version of the story being told by Mario, who is the main person in the story. Okay, so let’s get started.

* * * * *

Mario lives in a small town named Smallsville.

It is 1 o’clock a.m. and Mario is hungry. But no restaurants are open twenty-four seven.

“New York is a city that doesn’t sleep,” Mario says. So he decides to drive to New York.

He arrives in New York at 3 o’clock a.m. After a while he finds a restaurant. He orders a hamburger with peanut butter.

“I like peanut butter on my hamburger,” he says to the waitress.

This totally throws the waitress off.

She says, “That’s pretty crazy. I don’t know anyone who likes peanut butter on their hamburger.”

“You should try it, it kinda grows on you,” says Mario.

The waitress gives him a hamburger with peanut butter. After he’s finished eating he wants to pay for the hamburger.

“You don’t need to pay for the hamburger. Your food is on the house,” the waitress says.

Mario is surprised. He says, “Wow, I’ve never had a hamburger comped before.”

Mario really likes New York. The next day he decides to stay.

* * * * *

Okay, so that is the story told as if it is happening right now. Next we’re going to hear the story told as if it is going to happen four years from now. So let’s start.

* * * * *



Las Vegas Part 1 POV Lesson

In four years Mario is going to be living in a small town named Smallsville.

At 1 o'clock a.m. Mario'll be hungry. But no restaurants will be open twenty-four seven.

Mario'll say, "New York is a city that doesn't sleep." So he'll decide to drive to New York.

He's gonna arrive in New York at 3 a.m. After a while he'll find a restaurant. He'll order a hamburger with peanut butter.

"I like peanut butter on my hamburger," he'll say to the waitress.

This is gonna totally throw the waitress off.

She'll say, "That's pretty crazy. I do not know anyone who likes peanut butter on their hamburger."

"You should try it, it kinda grows on you," Mario'll say.

The waitress is gonna give him a hamburger with peanut butter. After he's finished eating he'll want to pay for the hamburger.

"You don't need to pay for the hamburger. Your food is on the house," the waitress'll say.

Mario will be surprised and he'll say, "Wow, I've never had a hamburger comped before."

Mario's really gonna like New York. The next day he'll decide to stay.

* * * * *

Alright, so that brings us to the end of the story told as if it is happening four years from now. You may have noticed that sometimes when we talk about time we say what time it is along with the word o'clock...so we would say 1 o'clock a.m. or you could say 1 a.m. Saying 1 a.m. or saying 1 o'clock a.m. is the same thing. You can say it either way that you want. Okay, so next we will hear the story as told by Mario. So here is Mario telling the story.

* * * * *

I live in a small town named Smallsville.

It is 1 o'clock a.m. and I am hungry. But no restaurants are open twenty-four seven.



Las Vegas Part 1 POV Lesson

“New York is a city that doesn’t sleep,” I say. So I decide to drive to New York.

I arrive in New York at 3 a.m. After a while I find a restaurant. I order a hamburger with peanut butter.

I tell the waitress, “I like peanut butter on my hamburger.”

This totally throws the waitress off.

She says, “That’s pretty crazy. I do not know anyone who likes peanut butter on their hamburger.”

“You should try it, it kinda grows on you,” I say to her.

The waitress gives me a hamburger with peanut butter. After I am finished eating I want to pay for the hamburger.

“You don’t need to pay for the hamburger. Your food is on the house,” the waitress says.

I’m surprised. I say to her, “Wow, I’ve never had a hamburger comped before.”

I really like New York. The next day I decide to stay.

* * * * *

Alright, great. We have now completed the point of view stories for the lesson “Las Vegas Part 1”. Now go back and listen to the stories again. And after you complete a story try to tell that story to yourself. Tell it without looking at the story. And then do this for each of the three stories that we just heard. You see, when you listen to these point of view stories you get to learn grammar without even having to memorize all the grammar rules. You see, it’s easy. Okay, that’s all for now. Thanks and I’ll see ya next time.



Las Vegas Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Hello and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Las Vegas Part 1.” In this conversation Joe and his best friend Jaeson are talking together. They are first talking about Gina, Jaeson’s wife, being in Las Vegas to help her sister with her new baby. Gina is from Las Vegas. She lived there when she was a child until she got older. Jaeson moved to Las Vegas to go to college. That’s when they met. They now live in San Francisco. After Jaeson talks about Gina being in Las Vegas, the conversation changes to Joe and Jaeson talking about Las Vegas.

So, let’s begin with the conversation.

* * * * *

Jaeson first says, “Yeah, so I got, uh, the next few weeks. I’ll just be, uh, just be me and the cat at the house.”

When he starts off saying yeah, yeah is just slang or casual or informal for yes. The next few weeks. The next few weeks, few meaning three or more. The next few weeks.

Then Joe says, “Oh that’s right. Gina went to, uh, Vegas with the kids, right?”

Vegas is just short for Las Vegas.

And then Jaeson says, “Yeah, yeah, she’s gonna be helpin’ her sister out.”

Gonna is just short for going to. And helpin’ is short for helping.

And Jaeson goes on to say, “Uh, her sister just had, uh, her baby...” And Joe says, “Oh that’s great.” And Jaeson says, “and, and her husband had to go back to work after, after a week. So she’s down there helpin’ out.”

Down there helpin’ out. What Jaeson is talking about is Gina, his wife, is helping out. Helpin’ again... short for helping. She’s helping out her sister with her new baby. He says down there. Down there meaning Vegas. Las Vegas is southeast of San Francisco. So that’s why he says she’s down there. It also could just be filler or not really needed. Just kind of put in there. Just kind of said but not needed. But here it does mean that it is down. It’s south.... southeast from San Francisco.

So then Joe says, “So did she have a boy or a girl?” And Jaeson says, “Had a boy, he’s named Luke. He’s...” And Joe says, “Oh nice.” And Jaeson goes on to say, “he’s...yeah, he’s awesome.”

Awesome means great. Awesome. An example of awesome would be: I had an awesome time at the concert.

Las Vegas Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Jaeson goes on to say, “He’s really cool.”

Cool means calm.... very good. Cool. An example of cool would be: Tim is a cool guy. I really like him a lot. Cool.

And then Jaeson says, “He looks like a cute kid.” Then Joe says, “That’s great you got to meet him when you were just there.” And Jaeson says, “Yeah, yeah, he’s, he’s such a mellow kid. He’s really awesome. And, uh...”

Mellow kid. Mellow kid means a calm child. Kid is kind of a slang word for child and mellow means calm. So a calm child. An example of mellow kid would be: John is a mellow kid. He never cries. Mellow kid.

And then Joe says, “Nice.” And Jaeson says, “Yeah, she had him there at the house all by herself, too.”

She had him there at the house all by herself. What he’s saying here is Gina’s sister gave birth to her son by herself. Had him there all at the house, all by herself. Or I’m sorry, had him there at the house all by herself.

And Joe says, “Oh wow.”

Oh, wow just meaning, oh my gosh. I don’t believe that.

And Jaeson says, “Without the midwives or doctor or anything.”

Now a midwife, or midwives if there are more than one.... That is a person or people who help a woman to have her baby. Midwife or midwives. An example of that would be: Sara was very happy that you had a midwife deliver her baby. Midwives or midwife.

And then Joe says, “Oh yeah, Gina told me that she went into labor before the midwife could even arrive.”

Went into labor. Now went into labor means to begin to have the baby. For example: Jenny went into labor after being pregnant for nine months. Went into labor.

And Jaeson laughing says, “Yeah...” And Joe says, “Oh my gosh.”

Like, I just can’t believe that.

And Jaeson says, “it was pretty crazy.”

Las Vegas Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Pretty crazy here means difficult to believe. Pretty meaning very.... Very difficult to believe. An example of pretty crazy would be: It was pretty crazy that Seth finished college in two years. Pretty crazy.

And then Joe goes on to say, "Yeah, oh man."

Oh man meaning, oh my gosh. Oh wow.

And then Joe says, "You know, it, uh, thinking about you living in Vegas is really, it's really weird. Because you just don't seem like the, the type of person who would live in Vegas, y'know?"

It's really weird. Weird means strange. Then, when he says the type of person.... Type of person means the kind of person. And then at the end when he says y'know.... Y'know is short for you know. It's just put together.

And Jaeson says, "Yeah, y'know, it's kind of a blue collar town...."

Kind of means sort of. Sort of a blue collar town. For example: Kory gets kind of angry when his favorite football team loses. Kind of. Kind of a blue collar town. Sort of a blue collar town. Blue collar town. Now that means the people in the town have jobs that do not need a college degree. So they are not very educated. Blue collar town. An example of blue collar town would be: I grew up in a blue collar town. Many of the people did not finish high school and they worked at factories. Blue collar town.

And then Jaeson goes on to say, "y'know, kinda' cutthroat."

Kinda'. This is just short for kind of. Kinda'. An example of kinda' would be: John gets kinda' angry when his favorite football team loses. Kinda. So he's saying, kinda' cutthroat. Las Vegas is kinda' cutthroat. Cutthroat means a person who does not care about other people. Or, it's to only care about yourself. Cutthroat. For example: Lewis is cutthroat when he plays poker. Cutthroat.

And then Jaeson goes on to say, "Y'know, a lot of competition between all the different casinos and stuff."

Casinos. These are places where people go to gamble. In Las Vegas a casino usually has a hotel. Casino. An example of casino, or casinos, more than one, is: Tim loves to go to casinos because he likes to gamble. Casinos.

And then Jaeson goes on to say, "And y'know, if you're a gambler, y'know, I guess it's pretty cool, uh..."

Las Vegas Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Gambler. A gambler is someone who plays a game for money or to win money. So to gamble means to play a game to win money. A person who gambles is called a gambler. For example: Stuart is a gambler. He loves to go to casinos. **Gambler.**

And then Joe goes on to say, “Man, that is just, that’s a city that doesn’t sleep.”

A city that doesn’t sleep. What that means is a city where everything is open until very late. Or where places are open all day and all night. A city that doesn’t sleep. For example: When someone says that Las Vegas is a city that doesn’t sleep, they mean the casinos, restaurants, bars, and other places are open all night long. They do not close at night. A city that doesn’t sleep.

And then Jaeson says, “Yeah, y’know, like the casinos are open twenty-four seven. Y’know, you can...”

Twenty-four seven. What this means is 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. They don’t close. For example of twenty-four seven: Some restaurants in New York are open twenty-four seven. Twenty-four seven.

So then Joe says, “So are restaurants, right?” And Jaeson says, “yeah you can go out to eat anytime of day, y’know. It’s, it kinda’ grows on you after a while....”

It kinda’ grows on you after a while. First of all, kinda’ is short for kind of. So it kind of grows on you after a while. It grows on you after a while. Or it grows on you means, you begin to like it. It grows on you. For example: I did not like broccoli at first when I was younger but it began to grow on me after eating it every day. It grows on you. After a while. After a while just means after some time passes. An example of after a while would be: I felt great when I started the hike. But then after a while my legs began to hurt. After a while.

And then Jaeson goes on to say, “the 24 hour-ness of it.”

24 hour-ness. This is describing everything being open 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. 24 hour-ness.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, I mean, it, y’know.... Y’know what, what I always thought was weird, too, is when I go into some of those casinos, it’s not just a casino. It’s not as though all you see are slot machines and, uh, tables where they’re playing cards or craps or whatever.”

What he’s talking about here is slot machines and playing cards or craps. These are games played to win money.

Then he goes on to say, “They have all these, like, other things....”

Las Vegas Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Now *like here* is just used as filler. You don't even have to say that but in conversational English a lot of times we do use the word *like*. If you take it away a lot of times, you'll see that the sentence will still make sense. So here you don't even need it. But we put it in anyway.

So he says, "Yeah, they have all these things, like, other things, y'know, that are under the same roof as the casino."

Under the same roof. This means *in the same building*. It can also mean *in the same house*. For example: I went to a casino in Las Vegas that had restaurants, a hotel and a café all *under the same roof*. *Under the same roof*.

And then Jaeson says, "Oh yeah, yeah, yes shopping malls and stuff." And Joe says, "Yeah." And Jaeson says, "Well, well, you saw *The Paris*, right?"

The Paris. This is short for *The Paris Las Vegas*, which is the name of a hotel in Las Vegas. An example of *The Paris* would be: The first time I went to Las Vegas, I stayed at *The Paris*. *The Paris*.

And Joe says, "Dude...."

Dude is a slang word usually used when speaking to a guy, but not always. It could be when you're speaking to a girl, also. *Dude*.

So he says, "Dude, when I was at *The Paris Las Vegas*, that was the first time I had been to that casino, y'know.... When we were, uh, in Vegas a couple of weeks ago for your son's baptism..."

A couple of weeks. Couple meaning two, or about two weeks. *Baptism.* Baptism means a religious ceremony for a child. An example of baptism would be: Joe and I went to Las Vegas for a child's baptism. *Baptism*.

And Jaeson says, "Yeah, sure." And Joe says, "and, uh, I look up at the ceiling and it's all painted light blue like a sky. And they also have, like, clouds painted there. I mean it totally threw me off."

So, *totally here* means completely. *It completely threw me off*, or *it threw me off*. What that means is, it confused me. *It completely confused me* or *it totally confused me*. An example of *it threw me off* is: The questions on my last math test really *threw me off*. I did not expect it to be so difficult. *It threw me off*.

And Joe goes on to say, "I thought I was outside for a second." And Jaeson laughs and says, "Yeah." And Joe says, "It was so weird!" And Jaeson says, "Yeah, it's, it is pretty crazy the way they make it look like you're outside. And, y'know, they have like plants and trees in there and..." And

Las Vegas Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Joe says, "Yeah, that was another thing that made me feel like I was outside." And Jaeson laughs and says, "Yeah, that's great. Yeah, Vegas is a lot of fun. Y'know, I'm not much of a gambler myself. But, uh, y'know, every once in a while...."

Or sometimes, is what he is saying. Once in a while means sometimes.

"y'know, play some craps or, or play some blackjack or something."

Blackjack is just another game played to win money.

And Joe says, "Yeah." And Jaeson says, "I like sports, too." And Joe says, "You know what I like to do is, uh.... I'm not a gambler either, you know that. But, uh, what I like to do is to like just sit at one of the slot machines and, uh, play like, like play nickel slots. Right?

Slot machines. This is a game played to win money. Nickel slots are a kind of slot machine. So it just costs a nickel to play them. Or five cents to play.

And Jaeson says, "Oh yeah, you cannot lose too much that way."

What he's saying here.... You cannot lose too much, is that you cannot lose too much money.

And then Joe says, "Yeah, exactly, and then, you, you just put them in. You pull the, uh, you don't, you don't play too many times too fast, y'know. So you don't lose all your money."

Now what Joe is saying here is in these slot machines, you put a nickel... one nickel or a five cent coin in at a time - into these machines - and then you just pull a handle down. So it's kind of a slow game and because it's slow you're not able to lose a lot of money.

And then Jaeson says, "Yeah." And Joe says, "But, uh, y'know, I'd just do it. Because then the waitresses come over and, y'know, they'll serve you drinks on the house as long as you're playing."

On the house. What this means is for free. So when something is given to you or served to you on the house, it means that you don't have to pay for it. For example: The waiter spilled a drink on Natalie so he gave her dinner on the house. On the house.

And Jaeson says, "Oh yeah, yeah, y'know, you get your drinks comped if you're gamblin'. Or, y'know, shoot, if you're a high roller, then you get everything comped."

Comped. What this means is given for free. Same as on the house. So for example: The waiter spilled a drink on Natalie so he comped her dinner. Comped. Now shoot is used here, when Jaeson says, "shoot, if



Las Vegas Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

you're a high roller, then you can get everything comped." Shoot is just a filler word. It doesn't even have to be in there. It's just kind of put in but doesn't really mean anything. High roller. A high roller is someone who gambles a lot. For example: Robert is a real high roller. Last year he won \$100,000.00 at the casino. High roller.

And then Jaeson goes on to say, "You get the room comped, you get your drinks, you get free meals, uh, the whole nine yards.

So he's saying you get the room comped. You get your room for free. You get your drinks for free. You get your meals for free. The whole nine yards. Whole nine yards means everything. For example: John and Mary had a party. They had food, drinks, music, the whole nine yards. Whole nine yards.

* * * * *

Okay, this concludes the vocabulary lesson for the conversation "Las Vegas Part 1." Now, if you need to, go back and listen to this vocabulary lesson a few times, always making sure you do it in a relaxed way. Just until you have an understanding, a basic understanding of the vocabulary. And then when you feel ready, go to the mini-story.

Alright, see you next time. Goodbye.

Las Vegas Part 2 Conversation

like a kid in the candy store: to be very excited about something

run into a lot of temptation: to have a lot of things that you would want to do

hangin' out: casually passing time

Joe: I'll tell ya, when I think about you going to college in Vegas, it just, I.... It's so hard for me to believe because I think of myself going to college when I was 18. And, y'know, I just, I would have been **like a kid in the candy store** there.

Jaeson: [laugh] Yeah, well, you do **run into a lot of temptation** there. Uh, y'know, and especially as a college student and you're **hangin' out** with other folks. And, y'know, the, the bars are open all night...

Joe: It's your first time living on your own...

Jaeson: First time away from home, exactly.

Joe: ...yeah, exactly. So is, is UNLV actually on the strip?

Jaeson: Um, it's close. You're like about a couple of miles away from the strip. But it's, y'know, it's probably like walking distance from some casinos. Because, y'know, not all the casinos are on the strip, uh...

Joe: Oh my gosh.

Jaeson: ...y'know, some of them, some of them are off the strip. And there's, y'know, there's even like bars where they have like video poker and...

Joe: On campus?

Jaeson: ...blackjack. Like right across the street.

Joe: Oh man. You know that they just want to entice the, uh, students to come out and gamble.

Jaeson: Oh yeah, y'know, and some people, y'know, they get, y'know they have a problem or whatever. Or they get **caught up in the moment** and they just start gamblin'. And then they lose and they start **hittin' the ATM** and.... And losin' some more tryin' to win it back and, y'know, it's...I saw...

Joe: It's an ugly cycle.

Jaeson: ...yeah, I had a couple of good friends who, uh.... Man they just kinda' **threw their, their lives away** almost just gambling, all the time, y'know.

Las Vegas Part 2 Conversation

Joe: Wait, did they gamble, were they gamblers before they arrived in town? Or...

a little bit: a small amount

the/that kind of money: a lot of money

Jaeson: Y'know, maybe **a little bit**. But it's just, it's always right there. There's always that temptation, y'know? And, y'know, I don't know, none of them really had, had **the kind of money** to where they should be, could be gamblin', y'know the, the amounts that they were talkin' about. Like, uh, Gina's friend Foo, one time he had to borrow like 5,000 dollars from us to cover some...

Joe: What?

Jaeson: ...yeah, yeah, he had gambled away some money off his mom's credit card.

Joe: Oh man, did she find out?

Jaeson: Uh, no, coz that's, that's why he wanted to borrow the money from us. Y'know, so...

I got you: I understand

Joe: Oh, **I got you**, to pay before she saw it.

lose their cool: to get angry or upset

Jaeson: Yeah, yeah coz if his parents saw the bill and, and figured out that he was gamblin' away the money on their credit cards, they would totally **lose their cool**.

Joe: Yeah.

Jaeson: I mean...[laugh]

Joe: Yeah...

flip out: to get angry or upset; same as *lose your cool*

would have killed me: would have been very angry at me

Jaeson: They would, they would **flip out** on him.

Joe: Yeah, I'm not surprised. My parents **would have killed me**...

Jaeson: [laugh]

Joe: ...if that would have happened. Y'know, they wouldn't have been laughing, I'll tell you that.

break down and cry: to cry

Jaeson: Oh yeah, well, y'know, you lose that kind of money, it'll make, it'll make even the, the hardened, y'know, guy **break down and, and cry**, y'know.

Las Vegas Part 2 Conversation

Joe: Yeah, yeah, I'm sure.

Jaeson: [laugh] It's no fun, man. That's why, y'know, I never really got into gamblin' that much, uh, y'know. I just, I, I did, like they flew me out there for my recruiting trip, to be on...

Joe: Wait, wait, recruiting trip?

Jaeson: Yeah, I was on the diving team there...at UNLV.

Joe: Oh at the college?

Jaeson: Yeah, springboard diving.

Joe: Wait, you mean like what we see in the Olympics?

Jaeson: Yep.

Joe: Oh, man. I can't wait to see...

Jaeson: Yeah.

Joe: next time we go to a place where there's a pool and a diving board, you're gonna have to show me some of these tricks.

Jaeson: Yeah, y'know, I've got some, uh, I've got some tricks that I...

Joe: [laugh]

Jaeson: ...that I can use. Y'know, I would do, y'know, the worst are the hardest ones. I would do like a front three and a half or, y'know, a back two and a half. I did three meters and one meter springboard. Y'know, we did practices. So I didn't really get the chance to gamble that much. Coz after classes, y'know, I would have to go to, uh, go to diving practice and **bang out** my dives...

Joe: Yeah.

Jaeson: ...so, um...

Joe: I mean, I just, uh, I would just imagine though, since you're actually there it's like

Las Vegas Part 2 Conversation

when in Rome:
*behaving the same way
as a certain group of
people*

when in Rome, y'know, like you're gonna start gambling.

Jaeson: Yeah, y'know, for a lot of people it's just a quarter here or there. Like, y'know, you've got to do your laundry so you, you pop a quarter in the machine as you walk by and...

Joe: Oh, they have them at the laundromat, too?

Jaeson: ...if you win. Oh yeah, at the 7-11s...

Joe: Oh man!

Jaeson: [laugh]

(a)round the clock: all
the time

Joe: My gosh. Y'know, it's just like, it's, no matter where you go there's gambling **round the clock**.

lose track of time: to
forget what time it is

Jaeson: Yeah, yeah, I mean it's, it's definitely, y'know.... They're, they're definitely watching, uh watching people gamblin' around the clock. Of course there is no clocks there, which makes it easier for you to **lose track of time**.

Joe: Yeah, you know what I hear is, uh, they actually, uh don't put the clocks up. So when you're in the casino you never, like, think of "oh it's too late, I need to leave."

Jaeson: Yeah, exactly, uh, y'know, you just, the only way you know is, is when you've lost all your money and...

Joe: [laugh] Oh, and then it's time to go home.

game over: the end; to
be finished

Jaeson: ...**game over!** Time to go home.

get hitched: to get
married

Joe: But I guess if uh, if you, actually, uh, made enough money and you met a pretty girl then maybe it's time to go **get hitched** [laugh].

tyin' the knot: getting
married

Jaeson: Yeah, well, y'know, I, uh, Vegas is the, the town with the most wedding chapels per capita in, in the entire world. So there's a lot of people there **tyin' the knot**, y'know, gettin' hitched. They have signs there. Michael Jordon got married there and Elizabeth Taylor and, y'know.... It's a **pretty big deal**.

a pretty big deal: very
important

Joe: Yeah.



Las Vegas Part 2 Conversation

Jaeson: I got married there, um, but...

Joe: Yeah.

Jaeson: ...that's, that's, uh, that was a long time ago. Eight years now we've been married.

Joe: Wow. Well it's all worked out so that's great.

Jaeson: Yeah.



Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Hello there and welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Las Vegas Part 2.”

I’m going to get started with the story now.

* * * *

Willie the white bear had lost track of time. He was getting married to Paula the black penguin. The wedding was at 5:00 p.m. It was now 4:45 p.m.

“I’m going to be late,” he said.

He knew Paula would flip out. So he found a taxi and he told the driver to drive fast.

“Paula will lose her cool if I am late,” he said to the driver.

“I got you,” said the taxi driver.

So the taxi driver drove 120 miles per hour.

Willie got to the wedding chapel at 4:58 p.m.

Paula was waiting for him. “I would have killed you if you were late,” she said.

Then she smiled and kissed him.

After tying the knot, Paula was very happy. She wanted to have 15 babies, so getting married was a pretty big deal.

* * * *

Okay, so that brings us to the end of the story. Now we’re going to start at the beginning and I will ask you some questions. As always, you can answer the questions by saying the answer out loud. If you don’t feel like you have enough time, then feel free to pause your player.

Okay, let’s begin.

* * * *

Willie the white bear had lost track of time.



Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Had Willie the white bear lost track of time?

Yes, yes, he did. Willie the white bear had lost track of time.

What had Willie done? Had he lost track of time?

Yes, he did. He had lost track of time.

Had Willie lost his keys or had he lost track of time?

Well, he had lost track of time. Willie had lost track of time.

Who lost track of time? Had Jose lost track of time?

No, it wasn't Jose.

Had Willie lost track of time?

Yes, yes, he had. Willie had lost track of time.

Had Willie forgot what time it is?

Yes, he did. He forgot what time it is because he had lost track of time. If you lose track of time that means that you forget what time it is so Willie had forgot what time it is or he had lost track of time.

What type of animal is Willie? Is he a dog?

No, Willie is not a dog. Willie is a bear.

Is Willie a cat or is Willie a bear?

Willie is a bear.

What color is Willie the bear? Is Willie a black bear?

No, Willie is not a black bear.

Is Willie a white bear?

Yes, yes, he is. Willie is a white bear.



Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Had Willie the white bear lost track of time?

Yes, *he did*. *Willie the white bear had lost track of time.*

He was getting married to Paula the black penguin.

Was he getting married to Paula the black penguin?

Yes, yes, *he was*. *He was getting married to Paula the black penguin.*

What was he doing? Was he picking Paula up at the airport?

No, no, he wasn't picking Paula up at the airport.

Was he getting married to Paula?

Yes, yes, *he was*. *He was getting married to Paula.*

Who was getting married to Paula? Was Jeffrey the giraffe getting married to Paula?

No, no, it wasn't Jeffrey the giraffe.

Was Willie the white bear getting married to Paula?

Yes, yes, *that's correct*. *Willie the white bear was getting married to Paula.*

Who was he getting married to? Was he getting married to Sandy the skunk?

No, he wasn't getting married to Sandy the skunk.

Was he getting married to Paula the black penguin?

Yes, *he was getting married to Paula the black penguin?*

What type of animal is Paula? Is she a bear?

No, Paula is not a bear.



Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Is Paula a penguin or is Paula a cat?

Well, Paula is a penguin.

What color is Paula the penguin? Is she red?

No, penguins aren't red.

Is Paula the penguin black?

Yes, yes, she is. Paula is a black penguin.

Was Willie getting married to Paula the black penguin?

Yes, he was. He was getting married to Paula the black penguin.

The wedding was at 5:00 p.m.

Was the wedding at 5:00 p.m.?

Yes, yes, it was.

What was at 5:00 p.m.? Was the football game at 5:00 p.m.?

No, it wasn't the football game.

Was the wedding at 5:00 p.m.?

Yes, yes, it was. The wedding was at 5:00 p.m.

What time was the wedding? Was the wedding at 7:00 p.m.?

No, it wasn't at 7:00 p.m.

Was the wedding at 5:00 p.m.?

Yes, it was. The wedding was at 5:00 p.m.

Who was getting married? Were Willie and Paula getting married?



Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Why, yes, they were. Willie and Paula were getting married.

Were Willie and Paula getting married at 5:00 p.m.?

Yes, yes, they were.

Was Willie going to marry Paula at 5:00 p.m.?

Yes, yes, he was, because the wedding was at 5:00 p.m.

Was the wedding at 5:00 p.m.?

Yes, it was. The wedding was at 5:00 p.m.

It was now 4:45 p.m.

Was it now 4:45 p.m.?

Yes, yes, that's correct. It was now 4:45 p.m.

What time was it? Was it 5:45 p.m.?

No, it wasn't 5:45 p.m.

Was it 4:45 p.m.?

Yes, yes, it was. It was 4:45 p.m.

Was it 4:45 p.m. now?

Yes, it was. It was now 4:45 p.m.

“I’m going to be late,” he said.

Okay, so did he say, “I’m going to be late”?

Yes, he did. He said, “I’m going to be late.”



Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Who said, "I'm going to be late"? Did Tom Cruise say it?

No, Tom Cruise didn't say it.

Did Willie say, "I'm going to be late"?

Yes, yes, he did.

Who is going to be late? Is Tom Cruise going to be late?

No, no, Tom Cruise isn't going to be late.

Is Willie going to be late?

Yes, Willie is going to be late.

Is Willie going to be early?

No, Willie isn't going to be early. Early is the opposite of late. Willie is going to be late. Willie is not going to be early.

Did Willie say, "I am going to be late"?

Well, yes, he did. He said, "I am going to be late."

He knew Paula would flip out.

Did he know that Paula would flip out?

Yes, he did. He knew that Paula would flip out.

What did he know? Did he know Paula would be happy?

No, he did not know Paula would be happy.

Did he know Paula would flip out?

Yes, yes, he did.



Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did he know Paula would get angry?

Well, yes, he did, also. He knew that she would flip out, which is the same as saying he knew that she would get angry. If someone is to say someone would flip out, they are saying the person would get angry.

Who knew that Paula would flip out? Did Tom Cruise know that Paula would flip out?

No, no, it wasn't Tom Cruise.

Did Willie know that Paula would flip out?

Yes, yes, that's correct. He knew that Paula would flip out.

Who would flip out? Would Katie Holmes flip out?

No, not Katie Holmes.

Would Paula flip out?

Yes, Paula would flip out.

Would Paula get angry?

Yes, she would. Paula would flip out or Paula would get angry.

Did Willie know that Paula would flip out?

Yes, he did. He knew that Paula would flip out.

Did Willie know that Paula would get angry?

Yes, he knew that Paula would flip out so that's the same as saying he knew that Paula would get angry.

So he found a taxi

Did he find a taxi?

Yes, he did. He found a taxi.



Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

What did he do? Did he call his mother?

No, he didn't call his mother.

Did he find a taxi?

Yes, that's what he did. He found a taxi.

Who found a taxi? Did Tom Cruise find a taxi?

No, it wasn't Tom Cruise.

Did Willie find a taxi?

Yes, he did. Willie found a taxi.

What did he find? Did he find a boat?

No, he didn't find a boat.

Did he find a taxi?

Yes, yes, he did. He found a taxi.

Did Willie find a taxi?

Yes, he did. Willie found a taxi, he found a taxi.

and he told the driver to drive fast.

Did he tell the driver to drive fast?

Yes, that's what he told the driver. He told the driver to drive fast.

What did he do? Did he ask the driver for directions?

No, he didn't ask the driver for directions.



Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did he tell the driver to drive fast?

Yes, he did. He told the driver to drive fast.

Okay, so who told the driver to drive fast? Did Will Smith tell the driver to drive fast?

No, no, Will Smith didn't.

Did Willie tell the driver?

Yes, Willie told the driver. He told the driver to drive fast.

Who did he tell? Did he tell the President?

No, he didn't tell the President.

Did he tell the driver?

Yes, yes, he did. He told the driver. He told the driver to drive fast.

What did he tell the driver? Did he tell him he wanted to go to the airport?

No, he did not tell him that he wanted to go to the airport.

Did he tell him to drive fast?

Yes, he told him to drive fast.

How did he tell him to drive? Did he tell him to drive slowly?

No, he didn't tell him to drive slowly.

Did he tell him to drive fast?

Yes, yes, he did.

Did he tell the driver to drive fast?

Yes, he told the driver to drive fast.



Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

“Paula will lose her cool if I am late,” he said to the driver.

Did he say to the driver “Paula will lose her cool if I am late”?

Yes, yes, he did. He said to the driver “Paula will lose her cool if I am late.”

What did he say to the driver? Did he say Paula will lose her cool if I am late?

Yes, yes, that’s exactly what he said to the driver.

Will Paula lose her cool if he is late?

Yes, Paula will lose her cool if he is late.

What will happen to Paula if he is late? Will she lose her keys?

No, she won’t lose her keys.

Will she lose her cool?

Yes, she will lose her cool if he is late.

Will she get angry?

Yes, yes, she will. She will get angry if he is late.

Will she get upset?

Yes, yes, she will lose her cool which is the same thing as saying she will get angry or it’s the same thing as saying she will get upset.

Who will lose her cool? Will Hillary Clinton lose her cool?

No, not Hilary Clinton.

Will Paula lose her cool?

Yes, Paula will lose her cool.



Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Will Paula get angry?

Yes, it says that Paula will lose her cool which is the same thing as saying Paula will get angry.

Who said Paula will lose her cool if I am late? Did the driver say it?

No, it wasn't the driver.

Did Willie say it?

Yes, he did. Willie said it.

Who did Willie say it to? Did he say it to Paula?

No, he didn't say it to Paula.

Did he say it to the driver?

Yes, he was speaking to the driver when he said Paula will lose her cool if I am late.

Did Willie say to the driver "Paula will lose her cool if I am late"?

Yes, yes, he did.

"I got you," said the taxi driver.

Did the taxi driver say, "I got you"?

Yes, yes, he did. The taxi driver said, "I got you."

What did the taxi driver say? Did he say, "I found my keys"?

No, he didn't say, "I found my keys."

Did he say, "I got you"?

Yes, yes, he did. "I got you," said the taxi driver.

Did the taxi driver say he understands?

Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Well, yes, he did. When you say I got you, that means I understand.

Did the taxi driver say, “I got you”?

Yes, he did.

So the taxi driver drove 120 miles per hour.

Did the tax driver drive 120 miles per hour?

Yes, he did. The taxi driver drove 120 miles per hour.

What did the taxi driver do? Did he fly an airplane?

No, he didn't fly an airplane.

Did he drive 120 miles per hour?

Yes, he did. He drove 120 miles per hour.

Who drove 120 miles per hour? Did Willie drive 120 miles per hour?

No, Willie wasn't driving so it wasn't Willie.

Did the taxi driver drive 120 miles per hour?

Yes, yes, he did. The taxi driver drove 120 miles per hour.

How fast did the taxi driver drive? Did he drive 50 miles per hour?

No, he didn't drive 50 miles per hour.

Did he drive 120 miles per hour?

Yes, yes, he did. He drove 120 miles per hour.

Did the taxi driver drive 120 miles per hour?

Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *he did*. *The taxi driver drove 120 miles per hour.*

Willie got to the wedding chapel at 4:58 p.m.

Did Willie get to the wedding chapel at 4:58 p.m.?

Yes, he did. Willie got to the wedding chapel at 4:58 p.m.

What did Willie do? Did he get to the library?

No, he didn't get to the library.

Did he get to the wedding chapel?

Yes, yes, he did. He got to the wedding chapel.

Who went to the wedding chapel? Did Larry get to the wedding chapel?

No, Larry didn't get to the wedding chapel.

Did Willie get to the wedding chapel?

Yes, yes, he did. Willie got to the wedding chapel.

Where did Willie get to? Did he get to the grocery store?

No, he didn't get to the grocery store.

Did he get to the wedding chapel?

Yeah, yes, he did. He got to the wedding chapel.

Did he get to a place where people get married?

Well, yes, he did. It said that he got to the wedding chapel so if he got to the wedding chapel that's the same thing as saying he got to a place where people get married.

When did Willie get to the wedding chapel? Did he get there at 12:58 p.m.?



Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

No, he didn't get there at 12:58 p.m.

Did he get there at 4:58 p.m.?

Yes, yes, he did. He got to the wedding chapel at 4:58 p.m.

Did Willie get to a place where people get married at 4:58 p.m.?

Well, yes, he did, because he got to the wedding chapel at 4:58 p.m.

Did Willie get to the wedding chapel at 4:58 p.m.?

Yes, yes, he did. Willie got to the wedding chapel at 4:58 p.m.

Paula was waiting for him.

Was Paula waiting for him?

Yes, yes, she was. Paula was waiting for him.

What was Paula doing? Was she listening to the radio?

No, she wasn't listening to the radio.

Was she waiting for him?

Yes, that's what she was doing. Paula was waiting for him.

Who was waiting?

Well, Paula was waiting.

Was the taxi driver waiting for him or was Paula waiting for him?

Paula was waiting for him.

Who was Paula waiting for? Was she waiting for the taxi driver?

No, she wasn't waiting for the taxi driver.

Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Was she waiting for Willie?

Yes, yes, she was. She was waiting for Willie.

Was Paula waiting for Willie or was she waiting for Larry?

Paula was waiting for Willie.

“I would have killed you if you were late,” she said.

Did she say, “I would have killed you if you were late”?

Yes, she did, that’s exactly what she said. She said, “I would have killed you if you were late.”

Would she have killed him if he was late?

Well, yes, that’s what she said, “I would have killed you if you were late.”

What would she have done? Would she have gone home?

No, she would not have gone home.

Would she have killed him?

Yes, she would have killed him.

Would she have got angry at him?

Well, yes, when you use the idiom “I would have killed you” that’s the same thing as saying I would have got angry at you.

Would she have got upset at him?

Well, yes, again, if you use the idiom “I would have killed you,” it’s the same thing as saying I would have been upset with you or I would have got upset.

Who would have killed him? Would Hilary Clinton have killed him?

Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

No, not Hilary Clinton.

Would Paula have killed him?

Yes, Paula would have killed him.

Would she have killed him if he was late?

Well, yes, she said, "I would have killed you if you were late."

Would Paula have been upset with him if he was late?

Yes, she would have. She said, "I would have killed you if you were late," which is the same thing as saying I would have been upset with you if you were late or I would have been angry with you if you were late.

Then she smiled and kissed him.

Did she smile and kiss him?

Yes, yes, she did. She smiled and kissed him.

What did she do? Did she frown?

No, she didn't frown.

Did she smile?

Yes, yes, she did. She smiled.

Did she kiss him?

Well, yes, she did that, too. She kissed him.

Did she smile and kiss him?

Yes, she smiled and kissed him.

Who smiled and kissed him? Did Paula's mother smile and kiss him?



Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

No, no, it wasn't Paula's mother.

Did Paula smile and kiss him?

Yes, yes, she did. Paula smiled and kissed him.

Who did she kiss? Did she kiss the taxi driver?

No, she didn't kiss the taxi driver.

Did she kiss Willie?

Yes, yes, she did.

Did she smile and kiss Willie?

Yes, she did. She smiled and kissed him.

After tying the knot, Paula was very happy.

So was Paula happy after tying the knot?

Yes, she was. After tying the knot, Paula was very happy.

What was Paula? Was she very angry?

No, she wasn't very angry.

Was she very happy?

Yes, yes, she was. She was very happy.

Was she only a little happy?

No, no, she was more than a little happy. She was very happy.

Who was happy? Was Paula's mother happy?

No, Paula's mother wasn't happy.

Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Was Paula happy?

Yes, yes, she was. Paula was very happy.

When was Paula happy? Was Paula happy before tying the knot?

No, not before tying the knot.

Was Paula happy after tying the knot?

Yes, yes, she was. After tying the knot, Paula was very happy.

Was she happy after getting married?

Well, yes, she was. If you say that she was happy after tying the knot, that is the same thing as saying she was happy after getting married because tying the knot means to get married.

Was Paula happy after tying the knot?

Yes, she was. After tying the knot Paula was very happy.

She wanted to have 15 babies,

Did she want to have 15 babies?

Yes, yes, she did. She wanted to have 15 babies.

What did Paula want to do? Did she want to go to Paris?

No, she didn't want to go to Paris.

Did she want to have 15 babies?

Yes, yes, she did. She wanted to have 15 babies.

Who wanted to have 15 babies? Did Paula's sister want to have 15 babies?

No, it wasn't Paula's sister.



Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did Paula want to have 15 babies?

Yes, that's who it was. It was Paula who wanted to have 15 babies.

What did she want to have? Did she want to have a turkey sandwich?

No, she didn't want a turkey sandwich.

Did she want to have babies?

Yes, she wanted to have babies.

How many babies did she want to have? Did she want to have one baby?

No, she wanted to have more than one baby.

Did she want to have 15 babies?

Yes, she wanted to have 15 babies.

Did Paula want to have 15 babies?

Yes, she did. Paula wanted to have 15 babies.

so getting married was a pretty big deal.

Was getting married a pretty big deal?

Yes, it was. Getting married was a pretty big deal.

What was a pretty big deal? Was going to Paris a pretty big deal?

No, not going to Paris.

Was getting married a pretty big deal?

Yes, that's right. Getting married was a pretty big deal.



Las Vegas Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Was getting married very important?

Yes, *getting married was a pretty big deal which is the same as saying getting married was very important because a pretty big deal means something very important.*

Was getting married a pretty big deal?

Yes, *it was. Getting married was a pretty big deal.*

* * * * *

Okay, that brings us to the end of our story so we are the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation "Las Vegas Part 2." Now please tell this story by yourself. Make sure that you use all the idioms that we discussed in the story. We discussed the following idioms: "lost track of time," "flip out," "lose her cool," "I got you," "would have killed you," "tying the knot," and "a pretty big deal." So now try to tell the story using those idioms.

Okay, good luck and we'll see you next time. Bye.



Las Vegas Part 2 POV Lesson

Greetings. You're listening to the point of view stories for the lesson "Las Vegas Part 2". Now in the mini-story for this lesson we heard the story being told in the past or as if it has already happened. So we will start now by telling the story in the present or as if it is happening right now. Okay, here we go.

* * * * *

Willie the white bear has lost track of time. He's getting married to Paula the black penguin. The wedding is at 5 o'clock p.m. It is now 4:45 p.m.

"I'm going to be late," he says.

He knows Paula will flip out. So he finds a taxi and he tells the driver to drive fast.

"Paula will lose her control if I am late," he says to the driver.

"I gotcha," says the taxi driver.

So the taxi driver drives 120 miles per hour.

Willie gets to the wedding chapel at 4:58 p.m.

Paula is waiting for him. "I would have killed you if you were late," she says.

Then she smiles and kisses him.

After tying the knot, Paula is very happy. She wants to have 15 babies, so getting married is a pretty big deal.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's the story being told as if it is happening right now. In this next version we'll hear the story being told in the future. Let's say that the story is being told as if it will happen next week. Here goes.

* * * * *

Next week Willie the white bear is going to lose track of time. He's going to get married to Paula the black penguin. The wedding's going to be at 5 o'clock p.m. It's now 4:45 p.m.

"I'm going to be late," he'll say.

Las Vegas Part 2 POV Lesson

He'll know Paula is going to flip out. So he's gonna find a taxi and tell the driver to drive fast.

"Paula will lose her control if I am late," he'll say to the driver.

"I gotcha," the taxi driver'll say.

So the taxi driver'll drive 120 miles per hour.

Willie's gonna get to the wedding chapel at 4:58 p.m.

Paula'll be waiting for him. "I would've killed you if you were late," she'll say.

Then she'll smile and kiss him.

After tying the knot, Paula's gonna be very happy. She's gonna wanna have 15 babies, so getting married will be a pretty big deal.

* * * * *

Okay, so we just heard the story being told as if it is happening next week. You can hear the words "will" and "going to" and "gonna". That lets you know that the story is happening in the future sometime. Okay, in the next version of the story Willie's gonna tell us the story. So here we go.

* * * * *

I have lost track of time. I'm getting married to Paula the black penguin. The wedding is at 5 o'clock p.m. It's now 4:45 p.m.

I say, "I'm going to be late."

I know Paula will flip out. So I find a taxi and I tell the driver to drive fast.

"Paula will lose her control if I am late," I say to the driver.

"I gotcha," says the taxi driver.

So the taxi driver drives 120 miles per hour.

I get to the wedding chapel at 4:58 p.m.



Las Vegas Part 2 POV Lesson

Paula is waiting for me. “I would have killed you if you were late,” she says.

Then she smiles and kisses me.

After tying the knot, Paula is very happy. She wants to have 15 babies, so getting married is a pretty big deal.

* * * * *

Alright so that's the end of our point of view stories for “Las Vegas Part 2”. Now, please remember to listen to each of these stories until you feel comfortable telling the story on your own. Remember that we want to learn these stories deeply. When you learn them deeply then you won't forget them and you'll become better with grammar without even having to memorize boring grammar rules. Okay, that's all for now. See ya next time.



Las Vegas Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Hello and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Las Vegas Part 2.” In this conversation Joe and his best friend Jaeson are continuing to talk about when Jaeson was living in Las Vegas and going to college there.

Okay, let's begin.

* * * * *

Joe starts off by saying, “I'll tell ya....”

Ya is just short for you. It's a casual way of saying you.

Okay, Joe goes on to say, “when I think about you going to college in Vegas....”

Vegas is short for Las Vegas.

He goes on to say, “it just, I.... It's so hard for me to believe....”

So hard, meaning so difficult. Very difficult for me to believe.

“because I think of myself going to college when I was 18. And, y'know, I just, I would have been like a kid in the candy store there.

Okay, when he says y'know.... Y'know is just short for you know. Y'know. Like a kid in the candy store. What this means is to be very excited about something. Like a kid in the candy store. For example: Josh loves books. When he goes to the library he is like a kid in a candy store. Like a kid in the candy store.

Then Jaeson laughs and says, “Yeah....”

Yeah is just casual or informal for yes.

He goes on to say, “well, you do run into a lot of temptation there.”

Run into a lot of temptation there. This is just meaning that you would have a lot of things that you would want to do there. For example: There is so much to do and see in San Francisco that I run into a lot of temptation living here. Run into a lot of temptation.

Jaeson goes on to say, “Uh....”

Uh is just a filler word. It has no meaning. It's said sometimes when trying to think of more to say.

Las Vegas Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

And he goes on to say, “y’know, and especially as a college student and you’re hangin’ out with other folks.”

Now hangin’ out. Hangin’ is short for hanging. Hangin’ out means just casually passing the time. For example: I like hangin’ out in the park. Hangin’ out. So he’s saying hangin’ out with other folks. Folks just means people.

And Jaeson continues, “And, y’know, the, the bars are open all night...” And Joe says, “It’s your first time living on your own...”

Living on your own means living away from your family.

And Jaeson says, “First time away from home, exactly.”

First time away from home means the same thing as living on your own. It’s the first time living away from your family.

And Joe says, “yeah, exactly. So is, is UNLV actually on the strip?”

Now UNLV... That means, or that’s short for University Nevada Las Vegas. This is the school where Jaeson went to college. Actually. This just means really. And the strip. The strip is one main street in Las Vegas where many of the casinos and hotels are.

So then Jaeson says, “Um....”

Um is the same as uh. It’s used as filler. It really has no meaning. Sometimes it’s said when trying to think of more to say... the same as uh.

And then he says, “it’s close. You’re like about a couple of miles away from the strip.”

Now, like here. This is said in a lot of conversations. It really has no meaning. It’s just filler. Filler means it doesn’t even have to be there. You could take like away and the sentence would still make sense. So he says you’re “a couple of miles away from the strip,” ...a couple meaning about two.

And Jaeson goes on to say, “But it’s, y’know, it’s probably like walking distance from some casinos.”

Walking distance means it’s not too far to walk to. It’s close to walk to.

And he continues by saying, “Because, y’know, not all the casinos are on the strip, uh...” And Joe,



Las Vegas Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

“Oh my gosh.”

Oh my gosh. This is showing emotion such as I can't believe the university is so close to some casinos.

And Jaeson says, “y'know, some of them, some of them are off the strip. And there's, y'know, there's even like bars where they have like video poker and...”

Video poker is a game played to win money.

And then Joe says, “On campus?”

Campus. This is the area where there is a college or university.

And Jaeson says, “blackjack. Like right across the street.”

Blackjack is another game played to win money. And what he's saying when he says, right across the street... he means directly across the street from the university.

And Joe says, “Oh man.”

Oh man is the same as oh my gosh. It's showing emotion. And here it's like he's saying, I can't believe there are places to gamble so close to the university.

And Joe goes on to say, “You know that they just want to entice the, uh, students to come out and gamble.”

Entice means get the students to come out and gamble. Just to get the students.

And Jaeson says, “Oh yeah, y'know, and some people, y'know, they get, y'know they have a problem or whatever.”

Whatever is just a filler word. It has no meaning here. You could take it away and this sentence would still be okay without it.

And he goes on to say, “Or they get caught up in the moment.”

Caught up in the moment. This means to become completely involved in something. Caught up in the moment. For example: When Chad is gambling, he can get caught up in the moment and forget how much money he has lost. Caught up in the moment.

Las Vegas Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

And Jaeson says more. “And they just start gamblin’. And then they lose and they start hittin’ the ATM....”

Now gamblin’. This is short for gambling. Hittin’ the ATM. This means to take money out of the bank. For example: I hit the ATM because I didn’t have any more money with me. Hittin’ the ATM. Hittin’ is short for hitting. So hitting the ATM.

And Jaeson goes on to say, “And, and losin’ some more tryin’ to win it back and, y’know, it’s....”

So losin’ is short for losing. And tryin’ is short for trying.

And then Jaeson goes on to say, “I saw...” And Joe says, “It’s an ugly cycle.”

This just means it’s a bad situation.

And then Jaeson continues by saying, “yeah, I had a couple of good friends who, uh.... Man they just kinda’ threw their, their lives away almost just gambling, all the time, y’know.”

Kinda’ is short for kind of. It’s just putting those two words together. Kinda’. Threw their lives away. This means destroyed or ruined their lives. For example: When Stan began to drink too much, he threw his life away. His wife divorced him and no longer wanted him to see their children. Threw their lives away. Or in this example, threw his life away.

And then Joe says, “Wait, did they gamble, were they gamblers before they arrived in town? Or...”
And Jaeson says, “Y’know, maybe a little bit.”

A little bit means a small amount. For example: I could not go to the concert because I only had a little bit of money. A little bit.

Jaeson goes on to say, “but it’s just, it’s always right there.”

Right there means right in front of you.

And Jaeson says, “There’s always that temptation, y’know? And, y’know, I don’t know, none of them really had, had the kind of money to where they should be, could be gamblin’....”

The kind of money. This means a lot of money. They didn’t have a lot of money to where they could be gambling. For example: Jennifer wanted to stay at an expensive hotel but she didn’t have that kind of money. Kind of money.

Las Vegas Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

And Jaeson goes on to say, “y’know the, the amounts that they were talkin’ about.”

Talkin’ is short for talking.

And he says, “Like, uh, Gina’s friend Foo, one time he had to borrow like 5,000 dollars from us to cover some...”

To cover means to pay.

And Joe says, “What?” And Jaeson says, “yeah, yeah, he had gambled away some money off his mom’s credit card.” And Joe says, “Oh man, did she find out?” And Jaeson says, “Uh, no, coz that’s, that’s why he wanted to borrow the money from us. Y’know, so...”

Coz. This is short and informal for because.

And Joe says, “Oh, I got you, to pay before she saw it.”

So I got you means I understand. For example: Bridgit said, “Hey, did you hear what I said?” And I said, “Yeah, I got you.”

And Jaeson says, “Yeah, yeah coz if his parents saw the bill and, and figured out that he was gamblin’ away the money on their credit cards, they would totally lose their cool.”

Totally here means completely. Lose their cool. This means to get angry or upset. Lose their cool. For example: My parents used to lose their cool when I would talk on the telephone for a long time. Lose their cool.

And Joe says, “Yeah.” And Jaeson says, “I mean...” And he laughs.

I mean is.... What he is saying here is, “What I am trying to say.”

And Joe says, “Yeah...” And then Jaeson says, “They would, they would flip out on him.”

Flip out. This means to get angry or upset. Same as lose your cool. Flip out. For example: Once when I was 14 years old my parents flipped out on me because I did not come home one night. Flip out.

And Joe says, “Yeah, I’m not surprised. My parents would have killed me...”

Would have killed me. What Joe is saying here is his parents would have been very angry at him. For example: My parents would have killed me if they knew I drank beer when I was 15 years old. Would have

Las Vegas Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

killed me.

And Jaeson laughs. And Joe says, “if that would have happened. Y’know, they wouldn’t have been laughing, I’ll tell you that.” And then Jaeson says, “Oh yeah, well, y’know, you lose that kind of money, it’ll make, it’ll make even the, the hardened....”

Hardened here means strong.

“y’know, guy break down and, and cry, y’know.”

Break down and cry. This means to cry. For example: I knew that when my cat Sigmund died I would break down and cry. Break down and cry.

And Joe says, “Yeah, yeah, I’m sure.” And Jaeson laughs and says, “It’s no fun, man. That’s why, y’know, I never really got into gamblin’ that much....”

Got into means just... means started.

And Jaeson goes on to say, “uh, y’know. I just, I, I did, like they flew me out there for my recruiting trip, to be on...”

Recruiting trip. This is a visit to a college. You visit the college if you are thinking about going to school there.

Joe says, “Wait, wait, recruiting trip?” And Jaeson says, “Yeah, I was on the diving team there...at UNLV.” And Joe says, “Oh at the college?” And Jaeson says, “Yeah, springboard diving.”

Springboard diving. This is just a sport.

And Joe says, “Wait, you mean like what we see in the Olympics?” And Jaeson says, “Yep.”

Yep is slang. It’s very casual and informal for yes.

And Joe says, “Oh, man. I can’t wait to see...” And Jaeson says, “Yeah.” And Joe says, “next time we go to a place where there’s a pool and a diving board, you’re gonna have to show me some of these tricks.”

Gonna. This is short for going to. And tricks... This just means different dives.

Jaeson says, “Yeah, y’know, I’ve got some, uh, I’ve got some tricks that I...” And Joe laughs. And



Las Vegas Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Jaeson says, “that I can use. Y’know, I would do, y’know, the worst are the hardest ones. I would do like a front three and a half or, y’know, a back two and a half.”

What he’s talking about here.... These are just different kinds of dives.

And Jaeson goes on to say, “I did three meters and one meter springboard.”

What he’s talking about here is he dove from two different heights on the diving board. He dove from three meters and he dove from one meter.

And he goes on to say, “Y’know, we did practices.”

Practices are he would dive with people from the diving team.

And he says, “So I didn’t really get the chance to gamble that much. ‘Coz after classes, y’know, I would have to go to, uh, go to diving practice and bang out my dives...”

Bang out. This means to do quickly. Bang out. For example: Joe and I banged out the housecleaning so we still had time to go to the park. Bang out.

And Joe says, “Yeah.” And Jaeson says, “so, um...” And Joe says, “I mean, I just, uh, I would just imagine though....”

Imagine means think.

“since you’re actually there it’s like when in Rome, y’know, like you’re gonna start gambling.”

When in Rome. This just means behaving the same way as a certain group of people. When in Rome.

And Jaeson says, “Yeah, y’know, for a lot of people it’s just a quarter here or there.”

A quarter is a 25 cent coin. So for a lot of people... what Jaeson is saying is they only put 25 cents sometimes into gambling machines. A quarter here or there.

And Jaeson goes on to say, “Like, y’know, you’ve got to do your laundry....”

Do your laundry means wash your dirty clothes.

And Jaeson says, “so you, you pop a quarter in the machine as you walk by and...”



Las Vegas Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Pop a quarter in the machine means to put a quarter in the gambling machine.

And Joe says, “Oh, they have them at the laundromat, too?”

Laundromat. This is a place where you wash your clothes.

And Jaeson says, “if you win. Oh yeah, at the 7-11s...”

7-11 is the name of a store.

And Joe says, “Oh man! “ And Jaeson laughs. And Joe says, “My gosh. Y’know, it’s just like, it’s, no matter where you go....”

So he’s saying anywhere you go.

“there’s gambling round the clock.”

Round the clock. Round is short for around. Around the clock means all the time. For example: I was working round the clock to save for my trip to Africa. Around the clock.

And Jaeson says, “Yeah, yeah, I mean it’s, it’s definitely, y’know.... They’re, they’re definitely watching, uh watching people gamblin’ around the clock. Of course there is no clocks there, which makes it easier for you to lose track of time.

Lose track of time. This means to forget what time it is. Lose track of time. For example: When I go to a club to dance, I can lose track of time. Lose track of time.

And Joe says, “Yeah, you know what I hear is, uh, they actually....”

Or he’s saying they really....

“uh don’t put the clocks up. So when you’re in the casino you never, like, think of ‘oh it’s too late, I need to leave.’”

Don’t put the clocks up. This means there are no clocks to be seen anywhere in any of the casinos.

And Jaeson says, “Yeah, exactly, uh, y’know, you just, the only way you know is, is when you’ve lost all your money and...” Joe laughs and says, “Oh, and then it’s time to go home.” And Jaeson says, “game over! Time to go home.”



Las Vegas Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Game over. This means the end. To be finished. Game over.

And Joe says, “But I guess if uh, if you, actually, uh, made enough money and you met a pretty girl then maybe it’s time to go get hitched.” And he laughs.

Get hitched. This means to get married. For example: My parents got hitched after only knowing each other for two weeks. Get hitched, or in this example, got hitched.

And then Jaeson says, “Yeah, well, y’know, I, uh, Vegas is the, the town with the most wedding chapels per capita....”

A wedding chapel is a place to get married. And per capita means for each person. So Vegas is the town that has the most places to get married per person or for each person.

And Jaeson goes on to say, “in, in the entire world.”

So what he’s saying is in the whole world.

And then Jaeson says, “So there’s a lot of people there tyin’ the knot....”

Tyin’ the knot. Tyin’ is short for tying. So tying the knot means getting married. It’s the same as getting hitched. For example: My parents tied the knot after only knowing each other for two weeks. Tying the knot.

And then Jaeson says, “y’know, gettin’ hitched.”

Gettin’ here means... that’s just short for getting.

And then Jaeson says, “They have signs there. Michael Jordon got married there and Elizabeth Taylor and, y’know.... It’s a pretty big deal.”

A pretty big deal. This means very important. A pretty big deal. For example: Getting married is a pretty big deal to my parents. They don’t understand why I don’t want to be married. A pretty big deal.

And Joe says, “Yeah.” And then Jaeson says, “I got married there, um, but...” And Joe says, “Yeah.” And Jaeson says, “that’s, that’s, uh, that was a long time ago. Eight years now we’ve been married.” And Joe says, “Wow.”

Wow is the same as oh my gosh or oh man. It’s just showing emotion. For example, here it’s like he is saying that’s great that you and Gina have been married for eight years already.



Las Vegas Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

And then Joe goes on to say, “Well it’s all worked out so that’s great.”

All worked out means everything is going well.

And then Jaeson says, “Yeah.”

* * * * *

Alrighty, this concludes the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Las Vegas Part 2.” If you feel you need to, go back and listen to this lesson a few times. You want to make sure that you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary. If you do go back and listen to it, don’t get too worried or stressed. Make sure you listen in a relaxed way. And then when you feel like you’re ready, go to the mini-story.

Alright then, see you next time. Goodbye.



Chile Conversation

dawned on (me): to realize; to remember

Joe: Hey, you know what **dawned on me?**

Will: What's that?

Joe: The last time I saw you, you told, you mentioned something and, I didn't even realize it until we had already **gone our separate ways**. And that was that you had lived in Chile before. I didn't even remember that. It's like I don't know...

Will: Yeah, I...

Joe: ...know if you ever told me that.

Will: Yeah, I lived in Chile, uh, for a year **not long after** college.

Joe: Wait, what year was this?

Will: That was in 1992.

pretty much right after: right around the time of; close to the time of

Joe: Oh, man. So, did you, **pretty much right after** you graduated, you just decided to travel, or...

Will: It took me a year to save up the money and then I went travelin'. Yeah, I planned on goin' right away. But it took me a little while and, uh, I made it.

Joe: Did you know Spanish at the time, or....

Will: I thought I did.

Joe: [laugh]

had no idea: did not know

Will: When I got to Chile I realized I **had no idea** what anybody was talking about.

Joe: Was it because they were speaking too fast, or...

Will: It was because I didn't really know Spanish.

The Mission: short for The Mission District; a neighborhood in San Francisco

Joe: [laugh] Wait, how much, how much Spanish did you have before that? Did you take some in college? Or was it just from living in San Francisco and living in **The Mission** or something?

Chile Conversation

get by: to do okay by using only what you have

Will: Oh, I had taken Spanish since I was twelve years old. And I was, and I took it, uh, for about three years in college as well. And when I got to Chile, it was really difficult, um, uh.... However I was able to **get by**. And I was able to make friends.

Joe: Right.

hang out: to casually pass time

Will: And I met some really nice people who were patient with the language and everything, uh.... It was a group of, uh, people who liked to, uh, um, **hang out** and play guitar and go dancing...

Joe: Oh that's good.

kind of: sort of

Will: ...and there were a lot of, a lot of people, a lot of foreigners, like travelers, in the group. But not like tourists. But people who were **kind of** my age and who were living there.

Joe: Yeah.

early on: in the beginning

Will: And they, uh, uh.... There were these Chilean people who, uh, basically were my friends the whole time I was there. I was only there for a year. But still I met a lot of really good people, uh, very **early on**. And by the time I left I spoke a lot of Spanish.

a good amount: a lot

Joe: A year, that's **a good amount** of time.

good foundation: a good amount of information to start with

Will: Yeah, I wouldn't have been able to learn so much Spanish as I did in a year though if I hadn't been in school for so long. Even though it wasn't, uh, um, even though it wasn't super fa-...a super fast way to learn Spanish, uh.... I mean I learned so much more a year in Chile than I did in all the school that I ever had. Uh, it still gave me a really **good foundation**. So when I went to, uh, Chile I was able to, uh, um, to make friends there and, uh, speak the language almost all the time. And by the time I came back I knew a lot of Spanish. That was fun, but, uh, the trip itself was the best part. The experience of, uh, living and traveling and working in Chile was something I'll never forget. That was one of the best years of my life.

Joe: Was that the first time that you'd done any sort of, like, y'know, traveling like that? Or had you, had you gone on a trip like this, y'know, while you were in college during summer? Or...

Will: I had gone on, uh, uh many trips to Mexico....

Chile Conversation

Joe: Uh-huh.

Will: when I was in college. Every chance I could, of course, I would go to Mexico. Ah, I love Mexico.

Joe: Yeah, it's...

Will: When I...

Joe: ...so close.

hitchhiking: to travel by getting a free ride in a car with someone you do not know

wing it: to do something without any planning

Will: when I was in Chile, that was the first time though that I took a trip **hitchhiking**. In the summer I went to the south of Chile and, uh, that was a really good time. Uh, when I first got there we had, uh, I had no idea what I was doin'. And I just thought, I'm just gonna **wing it**, uh.... I'm never gonna be able to get a job here and, uh.... I just, uh, went on this **fantastic** trip. And when I got back to the city, uh, realizing that since I wasn't able to get a job I was probably gonna have to go home.... One of the people that I met, um, in the first week that I was there *offered me a job*. Or told me about a job that I later got at the school that she worked at. So I was able to live there a whole year.

Joe: What were you doin' there?

Will: I was teaching, uh, geography and literature to, uh, a lot of different aged kids, mostly around eleven and twelve.

younger generation: group of people who are younger

absolutely: definite; for sure

out on the town: to have fun while going to different places in a town or city

Joe: Oh that sounds like a great job. You actually get a chance to interact with, uh, the **younger generation** as well.

Will: **Absolutely.** That's why I went there in the first place. Although goin' salsa dancing and, uh, hanging out with my friends was, uh, was another really good part of it.

Joe: [laugh] I can just see you **out on the town** salsa dancing.

Will: Yeah, I, uh, I was a pretty terrible salsa dancer, it's true. But I had a lot of fun.

Joe: Well, you know what? I guess that's really all that matters, doesn't it?



Chile Conversation

Will: That's right. Yeah, absolutely when you go on a trip like that. That's what you want is to learn a lot and have a really good time.



Chile Mini-Story Lesson

Hello there and welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Chile.”

Okay, let's get started with the story.

* * * * *

Frankie the frog is married to Lola the lamb. Wednesday was their five year wedding anniversary. So they planned a trip to New York.

“Call a hotel to reserve a room,” said Lola.

“I don’t want to call a hotel, we can just wing it,” said Frankie.

Lola looked concerned. So Frankie said, “Don’t worry, we’ll get by.”

Three days later they flew to New York. Not long after they arrived, Frankie called a hotel. The hotel was full. Then it dawned on Frankie that his cousin Freddie lived in New York.

So he called his cousin Freddie. He told Freddie he was in New York.

Freddie said, “You can sleep at my house tonight.”

So they went to Freddie’s house.

That night they went out on the town. First they went to a café to hang out, then they went to a club. They danced and drank a good amount of beer.

Later that night Frankie said to Lola “I told you everything would be okay, happy anniversary.”

* * * * *

Okay, so that's our story. Now let's start from the beginning. This time I will ask questions as I tell the story. You can answer the questions out loud and if you need more time you can always pause your iPod or computer.

Okay, let's start now.

* * * * *

Frankie the frog is married to Lola the lamb.



Chile Mini-Story Lesson

Who is married to Lola the lamb? Is Freddie the mouse married to Lola the lamb?

No, no, Freddie the mouse isn't married to Lola the lamb.

Is Frankie the frog married to Lola the lamb?

Yes, yes, that's correct. Frankie the frog is married to Lola the lamb.

What type of animal is Frankie? Is he a lamb?

No, Frankie's not a lamb.

Is he a frog?

Yes, Frankie is a frog.

What type of animal is Lola? Is Lola a frog?

No, no, Lola's not a frog.

Is Lola a lamb?

Yes, she is. Lola is a lamb.

Is Frankie Lola's husband?

Well, yes, he is, because Frankie is married to Lola so Frankie is Lola's husband.

Is Lola Frankie's wife?

Well, yes, that's true also, because Lola is married to Frankie so Lola is Frankie's wife.

Are Frankie and Lola married?

Yes, Frankie the frog is married to Lola the lamb.

Wednesday was their five year wedding anniversary,



Chile Mini-Story Lesson

When was their five year wedding anniversary? Was it Tuesday?

No, no, it wasn't Tuesday.

Was their wedding anniversary Wednesday?

Yes, Wednesday was their five year wedding anniversary.

Whose five year wedding anniversary was it? Was it Frankie's parents?

No, no, it wasn't Frankie's parents.

Was it Frankie and Lola's five year wedding anniversary?

Yes, yes, that's correct. It was Frankie and Lola's five year wedding anniversary.

How many years ago was their wedding? Was it five years ago?

Well, yes, it was. It was five years ago.

How many years had Frankie and Lola been married? Had they been married for twelve years?

No, no, they had not been married for twelve years.

Were they married for five years?

Yes, that's correct. They were married for five years because Wednesday was their five year wedding anniversary.

So they planned a trip to New York.

Who planned a trip to New York? Did Kermit the frog plan a trip to New York?

No, no, it was not Kermit the frog.

Did Frankie and Lola plan a trip to New York?

Yes, yes, they did. They planned a trip to New York.



Chile Mini-Story Lesson

Where did Frankie and Lola plan a trip to? Did they plan a trip to Paris?

No, they didn't plan a trip to Paris.

Did they plan a trip to New York?

Yes, yes, they did. They planned a trip to New York.

“Call a hotel to reserve a room,” said Lola.

Who said, “Call a hotel to reserve a room”? Did Frankie say it?

No, Frankie didn't say it.

Did Lola say it?

Yes, yes, she did. Lola said, “Call a hotel to reserve a room.”

Who should they call to reserve a room? Should they call a hospital?

No, they shouldn't call a hospital.

Should they call a hotel?

Yes, that's what Lola wanted Frankie to do. She wanted him to call a hotel.

Why should they call a hotel? To say hello?

No, that's not why they should call a hotel.

Should they call a hotel to reserve a room?

Yes, that's correct. Lola wanted Frankie to call a hotel to reserve a room.

“I don't want to call a hotel, we can just wing it,” said Frankie.

Who doesn't Frankie want to call? His mother?



Chile Mini-Story Lesson

No, no, not his mother.

A hotel?

Well, yes, he said he doesn't want to call the hotel. He said, "I don't want to call a hotel."

Who can just wing it? Frankie's parents?

No, not Frankie's parents.

Can Frankie and Lola just wing it?

Yes, Frankie said, "we can just wing it" and when he said we can just wing it what he meant was Frankie himself and Lola can just wing it.

Can Frankie and Lola just go to New York without planning?

Well, yes, that's what it means to wing it. It means to do something without planning. So Frankie and Lola can just wing it, Frankie and Lola can just go to New York without doing any planning.

Lola looked concerned.

Who looked concerned? Did Frankie look concerned?

No, it wasn't Frankie.

Did Lola look concerned?

Yes, yes, she did. Lola looked concerned.

How did Lola look? Did she look happy?

No, no, I don't think she looked happy.

Did Lola look concerned?

Yes, yes, she did. Lola looked concerned.

Did Lola look worried?



Chile Mini-Story Lesson

Well, yes, Lola looked concerned so that means she looked worried.

So Frankie said, “Don’t worry, we’ll get by.”

Who said, “Don’t worry, we’ll get by”? Did Lola say it?

No, it wasn’t Lola.

Did Frankie say, “Don’t worry, we’ll get by”?

Yes, yes, that’s who said it. Frankie said it.

To whom did Frankie say, “Don’t worry, we’ll bet by”? Did he say it to Lola?

Well, yes, he did. He said it to Lola.

Did Frankie say that they will get by?

Well, yes, he did.

Did Frankie say that they will be okay?

Well, yes, he did, because he said that they will get by, so when he said they will get by that was the same thing as saying “we will be okay”.

Three days later they flew to New York.

Who flew to New York three days later? Did Frankie’s mom fly to New York three days later?

No, Frankie’s mom didn’t fly to New York three days later.

Did Frankie and Lola fly to New York three days later?

Yes, that’s who flew to New York three days later.

When did they fly to New York? Did they fly to New York one week later?



Chile Mini-Story Lesson

No, no, it was not one week.

Did they fly to New York three days later?

Yes, three days later they flew to New York.

Where did they fly? Did they fly to Paris?

No, they didn't fly to Paris.

Did they fly to New York?

Yes, yes, they did.

Did they fly to New York three days later?

Yes, they did. Three days later they flew to New York.

Not long after they arrived, Frankie called a hotel.

When did Frankie call a hotel? Did he call a hotel not long after they arrived?

Well, yes, he did, that's correct.

Did Frankie call a hotel a long time after they arrived?

No, it wasn't a long time after they arrived.

Did Frankie call a hotel a short time after they arrived.

Yes, that's true. Frankie called a hotel not long after they arrived, meaning Frankie called the hotel a short time after they arrived.

What did Frankie do not long after they arrived? Did he call his mother?

No, he did not call his mother.

Did he call a hotel?



Chile Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, *that's true. Frankie called a hotel not long after they arrived.*

Did Frankie call a hotel not long after they arrived?

Yes, yes, *he did.*

Did Frankie call a hotel a short time after they arrived?

Well, yes, he did. He called the hotel a short time after they arrived, he called the hotel not long after they arrived, it's the same thing.

The hotel was full.

So what was full? Was the parking garage full?

No, no, it wasn't the parking garage.

Was the hotel full?

Yes, yes, *the hotel was full.*

Did the hotel have rooms available?

No, the hotel was full, which means that the hotel did not have any rooms available. The hotel did not have a room for Frankie and Lola.

Then it dawned on Frankie that his cousin Freddie lived in New York.

Did it dawn on Frankie that his cousin Freddie lived in New York?

Yes, yes, it did. It dawned on Frankie that his cousin Freddie lived in New York.

What dawned on Frankie? Did it dawn on Frankie that his cousin lives in New York?

Yes, yes, that's correct. It dawned on Frankie that his cousin lives in New York.

Did Frankie remember that his cousin lives in New York?



Chile Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, *he did.*

Who lives in New York? Does Bill live in New York?

No, Bill doesn't live in New York.

Does Frankie's cousin live in New York?

Yes, Frankie's cousin lives in New York.

Does Freddie live in New York?

Well, yes, Freddie is Frankie's cousin so Freddie lives in New York.

What is Frankie's cousin's name? Is it Lola?

No, Lola is Frankie's wife.

Is Frankie's cousin named Freddie?

Yes, yes, that's true. Frankie's cousin is named Freddie.

Where does Freddie live? Does Freddie live in Paris?

No, Freddie doesn't live in Paris.

Does Freddie live in New York?

Yes, Freddie lives in New York.

Did it dawn on Frankie that his cousin lives in New York?

Yes, it did.

Did Frankie remember that his cousin lives in New York?

Yes, it dawned on Frankie that his cousin lives in New York which means Frankie remembered that his cousin lives in New York.



Chile Mini-Story Lesson

So he called his cousin Freddie.

Who called his cousin Freddie? Did Pedro call his cousin Freddie?

No, it wasn't Pedro.

Did Frankie call his cousin Freddie?

Yes, yes, he did. Frankie called his cousin Freddie.

What did Frankie do? Did he send a letter to his cousin Freddie?

No, he didn't send a letter to his cousin Freddie.

Did he call his cousin Freddie?

Yes, he did. He called his cousin Freddie.

Did he call his cousin Freddie on the telephone?

Yes, he did.

Did Frankie call his cousin Freddie?

Yes, Frankie called his cousin Freddie. He called his cousin Freddie on the telephone.

He told Freddie he was in New York.

Who told Freddie he was in New York? Did Pedro tell Freddie he was in New York?

No, Pedro didn't tell Freddie he was in New York.

Did Frankie tell Freddie he was in New York?

Yes, Frankie told Freddie he was in New York.

Who was in New York? Is Frankie in New York?

Yes, yes, Frankie is in New York.



Chile Mini-Story Lesson

Where is Frankie? Is he in Paris?

No, Frankie is not in Paris.

Is he in New York?

Yes, Frankie is in New York. He told Freddie he was in New York.

Freddie said, “You can sleep at my house tonight.”

Okay, so who said, “You can sleep at my house tonight”? Was it Frankie who said it?

No, it wasn’t Frankie.

Did Freddie say, “You can sleep at my house tonight”?

Yes, that’s who said it. Freddie said, “You can sleep at my house tonight.”

Who can sleep at Freddie’s house tonight? Frankie and Lola?

Yes, Frankie and Lola can sleep at Freddie’s house tonight. Freddie said, “You can sleep at my house tonight” and when he said that he meant Frankie and Lola can sleep at his house tonight.

When can they sleep at Freddie’s house? Next week?

No, not next week.

Can they sleep at Freddie’s house tonight?

Yes, yes, they can sleep at Freddie’s house tonight.

Did Freddie say that Frankie and Lola can sleep at his house tonight?

Yes, he did. He said, “You can sleep at my house tonight.”

So they went to Freddie’s house.

Chile Mini-Story Lesson

So who went to Freddie's house? Did Bill and Hilary Clinton go to Freddie's house?

No, no, it wasn't Bill and Hilary Clinton.

Did Frankie and Lola go to Freddie's house?

Yes, yes, they did. They went to Freddie's house.

Where did they go? Did they go to the hotel?

No, they didn't go to the hotel. The hotel did not have a room for them.

Did they go to Freddie's house?

Yes, that's where they went. They went to Freddie's house.

Whose house did they go to? Did they go to Bill's house?

No, they didn't go to Bill's house.

Did they go to Freddie's house?

Yes, yes, they went to Freddie's house.

Did Frankie and Lola go to Freddie's house?

Yes, they did. They went to Freddie's house.

That night they went out on the town.

What did they do that night? Did they go to church?

No, they did not go to church.

Did they go out on the town?

Yes, they did, they went out on the town.

Did they go to different places in New York?

Chile Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, *they did.*

Did they have fun that night?

Well, you could say that as well. They went out on the town which means that they went out and had some fun at different places in New York.

When did they go out on the town? The next morning?

No, it wasn't the next morning.

Did they go out on the town that night?

Yes, they did. That's when they went out on the town. They went out on the town that night.

That night, did they go out and have fun at different places in New York?

Well, yes, they did. That night they went out on the town which means they went out to different places in New York and had fun.

First they went to a café to hang out,

So where did they go? Did they go to the library?

No, they didn't go to the library.

Did they go to a café?

Yes, yes, that's where they went. They went to a café.

Who went to the café? Did Bill and Hilary Clinton go to the café?

No, no, not Bill and Hilary Clinton.

Did Frankie, Lola and Freddie go to a café?

Yes, they did. They went to a café.



Chile Mini-Story Lesson

What did they do at the café? Did they hang out at the café?

Yes, yes, they did. They went to a café to hang out.

Did they casually pass time at the café?

Yes, they did, because they went to the café to hang out.

Did they go to the café to hang out?

Yes, they did.

Did they go to the café to casually pass time?

Well, yes, you could say that also. They went to the café to hang out which means they went to the café to casually pass time.

then they went to a club.

What did they do? Did they go to a club?

Yes, yes, they did. They went to a club.

Who went to a club? Did Frankie's mother go to a club?

No, no, it wasn't Frankie's mother.

Did Frankie go to a club?

Yes, yes, he did.

Did Lola go to a club?

Yes, she went to the club, too.

Did Freddie go to a club?

Yes, Freddie went to a club also.

Chile Mini-Story Lesson

Did Frankie, Lola and Freddie all go to a club?

Yes, they did. They went to a club.

Where did they go? Did they go to the grocery store?

No, they didn't go to the grocery store.

Did they go to a club?

Yes, they did. They went to a club.

They danced and drank a good amount of beer.

What did they do? Did they go jogging and then drink water?

No, they didn't do that.

Did they dance?

Well, yes, they did. They danced.

Did they drink beer?

Yes, they did that, too.

Did they drink a good amount of beer?

Yes, yes, they drank a good amount of beer.

Did they drink a lot of beer?

Well, yes, they drank a good amount of beer which means they drank a lot of beer.

Who danced? Did Lola dance?

Yes, Lola did dance.

Chile Mini-Story Lesson

Did Frankie dance?

Yes, *Frankie danced, too.*

Did Freddie dance?

Yes, yes, *they all danced.*

What did they drink? Did they drink soda?

No, *they didn't drink soda.*

Did they drink milk?

No, *they didn't drink milk.*

Did they drink beer?

Yes, yes, *they drank beer.*

Did they dance and drink a good amount of beer?

Yes, *they did.*

Did they dance and drink a lot of beer?

Yes, yes, *they did. They danced and drank a good amount of beer which means they danced and drank a lot of beer.*

Later that night Frankie said to Lola “I told you everything would be okay, happy anniversary.”

Who said, “I told you everything would be okay”? Did Freddie say it?

No, that wasn't Freddie who said it.

Did Frankie say it?

Yes, that's who said it. Frankie said it.



Chile Mini-Story Lesson

Who did Frankie say it to? Did he say it to Freddie?

No, no.

Did he say it to Lola?

Yes, yes, that's correct. He said it to Lola.

When did Frankie say it? Did he say it the next day?

No, he didn't say it the next day.

Did he say it later that night?

Yes, yes, that's when he said it. He said it later that night.

Did Frankie tell Lola that everything would be okay?

Yes, he did. He said, "I told you that everything would be okay."

Did Frankie wish Lola a happy anniversary?

Well, yes, he did. He said happy anniversary.

* * * * *

Okay, so that brings us to the end of the story and that means we are at the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Chile.” Please try to tell this story on your own now. Make sure that you use all the idioms that we discussed. We discussed “wing it,” “get by,” “not long after,” “dawned on,” “out on the town,” “hang out,” “a good amount.” So those are the idioms we used. Now try to tell the story by yourself.

Okay, good luck and I'll see you next time.



Chile POV Lesson

Hey there everyone. I hope you're ready to start the point of view stories for the lesson "Chile". I know I am. Let's start with the story being told as if it is happening right now.

* * * * *

Frankie the frog is married to Lola the lamb. Wednesday is their five year wedding anniversary. So they plan a trip to New York.

"Call a hotel to reserve a room," Lola says.

"I don't wanna call a hotel, we can just wing it," says Frankie.

Lola looks concerned. So Frankie says, "Don't worry, we'll get by."

Three days later they fly to New York. Not long after they arrive, Frankie calls a hotel. The hotel is full. Then it dawns on Frankie that his cousin Freddie lives in New York.

So he calls his cousin Freddie. He tells Freddie he is in New York.

Freddie says, "You can sleep at my house tonight."

So they go to Freddie's house.

That night they go out on the town. First they go to a café to hang out, then they go to a club. They dance and drink a good amount of beer.

Later that night Frankie says to Lola, "I told you everything would be okay, happy anniversary."

* * * * *

Okay, so that's the end of the story being told as if it is happening right now. Now let's listen to the story being told as if it is happening eleven years in the future. Okay, here we go.

* * * * *

Eleven years from now Frankie the frog will be married to Lola the lamb. Wednesday will be their five year wedding anniversary. So they're gonna plan a trip to New York.

"Call a hotel to reserve a room," Lola'll say.



Chile POV Lesson

Then Frankie'll say, "I don't wanna call a hotel, we can just wing it."

Lola will look concerned. So Frankie'll say, "Don't worry, we'll get by."

Three days later they'll fly to New York. Not long after they arrive, Frankie'll call a hotel. The hotel will be full. Then it'll dawn on Frankie that his cousin Freddie lives in New York.

So he'll call his cousin Freddie. He'll tell Freddie he's in New York.

Freddie'll say, "You can sleep at my house tonight."

So they'll go to Freddie's house.

That night they'll go out on the town. First they'll go to a café to hang out, then they'll go to a club. They'll dance and drink a good amount of beer.

Later that night Frankie'll say to Lola, "I told you everything would be okay, happy anniversary."

* * * * *

Okay, so that is the story being told as if it is happening in the future. Next we will hear the story told by Frankie. So here is Frankie the frog telling the story.

* * * * *

I am married to Lola the lamb. Wednesday was our five year wedding anniversary. So we planned a trip to New York.

"Call a hotel to reserve a room," said Lola.

"I don't wanna call a hotel, we can just wing it," I said.

Lola looked concerned. So I said, "Don't worry, we'll get by."

Three days later we flew to New York. Not long after we arrived, I called a hotel. The hotel was full. Then it dawned on me that my cousin Freddie lived in New York.

So I called my cousin Freddie. I told Freddie I was in New York.

Freddie said, "You can sleep at my house tonight."



Chile POV Lesson

So we went to Freddie's house.

That night we went out on the town. First we went to a café to hang out, then we went to a club. We danced and drank a good amount of beer.

Later that night I said to Lola, "I told you everything would be okay, happy anniversary."

* * * * *

Okay, so we've now heard the point of view stories for the lesson "Chile". Now for your homework, listen to each of these stories again. Listen to them until you really know them well. Then try telling each story on your own. Don't just think about the story actually say it out loud. Then you will know that you really do know the story. Okay, have fun and we'll see you next time.



Chile Vocabulary Lesson

Hello and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Chile.” This is a conversation between Joe and a friend of ours named Will. Will had lived and worked in Chile for a year.

Okay, let's begin.

* * * * *

At the beginning of the conversation Joe says, “Hey, you know what dawned on me?”

Dawned on me. Dawned on me means to realize, to remember. Dawned on me. For example: After leaving the grocery store, it dawned on me that I forgot to buy a cucumber. Dawned on me.

Then Will says, “What’s that?” Joe says, “The last time I saw you, you told, you mentioned something and, I didn’t even realize it until we had already gone our separate ways. And that was that you had lived in Chile before.”

Gone our separate ways. This means when people who were together leave one another. Gone our separate ways. For example: When the bar closed, it was time for us to go our separate ways. So, in this case, go our separate ways.

So then Joe goes on to say, “I didn’t even remember that. It’s like I don’t know...” Will says, “Yeah, I...” And Joe says, “know if you ever told me that.” And then Will says, “Yeah, I lived in Chile, uh, for a year not long after college.”

Yeah. Yeah is just slang or casual or informal for yes. Not long after. Not long after is a short amount of time. For example: Phillip started a summer job working at the bank not long after he finished school for the year. Not long after.

Okay, then moving on in the conversation Joe says, “Wait, what year was this?” And Will says, “That was in 1992.” And Joe says, “Oh, man. So, did you, pretty much right after you graduated, you just decided to travel, or...”

When Joe says, “Oh man...” That’s just an expression, like, oh wow, oh gee, oh man. Pretty much right after. Now this means right around the time of or close to the time of. Pretty much right after.

Then Will says, “It took me a year to save up the money and then I went travelin’. Yeah, I planned on goin’ right away. But it took me a little while and, uh, I made it.”

Travelin’, goin’... these are just shortened for... Travelin’ is shortened for traveling. Goin’ is shortened for going.



Chile Vocabulary Lesson

Then Joe says, “Did you know Spanish at the time, or...”

What Joe’s saying here is, did you know how to speak Spanish at the time you were in Chile? Did you know Spanish at the time.

And then Will says, “I thought I did.” And Joe laughs. And Will says, “When I got to Chile I realized I had no idea what anybody was talking about.”

Had no idea. That means did not know. For example: I had no idea what I wanted to do when I finished high school. Had no idea.

And then Joe says, “Was it because they were speaking too fast, or...” And Will says, “It was because I didn’t really know Spanish.” So then Joe laughs and says, “Wait, how much, how much Spanish did you have before that?”

How much Spanish did you have before that? So what he’s saying is, how many Spanish classes did you have before going to Chile?

“Did you take some in college? Or was it just from living in San Francisco and living in The Mission or something?”

The Mission. This is short for the Mission District. District is like an area. The Mission District is a neighborhood in San Francisco. For example: When Joe first moved to San Francisco, he found an apartment in The Mission. The Mission.

So then Will says, “Oh, I had taken Spanish since I was twelve years old. And I was, and I took it, uh, for about three years in college as well. And when I got to Chile, it was really difficult, um, uh. However I was able to get by. And I was able to make friends.”

I had taken Spanish. So what Will is saying is I had taken Spanish classes since I was twelve years old. I had taken Spanish. Get by. Get by means to do okay by using only what you have. For example: Although I did not speak Spanish very well, I was able to get by when I went to Mexico. Get by.

Then Joe says, “Right.” And Will goes on to say, “And I met some really nice people who were patient with the language and everything, uh... It was a group of, uh, people who liked to, uh, um, hang out and play guitar and go dancing...”

So he met some really nice people who were patient. Patient means people... these were people who were willing to take their time with him. For example, they spoke slowly when they were talking to him. Patient.



Chile Vocabulary Lesson

Hang out. *Hang out* means to casually pass time. For example: *My friends and I like to hang out at the café near my house. Hang out.*

So then Joe says, “Oh that’s good.” And Will says, “and there were a lot of, a lot of people, a lot of foreigners, like travelers, in the group. But not like tourists. But people who were kind of my age and who were living there.”

Kind of. *Kind of* means sort of. For example: *When I first visited Chicago, I thought it was kind of like New York. Kind of.*

Then Joe says, “Yeah.” And Will says, “And they, uh, uh. There were these Chilean people who, uh, basically were my friends the whole time I was there.”

Basically is almost used as a *filler* here. *Filler* meaning it's not even really needed. But it can mean just. For example: *The people were just my friends. The people were basically my friends.*

Okay then Will goes on to say, “I was only there for a year. But still I met a lot of really good people, uh, very early on. And by the time I left I spoke a lot of Spanish.”

Early on. *Early on* means in the beginning. For example: *Early on when I moved to San Francisco I would get lost a lot. Now that I have lived here for three years I never get lost. Early on.*

And Joe says, “A year, that’s a good amount of time.”

A good amount. *That* means a lot. For example: *I spent a good amount of money buying a plane ticket to Thailand. A good amount.*

Then Will goes on to say, “Yeah, I wouldn’t have been able to learn so much Spanish as I did in a year though if I hadn’t been in school for so long. Even though it wasn’t, uh, um, even though it wasn’t super fa-...a super fast way to learn Spanish, uh... I mean I learned so much more a year in Chile than I did in all the school that I ever had.”

Super fast. *That* just means very fast. *Super fast way to learn Spanish.*

Then Will goes on to say, “Uh, it still gave me a really good foundation.”

So good foundation means a good amount of information to start with. For example: *I learned to speak a little Spanish as a child. It was a good foundation for studying Spanish in college. Good foundation.*

So Will goes on to say, “So when I went to, uh, Chile I was able to, uh, to make friends there and, uh,



Chile Vocabulary Lesson

speak the language almost all the time. And by the time I came back I knew a lot of Spanish.”

By the time I came back I knew a lot of Spanish. What he's saying here is by the time I came back to America, by the time I returned to America, I knew a lot of Spanish.

And then he goes on to say, “That was fun, but, uh, the trip itself was the best part. The experience of, uh, living and traveling and working in Chile was something I'll never forget. That was one of the best years of my life.” And then Joe says, “Was that the first time that you'd done any sort of, like, y'know, traveling like that? Or had you, had you gone on a trip like this, y'know, while you were in college during summer? Or...”

Y'know is used a lot in conversation and it's just short for “you know.”

Then Will says, “I had gone on, uh, uh many trips to Mexico...” And Joe says, “Uh-huh.” And Will then goes on to say, “when I was in college. Every chance I could, of course, I would go to Mexico. Ah, I love Mexico.” And Joe says, “Yeah, it's...” And Will says, “When I...” And Joe says, “so close.” And Will says, “when I was in Chile, that was the first time though that I took a trip hitchhiking.”

Hitchhiking. This means to travel by getting a free ride in a car with someone you do not know. For example: In Hawaii I did not have to rent a car because hitchhiking is very easy. Hitchhiking.

Then Will goes on to say, “In the summer I went to the south of Chile and, uh, that was a really good time. Uh, when I first got there we had, uh, I had no idea what I was doin'.”

Had no idea what I was doin'. So he's saying he didn't know what he was doing. Doin' is just short for doing.

And Will goes on to say, “And I just thought, I'm just gonna wing it...”

Gonna is short for going to. Wing it. Wing it means to do something without any planning. For example: We planned to eat at the restaurant but when we arrived it was closed. So we had to wing it. Wing it.

So then Will goes on to say, “uh... I'm never gonna be able to get a job here and, uh... I just, uh, went on this fantastic trip. And when I got back to the city, uh, realizing that since I wasn't able to get a job I was probably gonna have to go home...”

Fantastic trip. Fantastic just means great trip. This really good trip.

So he goes on to say, “One of the people that I met, um, in the first week that I was there offered me a job. Or told me about a job that I later got at the school that she worked at. So I was able to live there a whole year.”



Chile Vocabulary Lesson

So first Will is saying he spoke with someone that offered him a job and then he corrects himself. He changes what he says. And he says "Or she told me about a job that I later got..." Offered a job means someone is giving him a job. Someone is asking him to work there. So he corrects himself... "Oh no, she didn't offer me a job. She just told me about the job."

So then Joe says, "What were you doin' there?"

Doin', being short for doing.

Will says, "I was teaching, uh, geography and literature to, uh, a lot of different aged kids, mostly around eleven and twelve." And Joe says, "Oh that sounds like a great job. You actually get a chance to interact with, uh, the younger generation as well."

Actually here means really. You really get a chance to interact with the younger generation. Younger generation means group of people who are younger. Younger generation.

And then Will says, "Absolutely."

So absolutely meaning definitely. For sure.

He goes on to say, "That's why I went there in the first place. Although goin' salsa dancing and, uh, hanging out with my friends was, uh, was another really good part of it." And Joe laughs, "I can just see you out on the town salsa dancing."

Out on the town. This means to have fun while going to different places in a town or city. For example: On Friday night I like to go out on the town with my friends. We usually go to a bar and then go dancing. Out on the town.

And then Will says, "Yeah, I, uh, I was a pretty terrible salsa dancer, it's true. But, I had a lot of fun."

Pretty terrible. This means very bad.

And Joe says, "Well, you know what? I guess that's really all that matters, doesn't it?" And Will says, "That's right. Yeah, absolutely when you go on a trip like that. That's what you want is to learn a lot and have a really good time."

* * * * *

So, this concludes the vocabulary lesson for the conversation "Chile." I would like to point out some things.



Chile Vocabulary Lesson

In this conversation as well as all of the conversations, you're going to hear many words that have been shortened. For example: "Goin'" short for going, "travelin'" short for traveling, "y'know" short for you know, "gonna" short for going to, "doin'" short for doing. You won't see this ever in written English but you will hear words shortened in day to day conversations. You will also hear a lot of "uh-huh", which is just like saying, okay, or yes, "uh-huh". You'll hear a lot of "uh", "uh", "um", "um". Again, you won't see these things in written English but you will hear them in conversations. "Uh" and "um" are just times when native English speakers will pause or take a break in something that they're saying. It's just kind of breaking up the conversation. Or maybe they're thinking of what they're going to be saying next. You'll also hear slang or very informal words such as "yeah". "Yeah" being short, or not really even short... It's more of slang or informal or casual for yes. You'll hear "yeah" used a lot. Something else you will hear a lot used in conversations is "like". Many times "like" is just used as a filler. So that means that it's not even really necessary to say it. It's not needed. It's just kind of put in the conversation. For example: "*Like*, I don't know if you ever told me that." Here, "like" is not even needed. I could just say, I don't know if you ever told me that. But "like" was put in there. So many times this happens. It's just kind of put in for no reason. "Like" can also mean, as you probably know, to have positive or good feelings about someone. "I really *like* Tom Cruise. I think he's a very good actor." "Like" can also be used to compare something. Or it could mean such as. Here's an example of this: "Was that the first time that you had done any sort of, you know, traveling *like* that? Or had you gone on a trip *like* this before?" So, was this the first time that you had done any sort of traveling "like" that... such as that. That's a completely different meaning for 'like' then... such as.

So now, to make sure you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary, listen to this conversation... this vocabulary lesson a few times if you need to. And make sure, always make sure you do it in a relaxed way. Don't get too worried about it. And then, when you're ready, go to the mini-story.

Alright. Bye, bye.

Nepal Part 1 Conversation

Joe: Hey.... When we were at Tim's house the other night, did you see all those pictures he had hanging up?

Kristin: [laugh] Yeah, I did. Those really surprised me because they weren't there the last time we were there.

Joe: [laugh] Yeah, you're right. That must have really been **a walk down memory lane** because you were in a lot of those pictures.

Kristin: Yeah, it was.

Joe: Y'know, there's this one that's **sticking out in my mind** where you have all this paint on your face...

Kristin: Oh no, no that wasn't paint. That was, uh, colored powder. That, um, that actually was taken during a festival that Tim and I participated in when we were in Katmandu. It was, it's called Holi. It's just a water and colored powder festival.

Joe: Oh, nice. Oh I loved Katmandu.

Kristin: Yeah, oh god I loved Katmandu. You know, when I arrived in Katmandu, it was just such **an assault on my senses**...in a, in a positive way, in a good way.

Joe: Yeah, yeah, I mean there are so many things about it once you get there that just **stay in your mind** like the sounds, the smell, um, the people, my gosh...

Kristin: Oh yeah.

Joe: ...I **had a ball** when I was there. And, y'know, I thi-, actually I think I would just say **hands down** Nepal must be one of my favorite places in the entire world. I mean the people there just make you **feel so at home**. They're so accommodating, they're so friendly. I mean they'll **bend over backwards** to do whatever they can for you.

Kristin: Yeah, I totally agree. I, I love Nepal, too.

Joe: You know the other thing I loved was, uh, the mountains there. I mean, you, I don't think you can really speak of that country without speaking about the mountains.

Kristin: Oh, yeah, well did you notice the one picture of Tim and I, with the mountains in the background? When some people have, when other people have

Nepal Part 1 Conversation

looked at that picture of us...

Joe: Um-hm.

Kristin: ...they thought it was very surreal, they didn't, they thought it was like a backdrop.

Joe: Yeah, I got the same response when I showed pictures to my aunt that I had taken, uh, when I was trekking. Speaking of which, that was one of the highlights of my entire trip to Nepal was trekking. I mean, um, I trekked in the Annapurna region and, uh, just had an amazing time and, uh.... I'll tell you, I would love to do that again. The trek, uh, was memorable not only because of all the beautiful, uh, scenery that I saw but, uh.... When I went on the trek I went with a guide and a porter...

Kristin: Yeah.

Joe: ...and, uh, the guide's name was Binaya. And he had a, uh, master's degree in conflict resolution specifically studying the, uh, the Maoist, uh, struggle that was going on with the government, so...

Kristin: Oh, interesting!

Joe: ...it really, yeah it really gave me a glimpse into, y'know, what was really going on...

Kristin: Yeah!

Joe: ...so, so I really enjoyed that. And then, uh, the porter who was with us was this guy named Dipesh and...

Kristin: Uh-huh.

Joe: ...oh my gosh, this guy was so funny. He was like in his early 20s and, uh, he really liked to party and he loved music and, uh.... He loved American music also...

Kristin: Uh-huh.

Joe: ...or, or western music, I should say. And he actually taught me how to sing a few Nepali songs, so [laugh]...

Nepal Part 1 Conversation

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: ...yeah so that was a lot of fun and, uh.... Yeah the entire time that I, uh, was on the trek, Binaya was telling me about the Maoist, uh, y'know, conflict that was going on. And then, sure enough, we actually saw some Maoists when we were trekking.

Kristin: Oh really?

Joe: Yeah. We went on this, uh, we woke up this one morning and we went to this one, uh, hilltop known as Poon Hill and...

Kristin: Uh-huh.

Joe: ...because we wanted to see the sunrise. So we woke up at like 5 in the morning. I mean, y'know, it was so early that, uh, it was still dark and you could **see your breath** as you were walking. So we got up there and, uh, y'know, had a great time watching the sunrise. The sights were beautiful. So then we were walking down, uh, from the hill, because it was about a 45 minute walk back to the guesthouse...

see your breath: to be able to see the air when breathing out because the outside temperature is so cold

Kristin: Uh-huh.

Joe: ...there were some Maoists that were waiting at the bottom of the hill and, um. What they were, uh, waiting for from each tourist was a donation, as they called it.

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: Basically what they said was when you come into the country you pay, uh, the Nepali government a visa fee...

Kristin: Uh-huh.

Joe: ...well, y'know, they don't oversee this part of the country. We do. So it's like you're paying us a visa fee...

Kristin: Ohhh.

Joe: ...so they actually give you a receipt. And then if you see Maoists any time later on, you show them the receipt and they just let you pass by.

Nepal Part 1 Conversation

Kristin: [laugh] Oh, wow.

paying off: giving payment or money to

Joe: Yeah. So, uh, y'know, after uh **paying off** the Maoists [laugh], we went down to, uh, eat breakfast at the guest house. And sure enough there were a couple of Maoists there who were making sure that everyone had their receipt and that everyone had paid. So...

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: ...yeah, I actually had one of the Maoists come down and sit and, uh, eat breakfast with me.

Kristin: [laugh]

got a shot of (picture):
to take a picture or photograph of someone or something

Joe: He was like a public relations guy. Y'know, he was telling me about the Maoist struggle and y'know, so uh.... So it was interesting to hear what he had to say. And I even **got a shot of** him and me together so...

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: ...so it was like, kind of like proof that I had actually, y'know, been interacting with the Maoists.

Kristin: [laugh]



Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Hi. Welcome to the mini-story for the conversation “Nepal Part 1”.

Okay, let's get started with the story.

* * * *

Ricky the rat was excited. Tonight he was going to a Rolling Stones concert. He was going to the concert with his mother, Rhonda the rat. His mother had been to three Rolling Stones concerts many years ago. So she knew it would be like a walk down memory lane.

Ricky and his mother had a ball at the concert. After it was over, they decided to try to meet Mick Jagger, the singer of the band. They knew that the band was staying at the Holiday Inn. So they drove to the hotel to try to find them.

When they got to the hotel room, they knocked on the door. A security guard answered the door but he would not let them in.

“Sorry, no rats allowed inside,” said the security guard.

“I think we will have to pay him off,” said Ricky’s mother.

So she gave the security guard \$200 to let them in.

When he saw Mick Jagger, Ricky said, “Jeez, Mick, hand’s down, that was the best concert that I have ever seen.”

“Thank you very much” Mick said, “You really make me feel at home.”

Ricky’s mother got a shot of Mick Jagger and Ricky shaking hands.

“I’ll never forget this day,” Ricky said.

* * * *

Okay, so that's our story. Now I will tell the story again and this time I will ask you questions. So please try to answer the questions out loud and if you need a little more time, you can always pause your player on your computer or your iPod and take a little more time. And then when you've had enough time to answer the question, you can just play again. And, of course, if you just feel like listening as you go through this lesson and not answering the questions, well that's fine, too.



Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Okay, let's get started.

* * * * *

Ricky the rat was excited.

Was Ricky the rat excited?

Yes, *he was*. *Ricky the rat was excited*.

Who was excited?

Ricky the rat, Ricky the rat was excited.

Was Ricky the rat or Charlie the snake excited?

Ricky the rat, Ricky the rat was excited.

What type of animal is Ricky?

A rat, Ricky is a rat.

Is Ricky a snake or a rat?

A rat, Ricky is a rat.

Tonight he was going to a Rolling Stones concert.

Was he going to a Rolling Stones concert tonight?

Yes, *he was going to a Rolling Stones concert.*

What was he going to do tonight?

He was going to go to a Rolling Stones concert, that's what he was going to do tonight.

Was he going to read a book or go to a Rolling Stones concert?

Go to a Rolling Stones concert. He wasn't going to read a book.



Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Who was going to a Rolling Stones concert?

Ricky the rat, Ricky the rat was going to a Rolling Stones concert.

Was Ricky or Mary going to a Rolling Stones concert?

Ricky, Ricky was going to a Rolling Stones concert.

Where was he going?

To a Rolling Stones concert.

When was he going?

Tonight, he was going tonight.

Was he going tomorrow?

No, he wasn't going tomorrow.

Was he going tonight?

Yes, he was going tonight.

He was going to the concert with his mother, Rhonda the rat.

Was he going to the concert with his mother?

Yes, he was. He was going to the concert with his mother.

Who was going to the concert with his mother?

Ricky, Ricky was going to the concert with his mother.

Was Bill or Ricky going to the concert with his mother?

Ricky, Ricky was going to the concert with his mother.



Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Where was he going with his mother?

To the concert, he was going to the concert with his mother.

Was he going to the concert or the beach with his mother?

The concert, he was going to the concert with his mother. He wasn't going to the beach with his mother.

Who was he going to the concert with?

His mother, Ricky was going to the concert with his mother.

Was he going with his father or his mother?

His mother, he was going with his mother.

What is his mother's name?

Rhonda, his mother is Rhonda the rat so her name is Rhonda.

Is his mother's name Rhonda or Sally?

It's Rhonda, his mother is named Rhonda.

Is his mother a rat or a snake?

She's a rat, Rhonda the rat is his mother.

His mother had been to three Rolling Stones concerts many years ago.

Had his mother been to three Rolling Stones concerts before?

Yes, she had, she had been to three Rolling Stones concerts many years ago.

What had his mother been to, three Rolling Stones concerts or three Madonna concerts?

Three Rolling Stones, his mother had been to three Rolling Stones concerts.

How many Rolling Stones concerts had she been to?



Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Three, she had been to three Rolling Stones concerts.

Had she been to three or four Rolling Stones concerts?

Three, she had been to three Rolling Stones concerts.

Who had been to three Rolling Stones concerts?

His mother, his mother had been to three Rolling Stones concerts.

Had Rhonda the rat been to three Rolling Stones concerts?

Yes, she had. Rhonda the rat had been to three Rolling Stones concerts because Rhonda the rat is Ricky's mother and Ricky's mother had been to three Rolling Stones concerts.

Had Ricky the rat's mom been to three Rolling Stones concerts?

Yes, yes, she had. His mother had been to three Rolling Stones concerts.

How long had it been since Rhonda the rat had been to a Rolling Stones concert? Was it last week?

No, it wasn't last week.

Was it last year?

No, it wasn't last year either.

Was it many years ago?

Yes, yes, that's correct. She had been to three Rolling Stones concerts many years ago.

So she knew it would be like a walk down memory lane.

Who knew it would be like a walk down memory lane?

Ricky's mother Rhonda, Ricky's mother Rhonda knew it would be like a walk down memory lane.

Did Rhonda know it would be like a walk down memory lane?

Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, she did. She knew it would be like a walk down memory lane.

Did Rhonda know it would be like nothing she had done before?

No, she knew it would be like a walk down memory lane, which means that she knew it would be like something she had done before.

Did Rhonda know it would remind her of something she had seen before?

Yes, yes, that's true. She knew it would be like a walk down memory lane which means that she knew it would remind her of something she had seen before or something she had already done before. She knew it would be like a walk down memory lane so she knew it would remind her of something that she had seen before.

Ricky and his mother had a ball at the concert.

Did Ricky and his mother have a ball at the concert?

Yes, they did. Ricky and his mother had a ball at the concert.

Who had a ball at the concert?

Ricky and his mother, Ricky and his mother had a ball at the concert.

Did Ricky and his brother Steve have a ball at the concert?

No, Ricky didn't go to the concert with his brother Steve.

Did Ricky and his mother have a ball at the concert?

Yes, they did. Ricky and his mother had a ball at the concert.

Did Ricky and his mother dislike the concert?

No, they didn't dislike the concert.

Did Ricky and his mother have a very enjoyable time at the concert?



Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, they did. They had a ball at the concert, which means that they had a very enjoyable time or they had a great time. They really enjoyed the concert. They had a ball at the concert.

Where did Ricky and his mom have a ball? Did they have a ball at the casino?

No, they didn't go to a casino.

Did they have a ball at the concert?

Yes, they did. They had a ball at the concert.

Did they have a really good time at the concert?

They certainly did. They had a ball at the concert, which means that they had a really good time at the concert.

After it was over, they decided to try to meet Mick Jagger, the singer of the band.

What did they decide to do?

To try to meet Mick Jagger, that's what they decided to do.

Who decided to try to meet Mick Jagger?

Ricky and his mother, Ricky and his mother decided to try to meet Mick Jagger.

Did Ricky and his father decide to try to meet Mick Jagger?

No, it wasn't Ricky and his father.

Did Ricky and his mother decide to try to meet Mick Jagger?

Yes, that's who it was. It was Ricky and his mother who decided to try to meet Mick Jagger.

Who did they decide to try to meet?

Mick Jagger, they decided to try to meet Mick Jagger.

Did they decide to try to meet the guitar player in the band?



Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

No, they didn't decide to try to meet the guitar player.

Did they decide to try to meet the singer of the band?

Yes, yes, they did. They decided to try to meet Mick Jagger, the singer of the band.

What is the name of the singer of the band? Is the Keith Richards the name of the singer of the band?

No, it's not Keith Richards.

Is Mick Jagger the name of the singer of the band?

Yes, yes, it is. Mick Jagger is the singer of the band.

They knew that the band was staying at the Holiday Inn.

Did they know that the band was staying at the Holiday Inn?

Yes, they did. They knew that the band was staying at the Holiday Inn. And you know the Holiday Inn is a hotel. It's the name of a hotel.

Who knew that the band was staying at the Holiday Inn?

Ricky and his mother knew.

Did Ricky and his mother know that the band was staying at the Holiday Inn?

Yes, yes, they did. Ricky and his mother knew that the band was staying at the Holiday Inn.

Who did they know was staying at the Holiday Inn?

The band, they knew that the band was staying at the Holiday Inn.

Did they know that Ricky's father was staying at the Holiday Inn?

No, not Ricky's father.

Did they know that the band was staying at the Holiday Inn?

Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, they did. They knew that the band was staying at the Holiday Inn.

So they drove to the hotel to try to find them.

Who drove to the hotel?

Ricky and his mother drove to the hotel.

Did Ricky and his Aunt Fran drive to the hotel?

No, it wasn't Ricky and his Aunt Fran.

Did Ricky and his mother drive to the hotel?

Yes, yes, they did. Ricky and his mother drove to the hotel.

How did they get to the hotel?

Well, they drove. They drove to the hotel.

Did they walk or drive to the hotel?

They drove. They drove to the hotel.

Okay, so why did they drive to the hotel?

Well, they drove to the hotel to try to find the band.

Did they drive to the hotel to sleep or to find the band?

To find them. To find the band.

Who did they try to find at the hotel?

The band, that's who they were trying to find.

Did they try to find Ricky's father at the hotel?



Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

No, they weren't looking for Ricky's father at the hotel.

Did they try to find the band at the hotel?

Yes, they did. They tried to find the band at the hotel.

Did they try to find the Rolling Stones at the hotel?

Yes, yes, they did. They tried to find the Rolling Stones at the hotel. That was the band they were trying to find.

When they got to the hotel room, they knocked on the door.

Did they knock on the door?

Yes, they did. They knocked on the door.

Who knocked on the door?

Ricky and his mother, Ricky and his mother knocked on the door.

When did they knock on the door?

When they got to the hotel room, when they got to the hotel room, they knocked on the door. They knocked on the door of the hotel room.

A security guard answered the door but he would not let them in.

Did a security guard answer the door?

Yes, a security guard answered the door.

Would the security guard let them inside?

No, he would not. He would not let them inside.

Who answered the door?

Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

A security guard, a security guard answered the door.

Did Mick Jagger or a security guard answer the door?

A security guard, a security guard answered the door.

Who did he not let inside?

Ricky and his mother, he did not let Ricky and his mother inside.

Did the security guard let Ricky and his mother into the hotel room?

No, he did not. He would not let them inside the hotel room.

“Sorry, no rats allowed inside,” said the security guard.

Okay, so who said, “Sorry, no rats allowed inside”?

The security guard, the security guard said, “Sorry, no rats allowed inside.”

Did Mick Jagger say, “Sorry, no rats allowed inside”?

No, it wasn’t Mick Jagger who said it. It was the security guard.

“I think we will have to pay him off,” said Ricky’s mother.

Who said, “I think we will have to pay him off”?

Ricky’s mother, Ricky’s mother said it.

Did Ricky’s mother or his father think they would have to pay him off?

His mother, his mother thought they would have to pay him off.

Who did Ricky’s mother think they would have to pay off?

The security guard, she thought that they would have to pay off the security guard.



Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Did she think they would have to pay off the security guard or the guitar player?

The security guard, she thought that they would have to pay off the security guard.

Did she think that they would have to pay the security guard money?

Yes, yes, she did. She thought that they would have to pay him off, which means that she thought that they would have to pay him money. When you pay someone off, that means you pay them money.

Did Ricky's mom think that they would have to cook dinner for the security guard?

No, she didn't think that they would have to cook dinner for him. She thought that they would have to pay him off.

Did Ricky's mom think they would have to pay the security guard money?

Yes, yes, she did. She thought that they would have to pay him off, which means that she thought that they would have to pay him money.

So she gave the security guard \$200 to let them in.

Did she give the security guard \$200?

Yes, she did. She gave the security guard \$200.

Who gave the security guard \$200?

Ricky's mother, Ricky's mother gave the security guard \$200.

Did Ricky or his mother give the security guard \$200?

His mother, Ricky's mother gave the security guard \$200.

Who did she give \$200 to?

The security guard, she gave the security guard \$200.

How much money did she give him?

Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Two hundred dollars, she gave him \$200.

Did she give him \$200 or \$500?

Two hundred dollars, she gave him \$200.

Why did she give him \$200?

Well, she did it so he would let them in the hotel room.

When he saw Mick Jagger, Ricky said, “Jeez, Mick, hand’s down, that was the best concert that I have ever seen.”

Did Ricky say that it was, hand’s down, the best concert that he had ever seen?

Yes, he did. He said, “Hand’s down, that was the best concert that I have ever seen.”

Had Ricky ever seen a better concert?

No, he hadn’t, he said that was the best concert he had ever seen, hand’s down, which means that was the best concert he had ever seen definitely. When you say something, hand’s down, that means definitely or without a doubt.

Was Ricky sure he had never seen a better concert?

Yes, he said, hand’s down, it was the best concert he had ever seen, which means he was sure that he had never seen a better concert.

“Thank you very much” Mick said, “You really make me feel at home.”

Who made Mick feel at home?

Ricky, he said that Ricky made him feel at home.

Did Ricky’s Aunt Fran make Mick feel at home?

No, it wasn’t his Aunt Fran who made him feel at home.

Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Did Ricky make Mick feel at home?

Yes, he did. He made Mick feel at home.

Did Ricky make Mick feel uncomfortable?

No, he didn't make him feel uncomfortable. He made him feel at home. If you make someone feel at home that means you make them feel comfortable.

Did Ricky make Mick feel uneasy?

No, no, he didn't. He made him feel at home, which made him feel easy or at ease. It didn't make him feel uneasy.

Did Ricky make Mick feel welcome?

Yes, yes, he did. He made him feel at home, which means he made him feel welcome.

Did Ricky make Mick feel bad?

No, he didn't make him feel bad. He made him feel at home, which is a good thing.

Did Ricky make Mick feel good?

Yes, yes, he did. He made him feel at home, which means that he made him feel welcome. He made him feel comfortable. He made him feel at ease. He made him feel at home.

Ricky's mother got a shot of Mick Jagger and Ricky shaking hands.

Did Ricky's mother get a shot of Mick Jagger and Ricky?

Yes, she did. She got a shot of Mick Jagger and Ricky.

Did Ricky's mother get a photograph of Mick Jagger and Ricky?

Yes, yes, she did. She got a shot of them, which is the same thing as saying she got a photograph of them or she took a photograph of them.

Who got a shot of Mick Jagger and Ricky?



Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Ricky's mother, Ricky's mother got a shot of Mick Jagger and Ricky.

Did Ricky's father get a shot of Mick Jagger and Ricky?

No, it wasn't his father. It was his mother who got a shot of them.

Who did she get a shot of?

Mick Jagger and Ricky, she got a shot of Mick Jagger and Ricky.

Who did she get a photograph of?

Mick Jagger and Ricky, she got a shot of Mick Jagger and Ricky, which is the same thing as saying she got a photograph of Mick Jagger and Ricky or she took a photograph of Mick Jagger and Ricky. When you say you've got a shot of someone that means you took a photograph of them or you got a photograph of them.

Were they shaking hands when she got a shot of them?

Yes, yes, they were. She got a shot of them shaking hands.

"I'll never forget this day," Ricky said.

Who will never forget this day?

Ricky, Ricky will never forget this day.

Will Ricky ever forget this day?

No, he will not. He said, "I'll never forget this day," which means that he will not ever forget this day.

* * * * *

Okay, we've reached the end of our story, which means that we are also at the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation "Nepal Part 1." Now please try to tell the story by yourself. And remember, you do not need to memorize every word in the story. But you should use the idioms that we used. So those idioms are: "a walk down memory lane," "had a ball," "pay him off," "hand's down," "feel at home," and "got a shot of." Remember that you can listen to this lesson as many times as you need to.



Nepal Part 1 Mini-Story Lesson

Okay, that's all for now. Thanks and we'll see you next time.



Nepal Part 1 POV Lesson

Hello there. Welcome to the point of view stories for “Nepal Part 1”. In the mini-story we heard the story being told as if it had already happened. So we will start this lesson by telling the story as if it is happening right now. So let's get started.

* * * *

Ricky the rat is excited. Tonight he is going to a Rolling Stones concert. He's going to the concert with his mother, Rhonda the rat. His mother has been to three Rolling Stones concerts. So she knows it will be like a walk down memory lane.

Ricky and his mother have a ball at the concert. After it is over, they decide to try to meet Mick Jagger, the singer of the band. They know that the band is staying at the Holiday Inn. So they drive to the hotel to try to find them.

When they get to the hotel room, they knock on the door. A security guard answers the door but he will not let them in.

“Sorry, no rats allowed inside,” says the security guard.

“I think we will have to pay him off,” says Ricky’s mom.

So she gives the security guard \$200 to let them in.

When he sees Mick Jagger, Ricky says, “Jeez, Mick, hand’s down, that was the best concert that I have ever seen.”

“Thank you very much,” Mick says. “You really make me feel at home.”

Ricky’s mother gets a shot of Mick Jagger and Ricky shaking hands.

“I’ll never forget this day,” Ricky says.

* * * *

Okay, so that is the story being told as if it is happening right now. Next we will hear the story being told as if it will be happening later this year. Okay, so here we go.

* * * *

Nepal Part 1 POV Lesson

Later this year, Ricky the rat is going to be excited. He's gonna go to a Rolling Stones concert. He's gonna go to the concert with his mother, Rhonda the rat. His mother has been to three Rolling Stones concerts. She's gonna know that it will be like a walk down memory lane.

Ricky and his mother are going to have a ball at the concert. After it is over, they'll decide to try to meet Mick Jagger, the singer of the band. They'll know that the band is staying at the Holiday Inn. So they're gonna drive to the hotel to try to find them.

When they get to the hotel room, they'll knock on the door. A security guard will answer the door but he won't let them in.

The security guard will say, "Sorry, no rats allowed inside."

Then Ricky's mother'll say, "I think we have to pay him off."

So she'll give the security guard \$200 to let them in.

When he sees Mick Jagger, Ricky'll say, "Jeez, Mick, hand's down, that was the best concert that I have ever seen."

Then Mick'll say, "Thank you very much. You really make me feel at home."

Ricky's mother'll get a shot of Mick Jagger and Ricky shaking hands.

Then Ricky'll say, "I'll never forget this day."

* * * * *

Alright, so that was the story being told as if it is happening later this year. This next story will be told from Ricky's point of view. So the story will be told by Ricky. Here we go.

* * * * *

I was excited. Last year I went to a Rolling Stones concert. I went to the concert with my mother, Rhonda the rat. My mother had been to three Rolling Stones concerts many years ago. So she knew it was going to be like a walk down memory lane.

My mother and I had a ball at the concert. After it was over, we decided to try to meet Mick Jagger, the singer of the band. We knew that the band was staying at the Holiday Inn. So we drove to the hotel to try to find them.

Nepal Part 1 POV Lesson

When we got to the hotel room, we knocked on the door. A security guard answered the door but he would not let us in.

“Sorry, no rats allowed inside,” said the security guard.

“I think we will have to pay him off,” my mother said.

So she gave the security guard \$200 to let us in.

When I saw Mick Jagger, I said, “Jeez, Mick, hand’s down, that was the best concert that I have ever seen.”

“Thank you very much,” Mick said. “You really make me feel at home.”

My mother got a shot of Mick Jagger and I shaking hands.

Then I said, “I’ll never forget this day.”

* * * * *

Okay, so that is the end of the point of view lessons for the lesson “Nepal Part 1”. So your homework assignment is to go back and listen to these stories until you can tell them on your own. Remember that when you tell them on your own you should say them out loud, say the story out loud, don’t just think of it in your mind. Okay, that’s all for now. See ya later.



Nepal Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Hi. Hello, welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Nepal Part 1.” Now this conversation has two parts. In the conversation, Joe and I are talking about two separate trips we each took to Nepal. I went with my boyfriend at the time in 2001 and Joe went with his girlfriend at the time in 2004.

Okay, let's begin.

* * * * *

At the beginning of the conversation, Joe says, “Hey, when we were at Tim’s house the other night, did you see all those pictures he had hanging up?” And then I said, after laughing, “Yeah, I did. Those really surprised me because they weren’t there the last time we were there.”

So both Joe and I had been at Tim’s. Tim was my boyfriend that I had gone to Nepal with, now my ex-boyfriend. We had been at Tim’s house and he had put up some pictures on the wall that were not there the last time Joe and I had been there. So that’s what we’re talking about. It was just a bunch of different pictures.

Then Joe says, after laughing, “Yeah, you’re right. That must have really been a walk down memory lane because you were in a lot of those pictures.”

A walk down memory lane. That’s an idiom. So basically what Joe was saying to me was, that must have really been or that must have made you think back to that particular time. Because you were in a lot of those pictures. Or that must have really helped you remember that time or that trip. Because you were in a lot of those pictures. A walk down memory lane. Now an example of a walk down memory lane would be: It’s such a walk down memory lane whenever I visit my hometown, Gainesville, Georgia. It takes me back to memories of growing up there.

Okay, then in the conversation I say, “Yeah, it was.”

And I’m referring to the pictures being memorable for me. They helped me remember that time in Nepal.

Then Joe says, “Y’know, there’s this one that’s sticking out in my mind where you have all this paint on your face.”

When Joe first says, y’know... Now that’s something that we would say a lot in conversation. Or you would hear a lot in conversational English. But not really see it in written English. So, it’s basically just combining “you” and “know” and asking, you know? Basically, do you understand? So Joe is saying, y’know, there’s this one that’s sticking out in my mind. So what he’s saying or what he’s mentioning to me is there’s this one picture that’s present or it’s there in my mind... it’s sticking out in my mind... where you have all this paint on your face. Another way of looking at it is Joe is saying to me. There’s this one picture that I’m remembering

Nepal Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

more than any other one, where you have all this paint on your face. So that's sticking out in my mind. An example of that would be: I saw a butterfly the other day in the back yard. It's sticking out in my mind because the colors of its wings were beautiful.

Okay, then in the conversation I say, “Oh, no, no, that wasn’t paint. That was colored powder. That, um, that actually was taken during a festival that Tim and I participated in when we were in Katmandu.”

So what I’m saying is Tim, my boyfriend at the time, we participated in or we joined in this particular festival that was going on in Katmandu at the time. And I’m not exactly sure what the festival, what the importance of the festival was. I do remember there was a lot of water being squirted out of squirt guns. And a lot of colored powder, I remember mostly red and blue, that Nepalis would come up and put on people. So they had come up and put a lot on my face and in my hair. So we participated in or we joined in this festival in Katmandu.

And then I go on to say, “It was, it’s called Holi.”

So the name of the festival is Holi.

“It’s just a water and colored powder festival.” And then Joe says, “Oh, nice. Oh I loved Katmandu.” And then I go on to say, “Yeah, oh god, I loved Katmandu. Y’know, when I arrived in Katmandu, it was just such an assault on my senses, in a, in a positive way, in a good way.”

An assault on my senses. So what I’m... What I’m basically saying is that when I arrived in Katmandu, everything about Katmandu was affecting me at once or influencing me at once. For example, like the smells, the sounds, the sights. So it was all an assault on my senses. Now assault can be used at times in a negative way, like as an attack or someone hitting another person or beating up another person. But in this sense, and that’s why I say, it was an assault on my senses in a positive way, in a good way. So in this particular situation, assault is very positive. I am saying all these, all these things, the sights, the sounds, the smells of Katmandu affected me in a really good way. An example of assault on my senses would be: I can remember my first Grateful Dead concert was so exciting because it was such an assault on my senses.

Okay, moving on then Joe says, “Yeah, yeah, I mean there are so many things about it once you get there that just stay in your mind, like the sounds, the smell, um, the people. My gosh.”

Stay in your mind. What Joe is saying is there are so many things about Katmandu that you just won’t forget, like the sounds, the smells, the people. Or there are so many things about it, about Katmandu, that once you get there it would just be difficult to not remember them. Or it would be difficult to lose the memory of them, such as the sounds, the smell, the people. An example of stay in your mind would be: Whenever I go to a movie theatre, the smell of popcorn is so good and so strong that it stays in my mind until the next time I go. I



Nepal Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

can always remember that smell. At the end of Joe's sentence there, after he's talking about the sights, the sounds, the smells staying in your mind, he says, my gosh. Now, that's just a way of showing emotion in a positive or a good way. Another example would have been if he had said, "My god." or "Wow." or "Jeez." It's just a way of showing emotion.

Okay moving on. Then I say, "Oh yeah." And then Joe says, "I had a ball when I was there."

Now what he's saying is, I had a ball, is I had a good time when I was there. Or I had a lot of fun when I was there. I had a ball. Example of I had a ball would be: I had a ball at the music festival a few weeks ago. It was so much fun. I had a ball.

He goes on to say, "And y'know, I think actually... I think I would just say hands down Nepal must be one of my favorite places in the entire world."

Hands down. What he is saying here is, I think I would just say definitely Nepal must be one of my favorite places in the entire world. Or I think I would just say without a doubt Nepal must be one of my favorite places in the entire world. Hands down. An example of hands down would be to say: Hands down, orange and brown are some of my favorite colors. I just really like them. Now at the end of that sentence, Joe says, hands down Nepal must be one of his favorite places in the entire world. Entire meaning the whole world.

He goes on to say, "I mean the people there just make you feel so at home. They're so accommodating."

Or in other words, they're so helpful.

"They're so friendly. I mean they'll bend over backwards to do whatever they can for you."

Okay, so feel so at home. This idiom is essentially, what Joe is saying is... I mean the people there just make you feel so comfortable. So at ease. Feel so at home. An example would be: I like to be around people who make me feel so at home because I like to be stress free and feel at ease. Who doesn't, right? Then he goes on to say, yeah, the Nepali people make him feel so at home, so comfortable, so at ease. They're so accommodating. They're so helpful. They're so friendly. I mean they'll bend over backwards to do whatever they can for you. Bend over backwards. Basically what he is saying here is, I mean they'll do almost anything to do whatever they can for you. I mean they'll be very helpful. They'll do whatever they can for you. Bend over backwards. An example of bend over backwards: I've eaten two times in a Nepali restaurant here in San Francisco. I love to eat there because the food is so good. And the owner and staff really bend over backwards to make sure I'm taken very good care of by, for example, constantly checking to see if I need more food, more drinks, asking me if the food is good, etc., etc.

Okay, then I say (back to the conversation), "Yeah, I totally agree. I love Nepal, too." Then Joe,



Nepal Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

“Y’know, the other thing I loved was, uh, the mountains there. I mean you, I don’t think you can really speak of that country without speaking about the mountains.”

So, he’s just talking about how he really likes the mountains there. They are, they’re beautiful. And he’s saying... You know, I don’t know how anyone can talk about Nepal and not talk about the mountains.

Then I go on to say, “Oh yeah, well did you notice the one picture of Tim and I with the mountains in the background?”

So what I’m saying here is... Did you notice the picture of Tim and I where the mountains are behind us? They’re in the background.

“When some people have, when other people have looked at that picture of us...” And then Joe, “Mm-hm.” And then I finish saying, “they thought it was very surreal.”

So they thought it wasn’t even real, is what I’m saying. They thought it was very surreal.

“they didn’t, they thought it was like a backdrop.”

So what I’m saying here is, and this is really true... When people looked at my pictures from Nepal, they just thought that’s not real. Those mountains in the background are not real. They’re very surreal. They look... They don’t look real. They thought it was like a backdrop. A backdrop being like a fake picture behind Tim and I.

Then Joe goes on to say, “Yeah, I got the same response when I showed pictures to my aunt that I had taken, uh, when I was trekking.”

So trekking is hiking, intense hiking, difficult hiking. So both Joe and I, when we were in Nepal, we went on hikes, or treks, for many days.

Then Joe says, “Speaking of which...”

Or what he’s saying essentially is that makes me think. Or that reminds me. Speaking of which.

“that was one of the highlights of my entire trip to Nepal was trekking.”

So what he’s saying is one of the highlights, the best thing to him about his trip to Nepal was the trek that he did, or this hike, for many days.

“I mean, uh, I trekked to the Annapurna region and, uh, just had an amazing time. And, uh, I’ll tell ya, I

Nepal Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

would love to do that again."

So he went to an area of Nepal, which is a very popular area to go trekking. It's called the Annapurna region. You know a lot of people go to Mount Everest or they go to Annapurna. So he happened to go to Annapurna. And he's saying, you know, he loved it so much he would do it again.

Then he goes on to say, "The trek was memorable."

So, memorable... It left a memory with him. It was something that he will remember.

Okay so, "The trek was memorable, not only because of all the beautiful, uh, scenery that I saw but when I went on the trek I went with a guide and a porter."

So when he's talking about scenery... Scenery usually consists of mountains, lakes, trees, etc. So the scenery on his trek was beautiful, as I'm sure you can imagine. It was on mine as well. He went on his trek with a guide. Someone who... A guide is someone who leads a group. So he had a guide, a leader of the group, and there was a porter. A porter is someone who carries other people's belongings, or stuff. So there was a porter who was helping to carry his stuff. His girlfriend's stuff as well.

Okay, then I go on to say, "Yeah."

I'm agreeing with him that, basically, that the scenery on my trek as well was beautiful.

Then Joe says, "And, uh, the guide's name was Binaya. And he had a master's degree in conflict resolution, specifically studying the Maoist struggle that was going on with the government. So..."

So, his guide, named Binaya, had a master's degree. A master's degree is a higher degree. It's a degree past four years of regular college or university. So his guide had a master's degree in conflict resolution. Conflict meaning fight. Resolution meaning a solution, something you can solve. And his master's degree being in conflict resolution was very specific or very focused on one thing and that being the Maoist struggle. A struggle is kind of like a fight as well, or, yeah basically, like a fight. Maoist means, or Maoists... Maoists are a group of people who did not like the government and they wanted to change or replace it in Nepal. So he got a master's degree in conflict resolution specifically focused on the Maoist struggle, this group in Nepal that was wanting to replace the government.

So then I say, "Oh, interesting."

I just found that really interesting. His guide had a master's degree in this. I think it would have been fascinating to have been on this trek and found out all of that information about what was going on at that time in Nepal.



Nepal Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

So Joe says, “Yeah, it really, yeah, it really gave me a glimpse into, y’know, what was really going on.”

So he’s saying it really gave me a glimpse. It really let me see what was going on in the country at that time, which I think is so cool.

And then I say, “Yeah.”

Agreeing with him, right?

And then Joe says, “So, so I really enjoyed that. And then the porter who was with us was this guy named Dipesh and...” And then I respond, “Uh-huh.”

Like yeah, tell me more.

And Joe says, “Oh my gosh.”

Oh my gosh. Oh wow is what he is saying.

“This guy was so funny. He was like in his early twenties...”

So he’s twenty-something, 21, 22, 23.

“and he really liked to party. And he loved music. And he loved American music also...”

So what he is saying is this guy liked to party. He liked to have fun. He liked to have a good time.

And I respond, “Uh-huh.”

Like, yeah, tell me more.

And Joe says, “or western music, I should say.”

So not just American music. He didn’t mean to make it specific to American music. He saying, no I mean he liked all of western music.

“And he actually taught me how to sing a few Nepali songs. So...” and he laughs and I laugh.

I can just picture this right, Joe singing some Nepali songs.

Nepal Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

And Joe says, "Yeah, so that was a lot of fun. And, yeah, the entire time that I was on the trek, Binaya was telling me about the Maoist, y'know, conflict that was going on. And then, sure enough, we actually saw some Maoists when we were trekking."

So just like I was thinking and would have enjoyed myself, Binaya (having the master's degree in the conflict resolution focusing on the Maoist struggle) is telling Joe all about this on the trek. And he is saying, sure enough or most definitely we ended up seeing some Maoists when we were trekking.

So then I say, "Oh really?" And Joe says, "Yeah, we went on this, we woke up this one morning. And we went to this one hilltop known as Poon Hill and..." And I'm saying, "Uh-huh."

Uh-huh. Yeah. I want to hear more. So they woke up really early in the morning and went up to the top of a hill, the name of it being Poon Hill. This is what he's telling me.

And then he goes on to say, "because we wanted to see the sunrise. So we woke up at like five in the morning. I mean, y'know, it was so early that it was still dark and you could see your breath as you were walking. So we got up there and, y'know, had a great time watching the sunrise. The sights were beautiful. So then we were walking down, uh, from the hill because it was about a 45 minute walk back..."

Down or back.

"to the guest house..."

So Joe woke up at five in the morning, which is unbelievable to begin with. When he wakes up this early, five in the morning, he's talking about how early it was. It was still dark. You could see your breath. What he's saying here is... This idiom is, he could see the air when he was breathing out because it was so cold. See your breath. An example of that would be: I like when I can see my breath in the winter. I like to pretend that I'm blowing out smoke from a fake cigarette. So they got up to the top. It's so cold they can see their breath. And had a great time just watching the sunrise. And everything was beautiful, right? And then he's talking about they walked back down the hill. It took them about 45 minutes to walk back to the guest house. A guest house is just a budget or cheap hotel.

So then I say, "Uh-huh."

Tell me more. Tell me more. I want to hear more.

So Joe says then, "there were some Maoists that were waiting at the bottom of the hill and, um... What they were, uh, waiting for from each tourist was a donation, as they called it."

Nepal Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

So here they come down to the bottom of the hill and there are Maoists right there. And they were waiting for all the tourists to come down. It's probably a spot where they have chosen because a lot of tourists do this... They'll wake up in the morning, once they're on their trek. Climb to the top of this hill to watch the sunrise. Come down. And there the Maoists get them, or greet them by asking for a donation. A donation, as they called it. A donation is an offering of money.

So I laugh. Joe then says, “Basically what they said was when you come into the country you pay the Nepali government a visa fee...”

So what he's saying here is the Maoists are telling the tourists, you... When you come in, when you fly into Katmandu, you have to pay the government this price to enter the country, this visa fee.

And I respond, “Uh-huh.” And Joe says, “Well, y'know...”

He's still talking about the Maoists now.

“Well, y'know, they don't oversee this part of the country. We do. So it's like you're paying us a visa fee.”

So the Maoists are telling them, you paid the government this visa fee, this payment, to enter Nepal. But the government is not, they don't oversee this part of the country. They don't control this part of the country. We do. So it's like you're paying us a visa fee, here.

And then I say, “Oh.” And then Joe, “So, they actually give you a receipt.”

A receipt is a piece of paper that shows a proof of payment. It shows you've paid for something.

So he says, “So, they actually give you a receipt. And then if you see Maoists anytime later on, you show them the receipt and they just let you pass by.”

So after you... You pay them this visa fee that they ask for, you show them the piece of paper, if a Maoist stopped you after that. You could show the piece of paper, which says you've paid. And then they'll just let you pass by. They'll let you go by. They'll let you go on. You're okay in other words.

So then I laugh and I say, “Oh, wow.” And Joe says, “Yeah. So, uh, y'know, after, uh, paying off the Maoists...” and he laughs, “we went down to eat breakfast at the guest house. And sure enough there were a couple of Maoists there who were making sure that everyone had their receipt and that everyone had paid. So.”

Nepal Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Okay, so he's saying after paying off the Maoists... Paying off. Paying off is giving payment to, giving money to. Paying off the Maoists. An example of that would be: I can remember paying off my bank for my first car loan. I was so happy and proud. Oh, that was a great day. So they go eat breakfast. And after they pay off the Maoists (give them money) they go eat breakfast at their guest house. And there were some Maoists in there. And they were walking around to everyone asking to see their receipt. They wanted to make sure they had all paid.

So then I laugh. And Joe says, "Yeah, I actually had one of the Maoists come down and sit and eat breakfast with me." And I laugh again.

I'm thinking oh my goodness, this just sounds crazy. I can't imagine a Maoist coming and sitting down with me to eat breakfast.

So then Joe goes on to say, "He was like a public relations guy."

Public relations guy. That is referring to someone who works for a company or, in this situation, a group. And that person talks about the good of the group or the company to other people. So this guy, this Maoist that comes and sits and eats breakfast with him, he's like a public relations guy. He's telling Joe all about the Maoists.

So yeah, "He was like a public relations guy, y'know. He was telling me about the Maoist struggle. And, y'know, so, uh, so it was interesting to hear what he had to say. And I even got a shot of him and me together. So..."

Alright, so Joe's listening, he's interested in what the Maoist has to say. And he even got a shot of him. Got a shot of. In other words, he got a picture or a photograph of this Maoist. For example: I got a shot of the building where the Guinness beer is made when I was in Dublin, Ireland last week. I think it was a pretty good picture. I got a shot of it.

Okay, so then Joe goes on to say, "So it was kind of like proof that I had actually, y'know, been interacting with the Maoists."

So he's saying I took this picture so it would show proof. It would show that I really had done this. I had really been sitting there talking to this Maoist, interacting with him.

And I just had this image in my head so I laughed.

* * * * *



Nepal Part 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Okay, that concludes the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Nepal Part 1.” Hope you enjoyed it. See you again next time.

Nepal Part 2 Conversation

face to face: person to person

Kristin: Wow, that's pretty crazy that you had a **face to face** encounter with a Maoist on your trek.

on their best behavior:
acting or being nice or polite

Joe: Well, it really wasn't very scary. Actually the ones I met, they were pretty friendly. But, I don't know, maybe they were **on their best behavior**.

Kristin: Yeah, maybe. I mean we didn't see 'em at all on our trek. In fact, the only trace of the Maoists that I remember seeing was being on a bus going over to a national park and looking out the window and seeing this old, abandoned, burned out bus on the side of the road. And apparently, we were told later, that the Maoists had stopped the bus and gotten everyone off and then burned it.

Joe: ...at least they got everyone off.

all hell broke loose:
there was a lot of trouble and confusion

Kristin: Yeah. Yeah, but I, I think it was, it wasn't even until after we left Nepal and got back to America that I started reading that **all hell broke loose** with the Maoists.

Joe: Yeah, that was actually just after I left.

Kristin: Oh, okay, well that makes sense then, why there was more of a presence there.

Joe: Yeah.

Kristin: When you were there, I should say. But, y'know, our trek sounds pretty different. How many days was your trek again?

Joe: Uh, it was 13 days total.

one day shy: one day less

Kristin: Okay. Mine was 12, so just **one day shy** of yours. Yeah, it's, it **started off on the wrong foot** for me.

started off on the wrong foot: to begin badly; did not start well

Joe: What happened?

didn't agree with me: made my stomach hurt

Kristin: Well, apparently I ate something that **didn't agree with me** and made me **sick as hell** to my stomach.

sick as hell: to be very ill

Joe: When you were trekking, or...

Kristin: No, no, no, the night before.

Nepal Part 2 Conversation

Joe: [laugh] Oh, no.

Kristin: Yeah. So, that's how it started off...and we were, the next morning we were supposed to leave at 7 a.m. **on the dot.** But, of course that got pushed back because I was so sick. I was **sick as a dog.**

on the dot: at the exact time

sick as a dog: to be very ill

Joe: Oh, man. Did you consider not goin'?

Kristin: Oh yeah...but Tim talked me into it.

Joe: [laugh] Well, that's good because, you know what? You, you were probably thankful in the end because you had such a good time, I'm sure.

Kristin: I did...I mean, it, y'know, it was tough though. It, first of all, I started out, I was sick, um.... I just was not physically prepared for it. I think it was like the second night there was this windstorm that really **freaked me out...**

freaked me out: made me afraid or worried

Joe: [laugh]

Kristin: ...yeah, it was pretty frightening.

Joe: How high up were you at that time?

Kristin: We weren't very high. It was just still the second night...I...to be honest, I don't remember but, yeah.... We weren't that high up.

Joe: Yeah. Well how high did you go, uh, total?

Kristin: Total...uh, we reached 12,000 feet.

Joe: Yeah, okay.

bird's eye view: view of an object from above

Kristin: Yeah, and that was, actually that was great being that high up. I mean we got such a great **bird's eye view** of the valley.

I was in heaven: I was having a very good time

Joe: Oh, yeah. Yeah, that was, that's what I noticed also when, uh, when we got up to our highest point which was a little over 14,000 feet. I was just, I mean **I was, like, in heaven.** I mean it was...

Nepal Part 2 Conversation

Kristin: [laugh] Yeah.

sitting on top of the world: I was having a very good time

Joe: ...I was like **sitting on top of the world**.

Kristin: [laugh] Yeah.

Joe: Y'know, uh.... And also at that point after we got up to the top I was no longer worried about, uh, altitude sickness. I don't know if anybody had problems with it, uh, y'know, with, in the group that you were traveling with.

Kristin: No, no we didn't. But, y'know of course we were warned about it. And one of the things we were warned about was to be careful of the alcohol intake. So Tim and I, being the beer drinkers that we are, didn't take heed to that warning. So it's a good thing we didn't get altitude sickness.

Joe: Yeah, they pretty much told us the same thing. They said, y'know, you probably shouldn't be smoking cigarettes which, you know, I don't smoke cigarettes so that was fine. They said don't drink too much, and y'know, I, I didn't really drink too much so that was good. But, uh, y'know, the other thing they said is, y'know, don't go up the mountain too fast. Make sure you spend a night before you get up to the peak, uh, y'know at a lower altitude but one that's pretty high up still and then...

Kristin: Oh, right.

Joe: ...so you can get acclimated. So we did that, but, uh, I'll tell ya, when we got up to the peak, there were people who were getting sick. And, uh, there were a couple of people who had to be carried down, like...

Kristin: Oh, jeez.

Joe: Yeah, and one of the guys who was carried down, I had met him on the way up. And, uh, I saw him on the way down. And, uh, I asked him, y'know, how he was feeling. And he said he was feeling better at that point. But he said the night before he thought his **head was going to explode**, so...

Kristin: Oh my god!

Joe: Yeah, very serious headache.

Kristin: Wow.

head was going to explode: to have a very bad headache

Nepal Part 2 Conversation

Joe: Yeah, so...

Kristin: Yeah, I mean we didn't, none of, y'know.... There was just me and Tim and then, a-uh, another woman from, uh.... Where was she from, Belgium and a guy from Luxembourg. So we all fared pretty well except, then towards the end, the guy from Luxembourg ended up **catching a cold**. And then **to top it off**, I caught it from him...

catching a cold: to become sick

to top it off: in addition to

Joe: Ugh.

Kristin: ...so that's how I ended the trek.

Joe: Yeah.

Kristin: Yeah, it was very physically draining for me.

Joe: Yeah. How much did it cost for you guys to do your trek?

Kristin: Um...to be honest, I really don't remember. But, y'know, it, it wasn't anything astronomical.

dirt cheap: very inexpensive

Joe: Yeah, yeah, I can't remember either how much we paid. But it, it was **dirt cheap**.

Kristin: Yeah.

Joe: Yeah, I'll tell you what, without a doubt, I wanna make sure I go back to Nepal and, uh, go trekking. I wanna go trekking again.

Kristin: Well, I wanna go back to Nepal. I don't know that I wanna go trekking.



Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Hi there. Welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Nepal Part 2.”

Okay, it's time to get started with the story.

* * * *

Larry the lion is excited. For ten years he has been trying to get a job as a movie actor. But he has never been able to get a job in a movie.

Then yesterday he got a phone call from Julia Roberts. She wanted to talk to him about acting in her new movie. So she set up a face to face meeting with him. The meeting was scheduled for next Thursday at 10:00 a.m. on the dot.

The day before the meeting, Larry went to the beach to swim. Even though it was a cold day, he decided to go in the water. When he got out of the water he began to shake because it was so cold.

The next morning he woke up feeling sick as a dog. He was coughing and his head felt like it was going to explode. He should not have gone swimming in the cold weather. His day started off on the wrong foot but he drove to his meeting.

When he met Julia Roberts, he was very nervous. But she liked him very much. She asked him to act in her movie.

Now Larry the lion is a famous movie star and he is sitting on top of the world.

* * * *

Okay, so that's our story. Now I will read the story again and this time I will ask you questions as I read it and you can answer the questions out loud. And if you need a little more time you can always pause your iPod or your computer and then press play again when you've had enough time to think about the answer. And if you just want to sit and listen and not answer the questions out loud, that's totally fine as well.

Okay, let's get started.

* * * *

Larry the lion is excited.

Who is excited?



Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Larry the lion, Larry the lion is excited.

Is Tony the tiger or Larry the lion excited?

Larry the lion, Larry the lion is excited.

What type of animal is Larry? Is he a cougar?

No, he's not a cougar.

Is he a lion?

Yes, he is. Larry is a lion.

Is Larry the lion upset?

No, he's not upset. He's excited.

Is Larry the lion tired?

No, he's not tired. He's excited.

Is Larry the lion happy?

Yes, he is. He's excited. He's happy.

For ten years he has been trying to get a job as a movie actor.

Has he been trying for ten years to get a job as a movie actor?

Yes, he has. For ten years he has been trying to get a job as a movie actor.

Who has been trying to get a job as a movie actor?

Larry the lion, Larry the lion has been trying to get a job as a movie actor.

Has Henry the hippo been trying to get a job as a movie actor?

No, not Henry the hippo.

Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Has Larry the lion been trying to get a job as a movie actor?

Yes, he has. Larry the lion has been trying to get a job as a movie actor.

How long has Larry been trying to get a job as a movie actor?

Ten years, he's been trying for ten years.

Has Larry been trying to get a job as a movie actor for ten years?

Yes, he's been trying for ten years.

What has Larry the lion been trying to do for ten years? Has he been trying to find a job as a doctor?

No, he hasn't been trying to find a job as a doctor.

Has he been trying to find a job as a movie actor?

Yes, he's been trying for ten years to try to find a job as a movie actor.

But he has never been able to get a job in a movie.

Has he ever been able to get a job in a movie?

No, no, he has not. He has never been able to get a job in a movie.

What has he never been able to do?

To get a job in a movie, he's never been able to get a job in a movie.

Who has never been able to get a job in a movie?

Larry, Larry the lion has never been able to get a job in a movie.

Has Larry ever been able to find a job in a movie?

No, he has not. Larry has never been able to get a job in a movie.



Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Then yesterday he got a phone call from Julia Roberts.

Did he get a call from Julia Roberts?

Yes, he did. He got a call from Julia Roberts.

Who got a call from Julia Roberts?

Larry, Larry got a call from Julia Roberts.

Did Larry or Bill get a call from Julia Roberts?

Larry did. Larry got a call from Julia Roberts.

Who did he get a call from?

Julia Roberts, he got a call from Julia Roberts.

Did he get a call from his mother?

No, he didn't get a call from his mother.

Did he get a call from Julia Roberts?

Yes, yes, he did. He got a call from Julia Roberts.

When did he get a call from Julia Roberts?

Yesterday, yesterday he got a call from Julia Roberts.

Did he get a call from Julia Roberts today or yesterday?

Yesterday, yesterday he got a call from Julia Roberts.

She wanted to talk to him about acting in her new movie.

Did she want to talk to him about acting in her new movie?



Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, she did. She wanted to talk to him about acting in her new movie.

What did she want?

Well, she wanted to talk to him about acting in her new movie.

Who wanted to talk to him?

Julia Roberts, Julia Roberts wanted to talk to him.

Did his mother or Julia Roberts want to talk to him?

Julia Roberts, Julia Roberts wanted to talk to him.

Who did she want to talk to?

Larry, she wanted to talk to Larry.

Did she want to talk to Larry?

Yes, she did. She wanted to talk to Larry.

What did she want to talk to him about?

Acting in her new movie, she wanted to talk to him about acting in her new movie.

Did she want to talk to him about washing her car?

No, she did not want to talk to him about washing her car.

Did she want to talk to him about acting in her new movie?

Yes, she did. She wanted to talk to him about acting in her new movie.

So she set up a face to face meeting with him.

Did she set up a face to face meeting?

Yes, she did. She set up a face to face meeting.



Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did she set up a person to person meeting?

Yes, yes, she did. She set up a face to face meeting, which is the same thing as saying she set up a person to person meeting, a meeting where the two people were together.

Who set up a face to face meeting?

Julia Roberts, Julia Roberts set up a face to face meeting.

Did she want to schedule a face to face meeting with him?

Yes, yes, she did. She set up a face to face meeting with him, which means she wanted to schedule a face to face meeting with him.

Did she want to set up a meeting to speak with him on the phone?

No, she did not want to speak with him on the phone. She wanted to speak with him face to face, which means she wanted to speak with him in person.

Did she want to meet Larry?

Yes, yes, she did. She wanted to set up a face to face meeting, which means that she wanted to meet him. She didn't just want to talk to him on the phone. She wanted to meet him in person.

The meeting was scheduled for next Thursday at 10:00 a.m. on the dot.

Was the meeting scheduled for next Thursday at 10:00 a.m. on the dot?

Yes, it was. It was scheduled for next Thursday at 10:00 a.m. on the dot.

Was the meeting scheduled for next Thursday at exactly 10:00 a.m.?

Yes, yes, it was. It was scheduled for next Thursday at 10:00 a.m. on the dot, which is the same thing as saying it was scheduled for next Thursday at exactly 10:00 a.m. When you say on the dot, about time, that means exactly. So 10:00 a.m. on the dot means exactly 10:00 a.m.

What was scheduled for next Thursday?



Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

The meeting, the meeting was scheduled for next Thursday.

What day was the meeting scheduled for?

Next Thursday, the meeting was scheduled for next Thursday.

Was it scheduled for this Saturday or next Thursday?

Next Thursday, it was scheduled for next Thursday.

Was the meeting scheduled for next Thursday at a few minutes after 10:00 a.m.?

No, it was scheduled for next Thursday at 10:00 a.m. on the dot, which means it was scheduled for next Thursday at 10:00 a.m. exactly, not a few minutes after 10:00. It was scheduled for 10:00 a.m. on the dot.

The day before the meeting, Larry went to the beach to swim.

What did Larry do?

He went to the beach to swim.

Did Larry go to the beach?

Yes, he did. He went to the beach.

Why did he go to the beach?

To swim, he went to the beach to swim.

Did he go to the beach to run or to swim?

To swim, he went to the beach to swim.

Who went to the beach?

Larry, Larry went to the beach.

Did Larry or Julia Roberts go to the beach?



Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Larry, Larry went to the beach.

When did he go to the beach?

The day before the meeting, he went to the beach the day before the meeting.

Did he go to the beach the day before the meeting?

Yes, he did. He went to the beach the day before the meeting.

Did Larry go to the beach on a Tuesday or a Wednesday?

On a Wednesday, the meeting was scheduled for a Thursday and he went to the beach the day before the meeting. The day before Thursday is Wednesday, so he went to the beach on a Wednesday.

Even though it was a cold day, he decided to go in the water.

What was the weather like?

It was cold.

Was it a cold day?

Yes, it was. It was a cold day.

Was it a hot day?

No, it was a cold day, so it wasn't a hot day.

Did he decide to go in the water?

Yes, he did. He decided to go in the water.

Who decided to go in the water?

Larry, Larry decided to go in the water.

Did Larry or Mary decide to go in the water?



Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Larry did. Larry decided to go in the water.

When he got out of the water he began to shake because it was so cold.

Did he begin to shake?

Yes, he did. He began to shake.

Who began to shake?

Larry, Larry began to shake.

Did Larry or Mary begin to shake?

Larry, Larry began to shake.

Why did he begin to shake?

Because it was so cold, he began to shake because it was so cold.

When did he begin to shake?

When he got out of the water, he began to shake when he got out of the water.

Did he begin to shake before he got out of the water?

No, it wasn't before he got out of the water.

Did he begin to shake after he got out of the water?

Yes, yes, he did. When he got out of the water he began to shake, so it was after he had got out of the water that he began to shake.

The next morning he woke up feeling sick as a dog.

Did he wake up feeling sick as a dog?

Yes, he did. He woke up feeling sick as a dog.



Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

How did Larry feel when he woke up the next morning?

Sick as a dog, he felt sick as a dog.

Did Larry feel good?

No, no he did not. He did not feel good. He felt sick as a dog.

Did Larry feel healthy?

No, he didn't. He felt sick as a dog, which means that he felt very ill.

Did Larry feel ill when he woke up?

Yes, he did. He felt sick as a dog. When you're sick as a dog that means you feel very ill.

When did he feel sick as a dog?

The next morning, the next morning when he woke up he felt sick as a dog.

Did he feel sick as a dog three days later?

No, he felt sick as a dog the next morning, not three days later.

He was coughing and his head felt like it was going to explode.

Was he coughing?

Yes, he was. He was coughing.

Who was coughing?

Larry, Larry was coughing.

Was Larry or David coughing?

Larry, Larry was coughing.

Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did his head feel like it was going to explode?

Yes, it did. His head felt like it was going to explode.

Did his head hurt?

Yes, yes, it did. His head felt like it was going to explode, which means that his head hurt.

Did he have a headache?

Yes, yes, he did. His head felt like it was going to explode, which means that his head hurt and that he had a big headache.

He should not have gone swimming in the cold weather.

Should he have gone swimming in the cold weather?

No, he should not have gone swimming in the cold weather.

Who should not have gone swimming?

Larry, Larry should not have gone swimming.

Should Larry have gone swimming in the cold weather?

No, he should not have. Larry should not have gone swimming in the cold weather.

Why should Larry have not gone swimming in the cold weather?

Well, because he had a meeting with Julia Roberts and he did not want to get sick, because if you go swimming in cold weather you might get sick.

His day started off on the wrong foot

Had his day started off on the wrong foot?

Yes, yes, it had. His day had started off on the wrong foot.



Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Had his day started off well?

No, no, it did not. It started off on the wrong foot, which means it did not start well.

Did his day start badly?

Yes, yes, it did. It started off on the wrong foot, which is the same thing as saying it started badly. When something starts off on the wrong foot that means it did not start well or that it started badly.

Whose day started off on the wrong foot?

Larry's, Larry's day started off on the wrong foot.

Did Larry's day start off on the wrong foot?

Yes, it did. Larry's day started off on the wrong foot.

Did Larry's day start off badly?

Yes, yes, it did. Larry's day started off on the wrong foot, which is the same thing as saying Larry's day started off badly.

but he drove to his meeting.

Did he drive to his meeting?

Yes, he did. He drove to his meeting.

Did he drive or walk to his meeting?

He drove to his meeting.

Who drove to his meeting?

Larry, Larry drove to his meeting.

Did Sam drive to his meeting?

No, it wasn't Sam.



Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Did Larry drive to his meeting?

Yes, yes, he did. Larry drove to his meeting.

When he met Julia Roberts, he was very nervous.

Was he nervous when he met Julia Roberts?

Yes, he was. He was nervous, he was very nervous when he met Julia Roberts.

Was he calm when he met Julia Roberts?

No, he wasn't calm. He was nervous.

Who was nervous?

Larry, Larry was nervous.

When was he nervous?

When he met Julia Roberts, he was nervous when he met Julia Roberts.

Was he nervous when he met Tom Cruise or Julia Roberts?

Julia Roberts, he was nervous when he met Julia Roberts.

But she liked him very much.

Did she like him very much?

Yes, she did. She liked him very much.

Who liked him very much?

Julia Roberts, Julia Roberts liked him very much.

Did Julia Roberts or Tom Cruise like him very much?



Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Julia Roberts, Julia Roberts liked him very much.

Who did she like very much?

Larry, she liked Larry very much.

Did she like him just a little?

No, she liked him very much.

Did she like him a lot?

Yes, she did. She liked him a lot. She liked him very much.

She asked him to act in her movie.

What did she ask him?

To act in her movie, she asked him to act in her movie.

So did she ask him to wash her car?

No, she didn't ask him to wash her car.

Did she ask him to act in her movie?

Yes, she did. She asked him to act in her movie.

Who asked him to act in her movie?

Julia Roberts, Julia Roberts asked him to act in her movie.

Who did she ask to act in her movie?

Larry, she asked Larry to act in her movie.

Did she ask Larry or David to act in her movie?



Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Larry, she asked Larry to act in her movie.

Now Larry the lion is a famous movie star

Is Larry the lion a famous movie star?

Yes, he is. Larry the lion is a famous movie star.

Who is a famous movie star?

Larry the lion, Larry the lion is a famous movie star.

Is Sam the snake or Larry the lion a famous movie star?

Larry the lion, Larry the lion is a famous movie star.

and he is sitting on top of the world.

Is he sitting on top of the world?

Yes, he is. He is sitting on top of the world.

So is he sad?

No, he's not sad. He's sitting on top of the world, which means that he is not sad. He is very happy.

Is he really happy?

Yes, he is. He is sitting on top of the world, which means he is really happy.

Is he having a really good time?

Yes, yes, he is. He is sitting on top of the world, so he is having a really good time.

Why is he sitting on top of the world?

Well, he's sitting on top of the world because he is a famous movie star.



Nepal Part 2 Mini-Story Lesson

* * * * *

Okay, so that brings us to the end of our story, which means that we are now at the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Nepal Part 2.” Now, as always, it is your turn to try to tell the story by yourself. And remember, you do not need to memorize every word in the story, but you should try to use the idioms that we use. Those idioms are: “face to face,” “on the dot,” “sick as a dog,” “head felt like it was going to explode,” “started off on the wrong foot,” and “sitting on top of the world.” So now try to tell the story by yourself. And remember, you can listen to this lesson as many times as you need to.

Okay, that's all for now. Thanks and have a great day.

Nepal Part 2 POV Lesson

Hi everyone. Welcome to the point of view stories for “Nepal Part 2”. I hope that you’re ready to get started. Today we’re going to hear the same story from the mini-story lesson but we’re going to tell it in four different ways. Here we go.

* * * *

Larry the lion was excited. For ten years he had been trying to get a job as a movie actor. But he had never been able to get a job in a movie.

Then yesterday he got a phone call from Julia Roberts. She wanted to talk to him about acting in her new movie. So she set up a face to face meeting with him. The meeting was scheduled for next Thursday at 10 o’clock a.m. on the dot.

The day before the meeting, Larry went to the beach to swim. Even though it was a cold day, he decided to go in the water. When he got out of the water he began to shake because it was so cold.

The next morning he woke up feeling sick as a dog. He was coughing and his head felt like it was going to explode. He shouldn’t have gone swimming in the cold weather. His day started off on the wrong foot but he drove to his meeting.

When he met Julia Roberts, he was very nervous. But she liked him very much. She asked him to act in her movie.

Now Larry the lion was a famous movie star and he was sitting on top of the world.

* * * *

Okay, so that was the story told as if it has already happened. Now let’s tell the story as if it is happening right now. Okay, so here we go.

* * * *

Larry the lion is excited. For ten years he has been trying to get a job as a movie actor. But he has never been able to get a job in a movie.

Then he gets a phone call from Julia Roberts. She wants to talk to him about acting in her new movie. So she sets up a face to face meeting with him. The meeting is scheduled for next Thursday at 10 o’clock a.m. on the dot.

Nepal Part 2 POV Lesson

The day before the meeting, Larry goes to the beach to swim. Even though it is a cold day, he decides to go in the water. When he gets out of the water he begins to shake because it is so cold.

The next morning he wakes up feeling sick as a dog. He is coughing and his head feels like it is going to explode. He should not have gone swimming in the cold water. His day starts off on the wrong foot but he drives to his meeting.

When he meets Julia Roberts, he is very nervous. But she likes him very much. She asks him to act in her movie.

Now Larry the lion is a famous movie star and he is sitting on top of the world.

* * * * *

Alright, we just heard the story being told as if it is happening right now. Next we will hear the story as if it is being told next year. Let's begin.

* * * * *

Next year Larry the lion will be excited. For ten years he'll have been trying to get a job as a movie actor. But he will not have been able to get a job in a movie.

Then he's gonna get a phone call from Julia Roberts. She'll want to talk to him about acting in her new movie. So she's gonna set up a face to face meeting with him. The meeting'll be scheduled for the following Thursday at 10 o'clock a.m. on the dot.

The day before the meeting, Larry'll go to the beach to swim. Even though it will be a cold day, he'll decide to go in the water. When he gets out of the water he'll begin to shake because it is going to be so cold.

The next morning he'll wake up feeling sick as a dog. He'll be coughing and his head'll feel like it's going to explode. He should not have gone swimming in the cold water. His day will start off on the wrong foot but he'll drive to his meeting.

When he meets Julia Roberts, he'll be very nervous. But she's gonna like him very much. And she's gonna ask him to act in her movie.

Then Larry the lion will become a famous movie star and he'll be sitting on top of the world.

* * * * *



Nepal Part 2 POV Lesson

Okay, so there we just heard the story being told as if it is happening next year. Now, let's hear Larry the Lion tell the story. So we'll hear the story from Larry the Lion's point of view. Here we go.

* * * * *

I was excited. For ten years I've been trying to get a job as a movie actor. But I've never been able to get a job in a movie.

Then yesterday I got a phone call from Julia Roberts. She wanted to talk to me about acting in her new movie. So she set up a face to face meeting with me. The meeting was scheduled for next Thursday at 10 o'clock a.m. on the dot.

The day before the meeting, I went to the beach to swim. Even though it was a cold day, I decided to go in the water. When I got out of the water I began to shake because it was so cold.

The next morning I woke up feeling sick as a dog. I was coughing and my head felt like it was going to explode. I should not have gone swimming in the cold weather. My day started off on the wrong foot but I drove to the meeting.

When I met Julia Roberts, I was very nervous. But she liked me very much. She asked me to act in her movie.

Now I am a famous movie star and I am sittin' on top of the world.

* * * * *

Okay, great. We just finished the point of view stories for the lesson "Nepal Part 2". We have just heard four different versions of this story. So now try listening to each version again. When you feel like you know one of the versions well then try to tell that story on your own. Do this for each of the stories until you can tell them each on your own. It is important to learn these stories very well so don't go too fast. Okay, that's all. See ya next time.



Nepal Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Hello and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the “Nepal Part 2” conversation. Remember from the first conversation, the “Nepal Part 1” conversation, that Joe and I have been talking about our trips to Nepal... Me with my boyfriend at the time in 2001 and Joe with his girlfriend at the time in 2004.

Okay, let's begin.

* * * * *

I start off this second conversation saying, “Wow, that’s pretty crazy that you had a face to face encounter with a Maoist on your trek.”

Wow. That’s a word that I’m... Where I’m showing a surprised emotion. So I could have said something else like, “My gosh.” or “My god.” Wow. Wow, that’s pretty crazy... Pretty crazy. Pretty in this situation is basically very, very crazy. So what I’m saying is wow, that’s just unbelievable. I can’t believe that you had a face to face encounter with a Maoist on your trek. Now face to face... That’s an idiom and it basically means person to person. An example of face to face would be: I would much rather talk face to face with someone than talk on the phone. I just like speaking person to person better than speaking on the phone. That’s really true. So I’m saying to him wow. I just can’t believe that you actually spoke face to face or person to person with a Maoist. That you had this encounter (encounter being meeting). And if you remember from the first conversation, Maoist or Maoists... Maoists are a group of people in Nepal who are wanting to change the government. So on his trek he had this person to person meeting with a Maoist. If you’ll remember also from the first conversation, trek is like an intense hike, a long hike, a hike over many days.

Okay, then Joe goes on to say, “Well, it really wasn’t very scary. Actually the ones I met, they were pretty friendly.”

Here’s pretty again being used like very. They were pretty friendly. They were very friendly.

“But I don’t know, maybe they were on their best behavior.”

On their best behavior. So what he’s saying here is, you know the Maoist that I spoke with he didn’t scare me. He seemed pretty friendly. He seemed very friendly. But, maybe he was on his best behavior. Maybe, or Maoists in general, I guess, not just the one, maybe they were on their best behavior. Maybe they were acting very nice or maybe they were being very nice. Maybe they were being polite or maybe they were being very good. On their best behavior. An example of on their best behavior would be: You know, I’ve noticed from teaching children that they can be on their best behavior when they’re wanting something. Hm, maybe they think that being very good will get them what they want. On their best behavior.

So I go on to say, “Yeah, maybe.”

Nepal Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

I'm agreeing with him. Yeah, maybe you're right. Maybe they were being very nice. They were being very good. They were on their best behavior. Yeah is informal or casual for yes. So I'm agreeing with him.

Then I go on to say, “I mean, we didn’t see ‘em at all on our trek.”

So I'm saying, you know I didn't see any of the Maoists when Tim and I went on our trek. Tim, my boyfriend at the time. See 'em. Now, 'em is short for them. So you will never see this in written English but you will definitely hear it in conversational English. It's just short for them. So I'm saying yeah, you know I mean we didn't see them. We did not see any Maoists on our trek.

Moving along, I go on to say, “In fact, the only trace of the Maoists...”

So I'm saying the only sign or the only thing to show that Maoists had been there.

“that I remember seeing was being on a bus going over to a national park...”

National being like a Nepali government park.

“and looking out the window and seeing this old, abandoned...”

Abandoned being empty.

“burned out bus...”

Burned out. Now that's describing the bus as having had a fire on it. So the bus had had a fire. It was a burned out bus.

“on the side of the road. And apparently, we were told later, that the Maoists had stopped the bus and gotten everyone off and then burned it.”

Okay, so I'm saying, you know, I didn't see any Maoists on my trek but I did see that there was an old, burned out bus on the side of the road. I was, you know, on a bus myself passing this old burned out bus. Going to a national park. Going to a Nepali government park. That's the only sign that I knew that Maoists had been in the area or the only trace. The only thing to show me that Maoists had been there. I never actually saw a Maoist face to face. So yeah, and then I'm saying the Maoists had stopped the bus and gotten everyone off and then burned it. So they had set fire to it.

So then Joe goes on to say, “At least they got everyone off.”

So he's saying, well, basically that's good. They got everyone off the bus.



Nepal Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Then I say, “Yeah, yeah, but I, I think it was... It wasn’t even until after we left Nepal and got back to America that I started reading that all hell broke loose with the Maoists.”

So I’m agreeing with him. I’m saying yeah. It is good they got everyone off the bus. And it wasn’t until I left the country, I actually left Nepal and flew back to America that I started reading on the internet that all hell had broken loose with the Maoists. All hell broke loose. So basically what I am saying is that I had started reading that there was a lot of trouble with the Maoists. Or there were a lot of problems with the Maoists. Or there was a lot of confusion with the Maoists. All hell broke loose. An example of this would be: I can remember that I was living in Bangkok, Thailand when the bird flew or SARS broke out. All hell broke loose for a short period of time. There were a lot of problems and confusion about the disease. All hell broke loose.

Then Joe goes on to say, “Yeah, that was actually just after I left.”

So he’s saying, yeah, all hell broke loose. Or all these problems, all this confusion started after he left Nepal.

And then I say, “Oh, okay, well that makes sense then, why there was more of a presence there.”

So what I’m saying is okay. I understand now why there was more of a presence, meaning... Why there were more Maoists that you saw when you were there, compared to me, since I didn’t see any.

Joe says, “Yeah.”

Agreeing with me.

Then I say, “When you were there, I should say.”

So I’m just correcting myself because I had been saying, oh that makes sense why there was more of a presence of the Maoists there. Why you saw more of the Maoists there. And I corrected myself, I mean when you were there. That’s all I am saying. I’m just correcting myself.

And I go on to say, “But, y’know...”

And, y’know, I mentioned in the first conversation is just simply short for “you know.”

So I say, “But, y’know, our trek sounds pretty different.”

So our trek sounds very different. Ours meaning mine and Tim’s.



Nepal Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

"How many days were you on... How many days was your trek again?"

I'm asking Joe.

And he says, "Uh, it was thirteen days total."

So he is just saying, oh it was thirteen days altogether. Thirteen days total.

And I say, "Oh, okay. Mine was twelve, so just one day shy of yours."

One day shy. Basically I'm saying, okay mine was one day less, one day shy of yours. An example of this would be: My birthday is three days shy of one of my high school friends. My birthday is August 8th and hers is August 11th. So in this case, I'm saying three days shy. The idiom is one day shy, but I think you get the point. It's just, it's less.

And then I go on to say, "Yeah, it's, it started off on the wrong foot for me."

So I'm saying, yeah, my trek started off on the wrong foot. Started off on the wrong foot, meaning, yeah, it began badly for me. Or yeah, it did not start well for me. Started off on the wrong foot. An example of this: My first day of school usually got started off on the wrong foot. I would always come home with a big headache and just not be feeling good. Started off on the wrong foot. And that's true. I mean that was either college, university or even in high school. Yeah, I would always come home with a headache.

Okay, then Joe goes on to say, "What happened?" And I say, "Well, apparently I ate something that didn't agree with me and made me sick as hell to my stomach."

Didn't agree with me. Well apparently I ate something that wasn't good for me or wasn't good for my body. Didn't agree with me. For example: Sometimes when I eat late at night the food doesn't agree with me because it can make my stomach hurt the next day. Didn't agree with me. Or doesn't agree with me, as in my example. Made me sick as hell. Sick as hell is an idiom meaning very ill. Not... Or basically I'm saying, y'know it made me feel very ill. It made me not feel good to my stomach. Sick as hell. An example of that would be: I got sick as hell one time when I was living in Bangkok, Thailand. I ended up having tonsillitis and was so sick that I had to stay in the hospital for a few days. I was sick as hell.

So then Joe says, "When you were trekking, or..." And I say, "No, no, no, no, no, no, the night before." And he laughs, "Oh, no."

He's imagining, I'm sure, that I'm extremely sick. I'm very sick and I'm about to go on this trek. This twelve day trek.



Nepal Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

So then I say, “Yeah, so that’s how it started off. And we were, the next morning we were supposed to leave...”

Or, or, in other words, we should have left.

“at 7:00 a.m. on the dot. But, of course that got pushed back because I was so sick. I was sick as a dog.”

On the dot, okay. So what I’m saying is, this is how my trek started. I’m sick, right? We’re supposed to leave the next morning. We should have left at 7:00 a.m. on the dot. 7:00 a.m. exactly is what that means. 7:00 a.m. and no later. On the dot. An example of on the dot would be: I noticed that when I lived in Japan the trains would always arrive on the dot. They were very exact. I loved that about Japan. So yeah, we’re supposed to leave on the dot. And I go on to say, but of course that got pushed back. So in other words, it ended up being later. Pushed back. Ended up being later. Because I was so sick. I was sick as a dog. Sick as a dog here means basically the same as sick as hell. Very ill. Y’know, I was very ill. I was not feeling good. I was sick as a dog. An example of sick as a dog could be: Sometimes I have felt sick as a dog after a night of drinking too much. I have ended up feeling so bad and I am surprised I haven’t completely quit drinking altogether. Sick as a dog. You would think I would learn my lesson.

And then Joe says, “Oh, man.”

Now, oh man, here... You’ll hear a lot of people say man. It just is a filler word because he’s... obviously I am a woman. He is saying it to me but it doesn’t really mean anything. Just kind of showing sympathy like, “Oh wow.” “Oh man.”

He says, “Did you consider not goin’?”

So did you consider... Did you think about not going? Now goin’... I think I mentioned this in the first conversation, the “Nepal Part 1” conversation. Goin’ here is short for going. You won’t see goin’ in written English but only in conversation you’ll hear it. It’s just shortened, just cut off.

And I say, “Oh, yeah...”

I’m agreeing with him. Oh, yeah, I did think about not going.

“but Tim talked me into it.”

So I’m saying Tim, my boyfriend, he got me to do it anyway.

And Joe laughs, “Well, that’s good because you know what? You were probably thankful in the end

Nepal Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

because you had such a good time, I'm sure."

So he's saying, you know, it's good you went because I'm sure now, or after the trek, you were thankful. Or you were glad. You were happy after the trek. You were thankful in the end because you had such a good time, I'm sure. So he's saying, you know, I'm sure you're happy you did it because afterwards I'm sure you realized you had a good time.

And I say, "I did, I mean, it, y'know, it was tough though."

Tough, as in difficult. I'm saying yeah, I did have a good time but it was, it was difficult for me.

I go on to say, "It, first of all, I started out, I was sick, um... I just was not physically prepared for it."

So I'm saying... In other words, my body was not ready for it. I don't do a lot of exercise in general so it was very difficult for me.

And I go on to say, "I think it was like the second night there was this windstorm that really freaked me out..."

I think it was like... now "like" here, you may know that like can be used to show, like a positive emotion. For example, I like traveling to other countries. It can also be used to compare something, like, for example, Joe's cooking is so good it's like eating in a really nice restaurant. But in this situation... I think it was like the second night... Here this is very common in conversational English to see like used this way or hear like used this way. Basically it's just an extra word. It doesn't really have any meaning. It's just put in there. It's filler. It doesn't have any meaning. So you don't even really have to pay attention to it. So I say, I think it was like the second night there was this windstorm. So there was this storm. This really strong wind came up. And I say, that really freaked me out.

Freaked me out. So I'm saying it worried me. It made me scared. It freaked me out. An example of freaked me out would be: The first time I saw a mouse in my apartment, it really freaked me out. And I've seen them so many times that I'm surprised they still make me jump and scream. They still do. I know, it's crazy, but...

So Joe laughs. And then I say, "Yeah, it, it was pretty frightening."

So I'm saying it was very scary for me. This windstorm was very scary.

And Joe says, "How high up were you at that time?"

So he's asking... He's thinking at this point that maybe I'm pretty high up in the mountains, since y'know we are trekking in the mountains.



Nepal Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

So then I say, “We weren’t very high. It was just still the second night.”

So I’m saying, we weren’t high up at all. It was only the second night. It was just still the second night.

And I go on to say, “I, to be honest,”

So, in other words, to tell you the truth. To be honest.

“I don’t remember but, yeah. We weren’t that high up.” So then Joe says, “Yeah, well how high did you go, uh, total?”

So, in other words, he is saying how high did you go altogether.

And I say “Total...”

As in altogether.

“uh, total, uh, we reached 12,000 feet.” And Joe says, “Yeah, okay.” And then I say, “Yeah, and that was actually...”

Or I’m saying here, really.

“actually that was great being that high up. I mean we got such a great bird’s eye view of the valley.”

So great, or good, bird’s eye view of the valley. Now bird’s eye view... What I’m saying here is we got such a good view from above, of the valley. Or we got such a great view from high up of the valley. An example of bird’s eye view would be: I like to go up in really tall buildings here in San Francisco. I get such a great bird’s eye view of the city below. Bird’s eye view. So I’m saying yeah. It was really good being that high up because I got such a great view of the valley. A great view from really high up of the valley. Valley is just a land, or I should say, land below and between mountains.

Then Joe says, “Oh yeah, yeah, that was, that’s what I noticed...”

Or that’s what I saw.

“also, when, uh, when we got up to our highest point...”

Point, meaning area.

“which was a little over 14,000 feet. I was just, I mean I was like in heaven. I mean it was...”

Nepal Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

So what he's saying is that he noticed as well (when he was up really high... over 14,000 feet) he was in heaven. Or he is saying, I was like in heaven. Like here again is just a filler word. So you don't have to pay attention to it. So I was in heaven. I was having a really good time. I was really enjoying myself. I was in heaven. For example: One of the last times I went camping, me and my boyfriend at the time had hiked several miles into the woods. It was so beautiful, so quiet and peaceful that I felt like I was in heaven. I was in heaven.

So then I laugh and say, "Yeah."

Agreeing with him.

And then Joe goes on to say, "I was like sitting on top of the world."

So what he's saying here is, just like I was in heaven. He's saying, I was having a really good time. I was really enjoying myself. Sitting on top of the world. An example of this would be: When I was 22, I went on a cruise to the Bahamas with my cousin. I had such a good time that I felt like I was sitting on top of the world. Sitting on top of the world.

So then I laugh and say, "Yeah."

Again... agreeing. I can totally agree to what he's saying about his trek because I felt the same way.

And Joe says, "Y'know, uh... And also at that point after we got up to the top..."

So also at that point, or that area.

"after we got up to the top..."

After we got to the top of the mountain.

"I was no longer worried about, uh, altitude sickness."

So what he is saying is I was no longer worried. I didn't care about getting altitude sickness. Altitude sickness is a sickness that you can get if you go up a mountain or go up too high too quickly. You can get really bad headaches, for example. So he is saying, yeah, after a certain point when we got to the top I just didn't even worry about it any more. I didn't care.

So then he goes on to say, "I don't know if anybody had problems with it, uh, y'know, with, in the group that you were traveling with." And I say, "No, no, we didn't. But, y'know of course, we were

Nepal Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

warned..."

Or told.

"we were warned about it. And one of the things we were warned..."

Or told.

"about was to be careful of the alcohol intake."

Alcohol intake meaning just drinking alcohol.

"So Tim and I, being the beer drinkers that we are, didn't heed that warning."

So we didn't take heed. We didn't pay attention to that warning.

"So it's a good thing we didn't get altitude sickness."

So what I'm saying is no, we didn't know of anybody who got altitude sickness or had any problems with it. And yeah, we were told about it. We were warned about it. But, y'know we were still drinking. Even though we were told not to. So even though we didn't take heed or we didn't pay attention to the warning of don't drink, it's a good thing we didn't get altitude sickness.

And Joe says, "Yeah, they pretty much told us the same thing. They said, 'y'know, you probably shouldn't be smoking cigarettes' which, y'know, I don't smoke cigarettes. So that was fine."

Or, he's saying, that was okay.

And he goes on to say, "They said, 'don't drink too much' and, y'know, I, I didn't really drink too much. So that was good but, uh, y'know, the other thing they said is, y'know... 'Don't go up the mountain too fast. Make sure you spend..."

Or make sure you stay.

"a night before you get up to the peak."

Peak being the top of the mountain. So he's being told yeah, don't smoke cigarettes, don't drink and don't go up the mountain too fast. Make sure that you spend, or you stay a night before you get up to the top of the mountain.

Nepal Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

And so he goes on to say, “Uh, y’know, at a lower altitude.”

Or a lower height. Height being altitude.

“But one that’s pretty...”

or very...

“high up still, and then...” And I say, “Oh right.” And then Joe says, “so you can get acclimated.”

Acclimated means getting used to. So in this situation getting used to the higher height.

Moving along Joe says, “So we did that but, uh, I tell ya, when we got up to the peak...”

I’ll tell ya. Tell ya. Ya is short for you. So you won’t see this in written English, but you will definitely hear it in conversational English. Ya, short for you. So he says yeah, I’ll tell ya, when we got up to the peak... Or when we got up to the top of the mountain.

“there were people who were getting sick. And there were a couple of people...”

Or there were two people.

“who had to be carried down, like...”

So he’s saying, yeah. There were people getting sick and two people, a couple of people, had to be carried down. Or they had to be taken down the mountain.

And I say, “Oh, jeez.”

Jeez. That’s just a word showing emotion like, oh I can’t believe what you’re saying. I can’t believe what you’re telling me.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, and one of the guys who was carried down...”

Or taken down.

“I had met him on the way up. And, uh, I saw him on the way down and I asked him, y’know, how he was feeling. And he said he was feeling better at that point.”

Point being time. He was feeling better at that time.

Nepal Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

“But he said the night before he thought his head was going to explode. So...”

Head was going to explode. So in other words he's saying this guy that he saw, or he met on his way up the mountain, once he got back down the mountain he saw this guy again. This guy had had to be carried down. He had to be taken down because he had gotten altitude sickness. And he said he was feeling okay at that time, at that point. But the night before he thought his head was going to explode. So he's saying he felt like his head was going to break open. Or felt like his head was going to burst open. Head was going to explode. For example: Sometimes when I get sick my head hurts a lot in the beginning, hurts a lot in the beginning of the sickness. Y'know when I first get sick. My head can feel like it's going to explode. Head was going to explode.

So then I say, “Oh my god!”

So I'm showing emotion like, "Wow." "Jeez." "Oh my gosh."

And Joe says, “Yeah, very serious headache.”

So he's saying yeah. This guy had a really big headache.

And I say, “Wow.”

Wow, showing emotion again like "Jeez." "Oh my gosh."

And then Joe says, “Yeah, so...” And then I say, “Yeah, I mean we didn't, none of, y'know... There was just me and Tim and then, uh, another woman from, uh... Where was she from, Belgium and a guy from Luxembourg. So we all fared pretty well, except...”

So I'm saying yeah. You know, there was just four of us in our group, me, Tim, a woman from Belgium, a guy from Luxembourg. And we all fared pretty well. We all did pretty well.

“except, then towards the end, the guy from Luxembourg ended up catching a cold.”

Catching a cold. So in other words he got sick. He ended up getting sick. He ended up getting sick with a cold. For example: I really don't like catching a cold. I absolutely do not like getting sick. I don't. I become a big baby when I'm sick.

So I go on to say, “And then to top it off, I caught it from him.”

Or I got it from him. So I got the cold from him. I caught the cold from him. To top it off. To top it off means

Nepal Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

in addition to. So what I'm saying is, if you'll remember in the beginning I'm talking about my trek, how it started off badly because I was feeling sick or I'd gotten sick in Katmandu. So I'm saying to top it off, in addition... Y'know here the trek is ending. And to top it all off, in addition to everything that had kind of happened, starting... getting it off to a bad start, I caught it from him. I got this cold from the guy from Luxembourg. To top it off. For example: I was so happy when I finished my master's degree in teaching English to speakers of other languages in 2005. I was so happy when I finished. To top it off, I then got a teaching job in Japan. I was so excited to move there. To top it off.

Joe says, "Ugh."

Ugh. Just meaning an emotion. Like, showing a negative feeling. Like, oh no. Like he can't believe it, my gosh you got sick. You were sick at the beginning and then you got sick at the end.

And I say, "So that's how I ended the trek." And Joe says, "Yeah."

Like, wow, some trek.

And then I say, "Yeah, it was very physically draining for me."

So what I'm saying is it was very tiring for me.

And Joe says, "Yeah. How much did it cost for you guys to do your trek?"

So he's asking, how much did it cost for you guys (you guys as in Tim and I)... How much did it cost for the both of you to do your trek?

And I say, "Um, to be honest..."

Or to tell you the truth.

"I really don't remember. But, y'know, it, it wasn't anything astronomical."

So I'm saying it wasn't... I don't remember but it wasn't anything too expensive or too much. It wasn't anything astronomical.

And Joe says, "Yeah, yeah, I can't remember either how much we paid. But it, it was dirt cheap."

Dirt cheap. So what he is saying here is he can't remember what he paid for his trek. But it was dirt cheap. It was very cheap. It didn't cost a lot. Dirt cheap. An example of dirt cheap is: It was dirt cheap when I lived in Bangkok. It didn't cost much money at all. I was living in a one room apartment for about fifty dollars a



Nepal Part 2 Vocabulary Lesson

month and that included all utilities. Dirt cheap.

So then I go on to say, “Yeah.”

Like I... I don't remember how much the trek costs, but I do remember it didn't cost a lot. It was cheap. I'm agreeing with him.

And Joe says, “Yeah, I'll tell you what, without a doubt...”

Or he's saying definitely. Definitely. Without a doubt.

“I wanna make sure I go back to Nepal and, uh, go trekking. I wanna go trekking again.”

Wanna. Wanna is just short for want to. You won't see wanna in written English, but you'll definitely hear it in conversational English. Wanna.

And then I say, “Well, I wanna go back to Nepal. I don't know that I wanna go trekking.”

* * * * *

Okay, this concludes the vocabulary lesson for the “Nepal Part 2” conversation. You can listen to this a few times if you need to, in a relaxed way, until you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary. Then go to the mini-story. Okay, until next time.

Dating Conversation

ran into: to unexpectedly see someone

Joe: Hey, I **ran into** my friend Jackie today downtown.

Kristin: Hey, you used to work with her right?

Joe: Yeah, yeah, I don't think you've met her yet, but, uh...

Kristin: Yeah, I can't believe I haven't met her actually, but...

Joe: Yeah, y'know I, well, I don't see her that often. I guess...

Kristin: Oh.

Joe: ...one of the reasons I don't see her that often is because she's been really busy, uh, because she's in a new relationship she said.

Kristin: Oh!

Joe: Yeah, you should have seen her. It was like, uh, it was so cute to see her. She was like **bursting at the seams** she was so happy.

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: Because I guess the relationship is going really well, so...

Kristin: Oh, that's good.

Joe: Yeah, I'm really happy to see it too because I know that she's been really **looking for someone**. And, uh, y'know she'd been doing the online dating thing for, I don't know, over a year. And, I mean it seemed like she was having, uh, she wasn't having a lot of luck with it, so...

Kristin: Oh really.

Joe: Yeah.

Kristin: Well, it's good she's finally found someone that she's compatible with.

Joe: Yeah. I remember when she first started out she told me about this one guy she met and he was a **total loser**. I mean, one thing that I remember she said was that he asked her to go out to this nice restaurant. And, y'know, she wasn't planning

total loser: someone who is unsuccessful

Dating Conversation

on, uh, having him pay for the date. Y'know, she was like, okay, well, y'know, I have money just in case. And, uh, he made her pay for the whole date.

Kristin: [laugh] Oh my god!

Joe: I know! What the...[laugh].... So that was really, y'know, that was really a bad introduction...

Kristin: [laugh]

Joe: ...to the, to that guy and to the online dating world.

Kristin: Yeah, I would say so.

Joe: Because that was the first person she **went out with**.

Kristin: [laugh] Well, speaking of **blind dates**, coz online dating is pretty much blind dates...

Joe: Yeah.

Kristin: ...or **blind dating**, I should say, um.... There's, I have a friend that I am no longer **in touch with** and before we **lost touch** I can remember her telling me a story about going out on a blind date. And this guy, he was such a total loser, he showed up. He was already **two sheets to the wind**. That was her first impression of him. This guy was just **trashed**.

Joe: And he stunk of alcohol?

Kristin: Yeah!

Joe: Oh great.

Kristin: Yeah, exactly. Yeah, needless to say, that, that date was a disaster. She didn't want to see him again.

Joe: Yeah.

Kristin: But, yeah, I mean she had a horrible time with, um, dating. I mean she went on a lot of blind dates and, just.... They were all pretty disastrous actually. But I will

Dating Conversation

head and shoulders above the rest: much better than other things

say before we lost touch she finally met someone that was h-, **head and shoulders above the rest.**

Joe: Oh, that's great. Yeah.

Kristin: Yeah.

Joe: You know, ah, it's funny to hear Bill speaking about, uh, all the times he's gone out on, y'know, blind dates through y'know that, people he met over the internet. Because he's been doing it for a couple of years. And he, he just always has a **funny spin on things** when he tells a story. I don't even know where he comes up with some of this stuff. It's so funny.

Kristin: Oh, that guy **cracks me up.**

Joe: Yeah, yeah, I know. But, uh, he actually, I think one of his problems is.... The guy's like 35 and he's trying to date 20 year olds, so, you know....

Kristin: Oh no.

Joe: ...of course there's going to be like a big difference in, uh, interests and, uh, usually maturity also.

Kristin: Yeah! That's just, that seems like it would be **a recipe for disaster.**

Joe: Yeah, yeah, I know what you're saying, so...

Kristin: Well, I think, um, dating has really changed **a good bit**, y'know, **back in the day**, when my...our parents were dating. It was just so different.

Joe: Oh, it was totally **a different story** then.

Kristin: I mean for one thing, well, moving even beyond dating. Like once people got serious, they didn't live together before they got married.

Joe: No, no.

Kristin: You know? And I...

Joe: That was like, viewed as a sin...

Dating Conversation

Kristin: Yeah!

Joe: ...because the world, y'know, here in these.... Here it was a lot more, uh, it was a much more religious time.

Kristin: Right. But I'd even be willing to bet that they didn't have sex before marriage.

Joe: Oh, c-, I think that they were saying they didn't have sex before marriage but I'm sure it was happening...

Kristin: You think?

behind closed doors:
*done in private; not
happening where people
can see it*

Joe: ...**behind closed doors.** Oh definitely! Come on, y'know!

Kristin: Well, where would they do it? Go park a car?

Joe: Well that is one, that is one, yeah, I think they did actually. Because back then people would live at home until they got married.

Kristin: Right.

Joe: So they would, I think they would have to go.... I mean it was kind of rare for someone to move out of the house before they got married. So, y'know, they probably didn't have their own apartment. So...

Kristin: Right.

Joe: Yeah, and y'know...

Kristin: Well, speaki-...

Joe: ...another...

Kristin: ...I'm sorry. Go ahead...

Joe: ...thing that was really weird, if you think about it also, is people just didn't get divorced back then.

Dating Conversation

Kristin: Right, right.

Joe: Like now, I, I heard something and I, I think this is pretty accurate. 50 percent of all marriages here in the United States end in divorce.

Kristin: Oh my god.

Joe: I mean, it's crazy to, y'know, that you and I, uh, we're both like, y'know, uh, have parents who are still together. It's kind of...

Kristin: Uh-huh.

Joe: ...it's, uh, it's uncommon, I guess...

Kristin: It is.

Joe: ...is the word I'm looking for. Because when you look at our friends, um, most of them have parents that are divorced, who are divorced, excuse me.

the norm: common

shacking up: when an unmarried man and an unmarried woman live together; when a man and a woman who are dating live together but are not married

Kristin: Yep. Yeah, we're definitely not **the norm**, or our families aren't. But, you know, it made me think, um, speaking of living together. My mom, I was talking about it with her the other day and she actually called it **shacking up**.

Joe: Oh, that's funny. That's like a term that's no longer used.

Kristin: Yeah.



Dating Mini-Story Lesson

Hi. Welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Dating.”

Let's get started with the story now.

* * * * *

Carly the cat was ready to stop dating. She only seemed to meet total losers.

Then on December 31, her luck changed. She ran into her friend Katie the cougar at the library. Katie moved to Africa three years ago. They had not been in touch since then but Katie was now living in America again.

Katie wanted to set her up on a blind date with her friend Timmy the tiger. Carly thought that all blind dates were a recipe for disaster. But she agreed to go out with Timmy one time.

One month later Katie saw Carly at a café. She was bursting at the seams. She and Timmy had fallen in love.

“Thank you so much, Katie,” Carly said, “Timmy is really head and shoulders above the rest.”

* * * * *

Okay, so that's our story. Now this time I will read the story again and I will ask you questions. You can answer the questions out loud and if you need a little more time, please just pause your iPod or your computer and then press play again when you're ready to actually answer the question. But if you just feel like sitting back and listening and not answering the questions out loud, that's fine, too.

Alright, here we go.

* * * * *

Carly the cat was ready to stop dating.

Was Carly the cat ready to stop dating?

Yes, yes, *she was*. *Carly the cat was ready to stop dating.*

What was Carly the cat ready to do?

To stop dating, Carly the cat was ready to stop dating.



Dating Mini-Story Lesson

Was she ready to read a book?

No, she wasn't ready to read a book.

Was she ready to stop dating?

Yes, yes, she was. She was ready to stop dating.

Was she ready to stop looking for romance?

Yes, yes, that's true also. She was ready to stop dating so she was ready to stop looking for romance.

Who was ready to stop dating?

Carly the cat, Carly the cat was ready to stop dating.

Was Sam the lion ready to stop dating?

No, it wasn't Sam the lion.

Was Carly the cat ready to stop dating?

Yes, yes, she was. Carly the cat was ready to stop dating.

What type of animal is Carly?

A cat, Carly is a cat.

Is Carly a dog?

No, Carly is not a dog.

Is Carly a cat?

Yes, Carly is a cat.

She only seemed to meet total losers.



Dating Mini-Story Lesson

Did she only seem to meet total losers?

Yes, she did. She only seemed to meet total losers.

Who only seemed to meet total losers?

Carly the cat, Carly the cat only seemed to meet total losers.

Did Carly the cat or Sam the lion only seem to meet total losers?

Carly the cat, Carly the cat only seemed to meet total losers.

What type of animals did Carly meet when she was dating? Were they nice?

No, they weren't nice. They were total losers.

Were they successful?

No, they definitely were not successful. They were total losers, which is the same thing as saying they were unsuccessful or that they were jerks.

Did she only seem to meet total losers?

Yes, she only seemed to meet total losers.

Then on December 31, her luck changed.

Did her luck change?

Yes, it did. Her luck changed.

Okay, so what changed?

Her luck, her luck changed.

Whose luck changed?

Carly's, Carly's luck changed.



Dating Mini-Story Lesson

Did Carly's luck change?

Yes, it did. Carly's luck changed.

When did her luck change?

Well, it changed on December 31. That's when it changed.

Did her luck change on March 2?

No, it didn't change on March 2.

Did her luck change on December 31?

Yes, yes, it did. On December 31, her luck changed.

She ran into her friend Katie the cougar at the library.

Did she run into her friend Katie the cougar?

Yes, she did. She ran into her friend Katie the cougar.

Did she see Katie the cougar?

Yes, yes, she did. She ran into Katie the cougar, which is the same thing as saying that she had seen Katie the cougar.

Did she expect to see Katie the cougar?

No, she did not. She ran into her, which means that she unexpectedly saw her. So she did not expect to see her and she saw her, ran into means to unexpectedly see someone.

Who ran into Katie the cougar?

Carly did, Carly ran into Katie the cougar.

Did Carly or Brian run into Katie the cougar?

Carly, Carly ran into Katie the cougar.



Dating Mini-Story Lesson

Who did Carly run into?

Katie the cougar, Carly ran into Katie the cougar.

Did she run into Sara the snake?

No, she didn't run into Sara the snake.

Did she run into Katie the cougar?

Yes, she did. She ran into Katie the cougar.

Did Carly trip over Katie the cougar?

No, she didn't trip over her. She ran into her, which means she unexpectedly saw her.

Did Carly expect to see Katie the cougar at the library?

No, she did not. She ran into her, which means she did not expect to see her. She unexpectedly saw her.

Where did Carly run into Katie the cougar?

At the library, she ran into her at the library.

Did Carly run into Katie at the gas station or the library?

The library, she ran into her at the library.

Did Carly unexpectedly see Katie the cougar at the library?

Yes, she did. She ran into Katie the cougar at the library, which means that she unexpectedly saw Katie the cougar at the library. To run into means to unexpectedly see someone.

Katie moved to Africa three years ago.

Did Katie move to Africa three years ago?

Yes, she did. She moved to Africa three years ago.



Dating Mini-Story Lesson

Okay, so what did Katie do?

She moved to Africa.

Who moved to Africa?

Katie, Katie moved to Africa.

Did Katie or Carly move to Africa?

Katie did. Katie moved to Africa. Carly did not move to Africa.

How long ago did Katie move to Africa?

Three years ago, she moved to Africa three years ago.

Did Katie move to Africa four or three years ago?

Three, she moved to Africa three years ago.

They had not been in touch since then

Had they been in touch since then?

No, they had not. They had not been in touch since then.

Had they seen each other since then?

No, they hadn't. They had not been in touch since then, which means they had not seen each other since then.

Had they spoken on the phone since then?

No, no, they had not. They had not been in touch since then, so that means they had not spoken on the phone since then. When you have not been in touch with someone that means you haven't spoken with them and you have not seen them. And they had not been in touch.

Who had not been in touch since then?



Dating Mini-Story Lesson

Katie and Carly, Katie and Carly had not been in touch since then.

Had Katie and Carly been in contact since then?

No, no, they had not. They had not been in touch since then, which means they had not been in contact since then.

but Katie was now living in America again.

Was Katie living in America?

Yes, yes, she was. She was living in America again.

Who was now living in America again?

Katie, Katie was now living in America again.

Was Sara the snake now living in America again?

No, not Sara the snake.

Was Katie the cougar now living in America again?

Yes, yes, she was. Katie the cougar was now living in America again.

Where was Katie now living?

In America, she was now living in America.

Was Katie now living in Africa?

No, not Africa, she was now living in America.

Was Katie now living in America again?

Yes, she was now living in America again.

Had Katie ever lived in America before?



Dating Mini-Story Lesson

Well, yes, she had. She was living in America again, which means that she has lived in America before.

Katie wanted to set her up on a blind date with her friend Timmy the tiger.

Did Katie want to set her up on a blind date?

Yes, she did. She wanted to set her up on a blind date.

What did Katie want to do?

To set her up on a blind date, she wanted to set her up on a blind date.

Who did she want to set up on a blind date?

Carly, she wanted to set Carly up on a blind date.

Did she want to set up Carly on a blind date?

Yes, she did. She wanted to set up Carly on a blind date.

Who did she want to set her up on a blind date with?

Timmy the tiger, she wanted to set her up on a blind date with Timmy the tiger.

Have Timmy the tiger and Carly ever met?

No, they have not ever met. She wants to set them up on a blind date, so that means that they have never met. A blind date is a date between two people who have never met.

Whose friend is Timmy?

Katie's, Timmy is Katie's friend.

Are Katie and Timmy friends?

Yes, they are. Katie and Timmy are friends.

Are Carly and Timmy friends?

Dating Mini-Story Lesson

No, no, they're not. She wants to set them up on a blind date, so that means they've never met so they must not be friends. A blind date, remember, is a date between two people who have never met.

Carly thought that all blind dates were a recipe for disaster.

Did Carly think that all blind dates were a recipe for disaster?

Yes, she did. She thought that all blind dates were a recipe for disaster.

Did Carly think that blind dates are good?

No, no, she didn't. She thought they were a recipe for disaster, which means she did not think they were good.

Did Carly think that all blind dates end badly?

Yes, yes, she did. She thought they were a recipe for disaster, which means that she thought that they all end badly. When something is a recipe for disaster that means that it ends badly.

What did Carly think about blind dates?

Well, she thought that they were a recipe for disaster.

Who thought that blind dates were a recipe for disaster?

Carly did. Carly thought that blind dates were a recipe for disaster.

Did Katie think that blind dates were a recipe for disaster?

No, it wasn't Katie. It was Carly.

Did Carly think that blind dates were fun?

No, she thought they were a recipe for disaster so she did not think they were fun. She thought that they all ended badly. When something is a recipe for disaster, it means that it ends badly.

But she agreed to go out with Timmy one time.



Dating Mini-Story Lesson

Did she agree to go out with Timmy?

Yes, she did. She agreed to go out with Timmy.

What did she agree to do?

To go out with Timmy, she agreed to go out with Timmy one time.

Did she agree to bake Katie a cake?

No, she didn't agree to bake Katie a cake.

Did Carly agree to go out with Timmy?

Yes, she did. She agreed to go out with Timmy.

Did Carly agree to have a date with Timmy?

Yes, yes, she did. She agreed to go out with Timmy, which is the same thing as saying she agreed to have a date with Timmy. To go out with means to have a date with or to go on a date with.

Who did Carly agree to go out with?

Timmy, she agreed to go out with Timmy.

Did she agree to go out with Timmy or Charlie?

Timmy, she agreed to go out with Timmy.

How many times did she agree to go out with Timmy?

One time, she agreed to go out with Timmy one time.

How many dates did she agree to have with Timmy?

One, she agreed to go out with Timmy one time, which is the same thing as saying she agreed to have one date with Timmy. To go out with is the same thing as having a date with.



Dating Mini-Story Lesson

One month later Katie saw Carly at a café.

Who saw Carly at a café?

Katie, Katie did. Katie saw Carly at a café.

Did Katie see Carly at a café?

Yes, she did. Katie saw Carly at a café.

Who did Katie see?

Carly, she saw Carly.

Did Katie see Carly or Timmy?

Carly, she saw Carly.

Where did she see Carly?

At a café, she saw Carly at a café.

Did Katie see Carly at the movie theatre?

No, she didn't see her at the movie theatre.

Did Katie see Carly at a café?

Yes, yes, she did. Katie saw Carly at a café.

When did Katie see Carly?

One month later, one month later Katie saw Carly.

Did she see her one year later?

No, it wasn't one year later.

Did she see her one month later?



Dating Mini-Story Lesson

Yes, yes, she did. She saw her one month later.

She was bursting at the seams.

Who was bursting at the seams?

Carly, Carly was bursting at the seams.

Was Carly or Sam bursting at the seams?

Carly, Carly was bursting at the seams.

Was Carly sad?

No, she wasn't sad. She was bursting at the seams, which means she was really happy.

Was Carly tired?

No, she wasn't tired. She was bursting at the seams.

Was Carly very happy?

Yes, she was. She was bursting at the seams, which means she was very happy. If someone is bursting at the seams, they are very happy.

She and Timmy had fallen in love.

Who had fallen in love? Katie and Timmy?

No, Katie and Timmy hadn't fallen in love.

Had Carly and Timmy fallen in love?

Yes, Carly and Timmy had fallen in love.

Had Carly and Timmy fallen on the floor?

No, they didn't fall on the floor, they fell in love.

Dating Mini-Story Lesson

Was Carly in love with Timmy?

Yes, she was. She was in love with Timmy.

Was Timmy in love with Carly?

Yes, Timmy was in love with Carly. Carly and Timmy had fallen in love so that means that Timmy loves Carly and Carly loves Timmy.

Were Carly and Timmy in love?

Yes, they had fallen in love, which means they were in love.

“Thank you so much, Katie,” Carly said, “Timmy is really head and shoulders above the rest.”

Who did Carly say is head and shoulders above the rest?

Timmy, she said that Timmy is head and shoulders above the rest.

Did Carly say that Timmy is head and shoulders above the rest?

Yes, she did. Carly said that Timmy is head and shoulders above the rest.

Does Carly think that Timmy is a total loser?

No, she thinks he is head and shoulders above the rest, which means that she thinks he is much better than anyone else she has dated before. When something is head and shoulders above the rest, it means it is much better than something else.

Does Carly think that Timmy is much better than anyone else who she has dated?

Yes, she does. She thinks that he is head and shoulders above the rest, which means she thinks that he is much better than the others that she has dated.

* * * * *

Okay, we have reached the end of our story, which means that we are at the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Dating.” Now please try to tell the story by yourself. Remember, you do not need to



Dating Mini-Story Lesson

memorize every word in the story, but you should use the idioms that we discussed. So here are those idioms: “total losers,” “ran into,” “in touch,” “blind date,” “recipe for disaster,” “bursting at the seams,” and “head and shoulders above the rest.” Okay, so good luck telling the story. Remember, you can listen to this mini-story lesson as many times as you need to.

Alright, thanks. We'll see you next time.



Dating POV Lesson

Hello again and welcome to the point of view stories for the lesson “Dating”. Now, in the mini-story for this lesson the story is told in the past or as if it has already happened. So today we will hear three different versions of this same story. In the first version we will hear the story as if it is happening right now. So let's get started.

* * * * *

Carly the cat is ready to stop dating. She only seems to meet total losers.

Then on December 31st, her luck changes. She runs into her friend Katie the cougar at the library. Katie moved to Africa three years ago. They have not been in touch since then but Katie is now living in America again.

Katie wants to set her up on a blind date with her friend Timmy the tiger. Carly thinks that all blind dates are a recipe for disaster. But she agrees to go out with Timmy one time.

One month later Katie sees Carly at a café. She's bursting at the seams. She and Timmy have fallen in love.

“Thank you so much, Katie,” Carly says. “Timmy is really head and shoulders above the rest.”

* * * * *

Okay, so that's the story told as if it is happening right now. Next we will hear the story told as if it is going to happen five years from now. Here we go.

* * * * *

Five years from now Carly the cat is gonna be ready to stop dating. She will only seem to meet total losers.

Then on December 31st, her luck will change. She's gonna run into her friend Katie the cougar at the library. Katie will have moved to Africa three years earlier. They will not have been in touch for three years. Katie'll now be living in America again.

Katie's gonna want to set her up on a blind date with her friend Timmy the tiger. Carly'll think that all blind dates are a recipe for disaster. But she's gonna agree to go out with Timmy one time.

One month later Katie'll see Carly at a café. She's gonna be bursting at the seams. She and Timmy will have fallen in love.



Dating POV Lesson

Carly'll say to her, “Thank you so much, Katie. Timmy is really head and shoulders above the rest.”

* * * * *

Okay, so that is the story told as if it is going to happen five years from now. Next we'll hear the story as if it is being told by Carly the cat. Here we go.

* * * * *

I am ready to stop dating. I only seem to meet total losers.

Then my luck changes. I run into my friend Katie the cougar at the library. Katie moved to Africa three years ago. We have not been in touch since then but Katie now lives in America again.

Katie wants to set me up on a blind date with her friend Timmy the tiger. I think that all blind dates are a recipe for disaster. But I agree to go out with Timmy one time.

After the date Katie sees me at a café. I am bursting at the seams. Timmy and I have fallen in love.

So I said to Katie, “Thank you so much, Katie. Timmy is really head and shoulders above the rest.”

* * * * *

Alright, great. We have completed the point of view stories for the lesson “Dating”. Now go back and listen to the stories again. After you complete a story try to tell the story to yourself or to a friend. Tell it without looking at the story. Do this for each of the three stories we just heard. The great thing about point of view lessons is that they teach you grammar without making you memorize grammar rules. It just happens automatically. Okay, that's all for now. Thanks and we'll see ya next time.



Dating Vocabulary Lesson

Hello and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation called “Dating.” Now this is a conversation Joe and I were having about some of our friends and the different dates that they have gone on.

So let's begin.

* * * * *

Joe starts out by saying, “Hey, I ran into my friend Jackie today downtown.”

Now hey... That's just kind of a filler word here. It doesn't really mean anything. He's just trying to get my attention. It's just something you can say at the beginning of a sentence. So he's saying, "Hey, I ran into my friend Jackie today downtown. Ran into... Now that's an idiom. And what he's saying here is, hey I saw my friend Jackie by surprise today. Or I unexpectedly saw my friend. Or I wasn't expecting to see her. Ran into. An example of this would be: One time I was at a street festival here in San Francisco. And ran into a friend, who I wasn't even expecting to be there. Ran into.

Then I go on to say, “Hey, you used to work with her, right?”

So I'm saying, hey you used to work with her, didn't you?

And then Joe says, “Yeah, yeah, I don't think you've met her yet but, uh...”

So he's saying yeah, yeah. Yeah is just slang or informal or casual for yes. You won't really see that in written English, but you will definitely hear it in conversational English. So he's saying, yeah I don't think you've met my friend Jackie. Met as in, I don't think you've been introduced to her.

And then I go on to say, “Yeah, I can't believe...”

Or I'm surprised.

“I haven't met her actually, but...”

Now actually here is just kind of a filler word. It doesn't really mean that much.

Then Joe goes on to say, “Yeah, y'know, I well, I don't see her that often.”

Often meaning much. He's saying, I don't see her that often. I don't see her that much.

“I guess...”



Dating Vocabulary Lesson

I guess, or I think.

And then I say, “Oh.” And then Joe goes on to say, “one of the reasons I don’t see her that often...”

Or I don’t see her that much.

“is because she’s been really busy...”

Really or very busy.

“uh, because she’s in a new relationship she said.”

So... In a new relationship. Or that could also mean... His friend Jackie, she’s just started dating someone. She’s in this new relationship.

And I say, “Oh.”

Like wow. Really?

Then Joe says, “Yeah, you should have seen her. It was like, uh, it was so cute to see her. She was like bursting at the seams she was so happy.”

Like, in this situation... I’ve mentioned this in other lessons. It’s just a filler word. Doesn’t really mean anything. So she was like bursting at the seams. Now bursting at the seams... That’s an idiom. Basically it’s saying she was very excited. She was so happy. Bursting at the seams. An example of bursting at the seams would be: When I first met Joe, ten months ago on this day actually (the 21st), I felt so excited and happy. I was bursting at the seams.

Then I... I just laugh.

Because I can imagine his friend Jackie just... Even though I haven’t met her. I can just picture this woman who’s, as he’s describing, she’s so cute. She’s just bursting at the seams. She’s so happy because she’s in this new relationship.

Okay moving on then Joe says, “Because I guess...”

Or he’s saying I think. I guess.

“the relationship is going really well...”

Dating Vocabulary Lesson

Or it's going very well.

"so..." And then I say, "Oh, that's good." And Joe says, "Yeah, I'm really happy to see it too because I know that she's been really looking for someone."

Now looking for someone... That's an idiom and what he's basically saying is she's been trying to find someone to date. She's been trying to find someone. An example of looking for someone would be: My friend Tina is always looking for someone, but she can never seem to meet someone she likes. Looking for someone. So yeah Joe is talking about how he is happy to see that... See her, see his friend so happy. Because she's been looking for someone. She's been trying to find someone to date.

And he goes on to say, "And, uh, y'know, she'd been doing the online dating thing for, I don't know, over a year."

So he's saying, she'd been meeting people. Or trying to date people online or from the internet. And she'd been doing this for over a year. For more than a year.

And he goes on to say, "And, I mean..."

Or, what I'm trying to say.

"it seemed like she was having, uh, she wasn't having a lot of luck with it, so..."

So he's saying, she wasn't having a lot of luck. She wasn't finding men to date. She just wasn't having very good luck with it.

And then I go on to say, "Oh, really?" And Joe says, "Yeah." And then I say, "Well, it's good she's finally found someone that she's compatible with."

Compatible. So what I'm saying is, it's good she's finally found someone she gets along well with.

And then Joe says, "Yeah. I remember when she first started out she told me about this one guy she met and he was a total loser."

So he's saying, I remember when she first started out dating. She told me about this one guy. Guy is slang for man. So she told me... So he's saying, she told me about this one man she met and he was a total loser. A total loser just simply means not a good person to date because maybe the guy is unsuccessful. Or maybe he doesn't have a job. Or maybe he's mean to his mother. Or maybe he's not well-educated... He doesn't have a good education. Total loser. An example of total loser would be: My mom likes to remind me of how

Dating Vocabulary Lesson

I dated total losers in high school. She thinks it's because I wanted to try and change them into better guys. Total loser.

So then Joe goes on to say, "I mean, one thing that I remember she said was that he asked her to go out to this nice restaurant."

So he's saying, she's talking about... His friend Jackie is talking about this guy when she first started doing the dating online. Or on the internet. This... This first guy she meets, he asks her to go to this nice restaurant. To this really expensive restaurant is basically what that means. Nice restaurant.

And then Joe goes on to say, "And, y'know, she wasn't planning on, uh, having him pay for the date."

So he's saying that Jackie, his friend, wasn't, wasn't thinking that this guy would pay for her date. I think in America nowadays it's not expected for a guy to pay for the first date. But usually, or I would say most of the time, it does still happen. So she's not thinking he's definitely going to pay for the date.

So then Joe goes on to say, "Y'know, she was like, 'Okay, well, y'know, I have money just in case.' And, uh, he made her pay for the whole date."

So Jackie wasn't planning on this guy paying for her date. She wasn't thinking he would pay for it. She had money just in case. She had money just to be sure. Y'know, just... Just to be sure in case he didn't pay. And then Joe is saying, but he did. He ended up making her pay for the whole date. For, for everything.

So I just laugh and say, "Oh my god!"

Like, I can't believe it.

And Joe says, "I know! What the..." And he laughs. "So that was really, y'know, that was really a bad introduction..."

So what he's saying is, that was really a bad first meeting. So Jackie... his friend Jackie... This was a bad first meeting for her. A bad first meeting with this guy. Because he made her pay for the whole date. Like I said, even though it's not expected in American culture anymore, it's still... It's just nice on the first date if a guy pays.

Then I just laugh, agreeing it was a bad introduction. And Joe goes on to say, "to the, to that guy and to the online dating world."

So he's saying, that was a bad introduction to this guy and to the online dating world. So here, bad introduction to the online dating world... Introduction would just mean it was a bad start to the dating world. It

Dating Vocabulary Lesson

was a bad first meeting for this guy... for her to meet this guy. And it was a bad start to the dating world.

And then I say, "Yeah, I would say so."

So I'm just completely agreeing.

And Joe says, "Because that was the first person she went out with."

So he's saying yeah. It was such a bad introduction. A bad way to start dating on the internet. A bad first date to have with this guy, who makes her pay for the food at the restaurant. It was just a bad introduction. Now went out with... When he says, because that was the first person she went out with... What he is saying is, that was the first person she went on a date with. Went out with. For example: I remember I went out with this guy one time on our first date. I was driving and we ended up getting into a car accident. Luckily we didn't get hurt. But it was not a good way to end our first date. Went out with.

Then I go on to say, "Well..." After laughing, "Well, speaking..."

Or talking.

"of blind dates, 'coz online dating is pretty much blind dates..."

Okay blind dates, or blind date... That's an idiom. That just means going out on a date with someone you've never met. Blind date. So I'm saying, yeah speaking or talking about blind dates, because it is. When you're meeting someone on the internet, that's like blind dating. An example of blind dating or blind date: I've never been on a blind date before. I've always known the person before going on the date. Blind date. Now when I say, 'coz online dating is pretty much blind dates... What I'm saying there... 'Coz. 'Coz is short for because. This is something else you won't see in written English, but you will hear it in conversational English. 'Coz.

Okay, then moving on Joe says, "Yeah."

Agreeing with me.

And then I say, "or blind dating, I should say, um. There's, I have a friend that I am no longer in touch with and before we lost touch I can remember her telling me a story about going out on a blind date."

So in the beginning, I'm just correcting myself from talking about blind dates to blind dating. I'm just correcting myself. And then I'm talking about that I have this friend that I'm no longer in touch with. In touch with... Now that's an idiom meaning in contact with. I no longer have this friend I am in contact with. An example of in touch with would be: When I was living in Korea, Thailand and Japan, I was pretty good about

Dating Vocabulary Lesson

keeping in touch with all of my family and friends. Because it was so easy to e-mail. In touch with. So I have this friend that I no longer keep in touch with and before we lost touch... Lost touch is an idiom. It's the opposite of in touch with. So no longer in contact. My friend and I, we were no longer in contact with each other. Lost touch. An example of this is: It's sad to say but I have a friend in Atlanta, Georgia who I have not spoken to in almost two years. I have lost touch with her. Lost touch. So I have this friend, I am no longer in touch with her. I am no longer in contact with her and before we lost touch... Before we got out of contact with each other... I can remember her telling me a story about going on a blind date. So she didn't know the guy.

"And this guy, he was such a total loser. He showed up."

So he... he... showed up. He got to wherever they were meeting.

"He was already two sheets to the wind."

Two sheets to the wind. Meaning he was already very drunk or he was very drunk. He'd had a lot of alcohol to drink. This is how he shows up to the date. He was two sheets to the wind. For example, of two sheets to the wind: I had a lot to drink at a wedding a few months ago. I was two sheets to the wind. So this is my friend's first impression of this guy. Or her first thought of him. This guy shows up. He's drunk.

"This guy was just trashed."

Trashed meaning like two sheets to the wind. Very drunk, had a lot of alcohol to drink. Trashed. An example of trashed: My friend Tim likes to drink a lot of beer. Therefore he ends up getting trashed a lot.

Moving along in the conversation Joe says, "And he stunk of alcohol?"

So, stunk, or he smelled of alcohol?

And I said, "Yeah!" Joes says, "Oh great."

Now oh great here... He's not saying that in a good way, a positive way. He's saying it more like, oh great. I can't believe that.

And then I say, "Yeah, exactly. Yeah, needless to say, that, that date was a disaster. She didn't want to see him again."

So I'm saying, yeah needless to say or I don't even have to say that, that date was a disaster. She didn't want to see him again. So, disaster... It ended up badly, was not good. And, she didn't want to see him again. She didn't want to go out on another date with this guy.



Dating Vocabulary Lesson

And then Joe says, “Yeah.”

Like agreeing with me. I can only imagine. I can only agree.

And then I say, “But, yeah, I mean she had a horrible time with, um, dating.”

I'm saying she had a terrible time with dating.

“I mean she went on a lot of blind dates and, just... They were all pretty disastrous...”

So they were pretty terrible.

“actually. But I will say before we lost touch...”

So before we got out of contact with each other.

“she finally met someone that was head and shoulders above the rest.”

Head and shoulders above the rest. Much better than the rest. Head and shoulders above the rest. So I'm saying my friend finally met someone that was really good. He was better than the rest. An example of this would be: My cousin is a very good hairstylist. Hairstylist is someone who cuts hair. So she cuts hair for a living. She's the only person that I'll let cut my hair. She's head and shoulders above the rest.

And then Joe goes on to say, “Oh, that's great. Yeah.”

Now here he is saying, oh that's great in a positive way. Like good... Y'know, it's good to hear that your friend finally met someone that she really liked. That... Who was really good.

And I say, “Yeah.” And then Joe says, “You know, ah, its funny to hear Bill speaking about, uh, all the times he's gone out on, y'know, blind dates through y'know that, people he met over the internet. Because he's been doing it for a couple of years. And he, he just always has a funny spin on things when he tells a story. I don't even know where he comes up with some of this stuff. It's so funny.”

So Joe is talking about how it's really funny to hear his friend Bill talk about the blind dates. The dates he's gone out on, y'know, not knowing people. Funny to hear Bill talk about these blind dates from people he's met on the internet. Because he's been doing it for a couple of years. He's been dating people from the internet for two years. He just always has a funny spin on things when he tells a story. Funny spin on things. That's an idiom meaning he has a funny way of looking at things. Funny spin on things. An example of that would be: Tim can really make me laugh. He has a funny spin on things whenever he talks about something.



Dating Vocabulary Lesson

Funny spin on things. And then Joe goes on to say, yeah, he has such a funny way of looking at things. I don't even know where he comes up with some of this stuff. Like where... Where some of these stories come from. They're just so funny.

So then I go on to say, “Oh, that guy cracks me up.”

So I'm talking about Bill. Bill really cracks me up. He's got all these funny stories. Cracks me up. Makes me laugh. An example of cracks me up would be: I like when I meet people who really crack me up because I like to laugh. I love to laugh. Cracks me up.

Then Joe says, “Yeah, yeah, I know. But, uh, he actually, I think one of his problems is... The guy's like 35 and he's trying to date 20 year olds, so, you know...”

So he's saying, I think one reason Bill has all these funny stories, why he has all these problems when, when he's going on these blind dates... Bill is 35 years old and he's trying to date 20 year olds.

And I say, “Oh no.”

Like, oh, I don't... I can't believe that.

And Joe says, “of course there's going to be like a big difference in, uh, interests and, uh, usually maturity also.”

So what he's saying is a 35 year old trying to date a 20 year old... Some people do it and that's fine. Other times there's, like Joe is saying, there's just, can be a big difference in the interests that those two people would have. Or immaturity. Maturity being like, in this example... Like, or in this situation... Like their thoughts would be really different. Y'know, one person being older and the other person being younger.

And then I say, I go on to say, “Yeah!”

I'm agreeing with him.

“That's just, that seems like it would be a recipe for disaster.”

Recipe for disaster. What I'm saying here is it seems like that would be something that would likely end badly. So not end good. Recipe for disaster. An example of that would be: Lying is a recipe for disaster. After someone tells a lie, something bad usually happens. A recipe for disaster.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, yeah, I know what you're saying, so...” And then I say, “Well, I think, um, dating has really changed a good bit, y'know, back in the day, when my...our parents were dating. It

Dating Vocabulary Lesson

was just so different.”

So what I’m saying is dating has really changed a good bit. A good bit meaning a lot. For example: I drink a good bit of water throughout the day because drinking water is good for you. A good bit. So I’m saying, yeah, dating has really changed a lot. It’s changed a good bit, y’know, back in the day... Back in the day meaning a long time ago. For example: Back in the day when my grandmother was a child, no one had TVs. No one had televisions. Back in the day. So yeah, a long time ago... Back in the day, when my or our parents were dating... Y’know, I started out saying my parents but it’s his parents, too. Same generation. I’m just saying yeah, it was just so different. So different when our parents were dating from... from... us, people our age dating now, today.

And then Joe says, “Oh, it was totally a different story then.”

So he’s saying, it was completely a different story then. And a different story here means not the same then. It was not the same. An example of this could be: These days children learn how to use computers in school. Back when I was a child, it was a totally different story. We didn’t learn how to use computers. A different story.

And then I go on to say, “I mean for one thing, well, moving even beyond dating.”

Or talking about other things besides dating.

“Like once people got serious, they didn’t live together before they got married.” And Joe says, “No, no.” And I say, “You know?”

Like, you agree?

And I start to say, “And I...” And then Joe says, before I can finish, “That was like, viewed as a sin...”

So he’s saying that was seen as a sin. That was something that was not good. Back when our parents were dating, you just, after dating, when you start to get serious with someone, two people before they got married... They just would not live together.

And then I say, “Yeah!”

I agree.

And then Joe says, “because the world, y’know, here in these... Here it was a lot more, uh, it was a much more religious time.”

Dating Vocabulary Lesson

So what he's saying is, religious time... Religion... Christianity being the biggest religion in America. He's saying at that time there were a lot of stronger Christian beliefs then. A strong Christian belief would not be for people to live together before they got married.

And then I say, "Right."

Agreeing with Joe.

And then I go on to say, "But I'd even be willing to bet that they didn't have sex before marriage."
And Joe says, "Oh, c-..."

He starts to say, oh come on. Like, oh you can't believe that.

He goes on to say, "I think that they were saying they didn't have sex before marriage but I'm sure it was happening..." And I say, "You think?" And then Joe, "behind closed doors. Oh definitely! Come on, y'know!"

So behind closed doors. He's saying yeah, it was happening. But it was done in private. It was not happening where people could see it. It was behind closed doors. An example of behind closed doors: Growing up I can remember my mom not wanting people to know that she smoked. She only did it behind closed doors.

Then I go on to say, "Well, where would they do it?"

So in other words, where would they have sex?

"Go park a car?"

Would they go have sex in a car?

And Joe says, "Well that is one, that is one..."

He's saying, that would be one way.

"yeah, I think they did actually. Because back then people would live at home until they got married."

So that's really, y'know I guess they could go to a hotel. But that would be expensive. So since people lived at home until they got married, the only way to go have sex, he's saying, would be... Or one way would be to go and have sex in a car.

Dating Vocabulary Lesson

So then I say, "Right."

Agreeing with him.

And then he says, "So they would, I think they would have to go... I mean it was kind of rare..."

Or y'know, didn't happen often. Didn't happen very much.

"for someone to move out of the house before they got married. So, y'know, they probably didn't have their own apartment. So..." And I say, "Right."

Agreeing with him.

And he says, "Yeah, and y'know..." And I start to say, "Well, speaki-..."

Starting to say speaking but Joe interrupts me then. He starts to say something.

Joe says, "another..." And then I say, "I'm sorry. Go ahead..."

So we're kind of talking both at the same time and I'm telling Joe, oh just go ahead. You go ahead and talk.

So then Joe says, "thing that was really weird..."

So he's saying, you know another thing that was really weird. Or another thing that was really strange...

"if you think about it also, is people just didn't get divorced back then."

So he's saying if you really think about it, a really strange thing, or a really weird thing is that people didn't get divorced. They didn't end their marriage back then.

And I'm saying, "Right, right."

Agreeing with him.

Then Joe says, "Like now, I, I heard something and I, I think this is pretty accurate."

Or he's saying, I think it's pretty correct.

"50 percent of all marriages here in the United States end in divorce." And I say, "Oh my god."

Dating Vocabulary Lesson

Like, I can't believe that.

And Joe says, "I mean, its crazy to..."

He's saying it's unusual to...

"y'know, that you and I, uh, we're both like, y'know, have parents who are still together. Its kind of..."
And I'm saying, "Uh-huh."

Like, I know. I agree. It is very unusual that our parents are still together. They're not divorced.

And then Joe goes on to say, "its, uh, its uncommon, I guess..."

And what he's saying is, it's not usual.

And he starts to say, "I guess..." And I say, "It is."

Agreeing, again, it is uncommon. It's not usual.

And then Joe goes on to say, "is the word I'm looking for. Because when you look at our friends, um, most of them have parents that are divorced, who are divorced, excuse me."

He corrects himself. So he's saying uncommon is the word I'm looking for.

"it's uncommon..."

It's not usual. Because our friends, and this is true, most of our friends... Their parents are divorced. They are no longer together.

And then I say, "Yep."

Yep just meaning yes. A slang word for yes.

"Yeah, we're definitely not the norm, or our families aren't."

So what I'm saying is, not the norm. Our families... We're not common. We're not like everyone else. Or our families are not common. Our families are not like everyone else. For example: These days in America, it's the norm for people to start college the year after high school. The norm.

And then I go on to say, "But, you know, it made me think, um, speaking of living together. My mom, I



Dating Vocabulary Lesson

was talking about it with her the other day and she actually called it shacking up.”

Shacking up... When two people who are not married live together. That's what shacking up means. For example: My friend Kayla and her boyfriend live together. Her mom told her that she doesn't like them shacking up. Shacking up.

And then Joe goes on to say, “Oh, that's funny. That's like a term...”

Or that's like a word....

“that's no longer used.” And then I end the conversation by saying, “Yeah.”

I agree.

* * * * *

Okay, this concludes the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Dating.” So listen to this a few times in a relaxed way, if you need to. Until you have a basic understanding of the vocabulary. Then go to the mini-story.

See you next time. Bye.



Drunk Driving Conversation

Joe: [exhale] I just saw John at the store.

Kristin: Well what happened? You sound kind of bummed.

busted: to get in trouble

Joe: Well, he told me that Melissa just got **busted** again for drunk driving.

Kristin: Oh, no.

Joe: Yeah...

Kristin: That's terrible.

Joe: ...that's her second offense in the last year.

Kristin: Jeez.

Joe: I mean, she just.... I think that she just got finished with the court case from the last time when she got busted. And that was like, she got busted like ten months ago. She doesn't even have a license.

Kristin: Oh my god!

Joe: Yeah, I mean the first time she got...

Kristin: What was she thinking?

have no idea: does not know

Joe: ...busted, I **have no idea**. I mean, the first time she got busted she was, uh, she had been out drinking with some friends, y'know, at a party. And, uh, y'know, they had advised her not to drive because she had been drinking a bit too much. But, y'know, she was like, "No, no, I'm fine." So she was on her way home and, uh, y'know, she was dr-, uh, driving a little erratically. And, uh, y'know a cop saw her and y'know, **pulled her over** and smelled that she had alcohol on her breath. So, um, yeah, so that's how she got busted the first time. But this time, she's really lucky. She actually wrecked this time.

Kristin: Yeah,

Joe: And, uh...

Kristin: Yeah, she is lucky.

Drunk Driving Conversation

Joe: ...I mean, but she's lucky that no one got hurt.

Kristin: Right.

thank goodness: to be thankful for something

Joe: She wa-, she actually didn't get hurt. She didn't hit anybody, **thank goodness**, and uh...

Kristin: Well how serious was the accident?

totaled: damaged so much that it cannot be driven

Joe: Um, well she, uh, she was apparently driving and, uh, a little too fast and, uh, y'know.... She was obviously drunk. She lost control of the car and, y'know, that was it. Y'know, it's **totaled** also. She hit into a, um, a telephone pole but thank goodness she didn't **hit it head-on**. Y'know, she just like lost control and skidded into it.

hit (it) head-on: hit something with the head or front first

Kristin: God, I just had this image of her **wrapping it around** the telephone pole.

wrapping it around: crashed into badly

Joe: Yeah, well, check this out. Jeff said he saw her out at the bar last night doing shots about an hour before she drove. He didn't even...

Kristin: Oh, that's smart.

Joe: ...think she was driving, because h-, he knows she doesn't have a-, a license.

rear-ended: hit something from behind or from the back end

Kristin: Yeah, that's really smart.

Joe: Yeah, I just, oh my god, I just don't even know what to say. I mean...

Kristin: Well, this makes me think of Matthew. Fairly recently, I can't remember if it was his second or third offense with drunk driving, but he was out at a bar one night. Left with a friend and was driving drunk. **Rear-ended** a car. Y'know I guess the car in front had come to a stop and he just plowed right into 'em. And luckily he was okay. His friend was okay. But there were three people in the car, the car that was ahead of 'em. And I think two out of the three people actually got injured.

run-in (with the law): to get in trouble (with the police)

thrown in jail: to be put in jail

Joe: Ugh.

Kristin: So, like I said, I don't remember if this was his second or third offense. But, uh, yeah, since, since he had had a **run-in with the law** prior to that he got, uh, **thrown in jail** for a year.

Drunk Driving Conversation

Joe: Oh, I'm not surprised. I mean, you.... If, if you've already had one offense before, I think like it's automatic that you're gonna do jail time.

Kristin: Yeah. And he...

Joe: I mean it just depends on how much. Because, y'know, the laws vary from state to state y'know. And Melissa actually got busted for drunk driving when she was like 20 years old when she lived in Texas. Before she moved here.

Kristin: Oh god.

Joe: You think that she would have, uh, y'know, learned something from that, y'know, first event.

Kristin: Right, right.

Joe: My god.

throw away the key: to make someone go to jail for a long time

Kristin: Well, I'm surprised they didn't just **throw away the key** with Matthew. I mean he was trashed.

Joe: Yeah.

Kristin: Not only that, but, I mean, y'know.... The fact tha-, that he was so drunk, this was his second or third drunk driving offense and he actually injured people. He's lucky he didn't kill someone.

Joe: Yeah, I mean you don't want that on your conscience.

Kristin: No!

get her off: to get her out of trouble (with the police)

Joe: My gosh. Well Melissa, um, I think that, uh, uh, Jeff told me that, uh, or John said that Jeff told him that, uh.... She spoke with a lawyer. And, uh, y'know unlike last time, um, last time she was hoping her lawyer was gonna **get her off**. And it, it didn't happen because her blood alcohol level was too high. But there's no way she's gettin' off this time. I mean...

Kristin: No.

Drunk Driving Conversation

Joe: ...she wrecked a car. And the cops came while she was still at the car. So...

Kristin: Oh!

Joe: ...they could obviously see, y'know.... They gave her a breathalyzer, but, uh...

throw the book at: to make someone go to jail for a long time

get put away: to get put in jail

Kristin: They're gonna **throw the book** at her.

Joe: Oh yeah, she's, she's gonna.... I mean she's got, she's looking at three to six months. She's definitely, uh, gonna **get put away** for three to six months. Yeah, because that's the law here. So...

Kristin: Right. If not longer.

Joe: Well, I, I don't know how it works. I mean, I guess sometimes they let you take these alcohol diversion classes and, uh...

Kristin: Oh, to lessen the time.

Joe: Yeah.



Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

Hey there. Welcome to the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Drunk Driving.”

Let's get started with the story.

* * * * *

Leo the lion was excited. He had finally saved enough money to buy a ticket to fly to the moon.

One week before leaving he went to a bar with his friend Samuel the snake. Samuel and Leo drank twelve beers each. Samuel was so drunk that he fell on the floor.

The bartender then said, “I had no idea you were so drunk. It is time for you to go home.”

So Leo and Samuel left the bar. Samuel wanted to drive his car home.

“If you drive now, you will have a run-in with the law,” said Leo.

But Samuel drove his car anyway.

After driving one mile he was pulled over. The policeman knew that Samuel was drunk.

“Now you are going to be thrown in jail,” said the policeman.

The next day Samuel asked Leo to borrow money so he could hire a lawyer.

“I hope that he can get me off. I don't want them to throw the book at me,” said Samuel.

Leo gave Samuel money for the lawyer.

“Now I have no money. I can't go to the moon,” said Leo.

He was very upset. He knew he should not have let Samuel drive.

* * * * *

Okay, so that's our story. And now I will tell the story again, but this time I will ask you questions. And, as always, you should try to answer them out loud and if you need a little more time you should just press pause on your iPod or your computer and then press play again when you are ready to answer the question. But if you don't want to answer the questions and you just want to sit and listen, that's fine, too.



Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

Alright, here we go.

* * * * *

Leo the lion was excited.

Who was excited?

Leo the lion, Leo the lion was excited.

Was Larry the lion excited?

No, it wasn't Larry the lion.

Was Leo the lion excited?

Yes, Leo the lion was excited.

What type of animal is Leo?

A lion, Leo is a lion.

Is Leo a mouse?

No, Leo is not a mouse.

Is Leo a lion?

Yes, yes, he is. Leo is a lion.

Was Leo tired?

No, he was not tired. He was excited.

He had finally saved enough money to buy a ticket to fly to the moon.

Had he finally saved enough money to buy a ticket to fly to the moon?

Yes, he had. He had finally saved enough money to buy a ticket to fly to the moon.



Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

Who had saved enough money?

Leo, Leo had saved enough money.

Had Brad Pitt or Leo saved enough money?

Leo had. Leo had saved enough money.

What had he saved enough money to buy?

A ticket to fly to the moon, he had saved enough money to buy a ticket to fly to the moon.

Had he saved enough money to buy a ticket to fly to the moon?

Yes, he had. He had saved enough money to buy a ticket to fly to the moon.

Did he have enough money saved to buy a ticket to fly to the moon?

Yes, yes, he did. He had enough money saved to buy a ticket to fly to the moon.

Okay, so where did he want to fly?

To the moon, he wanted to fly to the moon.

Did he want to fly to New York?

No, he didn't want to fly to New York.

Did he want to fly to the moon?

Yes, he did. He wanted to fly to the moon. That's why he bought a ticket to fly to the moon or that's why he was saving money to buy a ticket to fly to the moon actually.

One week before leaving he went to a bar with his friend Samuel the snake.

Did he go to a bar with his friend Samuel the snake?

Yes, he did. He went to a bar with his friend Samuel the snake.



Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

When did he go to a bar?

One week before leaving, one week before leaving he went to a bar.

Did he go to a bar one month before leaving?

No, it wasn't one month before leaving.

Did he go to a bar one week before leaving?

Yes, yes, he did. He went to a bar one week before leaving.

Okay, so where did he go?

A bar, he went to a bar.

Did he go to a church or a bar?

A bar, he went to a bar.

Who did he go to the bar with?

Samuel the snake, he went to the bar with Samuel the snake.

Did he go to the bar with Cathy the cat?

No, he didn't go to the bar with Cathy the cat.

Did he go to the bar with Samuel the snake?

Yes, he did. He went to the bar with Samuel the snake.

Is Samuel the snake Leo's friend?

Yes, yes, he is. He went to the bar with his friend Samuel the snake, so Samuel the snake is Leo's friend.

Samuel and Leo drank twelve beers each.



Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

Did Samuel and Leo drink twelve beers each?

Yes, they did. Samuel and Leo drank twelve beers each.

Okay, so what did Samuel and Leo do?

Well, they drank twelve beers each.

Who drank twelve beers each?

Samuel and Leo, Samuel and Leo drank twelve beers each.

Did Samuel and Leo drink twelve beers each?

Yes, they did. Samuel and Leo drank twelve beers each.

How many beers did Samuel and Leo drink?

Twelve beers each, Samuel and Leo drank twelve beers each.

Did they drink ten or twelve beers each?

Twelve, they drank twelve beers each.

Did Samuel and Leo drink twenty-four beers total?

Yes, yes, they did. They each drank twelve beers, which means that they drank twenty-four beers total because twelve plus twelve is twenty-four.

Samuel was so drunk that he fell on the floor.

Did Samuel fall on the floor?

Yes, he did. He fell on the floor.

Who fell on the floor?

Samuel, Samuel fell on the floor.



Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

Did Leo or Samuel fall on the floor?

Samuel, Samuel fell on the floor. Leo didn't fall on the floor.

Okay, so why did Samuel fall on the floor?

Well, it was because he was so drunk. Remember he drank the twelve beers.

Did Samuel fall on the floor because it was wet?

No, that's not why he fell.

Did Samuel fall because he was drunk?

Yes, yes, he was. He was drunk and that's why he fell.

Was Samuel only a little bit drunk?

No, he was more than a little bit drunk. He was actually very drunk. He was so drunk.

Did Samuel drink too much alcohol?

Yes, he did. He drank too much alcohol. We know this because he was so drunk.

The bartender then said, “I had no idea you were so drunk. It is time for you to go home.”

Did the bartender have no idea that he was so drunk?

Yes, that's correct. The bartender said, “I had no idea you were so drunk,” so he had no idea that he was so drunk.

Did the bartender know that he was so drunk?

No, no, he did not. He said he had no idea he was so drunk, which means that he did not know he was so drunk. To have no idea means to not know.

Did the bartender know that Samuel had too much alcohol to drink?



Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

Well, he did not at first because he said he had no idea, which means he did not know that he was so drunk. But then he definitely knew he was drunk when he saw him fall on the floor. So he didn't know at first, but then later after he saw him fall on the floor, he did know that he was drunk.

Did the bartender want Samuel to leave the bar?

Yes, he did. He said, "It is time for you to go home," so he wanted him to leave the bar.

So Leo and Samuel left the bar.

Okay, so what did Samuel and Leo do?

They left the bar. Leo and Samuel left the bar.

Did they leave the bar or drink another beer?

They left the bar. They did not drink another beer.

Who left the bar?

Leo and Samuel, Leo and Samuel left the bar.

Did Leo and Samuel leave the bar?

Yes, they did. Leo and Samuel left the bar.

Did Leo and Samuel leave the café or the bar?

The bar, Leo and Samuel left the bar.

Samuel wanted to drive his car home.

Did Samuel want to drive his car home?

Yes, he did. He wanted to drive his car home.

What did Samuel want to do?



Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

Drive his car home. He wanted to drive his car home.

Did he want to walk to the library or drive his car home?

Drive his car home. Samuel wanted to drive his car home.

Okay, so who wanted to drive his car home?

Samuel, Samuel wanted to drive his car home.

Did Leo or Samuel want to drive his car home?

Samuel, Samuel wanted to drive his car home.

Whose car did Samuel want to drive? Did he want to drive Leo's car?

No, he didn't want to drive Leo's car.

Did Samuel want to drive his own car?

Yes, yes, he did. He wanted to drive his car home, which means he wanted to drive his own car home.

Where did Samuel want to drive his car?

Home, he wanted to drive his car home.

Did he want to drive his car to the beach?

No, he didn't want to drive it to the beach.

Did he want to drive his car home?

Yes, yes, he did. He wanted to drive his car home.

“If you drive now, you will have a run-in with the law,” said Leo.

Did Leo say that he will have a run-in with the law?

Yes, he did. He said, “You will have a run-in with the law.”



Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

Did Leo say that he will get in trouble with the police?

Yes, yes, he did. He said he would have a run-in with the law, which is the same thing as saying he will get in trouble with the police. If you get in a run-in with the law, that means that you get in trouble with the police.

What did Leo say would happen if Samuel drives his car?

Well, he said he will have a run-in with the law.

Did he say he will get in trouble with the police?

Yes, yes, he did. He said that he would have a run-in with the law, which is the same thing as saying he would get in trouble with the police.

Did he say that he will be arrested by the police?

Yes, he said he would have a run-in with the law, which is the same thing as saying he will get in trouble with the police or you could even say that he would be arrested by the police.

But Samuel drove his car anyway.

What did Samuel do?

Well, he drove his car.

Did Samuel walk home?

No, he didn't. He drove his car.

Did Samuel drive his car?

Yes, yes, he did. He drove his car.

Who drove his car?

Samuel, Samuel drove his car.

Did Samuel or Leo drive his car?



Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

Samuel, Samuel drove his car.

After driving one mile he was pulled over.

Was he pulled over?

Yes, yes, he was. He was pulled over.

Did the police stop him while he was driving?

Yes, they did. He was pulled over, which means that the police stopped him while he was driving. To be pulled over means to be stopped by the police while you are driving.

Who was pulled over?

Samuel, Samuel was pulled over.

Was Samuel or Leo pulled over?

Samuel, Samuel was pulled over.

Was he pulled over after driving seven miles?

No, he was pulled over before that.

Was he pulled over after driving one mile?

Yes, yes, he was. After driving one mile he was pulled over.

Did the police stop Samuel while he was driving?

Yes, yes, they did. They pulled him over, which means the police stopped him while he was driving.

The policeman knew that Samuel was drunk.

Okay, so what did the policeman know?

Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

That Samuel was drunk. He knew that Samuel was drunk.

Did the policeman know that Samuel was drunk?

Yes, he did. The policeman knew that Samuel was drunk.

Did the policeman know that Samuel drank too much alcohol?

Yes, yes, he did. He knew he was drunk, which means he knew that he drank too much alcohol.

Who knew that Samuel was drunk?

The policeman, the policeman knew that Samuel was drunk.

Okay, so why did the policeman pull Samuel over?

Well, it was because he was drunk. He probably was not driving well because he was drunk.

“Now you are going to be thrown in jail,” said the policeman.

Who is going to be thrown in jail?

Samuel, Samuel is going to be thrown in jail.

Is Samuel or Leo going to be thrown in jail?

Samuel, Samuel is going to be thrown in jail.

Is Samuel going to be put in jail?

Yes, he is. Samuel is going to be thrown in jail which is the same thing as saying Samuel is going to be put in jail. If you get thrown in jail, that means that the police put you in jail.

The next day Samuel asked Leo to borrow money so he could hire a lawyer.

Did Samuel ask Leo to borrow money?

Yes, yes, he did. Samuel asked Leo to borrow money.



Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

Okay, so what did Samuel ask Leo?

To borrow money, he asked him if he could borrow money.

Did he ask him for a beer or to borrow money?

To borrow money, he didn't ask him for a beer.

Who asked Leo to borrow money?

Samuel did. Samuel asked Leo to borrow money.

Did Samuel or the policeman ask Leo to borrow money?

Samuel did. The policeman did not ask Leo to borrow money.

Who did Samuel ask to borrow money?

Leo, he asked Leo to borrow money.

Did Samuel ask the policeman to borrow money?

No, he did not ask the policeman. He asked Leo.

Why did Samuel ask Leo to borrow money?

So he could hire a lawyer. That's why he asked him to borrow money.

Did Samuel ask Leo to borrow money so he could buy beer?

No, that's not why he asked him to borrow money.

Did Samuel ask Leo to borrow money so he could hire a lawyer?

Yes, yes, he did. He asked him to borrow money so he could hire a lawyer.

“I hope that he can get me off.

Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

Does Samuel hope he can get him off?

Yes, Samuel was the one who said, "I hope he can get me off," so Samuel hopes he can get him off.

Does Samuel hope that he can get him out of trouble with the police?

Yes, yes, he does. He said, "I hope he can get me off," and what he means by get me off means to get him out of trouble with the police. So he hopes that he can get him off or he hopes that he can get him out of trouble with the police.

Who does Samuel hope can get him off?

His lawyer, he hopes his lawyer can get him off. Or he hopes his lawyer can get him out of trouble with the police.

Does Samuel hope that his lawyer can get him off?

Yes, yes, he does. He hopes his lawyer can get him off.

Does Samuel hope that his lawyer can get him out of trouble with the police?

Yes, he does. He hopes his lawyer can get him off, which is the same thing as saying he hopes that his lawyer can get him out of trouble with the police.

I don't want them to throw the book at me," said Samuel.

Does Samuel want them to throw the book at him?

No, no, he does not. He does not want them to throw the book at him.

Does Samuel want to go to jail for a long time?

No, no, he does not. He said, "I don't want them to throw the book at me," which is the same thing as saying I don't want to go to jail for a long time. If they throw the book at you that means you go to jail for a long time.

Who does not want them to throw the book at him?

Samuel, Samuel does not want them to throw the book at him.



Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

Leo gave Samuel money for the lawyer.

What did Leo give to Samuel?

Money for the lawyer, he gave Samuel money for the lawyer.

Did Leo give Samuel a beer or money to hire a lawyer?

Money to hire a lawyer, he gave him money for the lawyer.

Who gave Samuel money?

Leo, Leo gave Samuel money.

Did Leo or the policeman give Samuel money?

Leo did. The policeman did not give Samuel money.

Who did Leo give money to?

Samuel, Leo gave Samuel money.

What did Leo give Samuel money for?

The lawyer, he gave him money to pay the lawyer.

“Now I have no money. I can’t go to the moon,” said Leo.

Does Leo have any money?

No, no, he does not. He does not have any money now.

Who doesn’t have any money?

Leo, Leo doesn’t have any money.

Can Leo go to the moon?

Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

No, no, he can't. He can't go to the moon.

Why doesn't Leo have any money?

Well, it's because he gave his money to Samuel so Samuel could hire a lawyer. That's why he doesn't have any money.

Okay, so why can't Leo go to the moon?

Well, it's because he doesn't have any money. So that means he can't buy the ticket to fly to the moon.

He was very upset.

Was he happy?

No, no, he was not. He was not happy.

Was he really upset?

Yes, yes, he was. He was really upset or he was very upset.

Who was upset?

Leo, Leo was upset.

Was Leo or the policeman very upset?

Leo, Leo was very upset. Not the policeman.

Okay, so why was Leo very upset?

Because he cannot go to the moon, that's why he was very upset.

He knew he should not have let Samuel drive.

What did he know?

Well, he knew that he should not have let Samuel drive.

Drunk Driving Mini-Story Lesson

Should he have let Samuel drive?

No, no, he should not have let Samuel drive.

Who should not have let Samuel drive?

Leo, Leo should not have let Samuel drive.

Why should he have not let Samuel drive?

Well, it was because Samuel was very drunk, that's why.

* * * *

Okay, so that brings us to the end of the story, which means that we have also reached the end of the mini-story lesson for the conversation “Drunk Driving.” Now, as always, it is your turn to try to tell the story by yourself. You do not need to memorize every word in the story, but you should use the idioms that we used. Okay, here are those idioms: “had no idea,” “run-in with the law,” “pulled over,” “thrown in jail,” “get me off,” and “throw the book at me.” Alright, so try to tell the story now on your own. Remember, you can listen to this mini-story lesson as many times as you need to.

Okay, well that's all from me. Thanks and have a great day.



Drunk Driving POV Lesson

Hello. I hope that you're having a great day. Today we're going to hear the point of view stories for the lesson "Drunk Driving". Okay, let's get started.

* * * * *

Leo the lion is excited. He finally saves enough money to buy a ticket to fly to the moon.

One week before leaving he goes to a bar with his friend Samuel the snake. Samuel and Leo drink twelve beers each. Samuel is so drunk that he falls on the floor.

The bartender then says, "I had no idea you were so drunk. It is time for you to go home."

So Leo and Samuel leave the bar. Samuel wants to drive his car home.

"If you drive now, you will have a run-in with the law," says Leo.

But Samuel drives his car anyway.

After driving one mile he is pulled over. The policeman knows that Samuel is drunk.

"Now you're going to be thrown in jail," says the policeman.

The next day Samuel asks Leo to borrow money so he can hire a lawyer.

"I hope that he can get me off. I don't want them to throw the book at me," says Samuel.

Leo gives Samuel money for the lawyer.

"Now I have no money. I can't go to the moon," says Leo.

He is very upset. He knows he should not have let Samuel drive.

* * * * *

Okay, so that is the story told as if it is happening right now. Next let's hear the story told as if it will happen in two years. Here we go.

* * * * *

Drunk Driving POV Lesson

In two years Leo the lion is gonna be excited. He'll have finally saved enough money to buy a ticket to fly to the moon.

One week before leaving he'll go to a bar with his friend Samuel the snake. Samuel and Leo will drink twelve beers each. Samuel is gonna be so drunk that he'll fall on the floor.

The bartender will then say, "I had no idea you were so drunk. It is time for you to go home."

So Leo and Samuel will leave the bar. Samuel'll want to drive his car home.

"If you drive now, you will have a run-in with the law," Leo will say.

But Samuel will drive his car anyway.

After driving one mile he's gonna be pulled over. The policeman will know that Samuel is drunk.

"Now you're going to be thrown in jail," the policeman'll say.

The next day Samuel is gonna ask Leo to borrow money so he can hire a lawyer.

"I hope that he can get me off. I don't want them to throw the book at me," Samuel will say.

Leo will give Samuel money for the lawyer.

Then Leo will say, "Now I have no money. I can't go to the moon."

He'll be very upset. He'll know he shouldn't have let Samuel drive.

* * * * *

Alright, we just heard the story as if it is happening two years from now. In the next version of the story Leo the lion will be actually telling the story, so it'll be told from the point of view of Leo the lion. Okay, let's begin.

* * * * *

I am excited. I have finally saved enough money to buy a ticket to fly to the moon.

One week before leaving I go to a bar with my friend Samuel the snake. Samuel and I drink twelve beers each. Samuel is so drunk that he falls on the floor.



Drunk Driving POV Lesson

The bartender then said, “I had no idea you were so drunk. It is time for you to go home.”

So Samuel and I leave the bar. Samuel wants to drive his car home.

So I say to Samuel, “If you drive now, you will have a run-in with the law.”

But Samuel drives his car anyway.

After driving one mile he is pulled over. The policeman knows that Samuel is drunk.

“Now you’re going to be thrown in jail,” says the policeman.

The next day Samuel asks me to borrow money so he can hire a lawyer.

“I hope that he can get me off. I don’t want them to throw the book at me,” says Samuel.

I give Samuel money for the lawyer.

Then I say, “Now I have no money. I can’t go to the moon.”

I am very upset. I know I shouldn’t have let Samuel drive.

* * * * *

Okay so that is the last point of view story for the lesson “Drunk Driving”. So your homework is to listen to these lessons until you know them very well. Listen to them until you can tell each story on its own. When you tell the story make sure that you say it out loud, don’t just think about the story, say it out loud. Okay, that’s all for now. See ya later.



Drunk Driving Vocabulary Lesson

Hello and welcome to the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Drunk Driving.” In this conversation, Joe and I are just talking about different friends or different people that we’ve known that have gotten into trouble for drinking and driving.

Okay, let’s begin.

* * * * *

Joe first says... He exhales first.

Exhale just means he breathes out.

So he says, “I just saw John at the store.” And I say, “Well what happened? You sound kind of bummed.”

Bummed meaning you sound kind of sad.

Joe says, “Well, he told me that Melissa just got busted again for drunk driving.”

Busted. Now this is an idiom that means basically to get into trouble. So Melissa just got in trouble again for drunk driving. Busted. An example of busted would be: Todd got busted for driving too fast because he was driving 120 miles per hour. Busted.

And then I say, “Oh, no.” And Joe says, “Yeah...” And I say, “That’s terrible.”

I mean that’s really bad. Or it’s horrible. It’s really bad.

Joe says, “that’s her second offense in the last year.”

Second offense meaning, that’s the second time she’s been arrested. Or that’s the second time she’s gotten into trouble.

And I say, ”Jeez.”

Like, wow... I can’t believe that.

And Joe says, “I mean, she just... I think that she just got finished with the court case from the last time when she got busted. And that was like, she got busted like ten months ago. She doesn’t even have a license.”

Drunk Driving Vocabulary Lesson

Okay so he's saying, she just got finished with the court case from the last time. She's already been arrested. Or she's gotten into trouble with the police two times already for drinking and driving. When you get in trouble for drinking and driving, the police will take you and put you in jail. And then you have to go to court. So that's what he's talking about. She just finished with her court case. Court being where you go and someone called a judge will listen to what happened. And he decides if you'll have to go back to jail. Or stay in jail a longer time. Or you have to pay money. Or whatever he decides. A judge will decide what happens in court. So Joe is talking about, Melissa just finished going to court for her second time. She just got in trouble for her second time ten months ago. She doesn't even have a license. License being what you get... It's a card. You have to take a written and a driving test in order to get this card to be able to drive. So she doesn't even have this card. She doesn't have this license.

And I say, "Oh my god!"

Like, what? That's crazy. I don't believe that.

Joe says, "Yeah, I mean the first time she got..." And he stops. And then I say, "What was she thinking?"

Like, I can't believe she would be driving without her license. Without this card. That's just not good. That, by itself... If she got pulled over by the police and she doesn't have her license, she doesn't have this card to be able to drive, she gets into a lot of trouble just for that. But here she doesn't even have the license. Plus she's been drinking. So two things wrong, right there.

So I say, "What was she thinking?" And then Joe goes on to say, "busted..."

So he was saying, yeah... I mean the first time she got busted.

"I have no idea. I mean, the first time she got busted she was, uh, she had been out drinking with some friends, y'know, at a party. And, uh, y'know, they had advised her..."

Or they had told her.

"not to drive because she had been drinking a bit too much."

So she'd been drinking a little too much.

"But, y'know, she was like, 'No, no, I'm fine.' So she was on her way home and, uh, y'know, she was dr-, uh, driving a little erratically."

So she was driving all over the road in other words. She wasn't driving straight.



Drunk Driving Vocabulary Lesson

“And, uh, y’know a cop saw her and y’know, pulled her over and smelled that she had alcohol on her breath. So, um, yeah, so that’s how she got busted the first time. But this time, she’s really lucky. She actually wrecked this time.”

So he’s saying, she actually had an accident this time. Driving her car she actually had an accident. She actually hit something. Okay, have no idea... That’s an idiom meaning no idea. I don’t know what he’s saying is... I don’t know. I have no idea. An example of have no idea: I had no idea what I wanted to do with my life when I finished high school. Have or had no idea. So he’s saying, I have no idea what she was thinking. Why she was driving with no license after she’d already been in trouble two times for drinking and driving. So she’d been busted, or she had gotten in trouble. Here she is out drinking with friends. She’s at a party. Her friends are telling her not to drive. They’re saying it’s not a good idea. They’re advising her not to drive because she had been drinking a bit too much. She’d been drinking too much. And Melissa is saying, no, no, I’m fine. I can do it. She was on her way home. So she was driving home and she’s driving a little erratically. She’s driving all over the road and a cop saw her. Or a policeman saw her and pulled her over. Pulled her over is an idiom meaning to be stopped by the police while driving. So an example of this would be: Kim was pulled over when she was driving to work because she did not stop at the stop sign. Pulled her over. So the police, the cop, or the policeman sees her driving all over the road. And he pulls her over, makes her stop and smells that she has alcohol on her breath. So he can smell when she’s breathing out. He can smell the alcohol, whatever she’d been drinking, beer, liquor, wine, whatever. So Joe goes on to say, yeah, so that’s how she got busted the first time. That’s how she got in trouble the first time. But this time she’s really lucky. She actually wrecked this time. So he’s saying she’s really lucky. It’s a good thing she hit her car into something this time.

And I say, “Yeah.”

Agreeing with him.

And then Joe says, “And, uh...” And then I go on to say, “Yeah, she is lucky.” And Joe says, “I mean, but she’s lucky that no one got hurt.” And I say, “Right.”

As in yeah, correct, I agree. It is lucky. It’s good that nobody got hurt.

Joe says, “She wa-, she actually didn’t get hurt. She didn’t hit anybody, thank goodness, and uh...”

So he’s saying, she hit something. Her car hit something but she didn’t hit anybody else. Not another car. And he’s saying thank goodness. So that’s good.

Then I say, “Well how serious was the accident?”

Drunk Driving Vocabulary Lesson

Or I'm saying how bad was the accident? You know, accident being her in her car hitting something.

And Joe says, "Um, well she, uh, she was apparently driving and, uh, a little too fast and, uh, y'know... She was obviously drunk. She lost control of the car and, y'know, that was it. Y'know, it's totaled also."

Totaled meaning the car is finished. She's not going to be able to drive it any more. It's... She ruined it to where it just can't be driven anymore.

So then he goes on to say, "She hit into a, um, a telephone pole but thank goodness she didn't hit it head-on. Y'know, she just like lost control and skidded into it."

So he's telling me... When I say how bad was the accident? You know, how bad when she hit her car into something? How bad was it? And he's saying well, she was driving, she was driving a little too fast. She was obviously drunk. She was pretty drunk. She lost control of the car. So she couldn't control the car anymore. She basically wasn't able to really drive the car anymore. And that was it. So he's saying, that's when she hit the telephone pole. She totaled her car. She can't drive her car anymore. It's beyond being able to be driven because she hit it. She went into a telephone pole. Telephone pole is something usually made out of wood. It's tall and it connects telephone wires. So obviously not for cell phones but for regular phones. Like a house phone. Wires are connected from pole to pole, from wooden pole to wooden pole. So she hit her car into one of these. But thank goodness or it's a good thing she didn't hit it head-on. Hit it head-on or hit head-on is an idiom meaning to hit something with the head or front first. Hit it head-on. An example of this would be: When John drove over some ice, he lost control of his car and then hit a deer head-on. So what Joe is saying is, it's a good thing she didn't hit head-on into the telephone pole. So she didn't hit it from the front first. Then he goes on to say, you know, she just like lost control and skidded into it. So she lost control of the car. She wasn't able to keep control of the car. Or to basically drive it anymore. And she skidded into the telephone pole. Skid means usually if someone loses control of their car, they'll put the brakes on. And then if you put the brakes on too hard or too fast, sometimes you can skid. Which means you don't come to a stop. The car might then go to the side. So that's what happened here. And that's why she didn't hit head-on or front first into the telephone pole.

So then I say, "God, I just had this image of her wrapping it around the telephone pole."

Wrapping it around. That's an idiom meaning crashed into badly. Wrapping it around. An example of that would be: When John drove over some ice, he lost control of his car and then wrapped it around a mailbox. So I'm saying, oh my god. I just had this image or I just had this picture of Melissa wrapping her car around the telephone pole. Crashing her car pretty badly into the telephone pole.

And then Joe says, "Yeah, well, check this out."



Drunk Driving Vocabulary Lesson

Or, listen to this, is what's he's saying.

"Jeff said he saw her out at the bar last night doing shots about an hour before she drove. He didn't even..." And he kind of stops.

So what he's saying here is, listen to this. Jeff saw Melissa out at the bar last night and she was doing shots. Shots means... Doing shots means you have a little glass and you put something in it really strongly to drink. Like liquor or something. And you just drink it really fast. So it gets you drunk pretty quickly. So this friend, Jeff, saw her at the bar doing these shots. These drinks of liquor. Like an hour before she left. Liquor meaning alcohol, strong alcohol. So yeah...

Joe says, "He didn't even..." And then I say, "Oh, that's smart."

Now, I'm not saying really that I think Melissa is smart. I am saying the opposite actually. Like oh, that's smart as in that's not really a good idea.

And Joe says, "He didn't even think she was driving, because h-, he knows she doesn't have a-, a license."

So this friend, Jeff... Seeing her doing these shots. Doing these really strong alcohol drinks right before she's going to drive home. He didn't think she was driving because he knows she doesn't even have a license. She doesn't have a card to drive a car.

So again I say, "Yeah, that's really smart."

And once again, I'm not saying I really think Melissa is smart. I'm saying this... It's actually kind of confusing, but I'm saying the opposite. I'm saying that's not a good idea. That's not smart. It's the way that I say it though.

And then Joe says, "Yeah, I just, oh my god, I just don't even know what to say. I mean..."

So he's saying, I just... I can't believe it. I don't even know what to think about this.

And I say, "Well, this makes me think of Matthew. Fairly recently, I can't remember if it was his second or third offense with drunk driving, but he was out at a bar one night. Left with a friend and was driving drunk. Rear-ended a car. Y'know I guess the car in front had come to a stop and he just plowed right into 'em. And luckily he was okay. His friend was okay. But there were three people in the car, the car that was ahead of 'em. And I think two out of the three people actually got injured."

So I'm talking about my friend Matthew. And saying, fairly recently as in not so long ago. And I say, I can't

Drunk Driving Vocabulary Lesson

remember if it was his second or third offense. So I can't remember if it was his second or third time for getting in trouble for drinking and driving. But he was out at a bar one night. Left with a friend. So he left the bar with his friend and he was driving drunk. He rear-ended a car. So rear-ended meaning, he hit something from behind or from the back end. Rear-ended. An example of this would be: Omar's car was damaged because he was not careful when he was driving. He rear-ended the car in front of him. Damaged meaning when he hit his car into the car in front of him, oh how should I say that... He did some things when he hit the car. It messed up his car and the car in front of him. Rear-ended. So then I go on to say, yeah, you know, I guess the car in front... So this car in front of Matthew had come to a stop. It had stopped. And Matthew being drunk and not paying attention just plowed right into them. So he just drove directly into them. And luckily he was okay. And his friend was okay. But there were three people in the car that was ahead of them. Or I say being ahead of 'em. 'Em being short for them. And I think two out of the three people actually got injured. So I'm saying, yeah. I think two out of the three people actually got hurt.

And Joe says, "Ugh."

Like, god. I don't believe that.

Then I say, "So, like I said, I don't remember if this was his second or third offense."

So I don't remember if this was his second or third time getting in trouble.

"But, uh, yeah, since, since he had had a run-in with the law prior to that he got, uh, thrown in jail for a year."

So I'm saying, I don't remember if this was the second or third time that he got in trouble. But since the second or third time he had had a run-in with the law prior to that. So before that. Run-in with the law meaning an encounter with the police. Or getting in trouble with the police. Run-in with the law. An example of that would be: Matthew had a run-in with the law after he tried to rob a bank. Run-in with the law. So since he had had a run-in with the law or problems with the police before, he got thrown in jail for a year. Thrown in jail. Meaning he got put in jail. Thrown in jail. An example of that would be: Gene was thrown in jail because he did not pay his taxes. Thrown in jail.

Then Joe says, "Oh, I'm not surprised. I mean, you... If, if you've already had one offense before, I think like it's automatic that you're gonna do jail time."

So what he's saying, yeah. I'm not surprised that Matthew got thrown in jail. If you already have one offense, or if you've already been in trouble one time...

"I think it's like automatic..."

Drunk Driving Vocabulary Lesson

So he's saying in this situation... Automatic means no doubt about it.

"you're gonna do jail time."

Gonna being short for going. You're going to do jail time. Or you're going to go to jail.

And then I say, "Yeah. And he..." And Joe goes on to say, "I mean it just depends on how much. Because, y'know, the laws vary from state to state, y'know. And Melissa actually got busted for drunk driving when she was like 20 years old when she lived in Texas. Before she moved here."

So Joe is just saying, it just depends. Or it's not certain. It's not for sure how much time you will have to go to jail because he's saying, the laws vary from state to state. The laws are different from each state. And he's saying Melissa actually got busted for drunk driving when she was 20 years old and this was when she was living in Texas before she moved here, to San Francisco.

So I say, "Oh god." And Joe says, "You think that she would have, uh, y'know, learned something from that, y'know, first event."

So he's saying, you would think she would have learned her lesson from the first time she got in trouble for drinking and driving. So that being her first event.

And I say, "Right, right." And Joe says, "My god."

Like, again... Like what was she thinking?

And I say, "Well, I'm surprised they didn't just throw away the key with Matthew. I mean he was trashed."

So I'm saying, I'm surprised they didn't just throw away the key. Throw away meaning, or throw away means to make someone go to jail for a long time. So I'm saying, yeah. I'm surprised they didn't make him go to jail for a long time. I mean he was trashed. Trashed meaning he was really drunk. An example of throw away the key would be: If you hurt someone when driving drunk, they will throw away the key. Throw away the key.

Joe says, "Yeah."

Like he's agreeing with me.

And I say, "Not only that, but, I mean, y'know the fact tha-, that he was so drunk, this was his second



Drunk Driving Vocabulary Lesson

or third drunk driving offense and he actually injured people. He's lucky he didn't kill someone."

So I'm saying, yeah. I'm surprised they didn't make him go to jail for a long time because he was so drunk. This was his second or third time getting in trouble for drinking and driving. And he hurt people. He injured people. He's lucky he didn't kill someone.

Joe says, "Yeah, I mean you don't want that on your conscience."

Or he's saying you don't want that on your mind.

And I say, "No!"

Like agreeing with him. Yeah, no, you don't want that on your mind. Or to be there on your mind for a long time, on your conscience.

Joe says, "My gosh. Well Melissa, um, I think that, uh, uh, Jeff told me that, uh, or John said that Jeff told him that, uh... She spoke with a lawyer. And, uh, y'know unlike last time, um, last time she was hoping her lawyer was gonna get her off. And it, it didn't happen because her blood alcohol level was too high. But there's no way she's gettin' off this time. I mean..."

Okay so he's saying, my gosh. Like, my god. Wow. Showing emotion. Melissa... Jeff was telling Joe... Or, he corrects himself. John said that Jeff had told him that Melissa talked... She spoke... She talked with a lawyer. A lawyer here is just someone you pay money to and they will help you get out of trouble. So Melissa talked with a lawyer and Joe was saying, unlike last time... So last time... She was hoping her lawyer was gonna get her off. Gonna is slang for going to. So the last time she was hoping her lawyer was going to get her off. Get her off is an idiom meaning get her out of trouble. Get her out of trouble with the police. Get her off. An example of this would be: Jane got a good lawyer because she was caught stealing. She hopes he can get her off. Get her off. But it didn't happen with the lawyer because her blood alcohol level was too high. So in other words, she had too much alcohol in her blood. And he goes on to say, but there's no way she's getting' off this time. I mean... He's saying yeah. She's just done too many things wrong this time. Too many bad things. She was driving without her license and now this is like the second or third time she's been caught drinking and driving. So there's no way she's gettin' off. Gettin' is short for getting. You won't see this in written English but you'll hear it in conversations.

So then I say, "No."

Agreeing, yeah, no way. She's not getting off.

And Joe says, "she wrecked a car. And the cops came while she was still at the car. So..."

Drunk Driving Vocabulary Lesson

He's saying, so she had an accident. She wrecked her car. She drove into the telephone pole and the cops, or the police, they came while she was still at the car.

And I say, "Oh!" And he says, "they could obviously see..."

Or they could definitely see.

"y'know... They gave her a breathalyzer, but, uh..."

So a breathalyzer is something the police will do if they think you've been drinking when you're driving. You have to breathe into this plastic piece to see how much alcohol is in your blood.

And then I say, "They're gonna throw the book at her."

Gonna, again being slang for going. They're going to throw the book at her. Throw the book. That's an idiom meaning to make someone go to jail for a long time. Throw the book. It's the same as throw away the key. An example of that would be: If you hurt someone when driving drunk, they will throw the book at you. Throw the book.

Then Joe goes on to say, "Oh yeah, she's, she's gonna... I mean she's got, she's looking at three to six months. She's definitely, uh, gonna get put away for three to six months. Yeah, because that's the law, here. So..."

So he's saying, she's looking at three to six months. In other words, she's probably going to have to go to jail for three to six months. She's definitely going to get put away. Get put away means to get put in jail. So she's going to get put in jail for three to six months. Get put away. An example of that is: The man who tried to rob a bank got put away for two years. Get put away.

And then I say, "Right. If not longer."

So I'm saying, yeah. She's gonna get probably put away for three to six months if not even longer than three to six months.

And Joe says, "Well, I, I don't know how it works. I mean, I guess sometimes they let you take these alcohol diversion classes and, uh..."

Alcohol diversion classes are just classes that you can take if you get in trouble for drinking and driving. You can take these classes and it will... Sometimes they make you, or I shouldn't say make you. Sometimes you don't have to go to jail then. Or it can make the time you go to jail less. I'm not sure exactly how it works but, yeah. Those are alcohol diversion classes.



Drunk Driving Vocabulary Lesson

And then I say, “Oh, to lessen the time.”

In other words, if you go to jail, it will make your time less, like I was just saying.

And Joe says, “Yeah.”

* * * * *

So, this concludes the vocabulary lesson for the conversation “Drunk Driving.” Alright, as always, listen to this a few times in a relaxed way. And of course, only if you need to. Basically you want to have a good understanding of the vocabulary. And then when you’re ready, go to the mini-story.

Until next time. See you later.

Teaching / Teacher 1 Conversation

AJ: Hello.

whatcha doin'?: what are you doing?

Kristin: Hey, AJ, **whatcha doin'?**

AJ: Hey. Oh, not much, just, um, workin' on a blog post actually. I'm gonna write like a little blog article about our teaching method.

Kristin: What are you writing, exactly?

to cover: to discuss

hypothesis: theory

AJ: Um, I just kind of wanna... I don't know. I want **to cover** a few things. I think the, the main idea is to get a-, across the... Y'know, like, Stephen Krashen's, um, y'know, input **hypothesis**. His, y'know, all his research about, uh, y'know, the fact that, y'know, that people learn languages best through input. Y'know, meaning lots and lots of listening... Lots and lots of reading... Uh, much more effectively than trying to make them practice speaking or practice writing.

Kristin: Right.

the foundation of: the basis for, the core, the root

assumption: a belief without support or evidence

AJ: Y'know, and that's, that's kind of the biggest, I think, the biggest, uh, principle. It's sort of the, the, **the foundation of**, of, y'know, our, our teaching method, is that research. Um, because, y'know, most, most schools have the opposite idea. And most books really, even though they don't necessarily state it, y'know, they... I think most of them have this **assumption** that, uh, y'know, that practicing speech and practicing writing and then correcting errors... that's supposed to be the best way, y'know, to teach or learn. That's what most students think. That's what most teachers think. And of course it's completely wrong. The research shows that it's totally wrong.

AUA: American University Alumni (School in Bangkok)

hardcore: very strict, very serious (about something)

Kristin: Right. Yeah, it was really great learning about learning, th-, y'know, this technique in general, or methodology I guess I should say, during our masters program. And then not only learning about it but getting to experience it when we were living in Bangkok and going to **AUA**. Y'know, their whole listen first approach...

AJ: Yeah right, which, y'know, and of course, y'know the, uh, uh, Dr. Brown, uh, started that program because of Krashen's research. And, uh, it was really interesting, y'know. I, I agree just, y'know... That idea of just listening for a whole year [laugh] without real, attempting to speak at all... And they're really **hardcore**, y'know, they're...

Teaching / Teacher 1 Conversation

Kristin: [laugh] yeah...

AJ: ...they're like, y'know, no speaking [laugh] for one year.

Kristin: Yep.

TPRS: *Teaching Proficiency through Reading and Storytelling*

all over the place:
unorganized, almost random

piecing together: *putting together; creating*

to click with: *to fit with, to be appropriate for*

scattershot:
unorganized, almost random

throw together: *put together in a random way, create in a random way*

AJ: Um, y'know, like other people like, uh, y'know, like the **TPRS**, the TPR storytelling. Y'know, they're not so tough about, y'know, no speaking. But they still emphasize listening and, and, and input, of course.

Kristin: Um-hm. Yeah, you know in all honesty, when I had been, been teaching before starting the masters program, I just felt like my methods were **all over the place**. So it was, I don't know, it was like, um, it was like a breath of fresh air to, to start the masters and be able to start **piecing together** methodologies and techniques that really seem **to click with** me. And, I thought, it, it would just, it just made sense, just...

AJ: Oh yeah, I was the same before, before, uh, y'know, learning about this research. Before doing the masters program, y'know, my methods were totally like **scattershot**. I would just "Oh, pick something from this book, pick something from this book. Oh the school says to use this textbook. Okay." Y'know, but, but not really with any research or any reason... Just, it's just, and that's what most teachers do, I think, most...

Kristin: Right.

AJ: ...schools, most textbooks, they just **throw together** a bunch of stuff...

Kristin: Yeah.

AJ: ...and, "this looks good," y'know. But there, there's no... they don't know if, any research, whether it actually works or not...

Kristin: Um-hm.

AJ: ...and I know I'm embarrassed. I think back about my classes in the past and I realize, man, the students didn't learn very much, y'know. I, I was giving 'em all that grammar and the grammar rules and the vocabulary list. Just all the typical stuff... And, oh, I feel terrible because now I realize they, they didn't learn very much. And I knew at the time even, I knew then that. Wow, this just isn't working very well.

Teaching / Teacher 1 Conversation

They're learning so slowly.

Kristin: Yep. I know, I, I totally agree. And that's why, too, um, y'know, Joe and I now doing our lessons, why we're taking a listen approach, fir-, listen first approach, um, by, by these conversations.

AJ: Yeah, yeah. And then using, y'know, using the, the listen and answer storytelling method which is so powerful. I mean when I started using that, and, and some of the other methods, y'know that, that we use that go with, go along with this research... I mean just to see the results with so many of the students and how much faster they learn. How much more fun they have. How their speaking...

Kristin: Um-hm.

AJ: ...improves. It was like, wow. It was just amazing. It was so motivating for me as a teacher. I'm sure for you, too.

Kristin: Yes.

AJ: Because it's like, oh my god, something, it, uh, actually works.

Kristin: Yep.

AJ: This is great.

a no-brainer: an obvious truth, an obvious idea

crap: shit, something worthless or bad

Kristin: Yeah, and obviously it's kind of a **no-brainer** to continue on that path.

AJ: Yeah, yeah, yeah. Exactly. It makes me wonder, too, why, yeah, other teachers in schools just keep doing the same **crap** [laugh], y'know.

Kristin: I know.

AJ: Ever-, at every school I've ever taught at, every one I've ever seen, every textbook I've ever looked at... same crap.

Kristin: Yep.

AJ: It's just amazing. It's kind of sad actually. But, hey, we got something better so that's good.



Teaching / Teacher 1 Conversation

I gotta get going: I have to leave, I need to go

what you were up to:
what you were doing

Kristin: Right. Well, hey, um, **I gotta get going** here. I just wanted to call and see **what you were up to.**

AJ: Sure.

Kristin: You want me to give you a call back in just a few minutes, or....

AJ: Yeah, yeah, sure go ahead, yeah I've got time...

Kristin: Okay.

AJ: ...I'm free...

Kristin: Alright...bye.

AJ: ...talk to you soon...bye.

Kristin: ...okay, bye.



Teaching / Teacher 1 Conversation

Hello. Welcome to the mini-story for “Teaching 1.” This is AJ Hoge again, Director of the Effortless English Club.

Let's get started.

* * * * *

Jimmy the fish had a problem. He stank. He smelled really bad.

Stank means smelled bad, it's past tense. So stink is present and stank is past. So Jimmy the fish stank.

Who stank?

Jimmy. Jimmy the fish stank.

Did Jimmy the fish smell good?

No, poor Jimmy. Jimmy the fish didn't smell good. Jimmy the fish stank.

Why did Jimmy the fish stink?

Well, because Jimmy was a fish, of course. All fish stink. So, of course, Jimmy the fish stank.

Did Jimmy have a problem?

Yes, he had a problem, he stank.

Who had a problem?

Jimmy.

What was Jimmy?

Fish, Jimmy was a fish.

What did he do?

Well, Jimmy stank. Jimmy the fish stank.

Did he smell good or did he smell bad?



Teaching / Teacher 1 Conversation

Well, Jimmy the fish smelled bad.

How bad did Jimmy smell?

Oh, he smelled terrible. He stank.

None of the women fish liked him.

Why didn't the women fish like Jimmy?

Well, because he stank. The women fish didn't like Jimmy because he stank. He stank a lot.

Did Jimmy stink more than other fish? Or did Jimmy stink less than other fish.

More, Jimmy stank much more than other fish.

It was a problem. So Jimmy tried everything to solve the problem.

Did Jimmy try to solve the problem?

Of course he did. Jimmy tried to solve this problem. He tried many things. He tried everything to solve this problem.

He took a bath 18 times a day.

What did he take 18 times a day?

A bath, he took a bath 18 times a day.

Who took a bath 18 times a day?

Jimmy.

Jimmy the what?

Jimmy the fish. Jimmy the fish took a bath 18 times a day.



Teaching / Teacher 1 Conversation

Why did Jimmy take a bath 18 times a day?

Because he stank. Because he stank he took a bath 18 times a day.

He also brushed his teeth 50 times a day.

Did he brush his teeth 20 times a day?

No.

Did he brush his teeth 30 times a day?

No, no, no.

How many times did he brush his teeth?

Fifty, he brushed his teeth 50 times a day.

Who, who brushed his teeth 50 times a day?

Jimmy, Jimmy the fish brushed his teeth 50 times a day.

In fact he was hardcore about cleanliness.

Was he super, super serious about cleanliness?

Oh yeah. He was hardcore about cleanliness.

Was he super, super strict about cleanliness?

Oh yeah. Jimmy the fish was hardcore about cleanliness.

Who was hardcore about cleanliness?

Jimmy, Jimmy the fish.

Why was Jimmy hardcore about cleanliness?



Teaching / Teacher 1 Conversation

Because he stank and he didn't want to stink.

Was he hardcore about eating healthy?

No, no, he wasn't hardcore about health.

What was he hardcore about?

Cleanliness, he was hardcore about cleanliness.

What was he about cleanliness?

Hardcore, he was hardcore about cleanliness. Jimmy the fish was hardcore about cleanliness but he still stank. Even though he was hardcore about cleanliness he still stank. Oh no, poor Jimmy, poor Jimmy.

So Jimmy went to a doctor in Crawford, Texas for help.

Where did Jimmy go?

He went to Crawford, Texas.

Why did Jimmy go to Crawford, Texas?

He went to Crawford, Texas to see a doctor.

Why did he go to see a doctor?

For help, for help with his problem.

Jimmy said, “Doctor, I’ve tried everything. I’ve pieced together a hardcore cleanliness plan. I bathe 18 times a day and I brush my teeth 50 times a day.”

What did Jimmy piece together?

Well, he pieced together a cleanliness plan.

Did he put together a cleanliness plan?



Teaching / Teacher 1 Conversation

Yes, yes, *he did. He pieced together a cleanliness plan.*

Did he create a cleanliness plan?

Yes, *he did. He pieced together a cleanliness plan.*

Who pieced together a cleanliness plan? The doctor?

No, no, no, Jimmy the fish. Jimmy the fish pieced together a cleanliness plan.

He pieced together what?

A cleanliness plan, he pieced together a cleanliness plan. A hardcore cleanliness plan.

The doctor said, “I know the answer. It’s a no-brainer. Just rub olive oil on your skin every day. Then you will smell better.”

So the doctor said, “I know the answer. It’s a no-brainer.” Was the answer obvious to the doctor?

Yes, it was a no-brainer. It was very obvious.

Was the answer clear to the doctor?

Oh yes, it was a no-brainer. It was very clear.

Who was it a no-brainer for?

For the doctor, the answer was a no-brainer for the doctor. The answer was obvious for the doctor or to the doctor. He said, “I know the answer. It’s a no-brainer.” It’s an obvious answer. It’s a clear answer. A clear solution, just rub olive oil on your skin every day. Then you will smell better.

Well, Jimmy did exactly what the doctor said. Every day he rubbed olive oil on his body. But he still stank.

Did Jimmy smell better?

No, no, no. He didn’t smell better. He still stank.



Teaching / Teacher 1 Conversation

Who still stank?

Jimmy the fish, Jimmy the fish still stank.

Did the olive oil help Jimmy?

No, the olive oil didn't help Jimmy. He still stank.

So next Jimmy went to a doctor in San Francisco. Jimmy said, “Doctor, I've tried everything, but nothing seems to click. Nothing works.”

Do any solutions click for Jimmy?

No, no solutions click for Jimmy.

Do any solutions fit Jimmy?

No, no, they don't click. None of these solutions click for Jimmy or click with Jimmy. None of them work. None of them fit. None of the solutions click for Jimmy. Nothing seems to click, he says.

What didn't click for Jimmy?

Well, the solutions, past solutions just didn't click for Jimmy.

Well, the San Francisco doctor says, “Your past solutions were all over the place. Your actions were scattershot. You need a better plan.”

Were Jimmy's past solutions all over the place or were they organized?

They were all over the place. They were not organized. His past solutions were all over the place.

Whose past solutions were all over the place?

Jimmy's, Jimmy the fish's past solutions were all over the place. They were unorganized.

Were his past solutions good, organized or were his past solutions all over the place?



Teaching / Teacher 1 Conversation

They were all over the place. They were unorganized. And the doctor said, "Your actions were scattershot. You need a better plan."

Were his actions organized?

No, they weren't. They were scattershot. They were also all over the place. Remember scattershot and all over the place, very similar. Okay, so his past actions were scattershot.

What was scattershot?

His past actions, his past actions were scattershot, unorganized.

Whose past actions were scattershot?

Jimmy the fish's, Jimmy the fish's past actions were scattershot, not organized. Oh no. The doctor said, "You need a better plan."

Then the doctor said, "You must eat 600 green vegetables every day. Do that and you will smell great. It will be like a breath of fresh air for you. And for everyone else."

What would be like a breath of fresh air?

Well, this solution. This solution would be like a breath of fresh air. This solution would refresh Jimmy. This solution would refresh all his friends. This solution would refresh everyone he knew. This solution would be like a breath of fresh air.

What solution would be like a breath of fresh air?

Well, this solution of eating 600 green vegetables. Eating 600 green vegetables would be like a breath of fresh air for Jimmy.

How many green vegetables?

Six hundred, 600 green vegetables. The doctor said you must eat 600 green vegetables every day, then you will smell great and that will be like a breath of fresh air. That will change your life. That will refresh you. It will refresh your life.



Teaching / Teacher 1 Conversation

Well, Jimmy was excited. He followed the San Francisco doctor's advice. He ate 600 green vegetables a day and it worked. After four days, Jimmy was much better. He smelled good. And all the women fish loved him.

Did Jimmy follow the San Francisco doctor's advice?

Yes, he did. He followed the San Francisco doctor's advice. He did what the doctor told him to do.

Whose advice did Jimmy follow?

Well Jimmy the fish followed the San Francisco doctor's advice.

What did Jimmy do?

He followed the San Francisco doctor's advice.

So what exactly did he do?

He ate 600 green vegetables a day.

Did he eat 570 green vegetables every day?

No, obviously not.

How many did he eat every day?

Six hundred, he ate 600 green vegetables every day.

What kind of vegetables did he eat every day? Red vegetables?

No, no, no. Green, he ate green vegetables every day.

Who followed the doctor's advice?

Jimmy the fish.

Who ate 600 green vegetables a day?

Jimmy the fish. After four days, Jimmy was much better.



Teaching / Teacher 1 Conversation

After how long? After three days, Jimmy was better?

No, no, no, no, no.

After how long?

Four days, after four days, Jimmy was much better. He smelled good. And all the women fish loved him.

* * * * *

Okay, that is the end of the mini-story for “Teaching 1.” Please listen to this every day for seven days. Every day for one week. This is very, very important. You need to learn deeply. If it’s difficult, you can listen for ten days, you can listen for fourteen days every day. If it’s easy, still listen for seven days. You need it to go deeply into your brain. Please learn deeply.

Okay, I will see you next time. This is AJ Hoge. Goodbye.



Teaching / Teacher 1 POV Lesson

Hello, this is AJ. Welcome to the point of view lesson for “Teacher 1”. Let’s begin. This is happening now.

* * * * *

Jimmy the fish has a problem. He stinks. He smells really bad. None of the women fish like him.

So Jimmy tries everything to solve the problem. He takes a bath 18 times a day. He brushes his teeth 50 times a day. In fact he is hardcore about cleanliness. But it doesn’t work.

So Jimmy goes to a doctor in Crawford, Texas for help. Jimmy says, “Doctor, I’ve tried everything. I’ve pieced together a hardcore cleanliness plan. I bathe 18 times a day and I brush my teeth 50 times a day.”

The doctor says, “I know the answer. It’s a no-brainer. Just rub olive oil on your skin every day. Then you will smell better.”

Well, Jimmy does exactly what the doctor says. Every day he rubs olive oil on his body. But he still stinks.

So next Jimmy goes to a doctor in San Francisco. Jimmy says, “Doctor, I’ve tried everything, but nothing seems to work. Nothing works.”

Well, the San Francisco doctor says, “Your past solutions were all over the place. Your actions were scattershot. You need a better plan.”

Then the doctor says, “You must eat 600 green vegetables every day. Do that and you will smell great. It will be like a breath of fresh air for you. And for everyone else.”

Well, Jimmy is excited. He follows the San Francisco doctor’s advice. He eats 600 green vegetables a day and it works. After four days, Jimmy is much better. He smells good. And all the women fish love him.

* * * * *

Okay, in our next version of the story we go to the future, so next year.

* * * * *

Next year there will be a fish named Jimmy and he’s gonna have a problem. He’ll stink. He’ll smell really bad. And none of the women fish are gonna like him.



Teaching / Teacher 1 POV Lesson

Jimmy's gonna try everything to solve the problem. He'll take a bath 18 times a day. He'll brush his teeth 50 times a day. In fact he'll be hardcore about cleanliness. But it won't work.

So he's gonna go to a doctor in Crawford, Texas for help. Jimmy's gonna say, "Doctor, I have tried everything. I've pieced together a hardcore cleanliness plan. I bathe 18 times a day and I brush my teeth 50 times a day."

The doctor's gonna say, "I know the answer. It's a no-brainer. Just rub olive oil on your skin every day. Then you will smell better."

Well, Jimmy'll do exactly what the doctor says. Every day he's gonna rub olive oil on his body. But he's still gonna stink.

So next Jimmy's gonna go to a doctor in San Francisco. He'll say, "Doctor, I've tried everything, but nothing seems to work. Nothing works. Nothing seems to click."

Well, the San Francisco doctor's gonna say, "Your past solutions were all over the place. Your actions were scattershot. You need a better plan."

Then the doctor's gonna say, "You must eat 600 green vegetables every day. Do that and you will smell great. It will be like a breath of fresh air for you. And for everyone else."

Well, Jimmy's gonna be excited. He'll follow the San Francisco doctor's advice. He'll eat 600 green vegetables a day and it's gonna work. After four days, Jimmy's gonna be much better. He'll smell good. And all the women fish are gonna love him.

* * * * *

Alright, and finally our last version.

* * * * *

Since he was a baby Jimmy has had a problem. Jimmy the fish has stunk. He has smelled really bad. None of the women fish have liked him. Since he was a baby until now.

And during this time he has tried everything to solve the problem. He has taken baths 18 times a day. He has brushed his teeth 50 times a day, every day since he was a baby, a baby fish. In fact he has been hardcore about cleanliness since he was a baby. But nothing has worked.



Teaching / Teacher 1 POV Lesson

Well, finally one day Jimmy went to a doctor in Crawford, Texas for help. Jimmy said, "Doctor, I've tried everything. I've pieced together a hardcore cleanliness plan. I have bathed 18 times a day. I have brushed my teeth 50 times a day."

The doctor said, "I know the answer. It's a no-brainer. Just rub olive oil on your skin every day. Then you will smell better."

Well, Jimmy did exactly what the doctor said. Every day he rubbed olive oil on his body. But he still stank.

So next Jimmy went to a doctor in San Francisco. Jimmy said, "Doctor, I've tried everything, but nothing seems to work. Nothing works."

Well, the San Francisco doctor said, "Your past solutions were all over the place. Your actions were scattershot. You need a better plan."

Then the doctor said, "You must eat 600 green vegetables every day. Do that and you will smell great. It will be like a breath of fresh air for you. And for everyone else."

Well, Jimmy was excited. He followed the San Francisco doctor's advice. He ate 600 green vegetables a day and it worked. After four days, Jimmy was much better. He smelled good. And all the women fish loved him.

* * * * *

And that is the end of our point of view stories for "Teacher 1". See ya next time.



Teaching / Teacher 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Hello, this is AJ Hoge. I am the director of Effortless English and I am doing this week's lesson. This conversation was a conversation between Kristin and I about language teaching. We talked about some of our language teaching experiences in the past and, and also now and some of our ideas about language teaching and language learning.

So let's get started on the vocabulary lesson. Here we go.

* * * * *

At the beginning I say, "Hello?" And Kristin says, "Hey, AJ, whatcha doin'?"

Whatcha doin' means, what are you doing? What are you doing? But in normal speech, fast speech, we often say whatcha doin'?. Whatcha doin' just means, what are you doing?

And I say, "Oh, not much..."

Right, I'm not doing much or you could say nothing. Or nothing much. Or if you're busy you could say well, actually I'm very busy. So it's a common greeting. Whatcha doin'? What are you doing?

Alright, and I say, "Oh, not much, I'm just workin' on a blog post."

Of course a blog is a personal website. I was writing an article for my personal website. And I was writing an article about our teaching method, about the Effortless English system. I write a lot of articles about that.

Okay and then Kristin says, "What are you writing, exactly?"

So she's curious. She wants to know.

And I say, "Um, I just kind of wanna... I don't know. I wanna cover a few things."

Of course um, um um um, no meaning at all, it's a filler. We say um when we're thinking about something usually. And wanna means want to. I just kind of want to. Or I kind of wanna. I want to cover a few things. Here, to cover means to talk about or to discuss. So I want to discuss a few things. I want to mention a few things. I want to cover a few things. So it kind of means talk about or discuss, something like that.

And I say, "The main idea to get across..."

Here, to get across, to get something across... In this situation it means to communicate. Like I say, "I want to get my idea across. Or I want to get across my idea." That means I want to communicate my idea. So, to get across sometimes means to communicate.



Teaching / Teacher 1 Vocabulary Lesson

So I want to get across, I want to communicate “information about Stephen Krashen’s input hypothesis.”

Stephen Krashen is a very famous expert in language teaching, language learning research. Dr. Stephen Krashen. He's probably the top expert, the number one expert in the world on the topic of language learning and language teaching. So I want to talk about his input hypothesis. Input means coming in, information coming in, for example, listening and reading. Listening and reading are input, right. The English is coming in. Speaking and writing are output, right. The English is going out of you. And hypothesis is a theory, theory or an idea, a scientific idea, scientific theory. So he has an input hypothesis, an input theory. And it means his theory is that language is best learned from input, lots of input. Lots of listening, listening, listening. Lots of reading, reading, reading. You do not learn languages from output. You don't learn a language by speaking it and you don't learn a language by writing it. You learn from listening and reading. That's his theory, his hypothesis. There's a lot of research about it. It's actually much stronger than a hypothesis now, probably more of a principle or a rule. So anyway, that's the idea I wanted to talk about in my article. I was telling Kristin about this.

And Kristin says, “Right, right.” And then I say, “Y’know, that’s the, the biggest principle.”

The biggest principle is input. Input, input, input. Listening and reading are the most important activities. That's the foundation of our teaching method. It's the foundation of the Effortless English system. The foundation means the central idea or the most important point or the core, right. It's what's at the bottom. The foundation is something that's at the bottom, the bottom. And then you build on top of a foundation. So at the bottom of our teaching method is the input idea, right. That's the most basic idea, that input is important. And then we have more techniques and more methods, but that's the basic one. The most important one.

Okay, and then I continue talking and I say, “I think most schools, most teachers of English have an assumption. Their assumption is that speech and writing and error correction are effective ways to teach. That's an assumption.”

An assumption is a belief. It's a belief with no evidence. It's a belief with no experience. So, you believe something but you have no reason to believe it. That's an assumption. So it's kind of like an unsupported belief. A belief with no support. A belief with no reason or evidence. So most schools have this assumption, this belief that you must correct students' errors and you must make them speak, speak, speak, speak a lot. And you must make them write, write, write. And you must make them study grammar, study grammar. These are assumptions. There's no support for these. These in fact are wrong beliefs.

Okay and then Kristin, she talks about our teaching experience in the past. She says, “Yeah, it was a



Teaching / Teacher 1 Vocabulary Lesson

great learning experience when we were getting our Masters degree. When we were learning and living in Bangkok, Thailand and going to AUA and learning with their listen first approach.”

So Kristin and I lived in Bangkok, Thailand and we were doing research there. We were studying there getting Master's degrees there and teaching English, part of our research. And we did research at a school called AUA. So AUA is the name of a language school in Bangkok, Thailand. They teach the Thai language. And AUA uses a listen first method. It means the students only listen to Thai for one year actually, one year. They only listen. They don't speak Thai at all. They don't... No speaking, they have a very tough rule, strict rule. No speaking Thai for one year. It's a listen only approach in fact.

And then I say, “Yeah y'know, of course, Dr. Brown started that program because of Krashen's research.”

Dr. J. Marvin Brown, J. Marvin Brown was his name. He started the famous AUA program because of Dr. Krashen's research.

And I say, “Y'know they don't let you speak at all. The idea of just listening for a whole year without attempting to speak at all. No speaking for one year.” And I say, “They're really hardcore. AUA is really hardcore.”

Hardcore means super strict. Super tough about an idea or super tough about a rule. For example: There is this idea, listen first. It's an idea. You should first listen a lot to English or to a language. Well AUA is hardcore about listen first. They say listen only. They are very, very tough about this idea. No speaking, never speaking for one entire year. That's hardcore. It's very, very tough about this rule.

Okay then, then Kristin says, “Yep.”

Yep means yes or yeah.

And then the next paragraph I talk about another method called TPRS or TPR storytelling.

This is another interesting teaching method using stories to teach language. We use a lot of this method in our mini-stories, for example. Our mini-stories use the TPRS technique.

And in the next paragraph Kristin talks, she says, “Yeah, you know in all honesty...”

Means truthfully.

“when I had been teaching before the masters degree program, I felt like my methods were all over the place.”



Teaching / Teacher 1 Vocabulary Lesson

Kristin is talking about her past. That when she first started teaching English, her methods were all over the place in the beginning. All over the place means there was, there was no plan. It means lots of different kinds of things. She would teach some grammar, she would teach some textbooks, she would teach some speaking, some writing. Lots of different kinds of things, all very different. So she said, "My methods were all over the place." Means my methods were all very different and unorganized. Her methods were very different and unorganized. No plan, no structure. All over the place means no structure, had no structure.

She said, "But then when she learned these new methods during her masters degree program, it was like a breath of fresh air."

That's a great idiom. Like a breath of fresh air means refreshing. Refreshing, right, it means ahhh. It gives you energy. It gives you some new wonderful feeling. So for example, I say I was tired then I drank some water. It was like a breath of fresh air. Alright, it means the water was very refreshing. The water gave me energy. So if something is like a breath of fresh air if it makes you feel better, if it makes you feel refreshed.

Okay, then she says, "So the new methods were like a breath of fresh air."

The new methods gave her energy. The new methods made her feel good.

And then she said "I was able to start piecing together methodologies and techniques."

To piece together something means put together. So after her masters degree she understood. She knew how to teach. So then she could choose good methods. She could put good methods together. She used one technique and then another good technique, put them together in an organized plan for teaching. Piece them together. So piece together means put together.

She said, "The new techniques really seemed to click with me."

The techniques clicked with me. To click with me means to fit me. So to be appropriate for me, to fit me, to be good for me. Alright, so you can say ah, wow, you know, he really clicks with me, talking about another person. He clicks with me. It means we understand each other. We fit each other well. You can use it negatively. She doesn't click with me. Alright, it means she doesn't fit with me. Maybe we argue a lot. Maybe we don't understand each other, right. We don't fit each other. So to click with means to fit together well.

Okay, and then in the next paragraph I agree. I say, "Oh I was the same in the beginning."

A long time ago.



Teaching / Teacher 1 Vocabulary Lesson

“My methods were scattershot.”

Scattershot. Scattershot is similar to all over the place. They're very close. Scattershot means totally unorganized. Scattershot means without structure. Now my methods in the beginning also not organized, no structure.

Okay, and Kristin says, “Right.” And then I say, “Schools and most textbooks just throw together a bunch of stuff.”

Okay again, to throw together means to put together. Most textbooks put together a lot of different activities but they're not really organized. There's no reason. It's kind of random, right. They just put them together, some grammar, some listening, some reading, no real plan that's, that's very good.

Okay, and then we talk and Kristin says, “Yeah.” And I'm saying y'know, “These teachers, these schools they think this looks good. So they add it to their school or add it to their book. But there's no research.”

No research supports what they do. There's no research to show that it's effective. There's no research to show that it's successful. They're just doing it, but there's no research to support it.

And I say, “Now I'm embarrassed to think about the past.”

I think about my early teaching. My first year, my second year, was really bad because I was the same as these other teachers. I was the same as these other schools.

And Kristin says, “Yes, I agree. But now we're taking a listen first approach with these new lessons.” And she's happy about that. And I, and I agree again “Yeah, yeah...” Then using the listen and answer storytelling method is very powerful.”

Which it is, so I agree again. We're excited about our teaching method because it works. Because there's a lot of research to support it.

And then Kristin says, “Uh-huh, uh-huh.” And I said it was amazing, it was motivating for me to see my students improve.”

So using the new methods I was very excited, very motivated.

And Kristin says, “Yep, yep, that's great.” And she says, “And obviously it's kind of a no-brainer to continue on that path.”



Teaching / Teacher 1 Vocabulary Lesson

So she says it's a no-brainer to continue using the Effortless English methods. A no-brainer is something that is obvious, right. It means you don't need to think about it. You don't need to use your brain. It's so obvious, so simple, you don't need to think. So, it's a no-brainer to use this method means it's so simple and obvious why we should use this method. A no-brainer... Something that is very, very obvious.

Alright and then we're kind of continuing down a couple more paragraphs I say, "It's amazing." Kristin says, "Right, well I gotta get going. I just wanted to call and see what you were up to."

I gotta get going means I need to leave. Okay, I gotta get going means I must leave. And then she said I just wanted to call and see what you were up to. Okay, what you were up to means what you were doing. To be up to something means to do something. Alright so, to be up to means to do.

Okay, and then we say goodbye. "Goodbye." "Okay, goodbye."

* * * * *

And that is the end of the vocabulary lesson. See you for the mini-story.



Teaching / Teacher 2 Conversation

AJ: Hello.

to cut off: to interrupt

Kristin: Hey AJ, sorry I had **to cut off** that last call.

AJ: It's okay, no worries.

on the same page: in agreement, sharing the same ideas

Kristin: Yeah, y'know, I'm, I'm just really glad that we're **on the same page** when it comes to, um, our teaching techniques and ideas on...

AJ: Yeah.

Kristin: ...teaching.

AJ: Well, it's, it's really exciting actually, that, uh, that we're kind of doin' all this together. I think it's, it's really great.

Kristin: Oh, I agree. Yeah, it's very exciting.

AJ: I think it's exciting for the um, uh, too. I think it's just exciting that we're makin' all this great stuff for, uh, y'know for students. Because, y'know, as a, as a language learner myself, I'm very frustrated. I think that's one thing that has motivated me to be, uh, a better teacher... and improve and improve always as a teacher... and make the lessons really good... is because my own language learning, uh, y'know, efforts have been so frustrating.

Kristin: Mm-hm.

AJ: And I, I saw such a difference... Like, for example, Spanish... Y'know, uh, I learned Spanish in the traditional way in school. So, y'know, I'm just al-, I've always struggled with it.

Kristin: Mm-hm.

Tomoe: a (Japanese) name

intensive: concentrated, powerful

AJ: But then **Tomoe** just started learning Spanish. I mean she's just a low beginner. She had zero Spanish. I mean she's Japanese. They don't learn Spanish in Japan. But she took this four day **intensive**, uh, course using the story telling technique.

Kristin: Yeah, I remember.

AJ: Yeah, the same one we use.

Teaching / Teacher 2 Conversation

Kristin: Yeah.

frickin': fucking (more polite version of fucking); adds stronger emotion

AJ: And, um, I couldn't believe how much she learned in four **frickin'** days. It was amazing [laugh].

Kristin: [laugh]

AJ: And then we went down to Guatemala for two weeks and, uh, by the end of that two weeks she was speaking, I'd say, easier, more easily, flowing more, uh, than me. I mean I had a bigger vocabulary just 'cause I have so much more experience. But, uh, she was speaking with more ease. Y'know, I, I was const-, speaking slowly. I ca-, I was thinking all the time about grammar rules, still. I didn't want to. I know it's not good. But it's kind of like those things are stuck in my head.

Kristin: Right.

AJ: So it...

Kristin: Yeah.

AJ: ...was amazing to see her after four days classes and then two weeks in Guatemala and she's just start-, it's just startin' to come out. And I'm just like, oh my god! Wow...

Kristin: Oh, you never told me about...yeah, you never told me about this.

cool: great, wonderful

AJ: Yeah, yeah, it-, it's pretty **cool** [laugh].

Kristin: So she, she wouldn't be stressed at all, it would just kinda come automatically.

AJ: Right, exactly. And I think that's the main thing, too. It's just like emotionally it's so different to learn with, y'know, this effortless system. Because, uh, you just feel so much more relaxed and enjoy it more. Like, I was stressed [laugh].

Kristin: Mm-hm.

AJ: Because I learned this traditional way, y'know, and I've tried to take a different approach, but, um, uh... Y'know, by just listening.... But I have a lot of that old, uh,

Teaching / Teacher 2 Conversation

method to, to overcome, y'know, and...

Kristin: [laugh]

AJ: [laugh] It really is. Y'know, I remember... Who was it? Uh, it was David Long, I think, in, in Thailand. He used to talk about how, y'know, that, that traditional language teaching methods... They're not only ineffective. They actually damage you. Y'know, they create, they create damage that you have to then heal. And it takes time, to... If you've learned with traditional methods for a long time, it takes time to sort of undo that.

Kristin: Right.

AJ: You've got to go and use, use this kind of effortless system for a while so you can forget all that old **crap**.

crap: worthless stuff, shit

Kristin: Um-hm.

AJ: I can see that, y'know, certainly my Spanish, uh, improved some as I started to focus on just listening and tried to forget about the grammar rules. It definitely was better than in high school or college or university.

Kristin: Um-hm.

AJ: But, um... But still compared to Tomoe who has only used the effortless methods, it was, it's amazing, she, to see her. It was pretty cool [laugh].

Kristin: I'm sure you've seen as well in the classroom, I know I have, students themselves struggling with it. Because you were sayin' you've, you've, y'know, seen it with yourself, within yourself, but trying to overcome, uh, the old ways that we've been taught.

AJ: Oh yeah, the, the, y'know, most of the problems are psychological.

Kristin: Yeah.

AJ: Y'know, when, when, like... If the students in my classes, um... The biggest challenge for me... It's like, y'know... The, the method I know it works. And it's got all this research. I, no doubt about it... But the, the problem, the challenge is to get the students to accept it, to change their mentality and relax and just, y'know, really

Teaching / Teacher 2 Conversation

a leap of faith: a risky action, a brave action

believe me. Forget your grammar books. The students who, who would do that, who would just, just have a, kind of **a leap of faith**, y'know, and say "Okay, I'm gonna, I'm gonna believe AJ, I'm gonna try these methods," they would learn so fast. And the ones who struggled were the ones who just couldn't do it. Y'know, they, they were like "No, but I have to study grammar." And they, they would just keep...

Kristin: Forcing it.

AJ: ...they would come to my class but they would keep forcing it. They would keep using their grammar books. They'd keep trying to memorize vocabulary. And they would learn so slowly.

Kristin: Yeah.

AJ: And then they would be frustrated because they would be... They'd be asking me "Why am I learning slowly?" and compared to the other students, who were learning so much faster. And I would tell them every time, y'know, it's because you keep using these old methods, y'know. Forget it.

Kristin: Right.

AJ: But it's, it's a psycho-, it's psychology. I, I think, y'know, it's not just the method that people have to... to have a psychological change...

Kristin: Yeah.

AJ: ...to succeed with this method.

fitting: appropriate

Kristin: Well, it's very **fitting** that you've named your lessons effortless, Effortless English.

AJ: [laugh] It's hard to get that across because, uh, uh, people are taught that the-, that they always need to have effort and struggle...

Kristin: Yeah.

AJ: ...I get people to relax, that's the, that's the maybe the big challenge for us as teachers.

Kristin: Right. Well hey, I gotta, um, get ready to go to work. So tell Tomoe I said



Teaching / Teacher 2 Conversation

hello and I will talk to you later.

AJ: Okay, will do. And yeah, talk to you later.

Kristin: Okay, bye.

AJ: Bye.



Teaching / Teacher 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Hello. This is AJ Hoge and this is the mini-story for “Teacher 2.”

Let's get started.

* * * *

Katrina the kitty wanted a boyfriend. She was lonely.

Now of course a kitty is a cat. A small cat or a young cat. So Katrina the kitty wanted a boyfriend. She was lonely. Poor Katrina.

So she went to Panama City, Florida.

Who went to Panama City, Florida?

Katrina, Katrina went to Panama City, Florida.

Where did she go?

Panama City, she went to Panama City, Florida.

What was Katrina?

Katrina was a kitty, a cat.

What did she want?

She wanted a boyfriend. Katrina the kitty wanted a boyfriend.

Why did she go to Panama City, Florida?

Well, to get a boyfriend. She went to Panama City, Florida to get a boyfriend.

Was Katrina lonely?

Yes, poor Katrina was very lonely. She wanted a boyfriend. She went to Panama City, Florida.

In Panama City she met Tom.



Teaching / Teacher 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Where did she meet Tom?

In Panama City, Florida, she met Tom in Panama City.

Who met Tom in Panama City?

Katrina, Katrina met Tom in Panama City.

Who did she meet?

Tom, she met Tom.

What kind of cat was Tom? Well, he was a tough, macho, strong cat.

Was Tom a weak and wimpy kitty?

No, no, Tom wasn't a weak kitty. Tom was a tough, strong, macho cat.

Who was a tough, strong, macho cat?

Tom, Tom was a tough, strong, macho cat.

Was Katrina a tough, strong, macho cat?

No, no, no, no, no, not Katrina. Katrina is a girl. Katrina was not, not a tough, strong, macho cat.

Who was a tough, strong, macho cat?

Tom, Tom was a tough, strong, macho cat.

What kind of cat was Katrina? Well, she was romantic and sweet.

Was Katrina romantic and sweet?

Yes, yes, she was. Katrina was romantic and sweet.

And Tom?



Teaching / Teacher 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Well, Tom was tough and macho.

What was Katrina like?

Katrina was romantic and sweet.

What was Tom like?

Tom was tough and macho.

What was Tom like?

Tom was tough and macho.

What was Katrina like?

Katrina was romantic and sweet.

Were Katrina and Tom on the same page?

No, they were not on the same page. They did not agree. They did not have the same personality. They did not have the same ideas. They were very different.

So were Katrina and Tom on the same page?

No, no, no, they were not on the same page. They were totally different. Tom was a tough, macho cat. He loved to fight. Katrina was a sweet, romantic cat. She hated fighting.

Who loved fighting?

Tom, Tom loved fighting.

Did Katrina love fighting?

No, she didn't. She hated fighting.

So were Tom and Katrina on the same page or were they not on the same page?

Teaching / Teacher 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Well, they were not on the same page. They didn't agree about anything. They were totally different. They were not on the same page.

Who were not on the same page?

Tom and Katrina, Tom and Katrina were not on the same page.

Tom looked at Katrina and he said, "I'm the toughest frickin' cat in Florida. I don't take crap from no one."

Okay, Tom said, "I'm the toughest frickin' cat in Florida. Remember frickin' just adds emotion. It adds power. So here he's showing more emotion. He's super touch. So he's saying, "I'm the toughest frickin' cat in Florida." That means I'm the super tough cat in Florida... the super toughest.

Who was the toughest frickin' cat in Florida? Katrina?

No Katrina was sweet. Katrina wasn't the toughest frickin' cat in Florida.

Who was the toughest frickin' cat in Florida?

Tom, Tom was the toughest frickin' cat in Florida.

Was the toughest frickin' cat in Georgia?

No, no, no, Tom wasn't the toughest frickin' cat in Georgia. Tom was the toughest frickin' cat in Florida.

Was he the toughest frickin' dog in Florida?

No, not dog. He was the toughest frickin' cat in Florida. He wasn't the toughest frickin' dog in Florida. And he said, "I don't take crap from no one." Okay, don't take crap... that means I don't take negative actions, negative words from other people. Right, I don't take crap from no one. Kind of a slang phrase. It means I don't tolerate disrespect. That's what that phrase really means. I do not take disrespect. I don't tolerate disrespect. I don't accept disrespect from other people. I don't take crap from no one. It means I don't let other people challenge me. I don't let other people insult me. I don't let other people say bad things to me or do bad things to me. It has all of that meaning in that sentence. I don't take crap from anyone, no one, whatever.

Does Tom take crap from other cats?

No, he doesn't take crap from other cats.



Teaching / Teacher 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Does Tom accept insults from other cats?

No, no, no, he doesn't take crap from other cats. He will fight. He does not accept insults.

Does he accept criticism from other cats?

No, he doesn't take crap from other cats. He doesn't take crap from anyone. He doesn't take crap from no one.

Does he take crap from other people, from other cats?

No, he doesn't take crap from other cats.

So Tom said, "I'm the toughest frickin' cat in Florida, I don't take crap from no one."

And Katrina said, "Um, I'm sorry. I want a romantic, sweet, nice cat that I can marry."

So did Katrina want Tom?

No, Tom wasn't romantic. Tom was tough. Tom liked to fight.

Were they on the same page?

No, no, they didn't want the same things. Katrina wanted romance, Tom wanted fighting. They were not on the same page. Ah, poor Katrina.

So next Katrina went to Athens, Georgia to look for a boyfriend.

Where did she go?

Athens, Georgia.

Where is Athens, Georgia?

It's in America. It's in the United States.

She went to Athens, Georgia why? Why did she go to Athens, Georgia?



Teaching / Teacher 2 Mini-Story Lesson

To look for a boyfriend, she went to Athens, Georgia to look for a boyfriend.

Who went to Athens, Georgia to look for a boyfriend?

Katrina.

Was Katrina a dog?

No, no, no, she was a kitty. She was a cat. So she went to Athens, Georgia to look for a boyfriend.

She met Mike the cat.

Who did she meet?

She met Mike.

Who met Mike?

Katrina, Katrina met Mike the cat.

Mike was a singer.

Was Mike a fighter?

No, no, no, Mike wasn't a fighter. Mike was a singer. He loved to sing.

Who loved to sing?

Mike, Mike the cat loved to sing.

Mike was sweet but he was wimpy.

Was Mike strong or was Mike weak and wimpy?

Mike was weak and wimpy.



Teaching / Teacher 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Was Mike brave or was he scared and wimpy?

Well, unfortunately Mike was scared and wimpy.

Who was wimpy?

Mike, Mike was wimpy.

Was Tom wimpy?

No, Tom was the opposite. Tom was strong and brave. He loved to fight.

Was Mike strong and brave?

No, no, no, the opposite. Mike was not strong and brave. Mike was weak and wimpy. Oh no.

Who was weak and wimpy?

Mike, Mike was weak and wimpy.

Did Katrina like wimpy cats? No, of course not. Katrina did not like wimpy cats.

Who did not like wimpy cats?

Katrina, Katrina didn't like wimpy cats.

Did Katrina like wimpy dogs?

Well, actually, yeah she did. She liked wimpy dogs. But she didn't like wimpy cats and she didn't like wimpy boyfriends.

So she didn't want Mike. So she was still lonely.

How was she?

She was still lonely. Poor Katrina.



Teaching / Teacher 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Katrina went home.

Where did Katrina go?

She went home.

And she got on the internet.

Did she get on the internet?

Yes, Katrina got on the internet.

Who got on the internet?

Katrina, Katrina got on the internet.

Why?

Of course, she got on the internet to look for a boyfriend.

She said, "Oh, I don't know about the internet, but I'm going to take a leap of faith."

Was she sure she could find a good boyfriend on the internet?

No, no, she was not sure she could find a good boyfriend on the internet. She was not sure. She took a leap of faith. She took a risky action. No guarantee of success.

What did she take?

She took a leap of faith.

What was her leap of faith?

Well, getting on the internet to find a boyfriend was her leap of faith. That action was her leap of faith. It was a risky action.

Who took a leap of faith?



Teaching / Teacher 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Katrina, Katrina the kitty took a leap of faith.

And why? Why did she take a leap of faith? Why did she get on the internet?

To find a good boyfriend, she took a leap of faith. She got on the internet, a risky action. To find a good boyfriend.

And on the internet, who did she meet? Well, she met Jerry.

Did she meet Tom on the internet?

No, no, no, not Tom.

Did she meet Mike on the internet?

No, no, no.

Who did she meet?

Jerry, she met Jerry on the internet. She met Jerry online.

Who did she meet online?

Jerry, she met Jerry online.

Who met Jerry online?

Katrina, Katrina the kitty met Jerry online. On the internet.

Was Jerry tough and macho? No, he wasn't tough and macho but he was strong.

Was Jerry weak or was Jerry strong?

Jerry was strong.

Was Jerry romantic? Oh yes, Jerry was very, very, very romantic.



Teaching / Teacher 2 Mini-Story Lesson

Was Jerry strong and romantic?

Yes, *he was*.

Who was strong and romantic?

Jerry, Jerry was strong and Jerry was romantic.

Did Katrina like strong and romantic kitties? Oh yes, exactly. Katrina loved strong and romantic cats. Purr-fect.

Did Katrina like Jerry?

Oh yes, she liked him a lot.

Did Jerry like Katrina?

Oh yes, he liked her, too.

In fact, they fell in love. Katrina finally found a great boyfriend. She was not alone. She was not lonely anymore. Yay!

What kind of cat was Jerry?

He was a strong and romantic cat.

What was he like?

Strong and romantic, Jerry was strong and romantic.

Were Jerry and Katrina on the same page?

Yes, yes, they were. They liked each other. They had the same ideas. They wanted the same things. Jerry and Katrina were on the same page.

And so they fell in love, they kissed, there were stars. The end.



Teaching / Teacher 2 Mini-Story Lesson

* * * * *

Okay, so I hope you enjoyed this. Please listen to this mini-story every day. Deep learning, deep learning, deep learning. I'll say it again. Deep learning. It's so important. Please take time. Go slowly. Listen to each lesson every day for seven days or more. At least seven days. Learn it deeply.

Okay I will see you next time. Have a great day, bye bye.



Teaching / Teacher 2 POV Lesson

Hello, this is AJ. Welcome to the point of view stories for “Teacher 2”. Let’s get started.

* * * * *

Katrina the kitty wants a boyfriend. She’s lonely. So she goes to Panama City, Florida. In Panama City she meets Tom. Tom is a tough, macho, strong cat. Katrina is a sweet and romantic cat.

Tom looks at Katrina and he says, “I’m the toughest frickin’ cat in Florida. I don’t take crap from no one.”

And Katrina says, “Um, I’m sorry. I want a romantic, sweet, nice cat that I can marry.”

So next Katrina goes to Athens, Georgia to look for a boyfriend. She meets Mike the cat. Mike is a singer. He’s sweet but he’s wimpy. Katrina doesn’t like wimpy cats.

So she goes home. And she gets on the internet. She says, “Oh, I don’t know about the internet, but I’m gonna take a leap of faith.”

And on the internet, she meets Jerry. He is strong and he is very, very romantic. And so they fall in love. Katrina finally gets a great boyfriend. She’s not alone. She’s not lonely anymore. They fall in love, they kiss, and there are stars in the air. The end.

* * * * *

Alright, next we go to the future.

* * * * *

In the future there will be a kitty. Her name will be Katrina and she’ll want a boyfriend. She’s gonna be lonely. So she’ll go to Panama City, Florida. In Panama City she’ll meet Tom. Tom is gonna be a tough, macho, strong cat. And Katrina, of course, she’s gonna be romantic and sweet.

Tom will look at Katrina and he’ll say, “I’m the toughest frickin’ cat in Florida. I don’t take crap from no one.”

And Katrina will say, “Um, I’m sorry. I want a romantic, sweet, nice cat that I can marry.”

So next Katrina’s gonna go to Athens, Georgia to look for a boyfriend. And she’ll meet Mike the cat. Mike is gonna be a singer. He’ll be sweet but he’s gonna be wimpy. And Katrina won’t like wimpy cats.



Teaching / Teacher 2 POV Lesson

So she's gonna go home. And she'll get on the internet. She'll say, "I don't know about the internet, but I'm gonna take a leap of faith."

And on the internet, who will she meet? Well, she'll meet Jerry. He'll be strong and he'll be very, very romantic. So they'll fall in love. Katrina will finally get a great boyfriend and she won't be alone. They'll kiss and there will be stars. The end.

* * * * *

Okay, and finally, starting with...

* * * * *

Since she was 15, Katrina has wanted a boyfriend. Since she was 15 she has felt lonely. She has been lonely since she was 15 years old. Katrina has wanted a boyfriend very much since she was 15 years old, from 15 until recently. Every day she has tried to get a boyfriend. But she has never found a boyfriend. During all this time she has always wanted both a strong and a romantic boyfriend. But she has never found a strong, romantic boyfriend.

Well, finally one day she went to Panama City and she met Tom. Tom was a tough, macho, strong cat. And Katrina was romantic and sweet.

Tom looked at Katrina and he said, "I'm the toughest frickin' cat in Florida. I don't take crap from no one."

And Katrina said, "I'm sorry. I want a romantic, sweet, nice cat that I can marry."

So she went to Athens, Georgia next to look for a boyfriend and she met Mike the cat. Mike was a singer. He was sweet but he was wimpy. Katrina did not like wimpy cats.

So she went home. And she got on the internet. She said, "I don't know about the internet, but I'm gonna take a leap of faith."

And on the internet, who did she meet? She met Jerry. He was strong and he was very, very romantic. They fell in love. Katrina finally found a great boyfriend. She was not alone. She kissed him and she saw stars when she kissed him. The end.

* * * * *



Teaching / Teacher 2 POV Lesson

And that is the end of the point of view stories for "Teacher 2". See ya next time. Bye bye.



Teaching / Teacher 2 Vocabulary Lesson

Hi. This is AJ Hoge and this is the vocabulary lesson for “Teacher 2.”

Let’s get started okay?

* * * *

In the beginning I talk to Kristin and Kristin says, “Hey AJ, sorry I had to cut off that last call.”

To cut off. To cut off means to suddenly finish something. Suddenly stop something. We use it with phone calls a lot. A lot of times with the phone. So maybe you’re talking on the phone and suddenly you’re busy, something happens and you have to hang up. You say, “Oh, I’m sorry I cut you off. Sorry I cut off the conversation.” To cut off also means to interrupt. So if we’re talking to each other, you’re talking to me, you’re talking, talking. Suddenly I interrupt you. I say, “Oh, wait a second...” And I say my opinion or I say an idea. I interrupt you. Then I might say, “I’m sorry to cut you off. I’m sorry to interrupt you.” I’m sorry to cut you off. So it has this idea of interruption. To interrupt.

Okay, I said, “It’s okay, no worries, no problem.” And then Kristin says, “Yeah, y’know, I’m just really glad that we’re on the same page when it comes to our teaching techniques and ideas.”

That’s a very, very common idiom, on the same page. To be on the same page. So we are on the same page. Usually we use it with we... we or they. Because you need two people to agree, right. So it means to agree. To agree, to have the same idea about something. To agree about something. So if I like the Democrats for politics in America and my friend also likes the Democrats, we say, “Oh, we are on the same page with politics.” Right, we’re on the same page. We agree. We have the same ideas. But if I am a Democrat and he’s a Republican, then we say, “We’re not on the same page.” We’re not on the same page with politics. We don’t agree with politics. We don’t have the same ideas. So Kristin and I are on the same page about our teaching ideas, our teaching technique. We agree. We have the same ideas.

Okay, and then we go down. I say, “Yeah.” And we talk a little bit more and then down let’s see, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 paragraphs. Down towards the bottom of the page, we would say... Kristin says, “Mm-hm, mm-hm.”

She’s agreeing.

And I say, “But then Tomoe just started learning Spanish. I mean she’s just a low beginner. She had zero Spanish.”

So it says, but then Tomoe... Tomoe is a name. Tomoe is my wife. She’s Japanese. It’s a Japanese name. Tomoe.

Teaching / Teacher 2 Vocabulary Lesson

And in that same paragraph you see the word intensive. “He took this four day intensive course.”

Intensive. Intensive comes from the word intense. It means very strong or very concentrated. So a lot in a short time. When we talk about learning, intensive learning, we mean you learn a lot in a short period of time. So she took an intensive Spanish course. So, a lot of Spanish in a short time, only four days. That’s an intensive Spanish course. Intensive.

Alright, let’s go to the next paragraph. I say, “I couldn’t believe how she learned... how much she learned in four frickin’ days.”

Frickin’. Frickin’ is kind of a slang word. Sometimes people say freakin’. But it can be pronounced free, freakin’. Or it can be pronounced frickin’. Frickin’. And it has no real meaning. It just shows stronger emotion. And actually it’s a polite way to say fucking or fuck. So instead of saying, “Fucking... that, y’know, fucking bastard, you might say that frickin’ bastard.” So frickin’ is less strong and more polite. Much more polite than saying fucking. But both words, all they do is... they just add emotion. They make the emotion stronger. They can be positive. They can be negative. It depends on the situation. But it makes it a little more positive or a little more negative when you use these words. Frickin’ or fucking is very, very strong. Frickin’ is kind of the polite nice way to say that.

Okay, and we go down several paragraphs and we see the word cool. Cool. “Yeah,” I say, “Yeah, it’s pretty cool.” And I laugh.

Pretty cool. Cool means great, wonderful. It can have a lot of different meanings in fact. But in this case it means great. It’s pretty great. It’s, it’s, it’s quite great. Quite wonderful. Okay, so that’s pretty easy.

And then we go a little lower and then we see the word crap again. We see the word crap.

If you’ll remember crap means, means shit. It’s a, it’s kind of a weaker word for shit. Instead of saying shit, we might say crap. It’s less strong. And when we use it as a noun like this, “You can forget all that old crap.” I said. “When you use the Effortless English system you can forget all that old crap.” Crap means bad stuff, bad things, negative things. In this situation crap means old methods, old bad methods. It means bad learning methods. So you can forget all those old learning methods. That’s what the phrase means. Crap. Kind of using it like a pronoun, it’s just saying crap is bad stuff. Anything you don’t like, it’s worthless, it’s bad. You might call it crap.

Alright, and then we go down and there’s a big paragraph, for AJ, for me. And in the middle of that paragraph we see the phrase “leap of faith.” I say, “Students just have a kind of leap of faith and say, ‘Okay, I’m gonna believe, I’m gonna believe in these methods.’”



Teaching / Teacher 2 Vocabulary Lesson

A leap of faith. That's a great phrase. It's very common. A leap of faith is an action that requires courage. An action that requires bravery. An action that requires faith. It means you do something. It's kind of like a risk. It's a big risk. You do something but you don't know. Will it succeed, will it fail? No guarantee, you don't know. But you do it anyway. You believe. I believe this will succeed. You don't know. It's risky, maybe dangerous. Not sure, but you do it anyway. So if you do something and it's risky you say, "It's a leap of faith." For example, in this, in this paragraph: You don't know, maybe, you don't know, will Effortless English work? Will it help me or will it not help me? Well, you think it will help you. You read about Effortless English. You think it will help you but really you don't know, right. You don't know until you do it. So you decide I will do it. I will use it. That decision is a leap of faith. The action to use Effortless English, it's a leap of faith. It's an action that requires courage. Okay, so a leap of faith. Very nice.

* * * * *

And that is the end of our vocabulary lesson for "Teacher 2."

Thank you very much and I'll see you next time. Again, this is AJ Hoge, Director of Effortless English.

Lookout Mountain Conversation

Kristin: I just wanted to give you a call and ask how your Chattanooga trip was.

more fun than a barrel of monkeys: a lot of fun

Susan: Oh, it was great. It was great. It was **more fun than a barrel of monkeys**.

Kristin: [laugh].

Susan: [laugh] You know, we took Ethan and be-, his being only eight, it was fun to watch him at different places and see him, y'know, enjoying the activities.

Kristin: Well, what all did you do?

Susan: Well, we decided to bypass the aquarium this time because he had just been to the Atlanta aquarium.

Kristin: Uh-huh.

drew straws: a way to decide something

Susan: So we kind of, uh, picked and chose and **drew straws** and decided that we would go, first of all, to Rock City. He loved that. And I'll send you some pictures of that.

Kristin: Okay.

Susan: And, now there was one place in Rock City that I didn't particularly enjoy.

Kristin: What was that?

Susan: It's called Fat Man's Squeeze.

Kristin: Yeah.

slid right through: to go through easily

Susan: And when I was there when I was ten years old, I thought that was a silly name because I **slid right through**.

Kristin: [laugh]

Susan: Now at age 64 and a few pounds heavier, I think somebody moved the mountain...

Kristin: [laugh]

Lookout Mountain Conversation

Susan: ...and made the hole thinner. Anyway, then Dad and Ethan went on the incline railway, straight up...Lookout Mountain...

Kristin: Oh, did he like that?

Susan: ...overlooking Chattanooga. Y'know, he didn't like it as well as Rock City.

Kristin: Huh.

Susan: He didn't seem nearly as enthused about it, but Dad enjoyed it. Um, then, what did we do? We went somewhere else. We ate at Ryan's.

Kristin: Mm-hm. He likes Ryan's doesn't he?

Susan: That was...oh yes. Loves it. And, he picked it. Because that, uh, Irish place, Dirty Nellie's, was closed. They said it **got busted** several years ago for **selling to minors** or something. So, anyway, then we went to the motel, seems like we did something else.

Kristin: Did you go to any museums?

Susan: Um, no...oh, we went to a sculpture garden overlooking the river. That was fun. And Ethan really enjoyed that. Beautiful views and, oh, I almost forgot. What I thought was the most fun thing... We went on a noon cruise down the river, and...

Kristin: Oh.

Susan: ...beautiful views and a good captain narrating, telling us what different things were and that was really fun.

Kristin: Yeah, I bet.

Susan: And, yeah. Then we went back to the motel that night and swam.

Kristin: Uh-huh.

Susan: And the next morning we got up, we met a guy from India in the little breakfast area. And he was really nice and...I doubt...

Kristin: Was he livin' in Chattanooga?

Lookout Mountain Conversation

Susan: No, he was there studying as a student.

Kristin: Oh.

getting his eyes full: to see everything

Susan: And **getting his eyes full** of the [laugh] American culture.

Kristin: Uh-huh.

Susan: He, uh, he was really funny. And, and he wanted to exchange e-mails. Now I haven't heard from him. And I've lost his. But hopefully I'll hear from him if he didn't lose mine. And then we went to the Children's Museum and Ethan enjoyed that. It's a **hands on**, kids...

hands on: experiential; action-touching focused

Kristin: Oh, like an exploratory...

Susan: Right, kids type of...

Kristin: Yeah.

Susan: ...well it's called the Children's Museum. And, uh, he really enjoyed that. And he got to do a lot of things. Squirting water at people... And making things... And breaking things... And building things... And climbing things... And...[laugh]

Kristin: [laugh]

Susan: Yeah, he, he had a lot of fun there. And then we came home.

Kristin: Oh, it was, it was a really a short trip, huh?

Susan: It was a good trip. Oh yeah, just overnight. It was long enough for Dad and me.

Kristin: Yeah.

tails were starting to drag: we were getting tired

Susan: We were starting to... Our **tails were starting to drag**.

Kristin: [laugh]

Susan: [laugh]

Lookout Mountain Conversation

Kristin: Well how was the weather?

Susan: Oh the weather was good. They said it was the most beautiful day all summer, the day we took the cruise. So we were very fortunate.

Kristin: Yeah.

Susan: Just right, not too hot, not too cool.

Kristin: Oh, that's good.

Susan: Yes, yes it was wonderful. We were really lucky.

Kristin: Well, what was your favorite thing that you did?

Susan: Well, my favorite thing was the cruise.

Kristin: Oh, I guess you said...

Susan: I think Dad's...

Kristin: ...okay.

Susan: Yeah, I think Dad's, maybe was the sculpture garden or the incline railway. And I think Ethan's was probably the, uh, Rock City.

Kristin: Yeah, I can remember really likin' Rock City when I was little and we went there.

Susan: Right. They had a, um, bird sanctuary there. They take birds that have been sick or hurt. And I'll **get on my soapbox** for a minute... I think more places need to do that and take care of animals that need taking care of.

Kristin: Yeah, I agree.

Susan: But it was a great trip.

Kristin: Yeah, I'm glad you guys had a good time.

get on my soapbox: to try to talk someone into something

Lookout Mountain Conversation

Susan: Yeah, I am too.

Kristin: Well, I've got some work I need to get done, so...

Susan: Oh...well it was nice talking to you.

Kristin: Yeah, nice talkin' to you. I'll give you a call back, um, later in the week.

Susan: Soon?

Kristin: Yeah.

Susan: Okay. Hope to hear from you soon.

Kristin: Alright, tell Dad I said hi, I just wanted to check...

Susan: I will.

Kristin: ...on you guys getting back from your trip.

Susan: Okay. Thank you.

Kristin: Alright.

Susan: Love you.

Kristin: Love you. Bye.

Susan: Bye bye.



Lookout Mountain Mini-Story Lesson

Hello. This is AJ Hoge and this is the mini-story for “Lookout Mountain.”

Let's get started.

* * * *

There was a guy. There was a guy named Lance.

What was his name?

Lance, his name was Lance.

There was a girl.

Was there a girl?

Yes, there was. There was a girl.

And what was her name?

Her name was Gina. Lance loved Gina. Lance wanted to kiss Gina.

Did Lance want to kiss Gina or did Lance want to talk to Gina?

Lance wanted to kiss Gina.

Did Gina want to kiss Lance?

No, no, she didn't.

Gina didn't want to kiss Lance. She said, “No, I won't kiss you.” But Lance loved Gina. He said, “I love you. I want to kiss you.”

What did he say?

He said, “I love you. I want to kiss you.”



Lookout Mountain Mini-Story Lesson

Who said, "I love you. I want to kiss you"?

Lance said that. Lance said, "I love you. I want to kiss you."

Who did he say it to?

He said it to Gina. Lance said, "I love you.. I want to kiss you" to Gina.

Gina said, "No way."

No way means absolutely no. Absolutely not. No way. Gina said, "No way."

Did Gina want to kiss Lance?

No, no way. She didn't. She said, "No way."

Lance said, "Please, please, please Gina. I love you." Gina looked at Lance. She thought "Hm." Then she said, "Okay, I'll make a bet with you. We run to San Francisco from New York. If I get there first, you give me \$28,250. But if you win, I'll kiss you."

Did Gina want to make a bet with Lance?

Yes, she wanted to make a bet with Lance.

Who did she want to make a bet with?

With Lance, she wanted to make a bet with Lance.

Who wanted to make a bet with Lance?

Gina, Gina wanted to make a bet with Lance.

What did she want to make?

A bet, she wanted to make a bet with Lance.

Did she want to swim?

Lookout Mountain Mini-Story Lesson

No, no, no, she didn't want to swim. She wanted to run. She wanted to make a bet... run from New York to San Francisco.

What was the bet?

The bet was to run from New York to San Francisco.

If Gina won, what would she get?

Twenty-eight thousand, two hundred and fifty dollars, if Gina won, she would get \$28,250.

Who would get \$28,250 if she won?

Well, of course, Gina. Gina would get \$28,250 if she won the bet... if she won the race.

Would she get \$28,279 if she won the race?

No, no, no, no, no, \$28,250. She would get \$28,250 if she won.

If Lance won, what would Gina do?

If Lance won, she would kiss him.

Would she kiss Lance if Lance won?

Yes, she would. She would kiss Lance if he won.

Would she kiss Lance if he lost the bet?

No, no, no, she wouldn't kiss him if he lost. She would only kiss him if he won.

Who would she kiss if he won the bet?

Lance, she would kiss Lance if he won the bet.

If Lance won the bet, who would kiss him?

Gina, Gina would kiss him if he won the bet.

What did Lance have to win?

Lookout Mountain Mini-Story Lesson

He had to win the bet. He had to win the race from New York to San Francisco. If he won the race Gina would kiss him.

Lance said, “That’s too far. That’s crazy.” Gina laughed, “It’ll be more fun than a barrel of monkeys.”

Did Gina think the race would be fun?

Oh, yes. She thought the race would be very, very fun. She thought the race would be more fun than a barrel of monkeys. Super fun.

Who thought the race would be more fun than a barrel of monkeys?

Gina, Gina thought the race would be more fun than a barrel of monkeys.

Did Lance think the race would be more fun than a barrel of monkeys?

No, no, no, no, no, Lance didn’t think the race would be more fun than a barrel of monkeys. He thought it was crazy. Gina thought the race would be more fun than a barrel of monkeys.

Did she think the race would be super fun or a little fun?

She thought the race would be super fun. She said, “It’ll be more fun than a barrel of monkeys.”

And so they started the race. They started running from New York City. After 42 days, Lance arrived in Denver. Denver, Colorado. He was ahead of Gina. But he was starting to drag.

When he arrived in Denver, was Lance ahead of Gina or behind Gina?

Well, he was ahead of Gina when he arrived in Denver.

Who was he ahead of when he arrived in Denver?

He was ahead of Gina when he arrived in Denver.

When he arrived where?

Denver, when he arrived in Denver he was ahead of Gina.



Lookout Mountain Mini-Story Lesson

When he arrived in Denver, how did Lance feel?

Tired, he felt tired. He was starting to drag. Starting to feel tired. He was starting to get tired. Lance was starting to drag.

When was Lance starting to drag?

When he arrived in Denver.

Who was starting to drag?

Lance, Lance was starting to drag.

He was starting to what?

To drag, he was starting to drag. He was starting to feel tired.

Where was Lance starting to drag? Where was he?

In Denver, when he was in Denver he was starting to drag.

And so Lance stopped to rest, “I’m starting to drag.” And then Gina was behind him and she passed him. Gina passed Lance and she laughed, “Ha, ha, ha, see you in San Francisco.”

Who passed Lance?

Gina, Gina passed Lance.

What did she do?

She passed Lance.

Did she cry when she passed Lance?

No, she didn’t cry when she passed Lance. She laughed when she passed Lance.

Lookout Mountain Mini-Story Lesson

Well, finally they got near San Francisco. Gina was winning. She was two miles ahead of Lance. But she was also starting to drag. Both of them were dragging. Both of them were tired. Gina was ahead. But then Lance remembered his love. He ran faster. He ran faster and faster and faster. And he remembered that he loved Gina. And suddenly he passed Gina and arrived in San Francisco. Lance won the race. After he won, Lance said to Gina, “I’ll get on my soapbox a minute and say you can’t beat love.”

Okay, did he get on his soapbox?

Yes, *he got on his soapbox.*

Did he give a short speech about his opinion?

Yes, yes, *he talked about his strong opinion. He gave a short little speech about his opinion.*

What was his opinion?

His opinion was, “You can’t beat love.” He said I’ll get on my soapbox and say you can’t beat love.

Who got on his soapbox?

Lance, Lance got on his soapbox. Lance said a strong opinion.

Did Gina get on her soapbox?

No, she didn’t. She did not get on her soapbox. Gina did not say a strong opinion. She was quiet. Lance got on his soapbox. Lance said I’ll get on my soapbox a minute and I’ll say you can’t beat love. So Lance got on his soapbox.

Gina said, “Well, I guess you’re right.” And she kissed Lance. Lance was very, very happy. He won the race. He won the bet. And he finally kissed Gina. The end.

* * * * *

Okay. As always, listen to this mini-story every day. Every day for seven days or more. Good luck. Enjoy the story. Enjoy your English learning.

See you next time. Bye bye.



Lookout Mountain POV Lesson

Hello, this is AJ Hoge. Let's get started with the point of view lessons for "Lookout Mountain". Our first story is happening now.

* * * * *

There's a guy. His name is Lance. There is a girl. Her name is Gina. Lance loves Gina. Lance wants to kiss Gina.

But Gina doesn't want to kiss Lance. She says, "No, I won't kiss you." But Lance loves Gina. He says, "I love you, I want to kiss you."

Gina says, "No way."

Lance says, "Please, please, please Gina. I love you." Gina looks at Lance. She thinks, "Hm." Then she says, "Okay, I'll make a bet with you. We run to San Francisco from New York. If I get there first, you give me \$28,250. But if you win, I'll kiss you."

Lance says, "That's too far. That's crazy." Gina laughs, "It'll be more fun than a barrel of monkeys."

And so they start the race. They start running from New York City. After 42 days, Lance arrives in Denver...Denver, Colorado. He is ahead of Gina. But he is starting to drag.

And so Lance stops to rest. He says, "Ohhh...I'm starting to drag." And then Gina is beside him and she passes him. Gina passes Lance and she laughs, "Ha, ha, see you in San Francisco."

Well, finally they get near San Francisco. Gina is winning but she's also starting to drag. Both of them are dragging. Both of them are tired. Gina is ahead. But then Lance remembers his love. He runs faster. He runs faster and faster and faster. And he remembers that he loves Gina. And suddenly he passes Gina and arrives in San Francisco. Lance wins the race. After he wins, Lance says to Gina, "I'll get on my soapbox a minute and say you can't beat love."

Gina says, "Well, I guess you're right." And she kisses Lance. Lance is very, very happy. He wins the race. He wins the bet. And he finally kisses Gina. The end.

* * * * *

Alright, our next story is in the future, sometime in the future.

* * * * *

Lookout Mountain POV Lesson

Sometime in the future there will be a guy and his name is gonna be Lance. And there's gonna be a girl. Her name will be Gina. Lance'll love Gina. Lance'll want to kiss Gina.

But Gina won't want to kiss Lance. She'll say, "No, I won't kiss you." But Lance'll love Gina. He'll say, "I love you, I want to kiss you."

Gina's gonna say, "No way."

Lance will say, "Please, please, please Gina. I love you." Gina will look at Lance. She'll think, "Hm." Then she'll say, "Okay, I'll make a bet with you. We run to San Francisco from New York. If I get there first, you give me \$28,250. But if you win, I'll kiss you."

Lance will say, "That's too far. That's crazy." And then Gina will laugh, "It'll be more fun than a barrel of monkeys."

And so they'll start the race. They'll start running from New York City. After 42 days, Lance'll arrive in Denver...Denver, Colorado. He'll be ahead of Gina. But he'll start to drag.

He'll stop to rest and he'll say to himself, "Shooo...I'm starting to drag." And then at that time Gina will pass him. She'll pass Lance and she'll laugh, "Ha, ha, ha, ha, see you in San Francisco."

Finally they'll get near San Francisco. Gina will be winning. She'll be two miles ahead of Lance. Both of them will be dragging. Both of them will be tired. But Gina will be ahead. At that time Lance will remember his love. He'll run faster. He'll run faster and faster and faster. And he'll remember that he loves Gina. Suddenly he'll pass Gina and he'll arrive in San Francisco. Lance is gonna win the race. And after he wins, Lance is gonna say to Gina, "I'll get up on my soapbox now and say you can't beat love."

Gina will say, "Well, I guess you're right." And she'll kiss Lance. Lance will be very, very happy. He'll win the race. He'll win the bet. And he'll finally kiss Gina. The end.

* * * * *

Okay, and finally our last one.

* * * * *

There was a guy. His name was Lance. There was a girl. Her name was Gina. Since ten years ago Lance has loved Gina. For ten years Lance has wanted to kiss Gina.

Lookout Mountain POV Lesson

And for ten years Gina has not wanted to kiss Lance. Every time she has said, "No, I won't kiss you." But for ten years Lance has loved Gina. He has always said to her, "I love you, I want to kiss you."

And Gina has always said, "No way."

Lance has always begged, he has always said, "Please, please Gina. I love you." Well one day Gina looked at Lance and she thought and she said, "Okay, I'll make a bet with you. We run to San Francisco from New York. If I get there first, you give me \$28,250. But if you win, I'll kiss you."

Lance said, "That's too far. That's crazy." And Gina laughed, "It'll be more fun than a barrel of monkeys."

And so they started the race. They started running from New York City. After 42 days, Lance arrived in Denver...Denver, Colorado. He was ahead of Gina. But he was starting to drag.

And so Lance stopped to rest. He said to himself, "I'm starting to drag." And right then Gina was behind him and she passed him. Gina passed Lance and laughed, "Ha, ha, ha, see you in San Francisco."

Well, finally they got near San Francisco. Gina was winning. She was two miles ahead of Lance. But she was also starting to drag. Both of them were dragging. Both of them were tired. Gina was ahead. But then Lance remembered his love. He ran faster. He ran faster and faster and faster. And he remembered that he loved Gina. And suddenly he passed Gina and arrived in San Francisco first. Lance won the race. After he won, Lance said to Gina, "I'll get up on my soapbox now and I'll say you can't beat love."

And Gina said, "Well, I guess you're right." And she kissed Lance. And Lance was very, very happy. He won the race. He won the bet. And he finally kissed Gina. The end.

* * * * *

And that is the end of the point of view stories for "Lookout Mountain". See you next time. Bye bye.



Lookout Mountain Vocabulary Lesson

Hello, this is AJ Hoge. Welcome to the vocabulary lesson for “Lookout Mountain.” In this conversation Kristin talks to her mother. And her mother, Susan, talks about a trip, a family trip they took with Ethan and Kristin’s dad. Now Ethan is Kristin’s nephew. A child, a son of Kristin’s brother, a nephew. So Kristin’s mom, Kristin’s dad and Kristin’s nephew went on a short family trip to Chattanooga, Tennessee. Chattanooga is a city. And near Chattanooga there are some sights, some places to see. One is called Rock City. Another sight near Chattanooga is called Lookout Mountain. So Kristin’s mom, Kristin’s dad and her nephew Ethan, they all went to these places. And in this conversation, Kristin’s mom talks about the trip.

Alright let’s get started.

* * * * *

So in the second sentence, Susan, Kristin’s mom says, “Oh, the trip was great. It was great. It was more fun than a barrel of monkeys.”

More fun than a barrel of monkeys. Now that’s an idiom. A very kind of old idiom and it means just a lot of fun. It’s kind of a joke. It’s kind of... Now if we say that, it’s a little bit old-fashioned. A little bit kind of from the past. So when you say it, it’s, y’know it’s kind of said in a joking way. But the meaning is, it was a lot of fun. It was more fun than a barrel of monkeys means, it was a lot of fun. It was really fun. More fun than a barrel of monkeys, very, very fun.

Okay, Kristin laughs and Mom says, “You know, we took Ethan...”

Again that’s Kristin’s nephew and he’s eight years old.

“and it was fun to watch him at y’know at the different places they went to.” Fun to watch him enjoying the activities. They bypassed the aquarium.

That means they went... They didn’t go to the aquarium. They went past the aquarium but didn’t go in.

Because they had already taken him to the Atlanta aquarium in the past. And Susan says, “We picked and chose and drew straws and decided we would go, first, to Rock City.”

Okay, to draw straws, or past is drew straws. It means to choose randomly. To choose randomly. So maybe you have five different things to do and you randomly choose two. Or you randomly choose one. That’s what to draw straws means. To choose randomly. Okay, it’s another idiom.

Okay and there they talk about going to Rock City and there was a place in Rock City called Fat Man’s Squeeze.

Lookout Mountain Vocabulary Lesson

It's just, it's a narrow place with two rocks and you have to go in between the two rocks, but they're close together. So if you're fat you cannot go through.

So Susan, Kristin's mom, laughs that ten years ago she could go through easily. But now, she's 64 years old. She's heavier and it wasn't easy to go through. And then after they went to Rock City they went to Lookout Mountain which is a big, big mountain. And they rode an incline railway.

Incline, of course, means going up. So it's a railway that went straight up. Straight up the side of the mountain.

And Kristin asked, "Did he like it?"

Did Ethan like the mountain?

It was overlooking Chattanooga. And she said, "Oh, he didn't like it as well as Rock City."

So he liked Rock City more.

"He was not as enthused about it..."

Was not as excited about it.

But Kristin's Dad enjoyed it. After that they went to eat at a restaurant named Ryan's.

Ryan's is the name of the restaurant.

And I guess Ethan likes Ryan's. Her little nephew likes Ryan's. And she said they didn't go to another restaurant, a place called Dirty Nellie's.

So maybe they usually go to Dirty Nellie's restaurant.

But it was closed. The reason it was closed is it got busted, got busted several years ago for selling to minors.

To get busted means to get in trouble or to get arrested. It often means to get arrested by the police or to get in trouble with the police. So their favorite restaurant, Dirty Nellie's had got busted so the police closed the restaurant. Why did they close the restaurant? They closed the restaurant because it was selling to minors. Selling what? Selling alcohol, she doesn't say it but that's what she means. So the restaurant was selling alcohol to minors. A minor is a person who is younger than 18 years old, I'm sorry younger than 21 for alcohol. So someone younger than 21 cannot buy alcohol and if a restaurant sells alcohol to someone who is

Lookout Mountain Vocabulary Lesson

too young, they can get busted. They can get in trouble with the police.

Okay, so they didn't go to Dirty Nellie's restaurant. They went to Ryan's. And she asked, "Did you go to any museums?" And Susan says, "Well, no." They went to a garden on the river and they did a cruise. And they had beautiful views. And there was a good captain who was narrating, who was talking about the city and talking about the views. And then they went back to the hotel... the motel that night and they swam. And then she said at the, at the motel they met a guy from India in the breakfast area and he was really nice. He was living in Chattanooga, he was there studying as a student. And getting his eyes full of American culture. Susan says, "He was getting his eyes full of the American culture."

So getting his eyes full of American culture just means he was seeing a lot of American culture. He was really seeing a lot of it. Getting his eyes full.

And then Kristin says, "Uh-huh." And then Susan says, "He was really funny. He wanted to exchange e-mails." And then after they met the Indian guy they went to a Children's Museum, a hands-on museum... like an exploratory. Kristin calls it an exploratory.

It's a kind of museum for children. It's hands on, it means the children can touch things, they can play with things. It's not just looking, you can also touch. That's a hand on museum or Children's Museum. Sometimes they're called exploratory museums.

So it was a Children's Museum. And they had a lot of fun there. And then she said y'know... Kristin said, "So it was a really a short trip." And Susan says, "Yeah, it was a good trip. Just overnight. But long enough." And she said, "We were starting to... Our tails were starting to drag."

Okay, so we were starting to drag. Or our tails were starting to drag. Tails here means your butt. Their butt was starting to drag. It just means they were getting tired. To drag. Or to start to drag means to start to feel tired or to start to be tired. So if I can say, "Oh, whew, I'm starting to drag." It means I am getting tired. I am starting to feel tired. Very common phrase. Anytime you begin to feel tired you can say, I'm starting to drag.

Okay, so they were starting to drag. At the end of the trip Susan and Kristin's dad, they were starting to feel tired. They were starting to drag. Then Kristin asks about the weather and Susan says, "It was a beautiful day. All summer, it was very nice." It was wonderful. Okay and then she says, "What was the favorite thing you did?"

So she wants to know what did her mom, what did Susan enjoy most.

And her favorite thing was the cruise, the cruise on the river. And she said and then Kristin's dad's favorite thing was the garden or the railway at Rock City. Kristin says, "Yeah, I remember liking Rock



Lookout Mountain Vocabulary Lesson

City when I was little.”

So when Kristin was a child she also had been to Rock City. She also went to Rock City when she was a child.

And then Susan said they had a bird sanctuary, a place where they take birds that have been sick or hurt and then they help the birds. They help the animals. And Susan says, “I’ll get on my soapbox for a minute...” And she says, “I think more places need to do that. More places need to take care of animals.”

Okay, to get on your soapbox or I’ll get on my soapbox. It means, I’m going to give a speech or I’m going to say something strong. It’s an idiom. It comes from the idea of being in public, being around people. And getting a box, standing on top of the box and then giving a speech. You can imagine in the past, long ago. If you want to give a speech maybe you stand on top of something. You can stand on top of a box, for example. And then everybody can see you. Right, so it comes from this idea of giving a speech. If you say, “I’m going to get on my soapbox now...” it means you’re going to give a speech. You’re going to tell your strong opinion about something. So her strong opinion is more places need to take care of animals. She has a strong opinion. This is a strong idea for Susan.

So she says, “I’m going to get on my soapbox...”

I’m going to tell you a strong opinion.

And Kristin says, “I agree.”

She agrees that more places need to take care of animals.

Susan says it was a great trip and Kristin says, “Yeah, I’m glad you guys had a good time.” And then they kind of finish the conversation. She says, “Nice talking to you. I’ll give you a call back later in the week.”

So I’ll call you again later.

And Susan says, “Okay. Hope to hear from you soon.” Kristin says, “Alright, tell Dad I said hi...” And that’s the end. They say, “Okay, okay, love you, love you, bye.” And that is the end of the conversation.

* * * * *

So that is the end of the vocabulary for “Lookout Mountain.”

Vegetarian Conversation

Joe: Hey, Peter came to me today to let me know that he's decided to become a vegetarian.

Kristin: Oh, really, that's great.

seen the light: finally understand

Joe: Yeah, he told me he's finally **seen the light**.

played a major role: was a major influence or reason

Kristin: Well, what helped him arrive at that decision?

Joe: Well, I mean his girlfriend's been a vegetarian for about a year now and I'm sure she probably **played a major role**.

as a rule: generally; usually

Kristin: Yeah, that makes sense.

Joe: He told me that he wanted to speak with me about it because I was an authority on the subject.

Kristin: Well, you pretty much are. You've been one for many years now.

Joe: Yeah, but, **as a rule** I usually don't bring up the topic of vegetarianism with people. I mean...

preachin' to the choir: trying to persuade someone who already agrees

Kristin: Yeah, I, I don't like to either, actually.

Joe: Yeah, the way I figure it, if the person's already a vegetarian, then it's pretty much **preachin' to the choir**.

Kristin: Um-hm.

Joe: They probably already know a lot of the facts that I would tell them, and, y'know, we probably share some of the same reasons for, as to why we actually became a vegetarian anyway.

Kristin: Right, right.

to go in one ear and out the other: to be ignored or disregarded

Joe: And if it's a person who's not a vegetarian and they're not interested, it pretty much just goes **in one ear and out the other**. I mean if they're not interested in hearing about it, they're not gonna retain anything I'm telling 'em.

Kristin: Right, and for me, I just don't like to feel like I'm preaching to someone

Vegetarian Conversation

either, y'know?

Joe: Yeah, I think that's a really good point actually. But, uh, yeah he was startin' to, y'know, um, ask me a whole bunch of questions about vegetarianism.

Kristin: Like what?

Joe: Well, he wanted to know how I actually, uh, became a vegetarian.

Kristin: Well, what'd you tell him?

Joe: Well, I actually began to think back to when I was in college, uh. I first started to learn about vegetarian by **word of mouth**. I had some friends who were vegetarians and, y'know, they would always tell me why they became a vegetarian. And they'd also try and convince me to stop eating meat which, at that time, I just, y'know, wasn't interested in at all.

Kristin: Mm-hm.

Joe: But, y'know, as I got older I became more curious. And, uh, I started to actually read some literature on my own. And it was probably at that point that I began **to weigh the pros and cons** of meat eating. I mean, there's a lot of good reasons to go vegetarian. I mean...

Kristin: Yeah, yeah, there are.

Joe: Y'know, there are environmental reasons, um. There are also health reasons obviously. I mean it reduces the risk of heart problems and high blood pressure. And...

Kristin: Right.

Joe: ...y'know, as you know, high blood pressure **runs in my family**. So I, I've always needed to be careful about that.

Kristin: Right.

Joe: Um, another thing for me that really **struck a chord** was that I just didn't think it was a practical approach to solving the issue of world hunger. I mean the land that's being used to raise these animals could be put to so much better use if it was, uh,

word of mouth: personal (verbal) communication

to weigh the pros and cons: to compare the positive and negative factors

runs in my family: is common in my family (genetically)

struck a chord: connected emotionally; triggered a strong emotion

Vegetarian Conversation

y'know, growing crops, uh, like, y'know, rice or wheat or soybeans or just some other vegetables.

Kristin: Now that's a particular aspect of, of the, um, whole idea of going vegetarian that I'd never even thought of before.

Joe: Yeah, y'know, that one is important to me. But, I, I think just as important to me was the fact that I felt that it was really inhumane to the animals. I had read, uh, some...

Kristin: Yeah, yeah.

Joe: ...literature that talked about how these animals are treated and all the, uh, chemicals that they get injected with. And, y'know, that for me was just **a real turnoff**.

Kristin: Yeah, for me as well.

Joe: Yeah? So, uh, why did, when did you first become a vegetarian? I mean, what, what led you to it?

Kristin: What led me to it, um... I guess it was a series of things that kind of led up to it. My, uh, uncle for example, he's been a vegetarian as far back as I can remember. So that wasn't a new concept to my family at all. Um, I can remember when I was in high school I just kind of started losing the taste for meat, particularly red meat and, uh, chicken. I, by the end of, uh, high school I'd pretty much cut those out.

Joe: Yeah, you see for...

Kristin: So...

Joe: ...me that wasn't the case. I mean I ate **everything but the kitchen sink** [laugh] when I was in high school.

Kristin: [laugh] Well, um, yeah, so in, in, in college then it was pretty much just seafood that I was eating. And by the time I graduated from college I was dating a guy and actually living with him then. And he decided to become a vegetarian and wanted me to become one as well. And even though I'd been thinking of becoming one, I didn't want, I wanted it to be my own decision. I, I didn't want to feel pressure

a real turnoff: something that turns off desire

everything but the kitchen sink: almost everything possible

Vegetarian Conversation

from him. So he did pretty much all the cooking and I told him, "Look, y'know, it's fine that, I'm not gonna ask you to cook meat. But I am not, I am not giving up seafood. So if, y'know, if we go out to eat or if I'm out eating at a restaurant and I choose to have seafood, I will."

Joe: Yeah, that was a good first step.

the straw that broke the camel's back: the final incident that caused a big change

Kristin: Yeah, so...I would say though, *the straw that broke the camel's back* was going out on a deep sea fishing trip with a friend. And, I just went along for the ride. And, uh, he was fishing, reeled in this really big fish. It was flopping around and someone came over and just clubbed it to death. And watching that act, someone killing a living creature, it just really disturbed me. And so from that point on I thought, y'know, I'm, I'm totally giving up seafood as well. I'm not gonna eat anything anymore that has been alive.

Vegetarian Mini-Story Lesson

Hello. This is AJ Hoge again and this is the mini-story for “Vegetarian.”

Let's get started.

* * * *

Porky pig wanted to lose weight.

What did he want to lose?

Weight, he wanted to lose weight.

Did he want to become thinner or did he want to become fatter?

Well, of course, thinner. He wanted to become thinner. He wanted to lose weight.

Who wanted to lose weight?

Porky pig, that's right. Porky pig wanted to lose weight.

So he went to Dr. Atkins. He said, “Dr. Atkins, I want to lose weight. Please help me.” Dr. Atkins said, “Okay, eat lots of meat and fat. It tastes great and you'll lose weight.”

Who said, “Eat lots of meat and fat”?

Dr. Atkins, Dr. Atkins said, “Eat lots of meat and fat. It tastes great and you'll lose weight.”

It tastes how?

It tastes great. It tastes great and you'll lose weight.

Porky said, “Hey, you are preachin' to the choir. I love meat.”

Did Porky agree with Dr. Atkins?

Yes, he already agreed with Dr. Atkins. He said, “You are preachin' to the choir.” You're trying to persuade me but I already agree. I already love meat. I already love fat. So he said, “You are preachin' to the choir.” You don't need to change my mind. You don't need to persuade me. I already agree.



Vegetarian Mini-Story Lesson

Was Dr. Atkins preaching to the choir with Porky?

Yes, he was preaching to the choir with Porky. Porky already agreed with him.

Who was preaching to the choir?

Dr. Atkins, Dr. Atkins was preaching to the choir. Dr. Atkins was trying to convince someone who already agreed with him.

So who said, "You are preachin' to the choir"?

Porky said it. Porky said, "You are preachin' to the choir."

Who did he say, "You are preachin' to the choir" to? Who did he say it to?

He said it to Dr. Atkins. Porky said to Dr. Atkins, "You are preachin' to the choir. I love meat."

So Porky went home. Every day he ate lots and lots of meat. Lots and lots of fat, everything but the kitchen sink.

Did he eat everything possible?

Well almost. Almost, he ate everything but the kitchen sink.

Did he eat a lot of meat?

Yes, he ate a lot of meat.

Did he eat a lot of fat?

Yes, he ate a lot of fat. He ate everything but the kitchen sink. He ate almost everything possible.

What did he eat?

Everything but the kitchen sink. Almost everything possible.

Who ate everything but the kitchen sink?

Vegetarian Mini-Story Lesson

Porky the pig, Porky pig ate everything but the kitchen sink.

How did he feel after he ate everything but the kitchen sink?

Well, in fact he felt terrible. Porky felt terrible. He got sick. Every day he felt more and more sick.

Did Porky lose weight?

Well, in the beginning he lost some weight. But eventually he gained more and more and more weight. He got fatter and fatter and fatter. He became super fat.

Who became super fat?

Porky became super fat.

Did Porky feel good?

No, he felt terrible. He felt sick. He felt terrible. And he got fatter and fatter and fatter. He became obese. Obese, obese means super, super fat.

So Porky pig became obese. So he decided, “I need to see someone else. I need to ask another person for help.” He went to John Robbins. John Robbins said, “As a rule, you should eat lots of fruits and vegetables to lose weight. You must also exercise.”

Now, did John Robbins say that usually, generally, you should eat lots of fruits and vegetables, or only sometimes?

Well, usually, generally... he said as a rule. As a rule means generally. As a rule means usually or generally. So as a rule, you should eat lots of fruits and vegetables.

Who should eat lots of fruits and vegetables as a rule?

Well everybody, in fact. Everybody, right. John Robbins said, “As a rule, you should eat lots of fruits and vegetables to lose weight.” You meaning Porky pig. But also you meaning everybody in general, the plural you... more than one. So John Robbins said as a rule, generally you should eat lots of fruits and vegetables to lose weight and you must also exercise.



Vegetarian Mini-Story Lesson

Did Porky like this idea?

No, no, no. Porky did not like this idea. This information went in one ear and out the other. Porky ignored John's advice and he kept eating meat and he kept eating fat.

Did Porky listen to John or did the information go in one ear and out the other?

Well, in fact it went in one ear and out the other. John's advice went in one ear and out the other.

What went in one ear and out the other?

John's advice. John's advice went in one ear and out the other. Porky ignored John's advice.

Who ignored it?

Porky. John's advice went in one ear and out the other.

Did Porky continue to eat meat and fat?

Yes, he did. He continued. He kept eating meat and fat.

Did he continue to eat everything but the kitchen sink?

Oh, yes, he did. He kept eating everything but the kitchen sink. Everything possible.

Well, one month later Porky had a heart attack. And he almost died.

Did Porky have a heart attack?

Yes, he did. He had a heart attack. His heart stopped and he almost died.

Was Porky happy when he had the heart attack?

No, of course not. He wasn't happy when he had the heart attack.

How did he feel?

Well, he was scared. He was terrified. Very scared when he had the heart attack.

Vegetarian Mini-Story Lesson

Why was he very scared?

Because he almost died. Right, he had a heart attack, he almost died. So Porky was very, very scared. He didn't want to die.

He said, “I’ve seen the light. I must eat lots of fruits and vegetables.”

Did Porky suddenly understand John’s advice?

Yes, he did. He suddenly understood. He said, “I’ve seen the light.” I have suddenly understood. I have seen the light.

Who saw the light?

Porky pig saw the light.

Did Porky pig suddenly understand that he needed to eat a lot of fruits and vegetables?

Yes, he did. He saw the light. Porky pig saw the light.

Who saw the light?

Porky pig. Porky pig saw the light.

What did he see the light about?

About eating fruits and vegetables, he understood about eating fruits and vegetables. He saw the light about eating lots of fruits and vegetables.

He went home from the hospital and became a vegetarian. He ate only fresh fruit and vegetables and brown rice. He began to feel better and better and he lost 528 pounds. He was a slim and handsome pig.

How many pounds did he lose?

Five hundred and twenty-eight, he lost 528 pounds.



Vegetarian Mini-Story Lesson

Did he lose 528 kilos or did he lose 528 pounds?

Well pounds, he didn't lose kilos. He's an American pig. So he lost 528 pounds, not kilos.

Who lost 528 pounds?

Porky, Porky pig lost 528 pounds.

How did he look after he lost 528 pounds? How did he look?

Well he looked great. He looked thin and handsome.

Who looked thin and handsome?

Porky pig, Porky pig looked thin and handsome.

Why did Porky pig suddenly look thin and handsome?

Well because he lost 528 pounds. Because he lost 528 pounds, he suddenly looked thin and handsome. He was a handsome pig.

Of course, his vegetarian diet played a major role in helping him lose weight.

What played a major role in helping him lose weight?

His vegetarian diet played a major role in helping him lose weight.

Was his vegetarian diet a major influence, a major reason for him losing weight?

Well, yes it was. His vegetarian diet played a major role in helping him lose weight.

It played a major role in helping who lose weight?

Well, in helping Porky pig lose weight. His vegetarian diet played a major role in helping Porky pig lose weight.

What played a major role?

His vegetarian diet, his vegetarian diet played a major role in helping him lose weight.



Vegetarian Mini-Story Lesson

Did it play a major role or did it play a minor role? A big reason or a small reason?

A big reason, it played a major role in helping him lose weight. It was a major reason he lost weight.

And how is Porky now?

Well, now Porky is thin, slim, healthy and handsome. He's one handsome pig.

* * * * *

Okay, that is the end of “Vegetarian” mini-story. I hope you enjoyed it. As always, do remember. Deep learning, deep learning, deep learning. Remember to listen to this lesson every day for seven or more days. You need to learn it very deeply. Okay, don’t go ahead, stick with one lesson set every day, every day, every day. Seven days, eight days, ten days, it’s okay. Deep learning is very important.

Okay, I’ll see you next time, thanks. This is AJ, goodbye.

Vegetarian POV Lesson

Hello, this is AJ Hoge. Welcome to the POV lesson for “Vegetarian”. Let’s get started.

* * * * *

Porky pig wants to lose weight. So he goes to Dr. Atkins. He says, “Dr. Atkins, I want to lose weight. Please help me.” Dr. Atkins says, “Okay, eat lots of meat and fat. It tastes great and you’ll lose weight.”

Porky says, “Hey, you are preachin’ to the choir. I love meat.”

So Porky goes home. Every day he eats lots and lots of meat. Lots and lots of fat, everything but the kitchen sink.

How does he feel? Well, in fact he feels terrible. Porky gets sick. Every day he feels more and more sick.

In the beginning he loses some weight. But eventually he gains more and more and more weight. He gets fatter and fatter and fatter. He becomes super fat.

So Porky pig becomes obese. He decides, “I need to see someone else. I need to ask another person for help.” He goes to John Robbins. John Robbins says, “As a rule, you should eat lots of fruits and vegetables to lose weight. You must also exercise.”

Porky does not like this idea. This information goes in one ear and out the other. Porky ignores John’s advice and he keeps eating meat and he keeps eating fat.

Well, one month later Porky has a heart attack. And he almost dies.

He says, “I’ve seen the light. I must eat lots of fruits and vegetables.”

He goes home from the hospital and becomes a vegetarian. He eats only fresh fruit and vegetables and brown rice. He begins to feel better and better and he loses 528 pounds. He becomes a slim and handsome pig.

And, of course, his vegetarian diet plays a major role in helping him become healthy.

* * * * *

Alright, this next one happens in the future.

Vegetarian POV Lesson

* * * * *

In the future there will be a pig and he'll want to lose weight. He's gonna go to Dr. Atkins. He'll say to Dr. Atkins, "Dr. Atkins, I want to lose weight. Please help me." Dr. Atkins will say, "Okay, eat lots of meat and fat. It tastes great and you'll lose weight."

Porky'll say, "Hey, you're preachin' to the choir. I love meat."

So Porky will go home. Every day he'll eat lots and lots of meat. And he's gonna eat fat and everything else but the kitchen sink.

In fact he's not gonna feel good. In fact, he's gonna feel terrible. He's gonna get sick. Every day he's gonna feel more and more sick.

Yes, in the beginning he will lose some weight. But eventually he's gonna gain more and more and more weight. He's gonna get fatter and fatter and fatter and he's gonna become super fat.

In fact, Porky will become obese. So he'll decide, "I need to see someone else. I need to ask another person for help." He'll go to John Robbins. John Robbins will say, "As a rule, you should eat lots of fruits and vegetables to lose weight. You must also exercise."

Porky will not like this idea. He won't like it. This information is gonna go in one ear and out the other. He's gonna ignore John's advice and keep eating meat and keep eating fat.

And one month later he's gonna have a heart attack. He will almost die.

Finally, he'll say, "I've seen the light. I must eat lots of fruits and vegetables."

He'll go home from the hospital and become a vegetarian. He'll eat only fresh fruit and vegetables and brown rice. And he'll feel better and better and better and he'll lose 528 pounds. He will become a slim and handsome pig.

And, of course, his vegetarian diet is gonna play a major role in helping him lose weight and become healthy.

* * * * *

Okay, finally, our last version of our story begins with, "Since last year..."

* * * * *

Vegetarian POV Lesson

Since last year Porky has wanted to lose weight. And since 10 years ago he has been fat. Porky has been fat for 10 years. But for 9 years he has not cared. However, since last year he has wanted to lose weight. Since last year he has thought about losing weight a lot. Almost every day he has thought about losing weight. He has read a lot of books about losing weight. Starting a year ago until recently. But he hasn't lost any weight.

Well finally one day he went to see Dr. Atkins. He said to Dr. Atkins, "I want to lose weight. Please help me." And Dr. Atkins said, "Okay, eat lots of meat and fat. It tastes great and you'll lose weight."

Porky said, "Hey, you are preachin' to the choir. I love meat."

So Porky went home. Every day he ate lots and lots of meat. Lots and lots of fat, he ate everything but the kitchen sink.

But, he felt terrible. He got sick. Every day he felt more and more sick.

Yes, in the beginning he lost some weight. But eventually he gained more and more and more weight. He got fatter and fatter and fatter. He became super fat.

He became obese. So he decided, "I need to see someone else. I need to ask another person for help." He went to John Robbins. John Robbins said, "Porky, as a rule, you should eat lots of fruits and vegetables to lose weight. You must also exercise."

Porky didn't like this advice. This information went in one ear and out the other. Porky ignored John's advice and he kept eating meat and he kept eating fat.

And one month later he had a heart attack. He almost died.

He finally said, "I've seen the light. I must eat lots of fruits and vegetables."

He went home from the hospital and became a vegetarian. He ate only fresh fruit and vegetables and brown rice. He began to feel better and better and better and he lost 528 pounds. He became a slim and handsome pig.

And, of course, his vegetarian diet played a major role in helping him lose weight and stay healthy.

* * * * *

And that is the end of the POV stories for "Vegetarian".



Vegetarian Vocabulary Lesson

Hello. This is AJ Hoge, Director of Effortless English, with another lesson. This is the vocabulary lesson for "Vegetarian." And this is a conversation between Joe and Kristin. And they talk about being vegetarian, becoming vegetarian. Both Joe and Kristin are vegetarian and one of Joe's friends, Peter, recently decided to become vegetarian. Of course, vegetarian means you do not eat meat. You do not eat... If animals were killed, you don't eat it. That's basically the rule.

Alright, let's... let's start.

* * * * *

Joe says, "Hey, Peter came to me today. He let me know that he's decided to become a vegetarian." And Kristin says, "Oh, that's great." "Yeah, he told me he's finally seen the light."

To see the light. To finally see the light means to finally understand. It has this idea that before you were in darkness. Before you did not understand and suddenly you see the light. Suddenly you understand. We use it in that kind of situation, when you suddenly understand something that, for a long time, you did not understand. You didn't understand. You didn't understand. You didn't understand. You didn't understand, suddenly you understand. You say, "Ah, I have seen the light."

And Kristin asked, "What helped him arrive at that decision?" And Joe says, "His girlfriend has been a vegetarian for about a year now and I'm sure she probably played a major role."

To play a major role means to be a big influence or to be a strong influence. So his girlfriend was a strong influence. She was a strong factor, a strong influence, for this guy Peter to become a vegetarian.

She says, "Yeah, that makes sense."

That's understandable.

"He said he wanted to speak with me about it because I was an authority on the subject..." Joe says.

I was an authority on the subject. To be an authority on a subject means to be an expert on a subject. So Joe is a vegetarian. He's been a vegetarian a long time. So he's kind of an expert about vegetarianism. Joe is an authority on vegetarianism. He is an expert. An authority on... Usually you use on... an authority on something. An authority on a subject.

And then Kristin says, "Yes, you pretty much are."

You basically are an expert about vegetarianism.

Vegetarian Vocabulary Lesson

"You've been one for many years." Joe says, "Yeah, but, as a rule I usually don't bring up the topic of vegetarianism with people."

As a rule means generally. So generally I don't bring up the topic of vegetarianism. As a rule I don't bring up the topic of vegetarianism. Generally or usually or most of the time is what as a rule means. Okay, and to bring up a topic means to discuss a topic. To begin a discussion is what it really means. To bring up the topic of vegetarianism means to start a discussion on the topic of vegetarianism.

Okay and Kristin says, "No I don't like to either." And then Joe says, "The way I figure it..."

The way I understand it.

"if the person is already a vegetarian, then it's pretty much preachin' to the choir."

Preachin' to the choir is an idiom or a slang phrase. Preachin' to the choir means, trying to persuade somebody who already agrees with you. So if Joe's a vegetarian and he talks to me and says, "AJ, vegetarians are great and being a vegetarian is great, you'll be more healthy. You treat the animals nice." Then I might say to Joe, "Joe, you're preachin' to the choir. I already am a vegetarian. I already agree with you." Right, so it means to preach to, or to try to persuade someone who already agrees with you. So it's not necessary, right. It's kind of like saying it's not necessary. I already agree. You are preachin' to the choir.

Okay, Kristin says, "Um-hm." And Joe says, "They probably already know a lot of facts as to why we became vegetarian." Kristin says, "Right, right." And then Joe says, "And if it's a person who's not a vegetarian and they're not interested, it pretty much goes in one ear and out the other."

Another idiom... in one ear and out the other... very common phrase. In one ear and out the other means something is ignored. You can say the information went in one ear and out the other. It means the information was ignored. It was not listened to. So you can imagine the information. It's like it goes into one ear and it doesn't go into the brain. Instead it continues and it goes outside the person's head from the other ear. So the information does not stay in their head. So we use this in a situation where you tell someone some information or ideas but they don't listen to you. They don't, they kind of ignore it. They pretend to listen but they don't really think about it. So if someone doesn't want to listen, or doesn't want to think about something, then you might say, "Oh, it went in one ear and out the other. I told them, but it went in one ear and out the other."

Okay, and then Kristin says, "Right, right, I don't like preaching to someone either." And Joe says, "I think that's a really good point actually." And then next Kristin says, "Like what?" And Joe says, "Well, he wanted to know how I actually became a vegetarian." Kristin says, "What'd you tell him?"

And Joe says, "I began to think back to when I was in college, I first started to learn about

Vegetarian Vocabulary Lesson

vegetarianism..."

Or being vegetarian.

"by word of mouth."

Word of mouth... common phrase. Word of mouth just means to hear it from other people. Something you hear from other people. Not by reading, not by advertising, not by television, not by radio. Another person tells you. That's word of mouth. We use this in business a lot. Word of mouth. A company likes word of mouth marketing, for example. It means their customers tell other people about the company and then those people also buy. Right, so word of mouth is this kind of, y'know, one person tells another person and then they tell another person and they tell another person. So that's word of mouth. So Joe just heard about being vegetarian word of mouth. People talked to him about it. Different people just told him.

"And they told him why they stopped eating meat, but he wasn't interested at that time." And Kristin says, "Mm-hm." And then Joe says, "But, y'know, as I got older I became more curious. And I started to read some literature on my own." And he says, "At that point I began to weigh the pros and cons of meat eating."

To weigh the pros and cons, another common phrase. It means to think about the positive sides and the negative side. Think of all the positive things about a topic and compare them to all the negative things. And then you make a decision. Y'know, overall, total, is it more positive or more negative. So Joe started to think about the pros and cons of meat eating. Maybe positive, "Oh I like the taste. But negative, It's very unhealthy." And you know, positive, negative, positive, negative. And he looked at the whole thing and he decided, "Oh, eating meat is mostly bad and being vegetarian has more pros."

Okay, and he found there were a lot of good reasons to go vegetarian. Kristin says, "Yeah, yeah." Joe said, "Y'know, there are environmental reasons. There are also health reasons obviously. It reduces the risk of heart problems and reduces the risk of high blood pressure." Kristin says, "Yeah." And Joe says, "...y'know, as you know, high blood pressure runs in my family. So I've needed to be careful about that."

Another common phrase... runs in my family. Runs in my family means, is common in my family. So high blood pressure is common in Joe's family. High blood pressure runs in his family. Common in his family. It runs in his family.

And Kristin says, "Right." And Joe says, "Um, another thing for me that really struck a chord was that I just didn't think it was a practical approach to solving world hunger."

It means eating meat. He didn't think eating meat was a good solution for world hunger. And this idea struck

Vegetarian Vocabulary Lesson

a chord with him. Okay, to strike a chord with someone, or sometimes we say struck a chord in someone. Struck a chord in me, struck a chord with me. It means it... it means an idea or an action or an experience. So it struck a chord, past, it struck a chord means it created some emotion. Or it connected emotionally with me. Right, so maybe this idea of people being hungry, it made him feel, for example, very, very sad. So this issue struck a chord with Joe. It connected emotionally. It triggered a strong emotion in him. It created a strong emotion in him. It struck a chord with him.

Alright, and Joe says, "I mean the land that's being used to raise animals could actually grow a lot more crops. A lot more rice and wheat and soybeans and vegetables." And Kristin says, "Now that's a particular aspect of going vegetarian that I'd never thought of before."

So Kristin didn't realize that raising animals was less efficient for the land. Just raising plants is much, much more efficient. You can feed more people with vegetables than with meat.

And Joe said, "Yeah, that's an important one to me."

So that's an important reason for Joe.

And then he says, "I think just as important to me was the fact that I... that it was really inhumane to the animals."

Okay, the word inhumane means cruel. Cruel, unkind, it can have the idea of violence sometimes. Certainly in this case it has the idea of violence and cruelty. Causing suffering, all those ideas mean inhumane. Inhumane. So these animals that are raised for meat, y'know cows, pigs, chickens, they are treated very inhumanely. Right, very, very inhumanely. Very cruelly, they suffer so much.

And Joe said he read literature that talked about how these animals are treated and the chemicals that get injected into them. And all of this, the suffering, and the pain and the cruelty and the chemicals, it was a real turnoff to him. He said, "That for me was just a real turnoff."

A turnoff is something that makes you feel negative. Something that makes you feel very negative about a certain subject. A turnoff means something that makes you not want to do something. It kind of turns you off. It turns off your desire. Something that turns off your desire. And it depends on the situation. It could be any kind of desire. So here he's talking about the desire to eat meat. So in the past he had a desire, he wanted to eat meat. Then he learned about the animals suffering and the violence and the cruelty and the chemicals and it was a turnoff. It turned off his desire. So after this he did not want to eat meat again. He had no desire to eat meat. So the information was a turnoff. It was a turnoff to eating meat.

Okay and Kristin said, "Yeah, for me as well."

Vegetarian Vocabulary Lesson

So it was also a turnoff to Kristin.

And then Joe asked her, “Why did you become a vegetarian?” And she said, “What led me to it was a series of things.” She said, “Number one, my uncle for example has been a vegetarian as far back as I can remember.”

For a long, long time her uncle has been a vegetarian.

“So it wasn’t a new concept to my family.”

It wasn’t a new idea to her family.

She says, “I can remember when I was in high school I just started losing the taste for meat...”

To lose the taste for something means you really don’t enjoy eating it anymore. The taste isn’t very good anymore. So she started to like meat less and less and less in high school.

“Especially red meat and chicken.” Okay and Joe says, “Yeah.” And she said, “So....” And then Joe says, he laughed and he said, “that wasn’t the case for me. I ate everything but the kitchen sink when I was in high school.”

And that’s a common phrase, everything but the kitchen sink. It’s kind of a joke. It’s a little bit of slang, a little bit of an idiom. It just means everything possible. I ate everything possible when I was in high school. So it means I ate lots and lots and lots of different things. Everything but the kitchen sink. So everything but the kitchen sink means everything possible.

Okay, and then Kristin laughs and she says, “Well, yeah in college it was pretty much just seafood I was eating.” And then she graduated from college, she said, “I was dating a guy, living with him and he decided to become a vegetarian and wanted me to become one. Even though I’d been thinking of becoming a vegetarian, I didn’t want to... I wanted it to be my own decision.”

So she was already thinking about being a vegetarian but she didn’t want her boyfriend at that time to pressure her.

So she told him, “Look, it’s fine. I’m not gonna ask you to cook meat, but I’m not giving up seafood.”

To give up means to quit.

So she said, “If we go out and I go to a restaurant I might choose to eat seafood.” And Joe said, “Okay, that was the first step.”

Vegetarian Vocabulary Lesson

So she stopped eating everything except seafood, continued to eat fish. All other meat she stopped eating. That was her first step.

And then she says, “So I would say though, that the straw that broke the camel’s back...”

Hey, there’s another phrase. The straw that broke the camel’s back.

“was going out on a deep sea fishing trip with a friend.”

Okay, let’s back up a little bit. Straw that broke the camel’s back. It means the last reason, the last event. So it’s this idea that you have a lot of reasons to do something but you don’t do it. But finally one final experience, one small thing, it’s the last thing that finally changes your mind. So maybe you have many, many reasons to do something but you’re still waiting. I don’t know, I don’t know, I don’t know and then finally one little extra thing happens and then suddenly, boom, everything changes. We call that last little experience the straw that broke the camel’s back. You can imagine a camel it’s carrying a lot of heavy stuff. But it’s okay and then you add more, you add more, you add more, oh the camel’s, oh my god. Its back hurts and then you add one little straw, one little tiny piece of something. It’s the last little thing and the camel’s back breaks. It’s that idea... it’s the last little thing that finally causes a big change. Okay, so the little thing that caused a big change for Kristin was a fishing trip.

And her friend was fishing and he brought in the big fish. It was flopping around and they clubbed it to death.

A club is like a wooden stick, and they beat it. They beat the fish to death.

And Kristin saw them killing this living creature. It really disturbed me.

It really upset her. It was the final incident that made her make a big change... caused her to change and become vegetarian. Because she realized oh my god, this thing is alive and meat is alive if they are living creatures. And they’re killing them and I don’t like to cause that.

She said, “From that point on...”

From that point forward.

“I thought, ‘I’m totally giving up seafood as well. I’m not gonna eat anything anymore that has been alive.’”

Meaning an animal.



Vegetarian Vocabulary Lesson

* * * * *

Okay, so that is all of the vocabulary lesson for “Vegetarian.”

Vegan Conversation

vegan: person who doesn't eat animal products

a whole different story: a totally different situation

a totally different ballgame: a totally different situation

it's just second nature: it's effortless

Kristin: You know, we've been talkin' about vegetarianism but being a **vegan** is a **whole different story**.

Joe: Yeah, you're right, I mean it's **a totally different ball game**, for sure.

Kristin: Yeah, you've been one for a while now.

Joe: Yeah, I have, I mean, y'know, it was a little more difficult when I first started. But, y'know, at this point I don't even have to think about it. **It's just second nature.**

Kristin: Yeah, I can imagine. Well, you know Chris that you met just a couple of weeks ago?

Joe: Yeah, yeah, I know who you're talking about.

Kristin: He's, he's the first vegan that I ever met. I actually met him, uh, right after I graduated from college. I still wasn't even a vegetarian and he was already a vegan at that point.

Joe: Did you even, like, know what a vegan diet entailed at that point?

Kristin: Yeah, it's hard for me to think back that far, but, probably not. I probably learned about it through him.

Joe: Yeah, because I don't think there, it was, uh, something that was very popular...

Kristin: No.

Joe: ...at, at that time.

Kristin: No, it wasn't. I will say, though, that there were, um, one, oh actually there were two vegetarian restaurants in Athens where I was going to college. And, of course, Athens being like San Francisco, a lot of the restaurants had vegetarian options. But shortly after meeting Chris, there was a vegan restaurant that actually popped up.

Joe: Oh yeah?

Kristin: Yeah, it didn't, didn't stay very long, but just the fact that one actually came to Athens was pretty surprising.

Vegan Conversation

Joe: There wasn't enough interest.

Kristin: I guess not.

Joe: Yeah.

Kristin: Actually, though, I didn't even think the food was that good.

Joe: Yeah, okay, well that's even worse 'coz then people who actually go in there who aren't interested in becoming a vegetarian get **turned off** even more to the idea.

Kristin: Yeah, that, and I think it was just kind of a little pretentious which **doesn't go over very well** in a college town.

Joe: No, you're right. Well, I mean, I remember when I first made the switch over to being a vegan. I didn't do it, y'know, just... I didn't **go cold turkey**. I mean I, I was dating someone who decided that she wanted to cut dairy out of her diet. So, 'coz we were both vegetarians already and we ate together pretty much every night... So I found that I wasn't really eating much dairy at all to begin with. So I thought, well, y'know, maybe now's the time **to give it a shot**. Let's see how it goes. So I decided I was gonna do it for a week or two. And, uh, after about, y'know, maybe five days, I decided I really wasn't missing the dairy. So I made the decision to just, y'know, **turn over a new leaf** and decided, I'm not gonna eat dairy anymore.

Kristin: Oh, interesting.

Joe: Yeah, it went really well. Y'know, one of the things that I've found most interesting?

Kristin: What?

Joe: When you tell somebody that you have a vegan diet, especially if they're not a vegetarian already, the first thing they say is, "Well, what do you eat?"

Kristin: Right.

Joe: And, y'know, what I've realized? The reason they say that is because they look at their own diet. They remove all the meat. They remove all the dairy. And then they look at what's left. And they see, there's really nothing else left for them.

Vegan Conversation

Kristin: Yeah.

Joe: They don't consider what else there is to eat, they only consider what...

Kristin: Yeah.

Joe: ...there is to eat that they currently eat that isn't meat or dairy.

Kristin: Right, right.

Joe: Yeah, so, but how 'bout you? I mean you, you were in a diet, or, you weren't doin' the vegan diet all that long when we first met.

Kristin: No, I wasn't. In fact, I think that, um, AJ at one point had decided that he wanted to become a vegan and so that started making me think. Hmm... Y'know, considering that, the reasons why he was and thinking about it... But, but at the same time thinking, no, I love cheese. I love dairy way too much. I mean I gave up seafood. That was enough. I'm not giving up dairy.

Joe: Yeah.

Kristin: But then actually going and living in Korea. Japan for a short time... Thailand for two and a half years... And, y'know, the, dairy is pretty non-existent in those diets. I did give it up for those times. And so when I would come back to America I would think, y'know, I could do it. I did it for the, the amount, the stints that I was there. I can do it here. But I would find myself going right back into eating cheese and drinking milk and...

nemesis: enemy

Joe: Yeah, that seems to be the ***nemesis*** of anyone going vegan. Uh, because, especially if you started out as a vegetarian...vegetarians like cheese [laugh] is what I've found. So, uh, it's...

Kristin: Oh my god, for me it was...

Joe: ...to suddenly give it up is difficult.

Kristin: ...for me it was cheese, yogurt, sour cream, aahh...

Joe: Oh, y'see, I've never really liked sour cream.

Vegan Conversation

Kristin: Oh, I loved it.

Joe: But I always did like cheese. Y'know, I loved brie and brie and baguette and brie and crackers.

Kristin: Yeah.

Joe: But, y'know, there's, uh, there's non-dairy cheeses out there as well that, y'know, taste pretty good. And they, they're really a good substitute.

Kristin: Yeah. Well, I've been vegan now for just about a year. And, y'know, when I met you it had been about four months only at that point. And I thought I was ***in over my head***. I mean it was really tough at first. In fact, I don't know that I would still be doin' it if I hadn't met you. Simply because you opened me up to a lot of restaurants here in ***The Mission***, where I'm now living with you, that have a lot of vegan options. I didn't have that available to me downtown where I used to live. Plus, um, you cook...y'know. I didn't cook. So you're teaching me how to cook vegan, um. I was eating mostly like... When I wasn't eating out at restaurants, I was just making maybe rice and then having avocado and nuts and salad. And, that was ***my main staple***, pretty much. And even when I was eating out, I would, I thought that I could go to a Mexican restaurant and just tell them no cheese and that I was safe. But come to find out, I was getting guacamole a lot of times with sour cream.

Joe: Well, y'know, suffice to say, I was really glad to meet you as well. And one reason was that it was great to finally meet someone who was ***on the same page*** as me as far as diets go.

Kristin: Yeah, I agree.

in over my head: *in a too difficult situation*

The Mission: *a neighborhood in San Francisco*

my main staple: *my main food; most common food*

on the same page: *in agreement*



Vegan Mini-Story Lesson

Hi. This is AJ. Welcome to the mini-story for "Vegan."

Let's get started.

* * * *

Pam the panda needed to quit smoking.

Who needed to quit smoking?

Pam, Pam the panda needed to quit smoking.

What was Pam?

Pam was a panda bear.

Was she a dog or was she a panda bear?

She was a panda bear. Pam was a panda bear.

What was her problem?

Well, she needed to quit smoking. She wanted to quit smoking.

First Pam went to China. She decided she wanted to turn over a new leaf.

Did Pam want to make a positive change or a negative change?

Well, she wanted to make a positive change. She wanted to turn over a new leaf. Pam wanted to turn over a new leaf.

She wanted to turn over a new what?

Leaf, she wanted to turn over a new leaf.

How did she want to turn over a new leaf?

Well, by quitting smoking. She wanted to turn over a new leaf by quitting smoking. She wanted to make a positive change by quitting smoking.

Vegan Mini-Story Lesson

Who wanted to turn over a new leaf?

Pam the panda, Pam the panda wanted to turn over a new leaf.

Did she want to turn over a new car?

No, no, no, leaf. Pam the panda wanted to turn over a new leaf.

She was smoking 780 cigarettes a day.

Seven hundred and eighty cigarettes a day.

How many cigarettes was Pam smoking every day?

Seven hundred and eight, she was smoking 780 cigarettes every day.

Who was smoking 780 cigarettes every day?

Pam.

Pam the what?

Panda, Pam the panda was smoking 780 cigarettes every day. And she wanted to turn over a new leaf, she wanted to change.

So first she tried to quit cold turkey.

Did she try to gradually change or did she try to quit totally and suddenly?

Totally and suddenly, she tried to change totally and suddenly. She tried to quit cold turkey.

Who tried to quit cold turkey?

Pam the panda, Pam the panda tried to quit cold turkey. She tried to quit suddenly and totally.

What did she try to quit cold turkey?



Vegan Mini-Story Lesson

Cigarettes, she tried to quit cigarettes cold turkey.

Did she try to quit eating meat cold turkey?

No, no, no, not meat.

Did she try to quit smoking cold turkey? Did she try to quit gradually or did she try to quit cold turkey?

Well, she tried to quit cold turkey. She tried to quit suddenly and totally.

But she failed. She continued to smoke. Next Pam the panda went to Bangkok, Thailand. She went to a Buddhist temple.

Did she go to a Hindu temple?

No, she didn't go to a Hindu temple.

Did she go to a Christian church?

No, she didn't go to a Christian church.

Did she go to a Muslim mosque?

No, she did not go to a mosque.

Where did she go?

She went to a Buddhist temple.

What kind of temple did she go to?

She went to a Buddhist temple.

Where was the Buddhist temple?

Bangkok, Thailand. The Buddhist temple was in Bangkok, Thailand.

Why did she go to a Buddhist temple in Bangkok, Thailand?



Vegan Mini-Story Lesson

Well, to get help. She went to a Buddhist temple in Bangkok, Thailand to get help quitting smoking.

She saw a monk at the temple. She said to the monk “Help me. I’m over my head. I can’t quit by myself.”

Was she over her head?

Yes, she was. She was over her head.

Was she in a situation that was too difficult?

Yes, her situation was too difficult for her.

What situation was too difficult?

Well, quitting smoking, the situation of trying to quit smoking. It was too difficult. She was over her head.

Was she over her head with quitting smoking?

Yes, she was. She was over her head with quitting smoking.

What was she over her head with?

Quitting smoking, she was over her head with quitting smoking.

Who was over her head?

Pam, Pam was over her head with quitting smoking. She needed help. It was too difficult for her by herself. She said to the monk “I’m over my head. I can’t quit by myself.”

The monk said, “Meditate 12 hours a day for 30 days.”

How many hours must she meditate?

Twelve, according to the monk she should have meditated for 12 hours a day. He wanted her to meditate 12 hours a day.

For how many days?



Vegan Mini-Story Lesson

Thirty, for 30 days. The monk wanted her to meditate 12 hours a day for 30 days.

Who wanted Pam to meditate?

The monk, the Buddhist monk.

Did Pam want to meditate 12 hours a day for 30 days?

Oh, no, no, no, no, no.

Pam was lazy. Pam didn't want to meditate 12 hours a day for 30 days. In fact, she quit after only 2 minutes and 43 seconds.

How long did Pam meditate?

She only meditated 2 minutes and 43 seconds.

Who only meditated for 2 minutes and 43 seconds?

Pam, Pam the panda only meditated for 2 minutes and 43 seconds and then she quit.

Did Pam quit meditating after only 2 minutes and 52 seconds?

No, no, no, no, no. She quit after only 2 minutes and 43 seconds.

And then she started to smoke again.

Oh no.

She smoked and she smoked and she smoked more. Finally she decided to go to Japan. Pam went to Japan to see Yoda. She said to Yoda, "I need help. Now I smoke 1,800 cigarettes a day."

How many cigarettes did she smoke every day?

Eighteen hundred, one thousand eight hundred. She smoked 1,800 cigarettes a day.



Vegan Mini-Story Lesson

Did she smoke 1,900 cigarettes a day or 1,800 cigarettes a day?

Eighteen hundred, she smoked 1,800 cigarettes a day.

Yoda said, “Oh, that’s a lot. But I’ll give it a shot.”

Did Yoda say he would try to help her?

Yes, he did. He said, “I’ll give it a shot.” I will try.

How would he give it a shot?

Well, he would try by helping her, by trying to help her. He would give it a shot by trying to help her.

Was he going to try, yes or no?

Yes, he was going to try. He was going to give it a shot.

Give what a shot?

Helping her, he was going to give helping her a shot. Going to try helping her.

So he told her, “Please smoke.” And Pam began to smoke. When she was smoking Yoda smacked her on the head. Pam started to cry. “Why did you hit me?” Yoda said, “Smoke more.” So Pam started to smoke again. Yoda smacked her on the head again.

Did Yoda hit Pam?

Yes, Yoda hit Pam. He smacked Pam.

When did Yoda hit Pam?

When she was smoking, he hit Pam when she was smoking.

He hit Pam every time when she smoked.

Did he hit her sometimes when she smoked or did he hit her every time when she smoked?



Vegan Mini-Story Lesson

He hit her every time when she smoked.

Who hit her every time when she smoked?

Yoda, Yoda hit her every time when she smoked.

Yoda hit who?

Pam, Yoda hit Pam every time when she smoked.

Her head began to hurt. “Oh, I have a headache,” she said. She felt sick. Finally she decided, “No more, I will not smoke again.” Pam finally quit smoking.

Did she finally quit smoking?

Yes, she did. Pam finally quit smoking.

Who finally quit smoking?

Pam the panda bear. Pam the panda finally quit smoking.

She became healthy and happy.

* * * *

Okay, that is the end of the mini-story for “Vegan.” As always, please listen to this story many, many times. Listen to it every day. Listen to it for at least seven days. More is better.

Okay, I will see you next time. Bye bye.



Vegan POV Lesson

Hello, this is AJ. Welcome to the point of view story for "Vegan". Let's get started.

* * * * *

Pam the panda needs to quit smoking. So first she goes to China. She decides she wants to turn over a new leaf because she is smoking 780 cigarettes a day.

First she tries to quit cold turkey. But she fails. She continues to smoke.

Next Pam the panda goes to Bangkok, Thailand. She goes to a Buddhist temple. She sees a monk at the temple. She says to the monk, "Help me. I'm over my head. I can't quit by myself."

The monk says, "Meditate 12 hours a day for 30 days."

But Pam is lazy. She doesn't wanna meditate 12 hours a day for 30 days. In fact, she quits meditating after only 2 minutes and 43 seconds.

And then she starts to smoke again.

She smokes and she smokes and she smokes more. Finally she decides to go to Japan. She goes to Japan to see Yoda. She says to Yoda, "Yoda, I need help. Now I smoke 1,800 cigarettes a day."

Yoda says, "Oh, that is a lot. But I'll give it a shot."

So he tells her, "Please smoke." And Pam begins to smoke. When she's smoking Yoda smacks her on the head. Pam starts to cry, "Why did you hit me?" Yoda says, "Smoke more." So Pam starts to smoke again. Yoda smacks her on the head again.

He hits Pam every time she smokes. Her head begins to hurt. She says, "Oh, I have a headache." She says, "Oh my god, I feel sick." Finally she decides, "No more, I will not smoke again." Pam finally quit smoking.

She becomes healthy and happy.

* * * * *

Okay, next this story is about the future. Imagine this is happening in 10 years, 10 years from now.

* * * * *

Vegan POV Lesson

Ten years from now Pam the panda will need to quit smoking. First she'll go to Japan. She'll decide to turn over a new leaf because she'll be smoking 780 cigarettes a day.

Well, first she's gonna try to quit cold turkey. But she's gonna fail. She'll continue to smoke.

So next she'll go to Bangkok, Thailand. She's gonna go to a Buddhist temple and she'll see a monk at the temple. She'll say to the monk, "Help me. I'm over my head. I can't quit by myself."

The monk is gonna say, "Meditate 12 hours a day for 30 days."

But Pam will be lazy. She won't want to meditate 12 hours a day for 30 days. In fact, she'll quit meditating after only 2 minutes and 43 seconds.

And then she'll start to smoke again and again and again.

She'll smoke and she'll smoke and she'll smoke more. Finally she's gonna decide to go to Japan. Pam will go to Japan to see Yoda. She'll say to Yoda, "I need help. Now I smoke 1,800 cigarettes a day."

Yoda's gonna say, "Oh, that's a lot. But I'll give it a shot."

So he will tell her, "Please smoke." And Pam will begin to smoke. When she's smoking Yoda is gonna smack her on the head. And Pam will start to cry, "Why did you hit me?" Yoda'll say, "Smoke more." So Pam will start to smoke again and Yoda will smack her on the head yet again.

And he'll hit Pam every time she smokes. Her head will begin to hurt. She'll say, "Oh, I have a headache." She'll feel sick. And finally she'll decide, "No more, I will not smoke again." Pam is finally gonna quit smoking.

She'll become healthy and happy.

* * * * *

Alright, our final story begins with, "Since she was four years old..."

* * * * *

Since she was 4 years old Pam has been smoking. She has been smoking since she was 4 years old. She has been smoking 780 cigarettes a day since she was 4 years old. Well, since she was 10 years old she has wanted to quit. So she has wanted to quit for a long time, for many years. Since she was

Vegan POV Lesson

10 years old she has wanted to quit. But she has not been able to quit. Not when she was 10 years old, not when she was 11, not when she was 15, not when she was 20, and not recently. She has not been able to quit smoking.

She has wanted to turn over a new leaf during this time. But she has not been able to do it. Well one day finally she went to China and she tried to quit cold turkey.

But she failed. She continued to smoke. So next she went to Bangkok, Thailand to a Buddhist temple.

She saw a monk at the temple. She said to the monk, "Help me. I'm over my head. I can't quit by myself."

And the monk said, "Meditate 12 hours a day for 30 days."

But Pam was lazy. She didn't wanna meditate 12 hours a day for 30 days. In fact, she quit after only 2 minutes and 43 seconds.

And then she started to smoke again.

She smoked and she smoked and she smoked more. Finally she decided to go to Japan. Pam went to Japan to see Yoda. She said to Yoda, "I need help. Now I smoke 1,800 cigarettes a day."

Yoda said, "Oh, that's a lot. But I'll give it a shot."

So he told her, "Please smoke." And Pam began to smoke. When she was smoking Yoda smacked her on the head. Pam started to cry, "Why did you hit me?" Yoda said, "Smoke more." So Pam started to smoke again. Yoda smacked her on the head again.

He hit Pam every time she smoked. Her head began to hurt. She said, "Oh, I have a headache." She felt sick. And finally she decided, "No more, I will not smoke again." Pam finally quit smoking.

She became healthy and happy.

* * * * *

And that is the end of our point of view stories for "Vegan".

Vegan Vocabulary Lesson

Hello, this is AJ Hoge. Welcome to the vocabulary lesson for “Vegan.” Now this conversation is about the difference between vegan and vegetarian. Kristin and Joe are both vegans. And they talk about how they became vegans... why they became vegans and the difference between the two. What is the difference?

* * * *

Kristin says, “You know, we’ve been talkin’ about vegetarianism but being a vegan is a whole different story.”

Okay, vegetarian or vegetarianism... the noun means, to not eat meat. Vegetarians do not eat meat. They don’t eat fish. They don’t eat the flesh of animals. It means they don’t want an animal to be killed for their food. So if the animal was killed, they will not eat it. That’s vegetarian. Now vegan is more hardcore. Vegan is more strict. A vegan also does not eat meat but in addition a vegan also does not eat dairy. No milk, no cheese, no eggs, no product that comes from an animal. So vegan is more strict, more hardcore. Vegan... no dairy, no cheese, nothing from an animal. Vegetarian is just no meat. But vegetarians do eat cheese. But they do not eat meat. That’s the difference between a vegetarian and a vegan. Alrighty. Next...

So Kristin says, “You know, we’ve been talkin’ about vegetarianism but being a vegan is a whole different story.”

A whole different story. That’s an idiom, a common phrase. Whole different story just means a very different situation. So being vegan is very different than being vegetarian.

Okay and Joe says, “Yeah, you’re right, I mean it’s a totally different ball game, for sure.”

Totally different ball game. Similar meaning it means, it’s a very different situation. It’s a totally different situation or it’s a totally different experience. So being vegan is a totally different ball game from being vegetarian. It’s a totally different situation from being vegetarian.

Kristin says, “Yeah, you’ve been one for a while now.” And Joe says, “Yeah, I have, y’know, it was a little more difficult when I first started. Y’know, but at this point I don’t even have to think about it. It’s just second nature.”

So being vegan is now second nature for him. Second nature means totally natural. Something that is effortless. If you say it’s second nature, it means it’s effortless. You don’t need to try hard, you can do it effortlessly. Hopefully speaking English will be second nature for you and it will be effortless for you.

Kristin says, “Yeah, I can imagine. You know Chris that you met a couple of weeks ago?” And Joe says, “Yeah, I know who you’re talking about.”

Vegan Vocabulary Lesson

Okay, so my friend Chris, Chris Moses, who is the Director of Flow English, by the way. Anyway Chris Moses visited me in San Francisco and he met Kristin and he also met Joe. So Kristin is talking about him, talking about Chris Moses now. And Chris, he's a vegetarian and used to be a vegan.

And Joe says, “Yeah I know who he is.” And Kristin says, “Yeah, he’s the first vegan I ever met after I graduated college. I wasn’t even a vegetarian and he was already a vegan.”

Chris was already a vegan at that time. So Kristin met Chris for the first time. Chris was a vegan.

And Joe said, “Did you know what a vegan entailed at that point?”

What a vegan involved? What was required at that time?

And she said, “Oh, I don’t remember but probably not. I probably learned a lot about it through him.”

Or from him.

“Because at that time it was not popular.” And Kristin says, “No. It wasn’t, but...” She says, “I will say, actually, there were two vegetarian restaurants in Athens where I was going to college. And Athens being like San Francisco, had a lot of restaurants with vegetarian options.”

So Athens is a town. Athens is a town. It’s called Athens, Georgia. It’s a town in the United States in the state of Georgia. A college town, university town. And it’s similar to San Francisco meaning it’s a very liberal place. A very progressive, liberal kind of place. And so it had a lot of vegetarian options at restaurants.

“And there was a vegan restaurant that popped up.”

Popped up means suddenly appeared. Or there was suddenly a vegan restaurant in the town.

And then y’know, they talk about that and Kristin says, “Actually, though, I didn’t even think the food was that good.”

So Kristin didn’t like the food at this vegan restaurant in Athens.

And then Joe said, “Yeah, people go in there they get turned off to the idea.”

To be turned off to something means it turns off your desire to do something. It stops your desire. So he’s saying sometimes people go to a restaurant, a vegetarian restaurant or a vegan restaurant. If the food is bad, then that person will be turned off. They will be turned off to the idea of being vegetarian. In other words, if they go to a restaurant, a vegetarian restaurant and the food is bad, then they don’t want to become

Vegan Vocabulary Lesson

vegetarian. They think oh vegetarian food is terrible, it tastes bad. So they are turned off by the restaurant. Their desire to be vegetarian is turned off.

Okay, and Kristin says, "Yeah, and also the restaurant was just kind of a little pretentious, which doesn't go over well in a college town."

Okay, to be pretentious means kind of snobby. Right, it means you think you are better than other people. Snobby is a, is a, kind of a very casual way to say that word. Pretentious is a little more formal way to say it. But it's the idea of being snobby. It means you think you are better than other people. And that doesn't go over well in a college town. To go over well means to be popular. Or to be liked. So people in college towns are more relaxed. They don't like snobby stuff. They don't like pretentious stuff. Pretentious places don't go over well. They're not popular in college towns.

And Joe says, "Yeah, you're right." He said, "I remember when I first made the switch to being a vegan."

The first change to being vegan.

He said, "I didn't do it cold turkey. I didn't go cold turkey."

To go cold turkey... very common phrase, common idiom. To go cold turkey or cold turkey means to stop suddenly and completely. To make a change. Usually stop doing something suddenly and completely. You hear this a lot with smoking. Someone wants to quit smoking. And they say, "I quit smoking cold turkey." It means one day they stopped completely. Not gradually, right. It's the opposite of gradually. Gradually means little by little, maybe one day you smoke less, the next day less, the next day less, the next day less, and finally you stop completely. That's gradually. Cold turkey means one day you completely stop. Yesterday you were smoking two packs of cigarettes every day. Today, zero. So he didn't go cold turkey with vegan. It means he didn't stop eating meat and dairy suddenly, completely one day. He did it gradually.

He said he was dating someone and she decided she wanted to cut dairy out of her diet. She wanted to stop eating dairy. They were already vegetarians. And he said, "I found it wasn't really... I wasn't really eating much dairy at all to begin with."

So basically, already he was not eating a lot of dairy. He already was eating very little.

So then he thought, "Well, maybe now it's time to give it a shot."

To give something a shot means to try something. You say, "I will give it a shot." means I will try to do it. So to give it a shot, give something a shot means try to do it. I will give vegan a shot means, I will try to be vegan.

Vegan Vocabulary Lesson

So he said, “I decided to give it a shot and he thought let’s see how it goes.”

Let’s see how it happens. Let’s see what happens.

And then after five days he realized he wasn’t missing the dairy. He didn’t miss it. So he decided, “Hey, I’m going to do it, I’m going to turn over a new leaf. I’m not gonna eat dairy anymore.”

Another common idiom here, to turn over a new leaf. To turn over a new leaf means to make a positive change. It means to change your life in a positive way. So he decided to turn over a new leaf. He decided to make a positive change in his life. Okay, so to turn over a new leaf. To make a positive change.

Kristin says, “Oh, interesting.” And Joe said, “Yeah, it went really well.”

Being vegan went well. It was easy.

And he said, “Y’know, I found something interesting?” She says, “What?” And he says, “When you tell somebody that you have a vegan diet, and if they’re not a vegetarian they usually ask, ‘Well, what do you eat?’”

And, he says y’know, what I realized? The reason they say that is because they look at their own diet.

They look at their own eating.

“And then they remove the meat.”

They think, oh okay, if I don’t eat meat.

“And then they remove all the dairy.”

And they say okay, now I won’t eat dairy.

“And then there’s nothing left.”

So in other words, most Americans eat meat and dairy mostly. Most Americans do not eat a lot of fruit. Most Americans do not eat a lot of vegetables. Most Americans do not eat a lot of rice. What do they eat? Most Americans eat a lot of meat. A lot of cheese, a lot of dairy. And so many Americans don’t understand the idea of vegan. They think oh my god, what do you eat? They don’t understand about vegetables and rice and fruit and other things. So he’s saying sometimes people are confused. Americans especially are confused by the idea of being vegan.

Vegan Vocabulary Lesson

Okay and Kristin says, "Yeah." And he says, "Y'know, they don't have... there's nothing to eat that they... Because what they currently eat isn't meat or dairy, then there's nothing for them. Because that's what they eat mostly." And then Joe says, "How 'bout you?"

You know, why did you decide to be vegan?

And he says, "When I first met you, you weren't doing the vegan diet all that long."

It means when they first met, she had only been a vegan for a short time. Maybe only a couple of months. She started being vegan a couple of months before she met Joe.

And Kristin says, "No, I wasn't."

I wasn't a vegan for a long time when we met.

She says, "In fact, I think that AJ at one point had decided he wanted to be vegan and so that started making me think."

It made her consider the reasons that I wanted to be a vegan.

And she says, "I love cheese. I love dairy." And she thought oh I gave up seafood. I am a vegetarian. That's enough. I'm not giving up dairy.

So in the beginning she thought no, I don't want to be a vegan. I can't do it. I already am a vegetarian. It's too much. I can't give up dairy also.

But then... She going... She said she went to Korea. Lived in Korea. She lived in Japan for a short time. She lived in Thailand for two and a half years. She says, "Y'know, the dairy is pretty non-existent in those diets."

In those countries they don't eat a lot of dairy. Korea, Japan, Thailand. Dairy is not so popular. Certainly not like the United States, not like Europe.

So she said, "I was basically already vegan in those countries."

She was vegetarian and then naturally those diets don't include much dairy. So she became almost vegan just because she was living in those countries.

And she said, "I did give it up for those times. I did give it up, I did quit eating dairy at the times I was

Vegan Vocabulary Lesson

living in those countries.” But then she would come back to America and she did it for a few stints while she was there but she would find herself going right back into eating cheese and drinking milk.

What she is saying is that when she was living in other countries she could be vegan. It was possible. It was easy. But when she returned from her time, from her stints. Stint means a short time doing something. When she returned from her time in Asia, then she began to eat cheese and milk again when she was in the United States.

And Joe says, “That seems to be the nemesis of anyone going vegan. Because vegetarians like cheese.”

So he’s saying cheese is the nemesis. Nemesis means enemy. Someone or something that is your enemy. So cheese is the enemy of vegans because a lot of vegetarians love cheese. So it’s difficult for them to quit eating cheese. So it’s kind of a joke that cheese is the enemy of the vegetarian... vegan because you have to fight your desire to eat it. At least in the beginning.

And Kristin says, “Oh my god, yes. For me it was...”

So yes, cheese was her nemesis.

She says, “Also it was cheese, yogurt, sour cream.”

So she liked all of these things.

And Joe then later says, “I also did like cheese.” And he said, “I loved brie and brie and baguettes and brie and crackers.”

Brie is a kind of cheese, a type of cheese. Brie. So he liked this type of cheese called brie. And a baguette is a kind of bread. So a baguette is a kind of bread and brie is a kind of cheese.

But then Joe says, “Y’know, there are non-dairy cheeses out there.”

Out there just meaning in the world. So there are non-dairy cheeses in the world.

“And they taste pretty good. And they’re a good substitute.”

So now he’s a vegan. So he can eat non-dairy cheeses.

And then finally Kristin says, “Yeah. Well, I’ve been a vegan now for about a year.”

Vegan Vocabulary Lesson

When she met Joe she had been a vegan for four months at that time, at that point. And now it's been one year.

But she said when she met Joe, after being vegan for four months, she thought she was in over her head because it was really tough in the beginning.

To be in over your head means to be in a situation that is too difficult for you. It comes from swimming. Imagine you're in the water. If the water is over your head, it means you're drowning right. It means you're going to die. The water is over your head you can't breathe. It is a very tough, bad situation for you. So that's what it means. To be in over your head means to be in a very terrible situation. It means to be in a situation that is too difficult for you. So she thought, oh my god, vegan is too difficult for me. I'm in over my head.

She said, "And maybe I would have quit. I don't know if I would still be doing it if I hadn't met you."

So Joe helped her to remain vegan.

Because she said, "You opened me up to a lot of restaurants here in The Mission."

To open someone up to something... Opened me up to a lot of restaurants. It means introduced me to a lot of restaurants or helped me enjoy a lot of restaurants. You opened me up to a lot of restaurants. You helped me enjoy a lot of restaurants here in The Mission. The Mission is a neighborhood in San Francisco. It's just part of San Francisco, the city, The Mission neighborhood where they live.

So she says, "Now I have a lot of vegan options."

A lot of vegan choices in this neighborhood.

And she said, "I didn't have that available to me downtown where I used to live."

So her new neighborhood has more vegan stuff, more vegan restaurants than downtown San Francisco.

She says, "Plus you cook and I didn't cook. So you're teaching me how to cook vegan."

Joe is teaching her how to cook vegan food.

She said, "I was eating mostly, I was mostly eating out at restaurants. Not eating at home. I was just maybe making rice and then having avocado and nuts and salad. That was my main staple."

A staple, when you talk about food, like my staple food or a staple food, it means the food you always eat.

Vegan Vocabulary Lesson

For example: Rice is a staple food in Japan, Thailand, Korea, Taiwan, most of Asia. In most of Asia, rice is a staple food. Japanese people, Asian people, Korean people mostly eat rice every day. In Europe maybe bread, maybe bread is a staple food. People eat it all the time, almost every meal. Maybe beans would be in Mexico or Central America or South America, maybe beans are a staple food. You eat beans almost every meal in those countries. So a staple food. The most common food.

She says, “Even when I was eating out, I thought I could go to a Mexican restaurant, for example, and just tell them no cheese”. And she thought she was safe.

She thought to be a vegan she could just say no cheese.

But then she realized she was getting guacamole that had sour cream in it.

So she realized oh, even if I say no cheese, sometimes they have sour cream. Guacamole is avocado sauce.

Okay and then finally at the end Joe says, “Well, suffice to say...”

Enough to say.

“I was really glad to meet you as well. And one reason was it was great to finally meet someone who was on the same page as me as far as diets go.”

Again, on the same page means sharing the same idea. Agreeing about something. We are on the same page means we agree about this. We share the same idea. So they both share the same idea about being vegan. They both agree about being vegan. They are both on the same page.

* * * * *

Okay, and that is the end of the vocabulary lesson for “Vegan.”

Health Care Conversation

surcharge: extra charge

Joe: Hey, you know I went out for lunch today with Sam and the restaurant we ate at added an additional 5% **surcharge** to the bill.

Kristin: Oh really, why is that?

defray: to lessen; to cover (a cost)

Joe: Well, I guess it was to help **defray** the cost of healthcare for their employees. You know, I've noticed a lot of restaurants here in San Francisco doing that of late.

Kristin: Oh, that's that Healthy San Francisco program.

makes sense: is understandable; seems sensible

Joe: Oh, yeah, that actually **makes sense**.

Kristin: Yeah, I first found out about it a few months back when I went to a meeting at work about it. Apparently I'm eligible.

Joe: Oh, yeah, yeah, I think I saw something about the eligibility rules being that you need to make, uh, below a certain amount of money per year and you need to not have, uh, health insurance.

Kristin: Right, and also you have to work a minimum of, I think it's like 10 hours a week, 10 or 12 hours a week.

Joe: Yeah, okay.

fed up with: tired of; sick of; angry about

Kristin: Yeah, but you know, in general I'm just **fed up with** the healthcare in this country. I will say though, at least here in San Francisco we have some sort of safety net like this new program.

Joe: Yeah, yeah it's good that we have that program, but I hear where you're, y'know, I hear what you're saying. I am fed up with it, too. I mean I read that the U.S. spends twice as much per person on healthcare than any other industrialized nation.

Kristin: Jeez.

Joe: Yeah. It's the insurance companies. I mean, they act as a middle man between the patients and the healthcare providers. And all they do is help to drive the prices up.

Kristin: Um-hm. Yeah, well, you know, before a program was even in, even came

Health Care Conversation

downsides:
disadvantages; negatives
into existence like this Healthy San Francisco one, someone like me who had zero insurance. We had to resort to going to health centers. And, I mean there are definitely some **downsides** to that. For example, if they give you an appointment time, like let's say they say come in tomorrow morning at 8 o'clock, you've got to be there at 8 o'clock sharp. If you're five minutes late, they are not going to admit you.

Joe: Yeah

Kristin: And then you could end up sitting there waiting for hours, even though you've got this appointment time and you're there on time.

Joe: Yeah, I've...

Kristin: When you've, when they finally do take you back then, you might not even see a doctor; it could be a **nurse practitioner**.

Joe: Yeah, yeah, I've actually heard that, uh, the, uh, the people who work there also, the doctors and the nurses, they just don't provide as good a care.

Kristin: Well, no, I wouldn't say that, I feel like it has been pretty good care, it's just, it's more of an iss-, the timing, y'know, you've got to be there right on time. They expect that of you. And yet you could just sit there waiting for hours once you are there...

Joe: Yeah.

Kristin: ...that's been more the issue for me. I feel like the care has been pretty good though.

Joe: Yeah. I actually have health insurance but I only have to go to the doctor once in a while. I guess it's 'cause I'm fortunate to be **in good shape**, but, uh...

Kristin: Yeah.

Joe: ...but if I didn't have insurance and I had a medical emergency, the costs would just be **out of control**.

Kristin: Oh, yeah.

Joe: Or even if I, y'know, even if ... Like now I do have insurance. If I maxed out

Health Care Conversation

that insurance, forget it. It'd be the same situation...

Kristin: Right.

Joe: ...I'd **pay through the nose**.

Kristin: Yep. Well I think it was you that was telling me that San Francisco General Hospital charges on a **sliding scale** basis.

Joe: Yeah.

Kristin: That's awesome.

Joe: Yeah, you're right, they do. I don't know of any, I think they're the only...well, I'm certain that they're the only hospital in San Francisco that does, uh, that has such a, a service.

Kristin: Well, I've never known of any hospitals in Georgia that did that.

Joe: Yeah, come to think of it, I don't really know of any other hospitals in the nation. But it's possible that there are some and we just don't know about 'em.

Kristin: Right.

Joe: Did I ever tell you that Neil actually had his **appendix** taken out at San Francisco General?

Kristin: No, huh-uh.

Joe: Yeah, this was a long time ago. It was like way before I met you. And, uh, he didn't have a job. He didn't have any health insurance, y'know. He didn't really have any money. And, uh, but y'know, his appendix needed to be taken out. So he had it done at San Francisco General. And, uh, y'know, they knew his situation. And, uh, they told him it... First off I want to say he spent five days there and nights...

Kristin: Whoa.

Joe: ...And, uh, guess how much they charged him?

Kristin: I have no idea, how much?

Health Care Conversation

bucks: dollars

Joe: It was only a hundred **bucks**.

Kristin: Wow! What? I can't believe that!

Joe: Yeah, I mean this was a long time ago...

Kristin: That's amazing!

Joe: ...but still, y'know, so, uh, yeah, so when he was actually checking out of the hospital, um, they actually told him, "Hey we, we know that you don't have a job. And you, you told us you don't have much money. So, uh, y'know, don't worry about the hundred bucks. Uh, we'll just **write it off**."

write it off: accept a loss;
forget about it

Kristin: Jeez! You know, that makes me think of when I was living in Bangkok. I actually got really sick and ended up being hospitalized for three days and two nights. And I remember the whole time thinking "God, this is gonna to be so expensive.". And it ended up only costing me like a hundred and fifty to two hundred and fifty bucks. That's it. I mean...

Joe: That's great.

pale at the thought of:
scared by a thought or
idea

Kristin: ...I, I **pale at the thought** of what that would have cost me here with no insurance.



Health Care Mini-Story Lesson

Hello and welcome to the mini-story for "Health Care." Let's get started.

* * * * *

Terry the toad wanted a Ferrari. But he had no money.

What did Terry the toad want?

A Ferrari.

Did Terry the toad want a boat?

No, Terry the toad didn't want a boat. Terry the toad wanted a car, a very expensive car. Terry the toad wanted a Ferrari, a fast car.

Who wanted a fast Ferrari?

Terry did. Terry the toad wanted a Ferrari.

Did Terry the toad want a Ford or did Terry the toad want a Ferrari?

Of course, Terry the toad wanted a Ferrari.

What was Terry's problem?

Well, Terry's problem was that he had no money. Terry the toad had no money.

Are Ferrari's expensive?

Oh yes, Ferrari's are very expensive. So Terry the toad wanted an expensive Ferrari but he had no money.

What color Ferrari did he want? Red?

No, not red.

Terry the toad wanted a green Ferrari, a bright green Ferrari. But Terry had no money. So Terry decided to get a Ferrari somehow.

Where was Terry?



Health Care Mini-Story Lesson

Terry was in Miami, Florida.

Where did Terry live?

Terry lived in Miami, Florida.

Where was he from?

Miami, Miami, Florida.

Well Terry was in Miami and Terry said, “I’m fed up with hopping everywhere. I want a fast, bright green, brand new Ferrari.”

What was Terry sick of?

Well Terry was sick of hopping around everywhere. Terry said, “I’m fed up with hopping everywhere.”

Did Terry like to hop everywhere?

No, he didn’t like it. He said, “I’m fed up with hopping everywhere.” I hate hopping everywhere. I’m sick of hopping everywhere. I’m tired of hopping everywhere.

Who was fed up with hopping everywhere?

Terry, Terry was fed up with hopping everywhere.

What was Terry?

Terry was a toad. Terry was a toad who was fed up with hopping everywhere.

Did Terry want to hop or did Terry want to drive?

Terry wanted to drive a fast Ferrari. He was fed up with hopping everywhere. He was fed up with hopping everywhere. He wanted to drive a super fast, brand new, bright green Ferrari.

So Terry went to a Ferrari dealer.



Health Care Mini-Story Lesson

Did he go to a Ferrari store?

Yes, he did. He went to a Ferrari dealer.

He asked the dealer, “How much is a Ferrari?” And the dealer said, “\$97,000 for a brand new, bright green Ferrari.”

Did Terry have \$97,000?

No, Terry didn’t have \$97,000.

Did Terry have \$80,000?

No, Terry didn’t have \$80,000. Terry didn’t have \$97,000.

How much money did Terry have?

Zero, none, Terry didn’t have any money.

Terry said, “Jeez, that’s expensive. Can I have a loan?”

Was Terry surprised about the price?

Yes, Terry was surprised about the price. Terry said, “Jeez.” “Jeez, that’s expensive.” Terry was very surprised. Jeez, wow, that’s expensive.

What did he say?

He said, “Jeez”...wow, that’s expensive.

And what did he ask?

Well he asked “Can I have a loan?”

What did he want?

A loan.



Health Care Mini-Story Lesson

Terry wanted a loan for what?

For a Ferrari, Terry wanted a loan for a Ferrari.

Did he want a loan for a house?

No, not for a house.

Did he want a loan for school?

No, not for school.

What did he want a loan for?

For a Ferrari, he wanted a loan for a Ferrari.

How much of a loan did he want?

Well, \$97,000. He wanted a \$97,000 loan for a Ferrari.

Did the Ferrari dealer give him a loan?

No, no, no, he didn't give Terry a loan.

The Ferrari dealer said, “Listen, you’ll pay through the nose if you get a loan. It’s very expensive. Cash is much cheaper.”

Would Terry pay through the nose if he got a loan?

Yes, he would pay through the nose if he got a loan.

Is getting a loan very expensive for a Ferrari?

Yes, it’s very expensive. You’ll pay through the nose. You’ll pay the maximum amount. You’ll pay the biggest, highest amount if you get a loan. He said you’ll pay through the nose.

Who would pay through the nose if he got a loan?



Health Care Mini-Story Lesson

Terry, Terry the toad. Terry the toad would pay through the nose if he got a loan.

Would he pay through the nose if he paid cash?

No, no, no, if he paid cash it would be cheaper. But if he got a loan he would pay through the nose. He would pay the highest amount.

But there is one problem, of course. Terry the toad had no cash. So Terry went to Everglade Swamp. Every day he caught flies.

What did he catch?

Flies, he caught flies.

And how often did he catch flies?

Every day, every day he caught flies.

Why did he catch flies?

Well, to make money, of course. So he could sell them.

How many flies did Terry catch?

Terry caught 20.7 billion flies.

How many flies did he catch? 20.7 million flies, right?

No, not right. 20.7 billion flies. Terry caught 20.7 billion flies. Billion.

He caught 20.7 billion what?

Flies, Terry caught 20.7 billion flies.

What did he do with the flies?

Well, he sold them to Bill Gates.

Who did he sell the flies to?



Health Care Mini-Story Lesson

Bill Gates, he sold the flies to Bill Gates.

How many flies did he sell to Bill Gates?

20.7 billion, he sold 20.7 billion flies to Bill Gates.

Who did he sell them to?

Bill Gates, he sold them to Bill Gates.

What did he sell to Bill Gates?

Flies, he sold flies to Bill Gates, 20.7 billion flies to Bill Gates.

Why did he sell them to Bill Gates?

Well, to defray the cost of the Ferrari, of course.

Did he want to lessen the cost of the Ferrari? Did he want to cover the cost of the Ferrari?

Yes, he did. He wanted to defray the cost of the Ferrari.

He wanted to defray the cost of the Ford or the cost of the Ferrari?

Well, the Ferrari, he wanted to defray the cost of the Ferrari.

How did he defray the cost of the Ferrari?

He defrayed the cost of the Ferrari by selling 20.7 billion flies to Bill Gates.

Did he defray the cost of the Ferrari?

Yes, he did. He defrayed the cost of the Ferrari. In fact, he defrayed all of the cost of the Ferrari. He covered all of the cost. Bill Gates paid him \$97,210.

How much was the Ferrari?

The Ferrari was \$97,000.



Health Care Mini-Story Lesson

How much did Bill Gates pay him?

\$97,210, so that defrayed all of the cost of the Ferrari.

Which was higher, the amount Bill Gates paid him or the cost of the Ferrari?

Well, the amount that Bill Gates paid him obviously was higher. Bill Gates paid him \$97,210. The Ferrari was \$97,000.

And so Terry the toad took his money to the Ferrari dealer. And he bought a brand new, bright green, super fast, Ferrari. He was very happy. A very, very happy toad.

* * * *

Okay, that is the end of the mini-story for “Health Care.” Please listen to it several times many times.

And I will see you next time. Thanks a lot. Bye bye.



Healthcare POV Lesson

Hello, this is AJ Hoge. Welcome to the POV lesson for "Healthcare". Let's start.

* * * * *

Terry the toad wants a Ferrari. But he has no money. In fact, Terry the toad wants a green Ferrari, a bright green Ferrari. But Terry has no money. So he decides to get a Ferrari somehow.

Now, of course, Terry lives in Miami, Florida and he says, "I'm fed up with hopping around everywhere. I want a fast, bright green, brand new Ferrari."

So he goes to a Ferrari dealer. He asks the dealer, "How much is a Ferrari?" And the dealer says, "\$97,000 for a brand new, bright green Ferrari."

Terry says, "Jeez, that's expensive. Can I have a loan?" The Ferrari dealer says, "Listen, you'll pay through the nose if you get a loan. It's very expensive. Cash is much cheaper."

But there is one problem, of course. Terry the toad has no cash. So Terry goes to Everglade Swamp. Every day he catches flies. Terry catches 20.7 billion flies. And he sells them to Bill Gates. Bill Gates pays him \$97,210.

And so Terry the toad takes his money to the Ferrari dealer. And he buys a brand new, bright green, super fast, Ferrari. He's very happy. He is a very, very happy toad.

* * * * *

Okay, now that was a story that was happening at the same time that we are hearing it, right? So he goes to the Ferrari dealer. He *buys* a Ferrari. It means it's kind of happening now, as we're hearing it. It's...we're hearing it from the present point of view. Next, let's go to the future. Imagine this will happen in the future.

* * * * *

So two years from now, two years in the future there will be a toad. His name is gonna be Terry. But Terry will have a problem. Terry the toad'll want a green Ferrari, a bright green Ferrari. But he's not gonna have any money. So he's gonna decide to get a Ferrari somehow.

Terry will live in Miami, Florida. He's gonna live there in the future. Terry will be in Miami and he'll say, "I'm fed up with hopping around everywhere. I want a fast, bright green, brand new Ferrari."

So he's gonna go to a Ferrari dealer. And he's gonna ask the dealer, "How much is a Ferrari?" And the dealer will say, "\$97,000 for a brand new, bright green Ferrari."



Healthcare POV Lesson

Terry's gonna say, "Jeez, that's expensive. Can I have a loan?" The Ferrari dealer will say, "Listen, you'll pay through the nose if you get a loan. It's very expensive. Cash is much cheaper."

But there's gonna be one problem, of course. Terry the toad will not have cash. He won't have any cash. So Terry is gonna go to Everglade Swamp. And every day he's gonna catch flies. And he will catch 20.7 billion flies. Then, he's gonna sell them to Bill Gates. Bill Gates will pay him \$97,210.

And so Terry'll take his money to the Ferrari dealer. And he'll buy a brand new, bright green, super fast, Ferrari. He'll be very happy. He'll be a very, very happy toad.

* * * * *

Alright, next our third version. It starts with, "Since he was young..."

* * * * *

Since he was young Terry has wanted a Ferrari. But since he has been young he has had no money. Terry the toad has wanted a green Ferrari, a bright green Ferrari since he was very young. But he has never had money. This has been a problem for Terry since he was young until now. He has always wanted a Ferrari during this entire time. He has dreamed about getting a bright, green Ferrari since he was young.

And, since he was young, Terry has lived in Miami, Florida. Well, one day he went to a Ferrari dealer in Miami. And he said, "I want a fast, bright green, brand new Ferrari." He asked the dealer, "How much is a Ferrari?" And the dealer said, "\$97,000 for a brand new, bright green Ferrari."

Terry said, "Jeez, that's expensive. Can I have a loan?" The Ferrari dealer said, "Listen, you'll pay through the nose if you get a loan. It's very expensive. Cash is much cheaper."

But there was one problem, of course. Terry the toad had no cash. So Terry went to Everglade Swamp. And every day he caught flies. Terry caught 20.7 billion flies. Then he sold them to Bill Gates. Bill Gates paid him \$97,210.

Terry immediately went to the Ferrari dealer. And he bought a brand new, bright green, super fast, Ferrari. He was very happy. He was a very, very happy toad.

* * * * *

And that is the end of our point of view stories for "Healthcare". I'll see you next time. Bye bye.



Health Care Vocabulary Lesson

Hello. This is AJ Hoge again. Welcome to the vocabulary lesson for "Health Care." Let's start.

* * * * *

At the beginning of the conversation Joe and Kristin talk about a friend, Joe's friend, whose name is Sam. And Sam went to a restaurant and at the restaurant they charged him an additional 5%.

A *surcharge*. A *surcharge* is an extra charge, an extra payment. Kind of like a tax.

So when he went to the restaurant, this friend, he had to pay 5% extra. And Kristin says, "Why, why is that?" And Joe says, "To defray the cost of healthcare for their employees."

To *defray* means to lessen or to reduce. So reduce the cost of healthcare, lessen the cost of healthcare. Defray the cost of healthcare. So it means in San Francisco we have a new program, a new government program, city government program. And it's a healthcare program for everybody. In most of America, most of the United States, we do not have healthcare for everyone. Only people with jobs, full-time jobs and even sometimes not everybody who has a full-time job... only people with good full-time jobs have healthcare in the United States. Millions of people do not have healthcare. If they get sick, they must pay with their own money... very expensive, very difficult. But San Francisco is a different city in America, it's not normal. We never do anything normal in San Francisco, everything's different. We're a very liberal city, a very aggressive city. And so our city created a new healthcare program. So everyone in the city has healthcare. But to pay for this program there is now a surcharge, a tax, an extra tax, a 5% tax on businesses. So restaurants are adding the tax to their bill so when you go to a restaurant you have to pay 5% more. And this defrays the cost, it covers the cost, it lessens the cost of the healthcare tax.

Kristin says, "It's called the Healthy San Francisco program." And Joe says, "Oh, that makes sense."

Right, that's the name, it makes sense. To *make sense* means to sound appropriate. To sound correct. To be understandable, that makes sense. To *make sense*. He says oh, that's understandable, that makes sense.

And Kristin says, "Yeah, I first found out I'm eligible for the program."

To *be eligible* means to be appropriate for something. It means you have the necessary requirements to enter a program. Usually to enter a program. She is eligible for the program... it means she is appropriate for the program, she is able to join the program. So Kristin can join the program because she does not have healthcare from her job. Oh no, terrible.

And Joe says, "Yes, to be eligible you need to make below a certain amount of money per year and you also can't have health insurance already."

Health Care Vocabulary Lesson

So those are the two *eligibility rules*. *Eligibility rules* means requirements. *Eligibility rules* are requirements. Requirements are (1) you can't be rich; and (2) you can't already have healthcare. So if you meet those requirements you can join the San Francisco Healthy Program.

And Kristin talks a little more about some of the requirements and then they talk about healthcare in the United States. Kristin says, "I'm fed up with healthcare in this country. I will say, at least here in San Francisco we have a safety net like this new program."

So there we have two new phrases. To be fed up with, number one. To be fed up with something. She's fed up with healthcare in this country. To be fed up with something means to not like it anymore. Or to hate it, or to be sick of it, that's another common phrase, to be sick of, to be fed up with. I'm fed up with healthcare in this country. I hate healthcare in this country. I am angry about healthcare in this country. Fed up with means tired of, sick of, angry about, all of those things. So she's really angry about healthcare in the United States. She's fed up with it. She says at least here in San Francisco we have some kind of safety net like this new program. A safety net, a social safety net is a protection for poor people really. It means programs that help poor people. If you lose your job then you still will be okay. Maybe not happy, but you will have food, you will have someplace to live, a house or an apartment, you will have healthcare. That's a safety net, these very basic things for living. It means the government, the community, will always give these things to people, the poor people. A safety net, it keeps them safe. Basic safety is provided, is given.

And Joe says, "You know what? I'm fed up, too, with healthcare in the United States." He said, "It's good that we have this program in the city but I am fed up, too. The United States spends twice as much per person on healthcare than any other nation."

Two times more per person... so we have very expensive healthcare, a lot of money, and yet, still, many, many people do not get help. It's very bad. A lot of people don't get help, plus it's expensive. Not a great combination.

Okay then Joe says, "Yeah, it's the insurance companies. They're the problem. They act as middlemen between the patients and the healthcare providers and they only increase the prices. They drive up the prices.

So the insurance companies are very powerful, very rich, and they make healthcare very expensive here in the United States.

Kristin then says, "Before we had a program like this in San Francisco, someone like me who had zero insurance..."

Had no insurance.

Health Care Vocabulary Lesson

“...had to resort to going to health centers. And there were definitely downsides to that.”

So they did have some health centers, community health centers in the city. They still do, for people without insurance. But they have some downsides. A downside is a disadvantage or a negative point. So there were some negative things about the health centers, some downsides. So downsides again means a negative point, a negative part, something negative about the health care centers.

And she talks about how you had to make an appointment, could not be late for the appointment. But when you did arrive on time, you still had to wait many hours.

So even if you’re very sick you have to wait and wait and wait and you’re sick (oh I feel terrible). Waiting, waiting, waiting, many, many, many hours.

“And then you might not even see a doctor,” she said. “It could be a nurse practitioner.”

A nurse practitioner is a professional nurse... a nurse who has more training. Sort of a very high level nurse, almost a doctor. A nurse that is almost a doctor. We call that a nurse practitioner. Nurse practitioner. And you know, they are actually very good, they’re very skilled. Some people like nurse practitioners better than doctors. They feel that they are better and other people prefer doctors.

And Joe said, “Yeah, um, I heard that people that work there, the doctors and nurses, they don’t provide good care.” And Kristin says, “No, no, that’s not true.” She says, “Generally I got good care, it’s just I had to wait.”

Waiting for hours and hours and hours.

“The problem was waiting and waiting. That was more of an issue for me,” she said. I feel like the care has been pretty good though.”

So she got good care. She got taken care of eventually but she had to wait a long time.

And then Joe says, “I actually have health insurance but I only have to go to the doctor once in a while. Because I have been fortunate to be healthy.”

Right, he says I have been fortunate to be healthy. I only go once in a while. I have been fortunate to be in good shape. In good shape means healthy. To be in good shape means to be healthy. To be in good shape, one more time, means to be healthy. So Joe says I have been in good shape, I have been healthy, luckily.



Health Care Vocabulary Lesson

So he said, “If I did not, if I didn’t have health insurance, and I had an emergency, the cost would be out of control.”

Out of control means ridiculous or crazy or extremely high or extremely something. Extremely, extremely expensive here is what it means. The cost would be extremely expensive, extremely crazy. Too, too much.

And then he says, “Even though I do have insurance, if I maxed out the insurance, forget it, it would be the same situation.”

So if you max out your insurance, it means you used all of the benefits. You reached the maximum amount of benefits. Many insurance companies in the United States have a limit. They will only pay a certain amount of money per year. If you go over that amount, it’s called maxing out your insurance. And after that you must pay everything yourself. It’s quite terrible.

Kristin says, “Right.” And he says, “I’d pay through the nose.”

To pay through the nose, that’s a slang phrase, an idiom phrase. To pay through the nose means to pay a lot of money for something. It’s the opposite of getting a discount. Instead of getting a discount, you pay the highest possible price. We call that paying through the nose. Oh I paid through the nose... it means you had to pay a lot for something. You did not get a discount. The opposite, you paid the most amount possible. To pay through the nose, pay through the nose.

And Kristin says, “Yep, well, I think it was you that was telling me that San Francisco Hospital charges on a sliding scale basis.”

A sliding scale, a sliding scale. A sliding scale means variable price. What does that mean? Variable means changing price. So sliding scale means it can move, right, to slide means to move. So a sliding scale means a moving scale. It means a moving price. So what this means really in a hospital is if you are poor, you pay a low price. If you are middle class, you pay a medium price. If you are rich, you pay a high price. It’s a sliding scale. It means different price for different people. That’s a sliding scale. It depends on your income.

And Kristin says, “Oh that’s awesome, that’s great.”

She says that’s great.

So then Joe’s agreeing with Kristin. And then he says that he thinks that it is the only hospital in San Francisco that does that... that has such a service.

He means that he thinks it is it is the only hospital that charges on a sliding scale basis.



Health Care Vocabulary Lesson

And then Kristin said, “I’ve never known of any hospitals in Georgia that did that.”

And she means that charged on a sliding scale basis. She’s never known any hospitals in Georgia that charged on a sliding scale basis.

And then Joe says, “Yeah, come to think of it, I don’t really know of any other hospitals in the nation. But it’s possible that there are some and we just don’t know about ‘em.”

So what he’s saying is that he cannot think of any other hospitals in the nation that charge on a sliding scale basis.

Then Joe tells Kristin about his friend Neil. He says, “He didn’t have a job. He didn’t have any health insurance, y’know. He didn’t really have any money. And, uh, but y’know, his appendix needed to be taken out. So he had it done at San Francisco General.”

What is an appendix? In your body an appendix is a little thing at the end of your intestines. The intestines are the tubes in your body for food. And at the end there’s a small little piece, it’s called the appendix. So his friend Neil, the appendix was infected, it was sick. The doctors needed to operate. They needed to take out his appendix. So his friend went to San Francisco General Hospital and they took out his appendix.

And Joe said, “Guess how much they charged him?”

Guess how much the cost was.

And Kristin says, “I don’t know, I have no idea.” And Joe says, “It was only a hundred bucks.”

Of course, bucks means dollars. We say that a lot. Buck or bucks means dollars. Hundred bucks, hundred dollars. So only one hundred dollars for this surgery for this operation. In America that’s extremely cheap. Usually it would be maybe \$10,000 or something, maybe more. So only \$100, that’s fantastic.

And Kristin says, “Wow, I can’t believe it.” And she says, “That’s amazing.” And he says, “When they were checking out of the hospital they told him we know you don’t have a job and you don’t have much money so don’t worry about the hundred bucks, we’ll just write it off.”

So even though the price was a hundred bucks, he didn’t have to pay it. He paid zero. They said they would write it off. To write it off, this is used in business a lot. To write off an expense, to write off a cost... it means you forget about it, basically. It means you accept the loss. You don’t try to get the money. So this guy should pay them \$100 but they say don’t worry. They say we accept the loss. We will lose the \$100. It’s okay. So to write something off in business means you accept the loss. You don’t try to get your money. You say, eh, it’s okay, we’re going to lose this money and you write it off.

Health Care Vocabulary Lesson

And Kristin says, “Jeez, y’know, that makes me think when I was living in Bangkok.”

Jeez, jeez really has no meaning. It’s just something we say for emotion. It’s like wow. It shows surprise, it shows a strong emotion, usually some kind of surprise. Something that’s unexpected you say, “Jeez, jeez...” it’s like wow, wow. Jeez, jeez.

And she talks about being in Bangkok. She got sick, three days in a hospital and when she was in the hospital she was very worried.

Since she is American, she was thinking this is going to be expensive, so expensive. This is going to be expensive.

The three days in the hospital was only \$152, something like that. And she was very happy because it was so cheap compared to the United States. And then finally at the end she says, “I pale at the thought of what that would have cost me here in the United States with no insurance.”

So to pale at the thought of something... we’ll talk about that. To pale, as a verb. To pale means to become white, your skin becomes very white. You lose your color. Usually this happens when you’re sick or when you’re very scared, you’re very afraid. So you say I pale at the thought, it means I become scared at the thought. It means some thought, some idea, scares you a lot. So she’s thinking, she’s imagining the cost in the United States of three days in a hospital, and then she’s scared. This thought scares her. This idea makes her afraid. So that’s when we say I pale at the thought of something. I pale at the thought means I’m afraid of this idea. I’m afraid of thinking about this. So we say it when we talk about something that is very scary to us. So the idea of having to pay for three days in an American hospital, it’s very scary to Kristin. Pales at the thought of it. Just thinking about it makes her turn white, to become super white because she’s so scared. That’s the idea.

* * * * *

Okay, that is the end of the vocabulary for “Health Care.” Listen to it a few times and then listen to the other lessons.

See you next time. Bye bye.